

2000 سؤال كلمان وقواعد  
23 قطعة - 125 ترجمة

2

nd  
**SEC**

SECOND TERM

**KING LEAR**

**NEW!** 20  
**HELLO!** 25

# Contents

## Module 4

### Unit 7 Living abroad

Part 1 (Lessons 1&2)	8
Part 2 (Lessons 3&4)	27
Part 3 (Skills)	48
Unit 7 AI-Adwaa Test	52

### Unit 8 High-tech transport

Part 1 (Lessons 1&2)	57
Part 2 (Lessons 3&4)	76
Part 3 (Skills)	94
Unit 8 AI-Adwaa Test	100

## Module 5

### Unit 9 Conservation

Part 1 (Lessons 1&2)	106
Part 2 (Lessons 3&4)	125
Part 3 (Skills)	144
Unit 9 AI-Adwaa Test	150

### Unit 10 The News

Part 1 (Lessons 1&2)	155
Part 2 (Lessons 3&4)	175
Part 3 (Skills)	192
Unit 10 AI-Adwaa Test	198

## Module 6

### Unit 11 What a performance!

Part 1 (Lessons 1&2)	204
Part 2 (Lessons 3&4)	225
Part 3 (Skills)	242
Unit 11 AI-Adwaa Test	248

### Unit 12 Achievements and goals

Part 1 (Lessons 1&2)	253
Part 2 (Lessons 3&4)	272
Part 3 (Skills)	289
Unit 12 AI-Adwaa Test	295

### Story King Lear

Act III, Scenes v-vii	302
Act IV, Scenes i-iii	309
Act IV, Scenes iv-vi	316
Act IV, Scene vi, continued & Scene vii	322
Act IV, Scene vii, continued & Act V, Scenes i-iii	328
Act V, Scene iii	335

### Advanced General Exercises

Adv. G. Exercises	343
Adv. G. Exercises Answers	349
Dictionary	351



# Module 4



Unit 7

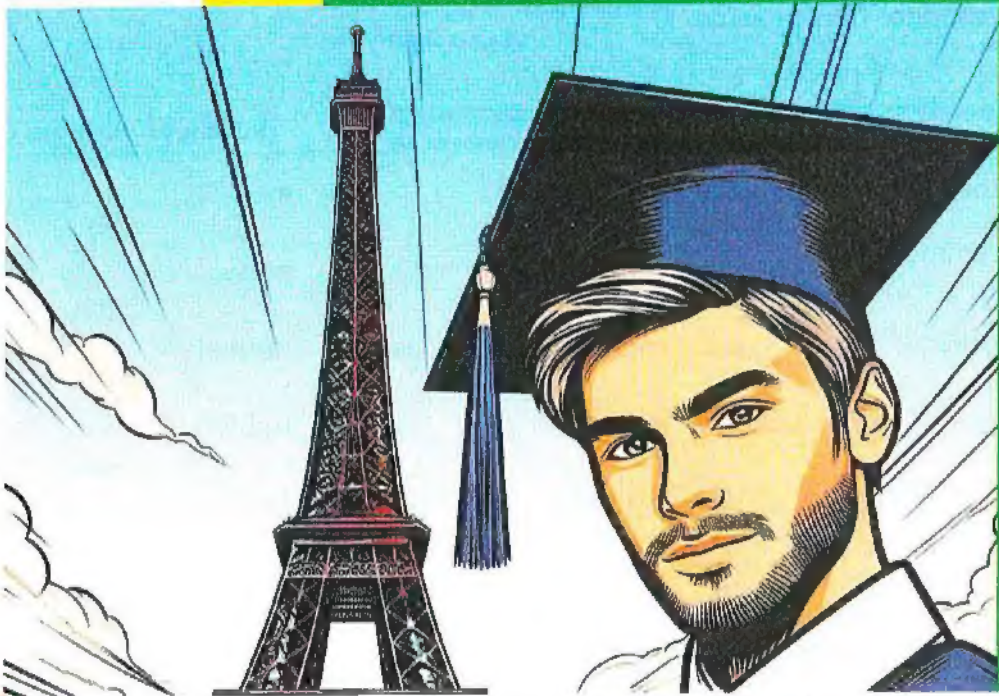
**Living abroad**

Unit 8

**High-tech transport**

# Unit 7

## Living abroad



### Objectives

**Reading** : An extract from the novel *The Secret Garden* by Frances Hodgson Burnett

**Writing** : A diary entry by a student who is living abroad

**Listening** : Voice messages from students who are studying abroad

**Speaking** : Discussing the pros and cons of working abroad

**Language** : Present continuous; Stative verbs

**Life Skills** : Critical thinking; Showing respect for people from different cultures







## A

## Vocabulary

## Key Vocabulary

## المفردات الرئيسية

determination (n)

تصميم / عزيمة

host family (n)

أسرة مضيفة

encouragement (n)

تشجيع

independent (adj)

مستقل

struggle (v) (d)

يكافح / يناضل / يعاني

get used to

يعتاد على

pick ... up (v) (ed)

يحضر (شخصاً) من مكان

## Vocabulary on Reading &amp; Listening Texts

## مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

abroad (adv)

بالخارج

confused (adj)

مربك

main (adj)

أساسي / رئيسي

accommodation (n)

إقامة / مكان إقامة

course (n)

برنامج دراسي

noisy (adj)

صاخب

activity (n)

نشاط

creature (n)

مخلوق / كائن

normal (adj)

طبيعي

annoy (v) (ed)

يرزعج / يضايق

current (adj)

حالي / جارٍ

publish (v) (ed)

ينشر

bell (n)

جرس

degree (n)

درجة جامعية

ring (v)

يدق (يرن) الجرس

biology (n)

علم الأحياء

distract (v) (ed)

يشتت الذهن / الانتباه

secret (n) (adj)

سر / سري

celebration (n)

احتفال

explain (v) (ed)

يشرح / يفسر

specific (adj)

محدد

certificate (n)

شهادة

explore (v) (d)

يستكشف

stressed (adj)

مضغوط

challenge (n) (v) (d)

تحد / يتحدى

extract (n)

مقتطف / جزء مقتبس

temporary (adj)

مؤقت

character (n)

شخصية

gardener (n)

بستاني / جنانني

understandable (adj)

يمكن فهمه

concentrate (v) (d)

يركز

lonely (adj)

وحيد

whistle (v) (d) (n)

يصفر / صفارة

confident (adj)

واثق

maid (n)

وصيفة / خادمة

## Workbook Vocabulary

## مفردات كتاب التدريبات

blog (n)	مدونة إلكترونية	firefighter (n)	رجل إطفاء	lamb (n)	صغير الخروف / الماعز
conditions (n)	ظروف / أحوال	harbour (n)	ميناء	support (n) (v) (ed)	دعم / يدعم
drought (n)	جفاف	helpful (adj)	معين / مساعد	volunteer (n) (v) (ed)	متطوع / يتطوع
experience (n) (v) (d)	خبرة / تجربة / يجرب	imagine (v) (d)	يتخيل	weigh (v) (ed)	يزن

## Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The new government announced its ..... to take serious steps to improve the economy.  
☐ a) accommodation                      b) hesitation  
☐ c) appliance                                d) determination
- Our friends have our tickets, so we will ..... them up an hour before the show.  
☐ a) pack                      b) get                      c) pick                      d) grow
- Most children need lots of ..... when they're learning new things especially from their family.  
☐ a) discouragement                      b) encouragement  
☐ c) reflection                                d) challenge
- Nahdet Misr has been ..... a range of educational books and software for years.  
☐ a) struggling                      b) deriving                      c) publishing                      d) distracting
- The tourist office told us that the price of the tour includes travel and ..... but meals are extra.  
☐ a) concentration                      b) determination  
☐ c) course                                d) accommodation
- She's ..... for 10 years to achieve success as an actress.  
☐ a) struggled                      b) relaxed                      c) explained                      d) complained
- The young mother has a/an ..... income because she works as a nursery school teacher.  
☐ a) interested                      b) intensive                      c) independent                      d) confused



8. We share the earth with all living ..... and have a duty to preserve its riches.

- ☐ a) areas      ☐ b) creatures      ☐ c) regions      ☐ d) products

9. The teacher gave each group in the class a ..... topic to talk about.

- ☐ a) stressed      ☐ b) confused      ☐ c) detected      ☐ d) specific

10. Digital piracy **القرصنة** has become a real ..... to the publishing industry.

- ☐ a) challenge      ☐ b) test      ☐ c) race      ☐ d) failure

### Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

### التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

do/perform an activity يقوم بنشاط	have a break لديه راحة / فسحة	have experience لديه خبرة
get distracted يصبح مشتت الذهن / الانتباه	have a great time يتمتع بوقت رائع	on his own بمفرده
come across يمرّ / يقابل (بالصدفة)	different to/from مختلف عن	move to ينتقل إلى
come into يأتي / يدخل إلى	look around ينظر حول / يتجول	travel across يسافر عبر
difference between اختلاف بين	look out of ينظر من خلال	

### Derivatives

### المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
annoy	يزعج / يضايق	annoyance	إزعاج	annoying	مزعج
				annoyed	منزعج
concentrate	يركز	concentration	تركيز	concentrated	مركز
confuse	يربك	confusion	إرباك / ارتباك	confusing	مربك
				confused	مربك
determine	يحدد	determination	تصميم	determined	محدد / عاقد العزم
distract	يشتت الذهن / الانتباه	distraction	تشتت الذهن / الانتباه	distracted	مشتت الذهن / الانتباه
		distractor	مشتت للانتباه		
explore	يستكشف	exploration	استكشاف	exploratory	استكشافي
		explorer	مستكشف		

imagine	يتخيل	imagination	خيال	imaginative (مبدع)	خيالي (مبدع)
				imaginary (بعيد عن الواقع)	خيالي (بعيد عن الواقع)
publish	ينشر	publication publisher	منشور ناشر	published	منشور
specify	يحدد	specification	تحديد / تخصيص	specific	محدد
weigh	يزن	weight	وزن	weighty	ثقل الوزن

### Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

These unclear instructions can **confuse** everyone. (v)

The announcement caused a lot of **confusion** among the students. (n)

I'm really **confused**. Can you explain that again? (adj)

### Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym	المضاد
concentrate	يركز	focus		Ignore/disregard	يتجاهل
confused	مربك	distracted/puzzled		clear-headed	صافي الذهن
current	حالي / جاري	contemporary/ongoing		past/old	ماض / قديم
determination	تصميم / عزيمة	persistence/dedication		Indifference/hesitation	عدم اهتمام / تردد
distract	يشغيت الذهن / الانتباه	confuse/disturb		calm/clarify	يهدئ / يوضح
encouragement	تشجيع	support/backing		discouragement	عدم تشجيع
imagine	يتخيل	fancy/suppose		disregard/ignore	يستبعد / يتجاهل
independent	مستقل	self-reliant		dependent	معتمد / متوكل
specific	محدد	peculiar/particular		common/ordinary	عادي / شائع
struggle	يكافح	toil/strive		surrender/yield	يستسلم



## Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Try to imagine what life was like 1000 years ago. The synonym of the verb "imagine" is ".....".  
☐ a) fancy      ☐ b) explain      ☐ c) accept      ☐ d) apply
2. While cleaning her room, she came ..... an old diary in her desk.  
☐ a) for      ☐ b) up      ☐ c) across      ☐ d) about
3. Experts advise young people not to ..... distracted easily and focus on their goals.  
☐ a) have      ☐ b) take      ☐ c) give      ☐ d) get
4. To avoid ....., the grandmother advised the twins not to wear the same clothes.  
☐ a) confuse      ☐ b) confusion      ☐ c) confusable      ☐ d) confused
5. After his wife's death, the old man has been living ..... his own for four years now.  
☐ a) at      ☐ b) on      ☐ c) for      ☐ d) with
6. The architects have made ..... use of glass and transparent plastic in the new tower.  
☐ a) imagine      ☐ b) imagination      ☐ c) imagines      ☐ d) imaginative
7. There's no difference ..... the two houses. They look exactly the same.  
☐ a) on      ☐ b) among      ☐ c) between      ☐ d) inside
8. The magazine publishes two short stories a month. The adjective of the verb "publishes" is ".....".  
☐ a) publish      ☐ b) publication      ☐ c) published      ☐ d) publisher
9. The small boat struggled against the waves. The antonym of the verb "struggle" is ".....".  
☐ a) suffer      ☐ b) fight      ☐ c) gain      ☐ d) surrender
10. The tourist group spent the afternoon looking ..... the town.  
☐ a) across      ☐ b) around      ☐ c) off      ☐ d) into

## Reading Text



## The Secret Garden

The **Secret Garden** is a novel by Frances Hodgson Burnett. It was published in Britain in 1911. At the beginning of the book, we meet the main character, Mary Lennox. Mary was born in India and her parents were rich. When Mary is nine years old, her parents die and Mary moves to England to live with her uncle. It is cold and very different from India, and Mary is unhappy at first.

Mary opened her eyes on that first morning because a maid had come into her room<sup>(1)</sup>.

"Are you my servant?" she asked.

"I'm Mrs. Medlock's servant, and she is Mr Craven's servant," replied Martha, the maid. "Are you going outside today?"

Mary looked around her. There was nothing to do in the bedroom.

"Who will go with me?" Mary asked.

"You can be independent and go out by yourself. My brother is always exploring on his own," said Martha. "There are some gardens, but it is winter so nothing is growing now. Oh, now Mrs. Medlock's bell is ringing. I must go!"

A short time later, Mary was in the gardens when she came across a small bird singing in some trees behind a wall<sup>(2)</sup>. When she asked an old gardener about the bird, he whistled and the bird flew to him.

"He was lonely and we became friends," the old man explained.

"I'm lonely," said Mary. "I don't know anyone in England."

"I'm sure you will struggle at first, but you will get used to the people here soon," said the gardener. Suddenly, the small bird started singing<sup>(3)</sup>.

"Why is he doing that?" she asked.

"I think he's decided to be your friend, too," answered the gardener.



## Notes on some sentences:

## ملاحظات على بعض الجمل

١- لاحظ استخدام الماضي التام (had come) بعد أداة الربط (because) للتعبير عن الحدث الأقدم.

٢- لاحظ استخدام صيغة (verb + ing) للتعبير عن الحال بمعنى (مغنياً).

٣- يتبع الفعل (start) صيغة (verb + ing) أو (to + infinitive).



**Narrator: 1**

**Teen boy:** Hi Khaled! How are you? I'm having a great time here in Sydney.

Australia is such a beautiful country and the sun always seems to be shining here! It's so wonderful! Every day – after I've finished my lessons – I go down to the beach<sup>(2)</sup> to have a break from studying and smell the sea air. I have a few good friends here now, so we usually go together. The only problem is that sometimes I find it too difficult to concentrate on my lessons because I'm thinking about going to the beach afterwards!

**Speaker: 2**

**Teen girl:** Hi Dad. I hope everything's OK at home. I'm fine, but I'm finding it quite difficult to get used to life in Tokyo – everything is so different here. It's not like at home where it's quiet all the time. It's always noisy because of the cars on the roads – day and night! But the most difficult thing about this experience is that I don't know enough Japanese at the moment. People talk to me and I only understand a little bit of what they're saying, so I'm always feeling confused. I hope things will get better!

**Speaker: 3**

**Teen boy:** Hi Mum! I miss you and everyone at home. I'm having a good time here in Barcelona. I feel so happy to be here and there are so many fun things I still want to do here, like visiting more of the beautiful buildings in the city. I'm getting a little bit better at Spanish every day- today I went to a café with friends and I remembered enough to buy some lunch! I came home feeling really good!

**Notes on some sentences:****ملاحظات على بعض الجمل**

١- لاحظ استخدام الفعل (having) في زمن المضارع المستمر لأنه لا يعبر هنا عن الملكية.  
٢- لاحظ استخدام زمن المضارع التام (I've finished) بعد أداة الربط (after) مع زمن المضارع البسيط (go) وذلك للتعبير عن تكرار الحدثين.

## Notes

## on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

**explore**

يستكشف شيئاً أو مكاناً / يدرس معالمه

Marco Polo was the first European sailor to **explore** China.

**invent**

يخترع شيئاً أو جهازاً لم يكن موجوداً من قبل

Thomas Edison **invented** many devices in the field of electricity.

**discover**

يكتشف شيئاً كان موجوداً ولم يعرف

The pharaohs were able to **discover** many metals, such as iron and gold.

**current**

١- حالي / جاري

٢- تيار ماء

٣- تيار هواء

٤- تيار كهربى

٥- تيار سائد (رأى أو اتجاه)

- In its **current** state, the car is worth 50,000 pounds.

- Strong **currents** can be very dangerous for swimmers.

- Some birds use warm air **currents** to help them fly.

- Check all your wiring before switching on the **current**.

- There was a **current** of anger within the company.

**currants**

الريبب (العنب المجفف)

Our cook uses a lot of **currants** while baking cakes. (= dried grapes)

**abroad**

خارج البلاد (في بلد آخر) (لا تستخدم كصفة قبل اسم)

Our neighbours are on holiday **abroad** at the moment.

**foreign**

أجنبي (صفة تأتي قبل اسم)

Who's the Minister for **Foreign** Affairs?

**exterior (outside)**

خارجي

The **exterior** of my house needs painting. (= the outside surface)

**drought**

جفاف

Some of the newer plants in the garden died during the **drought**.

**draught**

تيار هواء يدخل إلى غرفة

Can you close the window? I'm in a **draught**.



**certificate**

لشهادة (هي وثيقة رسمية لشئ مثل  
الميلاد أو الزواج أو الوفاة)

In order to get a passport, you'll need your birth **certificate**.

**qualifications**

المؤهلات (هي دليل مهارة الشخص أو معرفته  
لموضوع ما بعد النجاح في منهج أو امتحان)

What **qualifications** do I need to teach English as a foreign language?

**degree**

درجة جامعية عند إتمام منهج دراسي بنجاح

I did/took my **degree** at Assuit University.

### Vocabulary **Checkpoint** 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- After the blood analysis, the doctors ..... traces of poison in the victim's blood.  
a) explored      b) invented      c) discovered      d) designed
- To make up for **يعوض** the losses in the fire, the shop owner showed the police a ..... of insurance **التأمين**.  
a) diary      b) signal      c) degree      d) certificate
- A cold ..... of air blew in from the open window and we had to close it.  
a) draught      b) stream      c) drought      d) flood
- Gas lamps became out of date when electric lighting was .....  
a) explored      b) invented      c) discovered      d) detected
- Candidates of the job in the New Administrative Capital must hold a ..... in architecture.  
a) licence      b) permit      c) certificate      d) degree
- The farmers suffered great losses as the ..... caused serious damage to crops due to lack of water.  
a) draught      b) current      c) drought      d) flood
- On surfing beaches, strong ..... are common especially during competition time.  
a) droughts      b) floods      c) currants      d) currents
- After the meeting, the attendees **الحاضرون** will be free to ..... the city.  
a) explore      b) invent      c) discover      d) devise



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook

- The computer company wants someone with a lot of scientific ..... for this job.  
☐ a) experience    ☐ b) experiment    ☐ c) trial    ☐ d) testing
- I didn't think I could ever ..... used to living in a big city after living in the country.  
☐ a) grow    ☐ b) get    ☐ c) fall    ☐ d) turn
- Before travelling to some African countries, you have to get a medical ..... that shows which vaccinations you've had.  
☐ a) title    ☐ b) course    ☐ c) essay    ☐ d) certificate
- I think this cold weather is ..... for this time of the year as it is winter.  
☐ a) normal    ☐ b) specific    ☐ c) confused    ☐ d) independent
- ..... is the scientific study of the life and structure of plants and animals.  
☐ a) History    ☐ b) Botany    ☐ c) Biology    ☐ d) Mathematics
- The coach asked the young athlete to do a variety of fitness ..... in the gym.  
☐ a) inventions    ☐ b) labour    ☐ c) experiences    ☐ d) activities
- Acceptable forms of ID include a ..... passport or a birth certificate.  
☐ a) current    ☐ b) past    ☐ c) luxurious    ☐ d) currant
- It really ..... me when people expect me to tip as well as pay a service charge in a restaurant.  
☐ a) employs    ☐ b) deploys    ☐ c) applies    ☐ d) annoys
- The collection includes ..... from the works of several well-known authors.  
☐ a) shapes    ☐ b) formulas    ☐ c) extracts    ☐ d) recipes
- The ..... was changing the sheets when we got back to our hotel room.  
☐ a) boss    ☐ b) coach    ☐ c) guard    ☐ d) maid
- The message was written in a/an ..... code that only our soldiers could read.  
☐ a) noisy    ☐ b) secret    ☐ c) obvious    ☐ d) literate
- Both clocks are still in good working ..... although they are old.  
☐ a) force    ☐ b) form    ☐ c) condition    ☐ d) direction
- The English department at the college runs special language ..... during the summer.  
☐ a) matches    ☐ b) courses    ☐ c) courts    ☐ d) games

### Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

- Amr tried to distract attention from his own illegal activities. The verb "distract" is the synonym of ".....".  
☐ a) confuse    ☐ b) relieve    ☐ c) clarify    ☐ d) define

15. Salem was annoyed that he had forgotten his wallet. The noun of the verb "annoy" is ".....".  
 a) annoys      b) annoyance      c) annoyed      d) annoyingly
16. My grandfather is ill and he can't ..... a lot of physical activities.  
☐ a) do      b) make      c) follow      d) derive
17. The tour guide says that we'll ..... a break now and resume ..... in an hour.  
☐ a) suffer      b) surrender      c) fight      d) have
18. The disease seems to be specific to certain types of plant. The adjective "specific" is the opposite of ".....".  
☐ a) peculiar      b) particular      c) obvious      d) common
19. Mother insists that our house is different ..... the others on our street.  
 a) at      b) from      c) of      d) in
20. To become a professional musician, you need to have a lot of determination. The noun "determination" is similar in meaning to ".....".  
 a) persistence      b) hesitation      c) dependence      d) avoidance

### Longman and Previous Exams

21. During my stay in London, the ..... family welcomed me warmly.  
☐ a) guest      b) host      c) hostel      d) host'le
22. I'm staying in Tanta, but it's ..... I won't be there for long.  
 a) unlimited      b) along      c) temporary      d) everlasting
23. Who was the first to ..... China?  
☐ a) invent      b) invite      c) explore      d) appear
24. I am going to make some notes to ..... on the most important points in the lecture.  
☐ a) think      b) ignore      c) concentrate      d) turn
25. Could you tell me the name of the ..... Prime Minister of England?  
 a) secret      b) private      c) current      d) ocal
26. .... is the quality of trying to do something even when it is difficult.  
☐ a) Communication      b) Determination  
 c) Participation      d) Action
27. It's important for a teacher to balance punishment with positive .....  
 a) determination      b) encouragement      c) change      d) invitation
28. Grandma's very ..... and does all her own shopping and cooking.  
 a) insufficient      b) indifference      c) insignificant      d) independent
29. Successful young people ..... to achieve their goals.  
 a) sleep      b) smuggle      c) struggle      d) steal
30. I was ..... from the airport in a taxi sent by my father.  
☐ a) determined      b) used to      c) picked up      d) come across



## B Language

## Present Continuous

المضارع المستمر

## FORM التكوين

- Subj. فاعل + am/is/are + v-ing  
The baby **is sleeping** at the moment.
- Subj. فاعل + am/is/are + not + v-ing  
They **aren't watching** TV at the moment.
- Am/Is/Are + subj. فاعل + v-ing?  
Is he **doing** his homework?
- Wh- question أداة استفهام + is/are + subj. فاعل + v-ing?  
**What are you doing?**
- Obj. مفعول + am/is/are + being + P.P.  
Look! The thief **is being chased**.

## USAGE الاستخدام

For actions happening now to say that we are in the middle of the action:

- 1 I'm **waiting** for the train. (I'm in the station now.)  
They **are playing** football. (The match is not over yet. لم تنتهِ المباراة حتى الآن.)

2 For actions that are going on around now, but not at the actual moment of speaking:

- 2 She **is working** hard these days. (تعمل بجد هذه الأيام وربما هي الآن تأكل أو تقرأ أو تنام.)

3 A current situation which is different to a past situation:

- 3 Young people **aren't reading** newspapers these days. (موقف حالي أو حاضرومختلف عن موقف في الماضي.)

4 For fixed arrangements in the near future:

- 4 Ahmed **is leaving** for Luxor in an hour. (للأحداث التي تم الترتيب لها لتحدث في المستقبل.)  
Ali **is meeting** Mr Amgad **next Saturday morning**. (It's been arranged.)  
(يستخدم مع الكلمات الدالة على المستقبل إذا كان الحدث تم الترتيب له.)

An action that people do again and again and sometimes annoys:

يستخدم مع كلمة **always** إذا كنا نريد التعبير عن شيء يحدث كثيرًا وأحيانًا يضايق.

5

He is **always forgetting** the car keys at home.

She is **always asking** a lot of questions.

Why is he **always playing** his guitar?

- The present continuous is used with the following time expressions:

يستخدم المضارع المستمر مع التعبيرات الزمنية الآتية:

now      at the moment      these days      at present      still  
nowadays      Look!      Listen!      Take care!

He is **still** working.

It's raining **at the moment**.

### Language

4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Why ..... strangely at that man? Has he done anything wrong?

a) did you look      b) do you look      c) are you looking      d) will you look

2. Please, don't make so much noise. I ... to concentrate.

a) 'm try'ng      b) try      c) was trying      d) trying

3. Mariam is busy at the moment. She ..... her hair.

a) wash      b) washes      c) is wash ng      d) has washed

4. If you ..... this comic book, I'd like to see it.

a) don't read      b) aren't reading      c) read      d) were reading

5. Some men are waiting outside for you .....

a) at that time      b) recently      c) 2 hours ago      d) at the moment

### State/Stative verbs

أفعال الثبات/الحالة

- تصف هذه الأفعال حالة ثابتة للشخص وليس الشيء الذي يفعله وهي أفعال غير-حركية فمثلا الفعل **go** به حركة لكن الفعل **own** بمعنى "يملك" ليس به حركة وهذه الأفعال لا تستخدم بعد **to be** ومن أمثلة هذه الأفعال:

- |                                  |                                  |                           |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| (1) Thoughts and opinions        | أفعال تعبر عن الآراء والاعتقادات | think, know, etc.         |
| (2) Feelings and emotions        | أفعال تعبر عن المشاعر والعواطف   | like, love, etc.          |
| (3) Perception and senses        | أفعال تعبر عن الإدراك والحواس    | hear, see, etc.           |
| (4) Possessions and measurements | أفعال تعبر عن الملكية والمقاييس  | belong, have, weigh, etc. |

## ADVANCED POINTS

Some verbs have both a stative and an active meaning:

بعض الأفعال لها كل من لمعنى الحركى والمعنى غير الحركى وإذا استخدمت فى الاستمرار يكون لها معنى مختلف:

Verb	Stative	Active
think	I <b>think</b> English is easy. هذا اعتقاد وليس تفكيراً	I'm <b>thinking</b> about your plan. = I'm considering. يدبر أمراً / يفكر ملياً فى أمر
have	My brother <b>has</b> a nice car. أخى يملك سيارة لطيفة وليس يتناول.	He's <b>having</b> dinner now. = He is eating now. يتناول العشاء وليس يملك
feel	I <b>feel</b> you should take more time. الشعور والإحساس هنا ليس حركياً ولكنه مثل الاعتقاد.	She is <b>feeling</b> her way in the dark. = She is finding her way in the dark. تتحسس الطريق باليد أو النظر جهداً
see	His eyes are so bad. He <b>sees</b> a little. الفعل <b>see</b> هنا بمعنى يرى وليس يقابل.	I'm <b>seeing</b> my lawyer tonight. = I'm visiting/meeting my lawyer tonight. أزور / أقابل
love	I <b>love</b> going on holidays to relax. الفعل <b>love</b> يدل على المشاعر لا حركة فيه.	I'm <b>loving</b> this holiday. = I'm enjoying; specific محدد الاستمتاع بالإجازة فى وقت معين (وسط الحدث)
look	He <b>looks</b> tired = seems الفعل <b>look</b> هنا بمعنى يبدو.	She's <b>looking at</b> some old photographs. = She's examining some old photographs. تتفقد / تفحص / تنظر بدقة
be	Ali <b>is</b> a kind man. الفعل "يكون" فعل حالة وهو ليس فى وقت معين ولكنه دائم.	Ramy <b>is being</b> very kind to me these days. = He's behaving kindly. يتصرف معى هذه الأيام فقط.
smell	The food <b>smells</b> nice. رائحة الشيء تكون فى حالته.	Why <b>are</b> you <b>smelling</b> your food? = Trying the smell of. يحاول شم رائحة شيء.
weigh	The meat <b>weighs</b> 2 kilos. يبلغ وزنها ٢ كيلو جرام	He <b>is weighing</b> the meat. يقوم بعملية الوزن

ونفهم الفرق بين الأفعال جيداً نتأمل المثال الآتى:

The soup **tastes** nice. I'm **tasting** the soup now.

فالحالة التى عليها الشُربة هى أنها جيدة ولها مذاق حميل وهذا شيء ثابت لا حركة فيه. أما أنا فيصدر منى حدث وليس حالة وهو أنى أقوم بالتذوق لى أعرف حالة الشُربة وهنا يكون الاستمرار.





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I ..... with my parents for a few weeks until my flat is ready.  
☐ a) stay                      ☐ b) have stayed                      ☐ c) 'm staying                      ☐ d) stayed
2. Look! it ..... again. It seems we can't go out tonight.  
☐ a) rained                      ☐ b) rains                      ☐ c) will rain                      ☐ d) is raining
3. Omar ..... to eat more vegetables these days.  
☐ a) was trying                      ☐ b) is trying                      ☐ c) will be trying                      ☐ d) tried
4. Why ..... on the wrong side of the road? It's not your habit.  
☐ a) are you driving                      ☐ b) do you drive  
☐ c) had you driven                      ☐ d) could you drive
5. Some friends of mine ..... their own house. They hope to finish it next summer.  
☐ a) build                      ☐ b) have built                      ☐ c) built                      ☐ d) are building
6. I don't have anywhere to live right now. I ..... for a flat.  
☐ a) look                      ☐ b) 'm looking                      ☐ c) have looked                      ☐ d) looked
7. A: Where's Nada? B: She ..... a tennis match.  
☐ a) played                      ☐ b) has played                      ☐ c) is playing                      ☐ d) plays
8. Most scientists ..... that the world is getting hotter.  
☐ a) believe                      ☐ b) are believed                      ☐ c) are believing                      ☐ d) will believe
9. Hana likes reading science fiction stories, but her brothers ..... sport.  
☐ a) liked                      ☐ b) are liking                      ☐ c) likes                      ☐ d) like
10. They're hungry. They ..... something to eat.  
☐ a) wants                      ☐ b) want                      ☐ c) are wanting                      ☐ d) were wanting
11. Everything is arranged for Samir's travel next Saturday. This means he ..... next Saturday.  
☐ a) travel                      ☐ b) will travel                      ☐ c) is travelling                      ☐ d) was travelling
12. The sky ..... grey and the wind is blowing. I think it is going to rain.  
☐ a) looks                      ☐ b) sn't looking                      ☐ c) has looked                      ☐ d) will look
13. You haven't said a word all morning. What ..... about?  
☐ a) you think                      ☐ b) do you think  
☐ c) you do think                      ☐ d) are you thinking

14. Hazem ..... computer games. He should do something more active.

- ☐ a) always played                      b) is always playing  
☐ c) always playing                      d) always plays

15. Something ..... different - Are you wearing a new suit?

- ☐ a) seem                                      b) had seemed  
☐ c) seems                                      d) 's seem ng

16. When my brother has a bad cold, he ..... nothing.

- ☐ a) tasting                      b) is tasting                      c) tasted                      d) tastes

17. Mohamed .... more money than he can afford to pay.

- ☐ a) owes                      b) owed                      c) is owing                      d) was ow ng

18. I ..... the fish now. It ..... five kilos.

- ☐ a) am weighing/is weighing                      b) am weighing/weighs  
☐ c) weigh/weights                      d) weigh/is weighing

19. Which sentence of the following is grammatically correct?

- ☐ a) I'm usual y brushing my teeth at the moment.  
☐ b) My brother is wanting to look for a better job these days.  
☐ c) We are meeting on Monday to discuss some problems.  
☐ d) I don't eat breakfast this morning.

20. A: What is Osama doing at the moment? B: .....

- ☐ a) He is tasting the food.  
☐ b) He weighs the fish he has just bought.  
☐ c) He is looking ill  
☐ d) He is thinking that his teacher is genius.

## Longman and Previous Exams

21. A: Where have you arranged to spend the summer holiday?

B: I ..... two weeks in Sharm El-Sheikh next summer.

[Toug h t]

- ☐ a) going to spend                      b) had spent  
☐ c) w'll spend                      d) am spending

22. We ..... our sister's wedding party tomorrow; we have made all preparations.

[Toug h t]

- ☐ a) will give                      b) had given  
☐ c) going to give                      d) are giving

23. You ..... to loud music. This is annoying; I can't concentrate on my lessons.

- ☐ a) always listened                      b) are always listening  
c) always are listening                  d) are always listened

24. Look! Bassem ..... up his room. He is always active.

- a) 's tidying                                  b) was tidying  
c) had tidied                                d) would tidy

25. I ..... a wonderful time in the village. Everyone is really nice.

- ☐ a) am not having                          b) going to have  
c) had had                                  d) am having

26. Call me later. I ..... dinner with my family.

- a) will have had                            b) have  
c) have had                                 d) am having

27. I ..... about going to the sports club.

- ☐ a) thought                                  b) am thinking  
c) think                                        d) am thought

28. My friend ..... a lovely villa which has a nice pool.

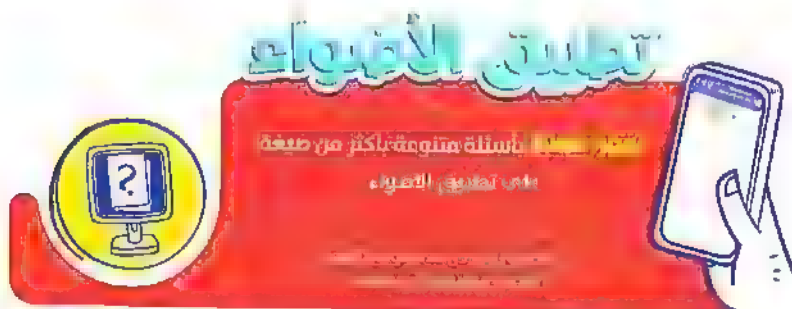
- a) is having                      b) had                      c) has                      d) was having

29. Would you mind giving me a lift? My car ..... at the mechanic's.

- ☐ a) is being checked                        b) was being checked  
c) checks                                    d) is checking

30. Sarah ..... her dirty clothes on the floor! Who does she think I am? Her maid?

- a) leave                                      b) is left  
c) was left                                  d) is always leaving







Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### Vocabulary

- Paris was the ..... city for the last Olympic Games in 2024.  
☐ a) guest      ☐ b) helpless      ☐ c) strange      ☐ d) host
- If the TV is ..... you from your homework, you should turn it off.  
☐ a) distracting      ☐ b) dispensing      ☐ c) respecting      ☐ d) distressing
- ..... and hard work led the businessman from poverty to success and wealth.  
☐ a) Affectation      ☐ b) Determination      ☐ c) Deterioration      ☐ d) Condensation
- Some very well-known Egyptian footballers have gone to clubs .....  
☐ a) broad      ☐ b) board      ☐ c) abroad      ☐ d) aboard
- A/An ..... is someone who does a job willingly without being paid.  
☐ a) employee      ☐ b) spectator      ☐ c) professional      ☐ d) volunteer
- Damietta has a new, fine modern ..... for all ships that helps the local economy.  
☐ a) warehouse      ☐ b) harbour      ☐ c) store      ☐ d) garage
- The country's citizens are asked to ..... the great efforts of the government to improve transport.  
☐ a) endanger      ☐ b) threaten      ☐ c) support      ☐ d) think
- The patient can't ..... many physical activities after the operations.  
☐ a) perform      ☐ b) repair      ☐ c) make      ☐ d) reform
- The doctors are ..... that the patient will make a full recovery after the successful operation.  
☐ a) secret      ☐ b) confident      ☐ c) desperate      ☐ d) ignorant
- I told my friend that I ..... used to living in the countryside when I was younger.  
☐ a) gave      ☐ b) made      ☐ c) d'd      ☐ d) got
- The government is trying hard to help families who have no ..... after the earthquake.  
☐ a) reliance      ☐ b) detection  
☐ c) intention      ☐ d) accommodation
- People are ..... about all the different labels on food these days as they contain a lot of data.  
☐ a) certain      ☐ b) developed      ☐ c) confused      ☐ d) imaginative
- All that noise makes it hard to concentrate. The synonym of the verb "concentrate" is ".....".  
☐ a) focus      ☐ b) ignore      ☐ c) neglect      ☐ d) defy
- The company's ..... financial situation is not good, so they will apply for a bank loan.  
☐ a) past      ☐ b) current      ☐ c) future      ☐ d) popular

15. Jana decided to go out and explore the town. The adjective from the verb "explore" is .....

- a) explores      b) exploration      c) explorer      d) exploratory

### Language

16. Turn the TV off. No one ..... it!

- a) watches      b) isn't watching      c) is watching      d) watched

17. Stress ..... high blood pressure.

- a) cause      b) has caused      c) is causing      d) causes

18. Kareem's a policeman, but he ..... a uniform today.

- a) doesn't wear      b) isn't wearing      c) wears      d) no wear

19. Hany ..... his hair now. He ..... it every day.

- ☐ a) is washing / washes      b) washes / is washing  
c) wash / is washing      d) is washing / was

20. .... that our team will win the next match?

- ☐ a) Were you believing      b) Are you believing  
c) Will you believe      d) Do you believe

21. I'm angry because you ..... the door open.

- a) had left      b) are always leaving      c) leaving      d) are left

22. Leila ..... that she will be better at maths.

- ☐ a) is being hoped      b) is hoping  
c) hopes      d) hoping

23. They are visiting the zoo on Saturday. This means that they .....

- a) have arranged everything      b) haven't decided yet  
c) are in the zoo now      d) are still thinking of going there

24. A: Hurry up! It's time to leave. B: OK, I .....

- ☐ a) am come      b) come      c) coming      d) am coming

25. The kids ..... each other around the kitchen table at the moment.

- a) chased      b) chasing      c) are chasing      d) are chased

26. Tarek's good at golf, but he ..... very often.

- a) doesn't play      b) won't play      c) didn't play      d) isn't playing

27. Please, be quiet. My baby .....

- ☐ a) is slept      b) is sleeping      c) slept      d) sleeps

28. Sohaila is very clever. She ..... seven different languages.

- a) is speaking      b) was speaking      c) speaks      d) has spoken

29. The famous footballer is coming to visit our village, and I ..... he's very rich.

- a) hearing      b) near      c) am nearing      d) will hear

30. Which one of the following is grammatically incorrect?

- a) Are they having a good time?      b) He's having a huge house.  
c) They are designing a robot.      d) They are looking at the photo album.



## A

## Vocabulary

## Vocabulary on Reading &amp; Listening Texts

## مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

accent (n)	لكنة / لهجة	Greek (adj) (n)	يوناني / اللغة اليونانية	presentation (n)	عرض تقديمي
celebrate (v) (d)	يحتفل	include (v) (d)	يشمل	share (v) (d)	يشارك
communication (n)	اتصال / تواصل	local (adj)	محلي	skill (n)	مهارة
conversation (n)	محادثة	Londoners (n)	أهل (ساكنو) لندن	summarise (v) (d)	يلخص
culture (n)	ثقافة	meal (n)	وجبة	suppose (v) (d)	يفترض / يظن
decide (v) (d)	يقرر	mention (v) (ed)	يذكر	text message (n)	رسالة نصية
diary (n)	يوميات	organise (v) (d)	ينظم	unfortunately (adv)	لسوء الحظ
entry (n)	مدخل / تدوين	phrase (n)	عبارة		

## Workbook Vocabulary

## مفردات كتاب التدرجات

amazing (adj)	مذهل	Parthenon (n)	بارثينون (معبد إغريقي في أثينا)	voice mail (n)	بريد صوتي
especially (adv)	بخاصة	passport (n)	جواز سفر		
flight (n)	رحلة جوية	price (n)	سعر	weather (n)	الطقس
miss (v) (ed)	يفتقد	storm (n)	عاصفة		

## Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The doctor ..... the possibility of having an operation during his examination of my son.  
 a) reminded      b) mentioned      c) mproved      d) reformed
- After 9 years in London, Jack lost his French ..... and you can say he is a Londoner.  
 a) nationality      b) degree      c) accent      d) note



3. Graduation parties allow students to ..... their success with family and friends.  
 a) recuperate    b) calibrate    c) reward    d) celebrate
4. My daughter spent three hours ..... her own clothes in the wardrobe last weekend.  
 a) organising    b) dispatching    c) snatching    d) recognising
5. My cousin has a/an ..... ability to learn new languages; he can speak three languages.  
 a) terrible    b) amazing    c) amazed    d) awful
6. The manager always asks his secretary not to forget to write the date of the meeting in his .....  
 a) diary    b) dairy    c) article    d) title
7. I had a long ..... with my wife about our son's new school the other day.  
 a) survey    b) connection    c) question    d) conversation
8. Letters have become an old-fashioned means of ..... over the last years.  
 a) connection    b) collection    c) communication    d) affection
9. I ..... It's too late to apply for the job that was advertised a month ago.  
 a) refuse    b) suppose    c) reject    d) recognise
10. During the sale on Black Friday only, all the carpets in the shop were sold at half .....  
 a) price    b) size    c) weight    d) place

### Expressions, Phrases and Prepositions

### التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

all in all	على العموم	get better at	يتحسن في	make sure	يتأكد
find it hard to	يجد من الصعوبة أن	have conversations with	يتحاور مع	the pros and cons of	مزايا وميوب لـ
from the beginning of	من بداية	keep in touch by	يبقى على اتصال بـ	until tomorrow	حتى الغد (عبارة لختام أو وداع)
famous for	مشهور بـ	learn about	يعرف / يتعلم عن	similar to	مشابه لـ



## Derivatives

## المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
amaze	يذهل / يدهش	amazement	دهشة / ذهول	amazing	مدهش / مذهل
				amazed	مندهش
		culture	ثقافة	cultural	ثقافي
decide	يقرر	decision	قرار	decisive	حاسم
organise	ينظم	organisation organiser	منظمة / تنظيم منظم	organised	منظم
present	يقدم	presentation presenter	عرض مقدم	presentational	تقديمي
summarise	يلخص	summary	ملخص	summarised	مختصر

## Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

They hired a professional to help **organise** their wedding. (v)

Our class is responsible for the **organisation** of the school party. (n)

In order to do this job well, you have to be very **organised**. (adj)

## Words, Synonyms &amp; Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المتضاد
amazing	مذهل	astonishing/awesome		ordinary/Insignificant	عادي / عديم الأهمية
celebrate	يحتفل / يحتفي بـ	commemorate/honour		condemn/overlook	يدين / يتغاضى عن
decide	يقرر	determine/select		hesitate/postpone	يتردد / يؤجل
include	يشمل / يتضمن	involve/contain		exclude/ forget	يستبعد / ينسى
mention	يذكر	declare/name		conceal/ignore	يتجاهل / يخفي
organise	ينظم	arrange/regulate		ruin/disturb	يدمر / يزعج
summarise	يلخص	sum up/recap		enlarge/expand	يوسع

## Vocabulary Checkpoint 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I believe that joining the Faculty of Arts was the best ..... I have ever made.  
☒ a) decide      ☐ b) decided      ☐ c) decision      ☐ d) decisive
2. The weather wasn't very good, but all ..... all we enjoyed our vacation in Sinai.  
☒ a) at      ☐ b) in      ☐ c) for      ☐ d) off
3. My grandfather ..... it hard to remember the names of people he meets regularly.  
☒ a) finds      ☐ b) takes      ☐ c) gets      ☐ d) devises
4. The coach always reminds the team that hard training is the best way of ..... better all the time.  
☒ a) having      ☐ b) taking      ☐ c) giving      ☐ d) getting
5. During her stay on her uncle's farm, Aya learnt much ..... keeping plants and animals.  
☒ a) at      ☐ b) out      ☐ c) about      ☐ d) at
6. Yassin bought some new shoes which are very similar ..... a pair he had before.  
☒ a) from      ☐ b) of      ☐ c) in      ☐ d) to
7. Egypt is famous ..... Its great civilisations and monuments.  
☐ a) about      ☐ b) of      ☐ c) for      ☐ d) at
8. It is important for doctors to ..... in touch with the latest developments in medicine.  
☒ a) do      ☐ b) keep      ☐ c) go      ☐ d) make
9. All the actors in the new play were so amazing that the audience stood clapping for a long time. The antonym of the adjective "amazing" is ".....".  
☐ a) ordinary      ☐ b) fantastic      ☐ c) puzzled      ☐ d) accepted
10. Mother always organises my brother's untidy room. The synonym of the verb "organise" is ".....".  
☒ a) explain      ☐ b) waste      ☐ c) damage      ☐ d) arrange

## Reading Text (1)

28<sup>th</sup> November 2020

I've been in London for six weeks now. It's been a great experience so far, but it hasn't always been easy. When I first arrived, I struggled to understand people. But I'm getting better at understanding their accents now. I enjoy listening to Londoners and trying to have conversations with them. You won't believe what happened to me today! I was talking to a woman in a shop and she asked me if I'm from London! Isn't that amazing?

Everyone I've met has been very kind to me<sup>(1)</sup>, so I feel really at home here. The host family that I'm staying with are really nice<sup>(2)</sup>. They really look after me! There's always a hot meal waiting on the table when I get home in the evening and I'm getting used to English food!

All in all, I'm really glad that I decided to study in London. I miss my family, but we keep in touch by text message. I've become more independent since I've been away. I have to organise a lot of things on my own and make sure I have enough money, for example. I'm still learning how to do that, but I'm enjoying it.

Until tomorrow!

Heba



## Notes on some sentences:

ملاحظات على بعض الجمل

- ١- لاحظ استخدام الفعل في صيغة المفرد (has) مع (everyone) لكن إذا استخدمنا ضميرًا يكون ضمير جمع.
- ٢- لاحظ استخدام الفعل في صيغة الجمع (are) مع (family) لأن المقصود أفراد العائلة، لكننا نستخدم الفعل في صيغة المفرد إذا قصدنا العائلة ككل.

- In the war, every family has its own story to tell.

## Reading Text (2) (Workbook)



## Dalida's Diary

Monday

Dear diary

I'm very excited. My parents have bought our tickets to Greece, and tomorrow I'm visiting Judy in Athens. I'm going with Adam. He's very independent and knows what to do in new places. I always enjoy travelling with my older brother.



## Tuesday

We struggled to leave the house this morning. Adam's always forgetting things and nearly left his passport behind! But we arrived at the airport on time. I believe the flight was longer than usual because there was a storm, but all in all the journey was not too bad. Now I'm looking out of my window at the buildings of Athens. Isn't that amazing? I wish I could see Judy today, but we arrived very late. We're seeing her tomorrow.

## Wednesday

You won't believe what happened to me! I've been to the Parthenon! I think it is one of the oldest buildings in the world! Judy took us there this afternoon. Judy loves Athens now and showed us some amazing places, **but I'm too tired to write more now<sup>(1)</sup>**. Until tomorrow!



### Notes on some sentences:

#### ملاحظات على بعض الجمل

١- تستخدم (too ... to) بمعنى ((جداً لدرجة أن لا)) ويتبعها فعل في صيغة المصدر.



Scan & listen



**Teen girl:** Hello everyone. In this presentation, I'm going to talk about the pros and cons of working abroad.

When you first think about working abroad it sounds very exciting.

But there are a few disadvantages of working abroad as well as advantages. Let's start with the advantages first.

I believe that the best thing about working abroad is probably that you can learn a lot about another country's culture. Imagine trying new food every day and learning about how people from another culture celebrate.

Another good reason for working abroad is that it helps you to become more independent. Perhaps you feel that you're independent at home, but when you're living far away from home, you really have to be.

Finally, I think a further argument for working abroad is that you can learn useful skills, especially language skills and probably also communication skills. These skills can help you to get a good job when you come back home.

However, there are clearly disadvantages to working abroad as well.

One serious disadvantage is that you will probably be a long way from home and miss your family.

And let's not forget that you may not like the country or city that you move to if it's different to your home.

Unfortunately, it's sometimes difficult to make friends when you're living abroad too and you might wish you could just go back home and spend time with your old friends.

### Listening Text (2) (Workbook)



Scan & listen



**Judy:** Hi Dalida, I imagine you're thinking that I have forgotten you! Don't worry, I haven't! I've just been really busy in my new job<sup>(1)</sup> here in Greece. Sorry I haven't phoned you before!

As you probably know, I'm helping here in a language school. It's the first time I've worked abroad. It's fun sharing a flat with two other women, but I'm not used to cooking, cleaning and shopping every week for myself! I suppose I'm becoming more independent though.

Greece is very beautiful and I believe that the weather is quite like Cairo but not so hot! I enjoy hearing Greek music, and most of the food tastes really good!<sup>(2)</sup> Some things are different, though. It is more expensive here, and I don't like the prices of things in the shops!

I'm trying to learn Greek, but it is not easy. When I say something in Greek to people in the shops, they usually answer me in English!

So, I am having a great time, but of course, I miss my friends, especially you.

Call me back some time, or I'll call again later. Bye!



### Notes on some sentences:

ملاحظات على بعض الجمل

٢/١- لاحظ استخدام (really) قبل الصفات للتأكيد عليها بمعنى (جداً).

## Notes

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

<b>flight</b>	رحلة جوية	The air hostess helped me to enjoy my <b>flight</b> to London.
<b>voyage</b>	رحلة بحرية	The explorer's <b>voyage</b> on the ocean was amazing.
<b>trip</b>	رحلة قصيرة (لغرض معين)	My father went on a <b>business trip</b> to China to buy new machines.
<b>journey</b>	رحلة طويلة (غالبًا برية)	Although the train <b>journey</b> to Aswan was tiring, we enjoyed the sights.
<b>picnic</b>	نزهة خلوية	City people usually enjoy <b>picnics</b> to the countryside.

<b>share</b>	يشارك أو يتقاسم شيئًا يمكن تقاسمه بين اثنين أو أكثر	We won the lottery and <b>shared</b> the prize money.
<b>divide</b>	يقسم الناس أو الأشياء إلى أجزاء	- We <b>divided</b> the food <b>into</b> two equal parts. - After his death, his property was <b>divided</b> among his children.
<b>part</b>	يُفَرِّق / يُقَسِّم	The crowd <b>parted</b> to let the happy couple go through. (= separated itself into two parts)

<b>miss</b>	١- يفوته (شيء) ٢- يفقد	- He <b>missed</b> 20 games after breaking a bone in his wrist. - John will be sorely <b>missed</b> by his family and friends.
<b>lose</b>	يفقد / يخسر	- Hundreds of people <b>lost</b> their homes in the floods. - Our local basketball team played so badly that they deserved to <b>lose</b> .

**weather**

الطقس (حالة الجو في وقت حالي أو محدد)

What was the **weather** like on your vacation?**climate**

المناخ (حالة الجو بشكل عام)

Egypt is known for its mild **climate** all the year round.**the outlook**

الأفق (توقع حالة الطقس في خلال الأيام القليلة القادمة)

The **outlook** for the weekend is for continued sunny weather.**diary**

يوميات / مذكرات

Mary kept a **diary** while she was travelling in Europe.**dairy**

ألبان / منتجات الألبان

You'll find yogurt in the **dairy** section of the grocery store.**Vocabulary Checkpoint 3****Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. If your credit card is ..... or stolen, you must inform your bank immediately.  
☐ a) missed      ☐ b) gained      ☐ c) lost      ☐ d) issued
2. The plane was badly damaged during the ..... from Japan to America.  
☐ a) voyage      ☐ b) flight      ☐ c) picnic      ☐ d) expedition
3. It was a fine ..... yesterday, so we decided to go for a picnic.  
☐ a) weather      ☐ b) climate      ☐ c) outlook      ☐ d) condition
4. Salma ..... three days of school when she was sick last month.  
☐ a) gave      ☐ b) lost      ☐ c) missed      ☐ d) shared
5. The conference is a good place to ..... information and exchange ideas.  
☐ a) swear      ☐ b) divide      ☐ c) share      ☐ d) part
6. Every morning, mother ..... the curtains to let the sunlight come into the rooms.  
☐ a) shakes      ☐ b) divides      ☐ c) shares      ☐ d) parts
7. When he retired, the navy leader wrote a book about his many ..... and battles at sea.  
☐ a) voyages      ☐ b) flights      ☐ c) picnics      ☐ d) surveys
8. The world must reduce the gas emissions ..... that cause ..... change.  
☐ a) weather      ☐ b) climate      ☐ c) outlook      ☐ d) wind



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

**Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook**

1. At the meeting, the sales manager gave a/an ..... showing that they are making good profits.  
a) appearance    b) revolution    c) presentation    d) dev at on
2. I ..... that all the tickets of the new film have been sold now.  
a) dislike    b) suppose    c) permit    d) reply
3. My teacher says that I can find all the books I need for my research in the ..... library in the neighbourhood.  
a) general    b) private    c) local    d) whole
4. The science reference is ..... into five parts, each one dealing with a different theory.  
a) imagined    b) celebrated    c) wasted    d) organ'sed
5. The new coach of the team speaks English with a French ..... as he is from western Switzerland.  
a) accent    b) dialogue    c) conversation    d) presentation
6. The last document ..... all the previous reports about the technical problems in the office.  
a) damages    b) summarises    c) realises    d) puzzles
7. Most Egyptians in America speak Arabic at home so that the kids don't lose touch with their language and .....  
a) culture    b) economy    c) paraphrasing    d) phrase
8. The last ..... the soldier made in his diary was on October 10<sup>th</sup>, the day before his death.  
a) enter    b) entry    c) culture    d) skill
9. I sent a text ..... to my friend as his mobile wasn't available and I couldn't talk to him.  
a) massage    b) passage    c) message    d) messenger
10. Doctors say that if you eat three good ..... a day, you're less likely to snack on biscuits and crisps.  
a) mails    b) recipes    c) sandwiches    d) meals
11. The manager ..... that he would be out of the office the following day for a meeting.  
a) reminded    b) mentioned    c) recommended    d) told
12. Hackers may call a company employee and reach their voice .....  
a) mail    b) note    c) passage    d) device
13. Twenty people were killed when a violent ..... struck the American Coast.  
a) air    b) draught    c) breeze    d) storm
14. Stormy ..... prevented any play in today's tennis Wimbledon matches.  
a) climate    b) weather    c) atmosphere    d) warm ng

15. A poor grain harvest can lead to higher food .... in many parts of the world.  
☐ a) products      ☐ b) prices      ☐ c) qualities      ☐ d) values

**Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms**

16. The scientist mentioned his wife's name in his letter. The verb "mention" is the opposite of the verb ".....".  
☐ a) ignore      ☐ b) name      ☐ c) honour      ☐ d) uncover
17. Employees need to learn how to organise their work. The adjective of the verb "organise" is ".....".  
☐ a) organises      ☐ b) organisation      ☐ c) organiser      ☐ d) organised
18. The two sisters are so similar ..... each other that it's difficult to tell one from the other.  
☐ a) to      ☐ b) in      ☐ c) at      ☐ d) of
19. The family gathered to celebrate Christmas. The antonym of the word "celebrate" is ".....".  
☐ a) commemorate      ☐ b) honour      ☐ c) overlook      ☐ d) derive
20. .... the beginning of the film, I expected that it would be interesting.  
☐ a) From      ☐ b) In      ☐ c) Through      ☐ d) By
21. I believe that most students can ..... better if they are given much support.  
☐ a) ignore      ☐ b) devise      ☐ c) make      ☐ d) get
22. Our grandmother always boasts that she makes the most ..... cakes in the village.  
☐ a) amaze      ☐ b) amazing      ☐ c) amazed      ☐ d) amazement
23. There are only three ..... a day to New York Airport from Cairo.  
☐ a) flights      ☐ b) voyages      ☐ c) picnics      ☐ d) fights
24. Amira ..... the start of the play because she was stuck in the traffic jam.  
☐ a) devised      ☐ b) followed      ☐ c) lost      ☐ d) missed

**Longman and Previous Exams**

25. The musician's performance was really amazing. "Amazing" is a synonym for ".....". Longman  
☐ a) difficult      ☐ b) awesome      ☐ c) ordinary      ☐ d) boring
26. I don't want you to expand the main idea; I just want you to ..... the main points. Longman  
☐ a) stop      ☐ b) refuse      ☐ c) summarise      ☐ d) clarify
27. The manager has made a/an ..... to decrease the number of workers to face the financial problems the company faces. Longman  
☐ a) repetition      ☐ b) decision      ☐ c) oppression      ☐ d) commission
28. It's easy to understand "the Alexandrian .....". Longman  
☐ a) message      ☐ b) text      ☐ c) accent      ☐ d) harbour
29. He promised he would ..... in touch with us while he was away. Longman  
☐ a) attach      ☐ b) co-operate      ☐ c) mix      ☐ d) keep

## Present Continuous and Present Simple

المضارع المستمر والمضارع البسيط

وللوصول للفهم الحقيقي لأزمنة المضارع يجب التفرقة بين زمنى المضارع البسيط والمضارع المستمر لأن الأفعال غير الحركية لا تأتي فى المضارع لمستمروأتى فى المضارع البسيط.

### Present Continuous

Now الآن

It's **raining** at the moment.

I'm **watching** this programme.

Look! This man **is taking** a photo of you.

### Present Simple

Always دائماً

It **always rains** in winter.

I **watch** television most weekends.

He **takes** lots of photos. He's a photographer.

Temporary مؤقت

I'm **working** at a sports shop for six weeks.

They **are living** in a small flat these days.

Permanent دائم

I **work** at a sports shop. It's permanent.

They **live** in a very nice flat.

## Stative verbs

أفعال الثبات/الحالة

- Most stative verbs are not usually used in the present continuous even when they describe a situation that is happening now:

١- لا تُستخدم معظم أفعال الحالة عادة فى المضارع المستمر حتى عندما تصف موقفًا يحدث الآن:

He **wants** fish for dinner. He **seems** to be tired now.

He **needs** to buy a large flat.

- ويمكن تقسيم أفعال الحالة حسب نوعها كالآتى:

Perception and senses الإدراك والإحساس	feel	يشعر به see	observe	يرى	يلاحظ
	hear	يسمع smell	perceive	يشم	يدرك
	notice	يلاحظ taste		يتذوق	



<b>Emotions</b> العواطف	like	يحب	admire	يعجب به	detest	يهمت
	love	يحب	adore	يعشق	envy	يحسد
	hate	يكره	appreciate	يقدر	fear	يخف
	dislike	يكره	care	يهتم	trust	يثق في
	regret	يندم	respect	يحترم	pity	يشفق
	agree	يوافق	expect	يتوقع	suppose	يفترض
	disagree	يعترض	guess	يخمن	suspect	يشك
	believe	يعتقد	hesitate	يتردد	think	يعتقد
<b>Mental states</b> الحالات العقلية	disbelieve	لا يصدق	imagine	يتخيل	understand	يفهم
	know	يعرف	mean	يعنى	wonder	يتساءل
	mind	يمانع	presume	يفترض	see	يرى
	find	يجد	realise	يدرك	doubt	يشك
	consider	يعتبر	recognise	يتعرف على	forget	ينسى
<b>Appearance and value</b> المظهر والقيمة	estimate	يخمن / يقدر	remember	يتذكر		
	appear	يظهر	resemble	يشبه	represent	يرمز
	be	يكون	seem	يبدو	look	يبدو
	cost	يكلف	signify	يشير / يفيد	matter	يهم / يؤثر
	equal	يساوي	sound	يبدو	weigh	يزن
<b>Possessions</b> الملكيات	exist	يوجد				
	belong	يخص	have	يملك	possess	يملك
	contain	يحتوي على	own	يملك	include	يتضمن
<b>Wants and preferences</b> الإرادة والتفضيل	lack	ينقص				
	hope	يأمل	prefer	يفضل	wish	يتمنى
	need	يحتاج	want	يريد	desire	يرغب



- 2. Some verbs of feeling can be used in both the simple and continuous with no change in meaning:**

٢- يمكن استخدام بعض أفعال المشاعر في المضارع البسيط و المضارع المستمر دون تغيير في المعنى ومنها

:feel/ache/hurt/look

You **look/are looking** nice today.

My back hurts/is hurting again. I must go to the doctor.

Do you feel/Are you feeling OK today?

3. With verbs which describe a sense, we use the simple form or can/could + verb.

٣- مع الأفعال التي تصف الحواس يمكن استخدام الشكل البسيط أو **can/could + inf.**

I can smell the fertiliser. Are we in the countryside now?

I can hear someone screaming outside. What is happening?

Language **Chinese** 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mohab can't make a sound decision as he ..... of many things.

 a) is thinking

b) thinks

c) was thinking

d) thought

2. Why don't you wait for Ali in the living room? He ..... a shower.

☐ a) had had

**b) is having**

c) have

d) has

- 3. any other questions?**

a) Are you have

**b) Are you having**

c) Do you have

d) Were you having

4. Hoda's little sister ..... very helpful today. That's nice!

**a) is**

b) is been

c) is being

d) was been

5. Look! The girls are running to catch the bus. They have to to be in a hurry.

a) seemed

b) are seemed

c) are seemingly

d) seem



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- You can turn off the radio. I ..... to it.  
☐ a) 'm not listening                      b) 'm listening  
☐ c) listen                                      d) will listen
- I ..... for my keys. Do you know where they are?  
☐ a) look                      b) was looking                      c) 'm looked                      d) 'm looking
- The world ..... Things never stay the same.  
☐ a) change                      b) is changing                      c) is changed                      d) changed
- A: What ..... for a living? B: I'm an electrician.  
☐ a) did you do                      b) are you do ng  
☐ c) do you do                      d) will you do
- It takes me an hour to get to work. How long ..... you?  
☐ a) does it take                      b) is it taking                      c) it takes                      d) s it taken
- Sama can't do her shopping at the moment because it ..... heavily.  
☐ a) rains                      b) is raining                      c) will rain                      d) sn't raining
- This is the new camera I bought last week. I ..... a photo of you now.  
☐ a) take                      b) took                      c) 'm taking                      d) had taken
- Salah ..... as an engineer. It is his permanent job.  
☐ a) is working                      b) work                      c) had worked                      d) works
- My father ..... hard these days as he needs money for our school fees.  
☐ a) worked                      b) is working                      c) had worked                      d) works
- I ..... of going to London and visiting my old friends this month.  
☐ a) am thinking                      b) was think ng  
☐ c) am thought                      d) thinking
- Mona is really enjoying her holiday on the island. She ..... a really good time.  
☐ a) will have                      b) had                      c) is having                      d) has
- You aren't careful; you ..... the same mistake again.  
☐ a) won't make                      b) making  
☐ c) had made                      d) are always making
- My father ..... an apple now. He ..... an apple every day.  
☐ a) is eating/eats                      b) eats/is eating  
☐ c) eating/eats                      d) ate/is eating



## Longman and Previous Exams

21. The weather is very nice here in winter. The sun ..... to be shining on most days. [Longman]

- ☐ a) is seeming      b) seem      c) seems      d) had seemed

22. Hatem wants to travel to China, but he ..... enough Chinese at the moment. [Type Test]

- ☐ a) doesn't know      b) isn't knowing  
c) hadn't known      d) don't know

23. We are having lunch now. The verb "have" here is a verb showing ..... [Type Test]

- ☐ a) order      b) action      c) sense      d) command

24. I have already confirmed the reservation; I ..... to Rome tomorrow. [Longman]

- a) will fly      b) was flying      c) had flown      d) am flying

25. I haven't seen you for a long time. I ..... you so much. [Type Test]

- a) am missing      b) miss      c) had missed      d) going to miss

26. Ahmed doesn't hear us. He ..... deeply. [المشرفة ، مسئول]

- a) was thinking      b) thought      c) is thinking      d) thinks

27. I cannot understand why he ..... so selfish. He is not usually like that. [المشرفة ، مكالمة ، مكالمة]

- ☐ a) is      b) will be      c) can be      d) is being

28. I ..... in Hurghada for two weeks in August. [المشرفة ، مكالمة]

- ☐ a) am staying      b) have stayed  
c) staying      d) stay

29. Flowers ..... nice. I like to smell them very much. [المشرفة ، مكالمة]

- a) smells      b) are smelling  
c) is smelling      d) smell

30. Mona ..... the same mistakes. That's really annoying. [المشرفة ، مكالمة]

- ☐ a) is always made      b) is always making  
c) always make      d) always s making





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### Vocabulary

- Most dictionaries ..... both British and American spellings of words in the meantime.  
☐ a) consist      ☐ b) exclude      ☐ c) include      ☐ d) enclose
- Social media have become very important for ..... ideas with young people.  
☐ a) sharing      ☐ b) dividing      ☐ c) parting      ☐ d) insting
- In the Scout camp معسكر كشافة, students will learn basic ..... like reading a compass and setting up camp.  
☐ a) skulls      ☐ b) skills      ☐ c) roles      ☐ d) divisions
- The tour office's staff will do their best to ..... sure the tourists enjoy their visit.  
☐ a) do      ☐ b) take      ☐ c) make      ☐ d) lose
- Mr Magdy insists on ..... his grandson's birthday with a big party with his family and friends.  
☐ a) inventing      ☐ b) celebrating      ☐ c) discovering      ☐ d) mention ng
- The encyclopedia includes the names of all Nobel Prize winners. The antonym of the verb "include" is ".....".  
☐ a) exclude      ☐ b) involve      ☐ c) derive      ☐ d) re lieve
- The tourist had a foreign ..... although he can speak a little Arabic.  
☐ a) detection      ☐ b) culture      ☐ c) accent      ☐ d) intent'on
- On the 6<sup>th</sup> of October, ..... to the Military Museum is free celebrating the Victory Day.  
☐ a) enter      ☐ b) entry      ☐ c) ex't      ☐ d) existence
- The ..... recorder should help to determine why the plane suddenly crashed.  
☐ a) voyage      ☐ b) manual      ☐ c) flight      ☐ d) picnic
- I hung up the phone as I saw no point in continuing the ..... with the customer service clerk.  
☐ a) intention      ☐ b) acceptance      ☐ c) intonation      ☐ d) conversation
- Many people believe that it is wrong to try to impose يعرض a certain ..... on other countries.  
☐ a) culture      ☐ b) adventure      ☐ c) capture      ☐ d) texture
- My neighbour seems very proud of his son as he ..... his name in all his talks.  
☐ a) reminds      ☐ b) mentions      ☐ c) ignores      ☐ d) teaches
- I asked the teacher to ..... the most important points in the grammar lesson.  
☐ a) nationalise      ☐ b) provide      ☐ c) summarise      ☐ d) realise
- The new film I watched wasn't very funny, but all ..... all it was a good film.  
☐ a) at      ☐ b) for      ☐ c) about      ☐ d) in

15. Zein decided that he would travel to India. The synonym of the verb "decide" is ".....".

- a) determine      b) hesitate      c) ignore      d) condemn

### Language

16. I need my CD player if you ..... It at the moment.

- a) don't using      b) use      c) aren't using      d) don't use

17. I know Hala's flat, but I ..... her phone number.

- a) don't remember      b) remember  
c) am not remembering      d) remembering

18. Don't phone him now as he ..... lunch.

- a) was having      b) has had      c) has      d) is having

19. My friend ..... pleased. Something good must have happened.

- a) look      b) looks      c) will look      d) looking

20. A: ..... on the phone? B: No, he is doing his homework right now.

- a) Does Ramy talk      b) Has Ramy talked  
c) Is Ramy talking      d) Could Ramy talk

21. I ..... it's too late to apply for that job now.

- a) supposes      b) supposing      c) am supposing      d) suppose

22. I know that our team are practising hard these days. They ..... to win the cup.

- a) wanting      b) want      c) are want ng      d) wanted

23. Hany is never satisfied. He .....

- a) 's always complaining      b) complain  
c) complaining      d) is complain

24. Look! That man ..... to open the door of your car.

- a) tries      b) is trying      c) was trying      d) trying

25. A: Why are you looking at the sky? B: It ..... as if it's going to rain.

- a) was ooking      b) looking      c) looked      d) looks

26. Hany always ..... jeans, but today he is wearing a suit.

- a) is wearing      b) had worn      c) wears      d) wear ng

27. Waleed ..... his glasses, so he can't read the small words in the paper.

- a) wears      b) isn't wearing      c) doesn't wear      d) is wearing

28. Which one of the following is correctly structured?

- a) They hate to get to school late.      b) Is she liking to go shopping?  
c) I'm hating to drink coffee.      d) Nader works at a hotel for a week.

29. A: What is Ahmed doing there? B: He .....

- a) is fnding the doctor's clinic      b) finds the doctor's cl'n.c  
c) looks for the doctor's clinic      d) looks ll and is trying to find a doctor

30. He usually ..... coffee, but today he ..... tea.

- a) drank / is drinking      b) drunk / drinks  
c) drinks / 's drinking      d) drinks / was drinking



## Writing Skill

للمريد من الشرح والتدريبات  
يرجى الرجوع للملحق المهارة.

## A DIARY ENTRY تدوينة مذكرات

Imagine that you are going to visit or have just visited a place for the first time.  
Write a diary entry for three days.

## Writing tips

Write about the day before you go to the place.

Describe the day you arrive at the place.

Write about the next day.

## Thursday

I'm very excited to start our holiday in France. My father has just bought the ticket to Paris. I have already packed my bag before that. I'm travelling with my parents and my brother. This is my first trip abroad and I have been looking for this trip for a long time.

## Friday

We arrived in Paris late at night. The hotel where we are staying is very nice. Although it isn't a five-star hotel, the rooms are nice and the staff are all friendly. Tomorrow, we are starting our tour. We are going to the Eiffel Tower. I can't wait until tomorrow.

## Saturday

We visited the Eiffel Tower this morning. We climbed the tower and enjoyed the view of Paris from the top. Isn't that amazing? The lunch we had at the restaurant at the tower was marvellous. We took a lot of photos there.



## (A) Reading Comprehension

قاموس بالكمالات الجديدة في  
قطع الشفم والتراجم نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Moving to a different country or even a different continent is something that is becoming increasingly common, especially amongst younger generations. This may be for study, work or just for leisure. However, such a big move is usually not all roses, so we put together a list of the pros and cons of living abroad.

Moving to a foreign country is full of pros and cons. When moving to a foreign country, you will likely be inserted in a different culture. This can be seen in several ways: the architecture of the buildings, the way that people interact with each other or even social gatherings. Even though in the beginning it may seem difficult to make new friends, this is one of the greatest advantages of living abroad. Moving to a different country is the perfect opportunity to open up your mind and talk to people who have different ideas and life stories.

Moreover, it is easy to fall into a routine while being at home. Study, work, groceries, workout. The excitement of trying new things and exploring new places might be saved just for vacations or holidays.

On the other hand, people face a lot of challenges while living abroad. Some people might have a culture shock when being immersed in a completely different country. It takes some time to get used to such a new environment. Finding a new apartment, negotiating a rental agreement, setting up a bank account and arranging health insurance are some of the bureaucracy steps everyone needs to go through when moving abroad. It might be stressful, but these are usually done only once.

## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Moving to other countries has become . . . . .

- ☐ a) more difficult now                      ☐ b) something worse than before  
☐ c) more common than before           ☐ d) something necessary for all

2. When a person moves to another country, he . . . . .

- ☐ a) will live happily                      ☐ b) finds everything beautiful and easy  
☐ c) finds all people loving and friendly   ☐ d) may face hardships and hard days

3. Living abroad helps you to . . . . .

- ☐ a) be rich and wealthy                   ☐ b) be open-minded  
☐ c) avoid bad people                      ☐ d) be narrow-minded



► 4. What does "culture shock" mean?

- a) Things are different from what the person used to.
- b) Everything is bad.
- c) No one is friendly to the person.
- d) Life is unbearable.

5. Finding a new apartment is one of the ..... to living abroad.

- a) disadvantages      b) advantages      c) pros      d) benefits

6. The synonym of the word "stressful" is ".....".

- ☐ a) relaxed      b) peaceful      c) anxious      d) stress-free

7. People leave their countries for other countries for .....

- ☐ a) study      b) leisure      c) work      d) all of the previous

8. The best title for the passage is ".....".

- a) The disadvantages of living abroad      b) The pros and cons of living abroad
- c) How to travel abroad      d) The advantages of living abroad

## (B) Translation

### 2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

► 1. Travelling abroad has many benefits for young people. It can help them experience a different lifestyle, modern methods of education and explore the world around them.

- a) للسفر للخارج بعض الفوائد للشباب؛ فيمكن أن يساعدهم على التعرف على ثقافات مختلفة وطرق حديثة للتعليم واستكشاف العالم من حولهم.
- b) للسفر للخارج الكثير من الفوائد للشباب؛ فيمكن أن يساعدهم على تجربة نمط حياة مختلف وطرق حديثة للتعليم واستكشاف العالم من حولهم.
- c) للسفر للخارج الكثير من الفوائد للمراهقين؛ فيمكن أن يساعدهم على تجربة نمط حياة مناسب وطرق حديثة للتعليم واستكشاف العالم من حولهم.
- d) للسفر للداخل الكثير من الفوائد للشباب؛ فيمكن أن يساعدهم على تجربة نمط حياة مختلف وطرق تقليدية للتعليم واستكشاف العالم من حولهم.

2. We all owe much to scientists who are working hard to discover new techniques to cure fatal diseases. This will lead to helping people suffer less.

- a) كنا ندين بالكثير للعلماء الذين يعملون بصعوبة لاكتشاف أساليب جديدة لمعالجة الأمراض المميتة وهذا سوف يؤدي إلى تأقلم الناس مع تقليل المعاناة.
- b) كنا ندين بالكثير للعلماء الذين يعملون بجد لتطوير أساليب جديدة لمعالجة الأمراض المميتة وهذا سوف يؤدي إلى مساعدة الناس على تقليل المتاعب.
- c) كنا ندين بالكثير للعلماء الذين يعملون بجد لاكتشاف أساليب جديدة لمعالجة الأمراض المميتة وهذا سوف يؤدي إلى مساعدة الناس على تقليل المعاناة.
- d) كلنا ندين بالكثير للعلماء الذين يعملون بجد لاكتشاف أساليب جديدة لمعالجة الأمراض المميتة وهذا سوف يؤدي إلى مساعدة الأطباء ليعملوا على المعاناة.



3. While studying abroad is an excellent opportunity to learn a new language, you may at first have some problems with language and cultural barriers.

- (a) في حين أن الدراسة في الخارج فرصة ممتازة لتعلم لغة جديدة، فقد تواجه في البداية بعض المشاكل مع لحواجز اللغوية والثقافية.
- (b) في حين أن الدراسة في الخارج فرصة ممتازة لتعلم لغة أجنبية، فقد تواجه في البداية بعض المشاكل مع الحواجز اللغوية والبيئية.
- (c) بسبب أن الدراسة في الخارج فرصة ممتازة لتعلم لغة جديدة، فليس من الصعب أن تواجه بعض المشاكل مع الحواجز الفكرية والثقافية.
- (d) بالرغم من أن الدراسة في الخارج فرصة متاحة لتعلم لغة جديدة، فقد تتحاور في البداية بعض المشاكل مع الحواجز اللغوية والحضارية.

### (B) Choose the correct English translation:

4. في الماضي، كن العديد من الطلاب يختارون الجامعات الأجنبية لإكمال دراستهم في الجامعات الشهيرة. ومع ذلك، تم إنشاء جامعات حديثة لإتاحة نفس الفرص.

- a) In the past, many students chose European universities to complete their studies at famous universities. However, modern universities have been established to prevent the same opportunities.
- b) In the past, few students chose foreign universities to complete their studies at famous universities. However, national universities have been established to provide the same opportunities.
- c) In the past, many students chose foreign universities to complete their tasks at famous universities. However, modern universities have been established to provide the same works.
- d) In the past, many students chose foreign universities to complete their studies at famous universities. However, modern universities have been established to provide the same opportunities.

5. يجب أن نشجع الشباب على الالتحاق بالنادي الرياضية التي تساهم في توجيههم للطريق الصواب وتحميهم من مخاطر التطرف والإرهاب.

- a) We should encourage young people to join sports clubs which contribute to guiding them to the right path and protect them from the dangers of extremism and terrorism.
- b) We should encourage all people to join sports clubs which contribute to guiding them to the right path and protect them from the dangers of tourism and terrorism.
- c) We should discourage young people from joining sports clubs which don't guide them to the right path and protect them from the risks of extremism and terrorism.
- d) We should encourage young people to join sports clubs which contribute to guide them to the right path and protect them from the dangers of extremism and tourism.

6. تعمل الحكومة على تطوير الرعاية الصحية للمواطنين؛ لأن ذلك سيؤدي إلى زيادة الإنتاج وتنمية الاقتصاد لكن ذلك قد يستغرق سنوات من أجل إصلاح النظم الصحية.

- a) The government is working on developing healthcare for citizens because this will lead to doubling production and developing economy. However, this may take years to inform healthcare systems
- b) The government is working on developing healthcare for young people because this will lead to increasing production and developing economy. However, this would take years to reform healthcare systems.
- c) The government is working on producing healthcare for citizens because this will lead to increasing production and developing economy. However, this may take years to reform healthcare styles.
- d) The government is working on developing healthcare for citizens because this will lead to increasing production and developing economy. But, this may take years to reform healthcare systems

## (c) Writing

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Having a lot of money does not always bring happiness."

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.

I used the right structure.

I used a topic sentence

I wrote the conclusion.

I used the right punctuation.



### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

A journalist is interviewing a hotel manager about her work.

**Journalist:** What is the best thing about working at the hotel?

**Manager :** (1).....

**Journalist:** Yes, it must be interesting meeting people from all around the world.  
Why do you think tourists like Egypt?

**Manager :** (2).....

**Journalist:** Yes, the weather is very good. (3)..... ?

**Manager :** We opened a new restaurant because tourists don't want to walk into town.

**Journalist:** It is said that the city wants to build a high tower. near the beach  
(4)..... ?

**Manager :** I disagree with the plan.

**Journalist:** Thank you for your time.

### A Glimpse of Revelation II

#### 2 (A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why is the message of Al-Azhar considered universal?
2. What happened to Al Al-Azhar Mosque after Saladin started to rule Egypt?

#### (B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. Al-Azhar Mosque has been established by the ..... Caliph Al-Muizz Li-Din Allah.

a) Turkish      b) Abassi      c) Umayyad      d) Fatimid

4. Al-Azhar and its scholars have a ..... role in the Egyptian life.

a) minor      b) distinguished      c) vicious      d) unaccepted

### King Lear

#### 3 (A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why couldn't Cornwall kill Gloucester?
2. What did Gloucester realise when Regan told him what Edmund had done?

#### (B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. Traitors are people who are ready to ..... their country for money.

a) raise      b) serve      c) trust      d) betray

4. Cornwall punished Gloucester by .....

a) putting him in prison      b) making him blind  
c) sending him away      d) killing him

#### 4 (A) Translate into Arabic:

- Movies are a reflection of society and their values which are changeable.

#### (B) Translate into English:

- منذ إنشائه لعب الأزهر دوراً رئيسياً في نشر رسالة الإسلام في مصر والعالم.





12. Which one of the following is grammatically correct?

- ☐ a) They are naving a nice house.
- ☐ b) She usually isn't having a good time shopping.
- ☐ c) People like Ahmed because he is being polite.
- ☐ d) We don't have a lot of fun going to the dentist.

13. He can't come tomorrow as he ..... a meeting with a foreign delegation at his office.

- ☐ a) has
- ☐ b) had to have
- ☐ c) is naving
- ☐ d) always has

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

(8M)

Our culture is the system we use to build our identity. All living creatures are part of a culture. Even animals have a culture. So what is culture? It's the way we behave in a group. It begins with each individual family. Within our families, we do things to build relationships with each other. This can include routines for doing things. It also includes traditions. Traditions are activities that are repeated on a regular basis. Culture is not limited to individual family groups. The real strength of culture is in larger community groups. These larger groups are called societies.

Every society makes rules for itself. It decides how people should act in different situations. Some of these rules are written down. Some are just things that are automatically expected of all members of that society. Often, cultures can be identified by what people believe. Cultures are also known by what they choose to include in their art. Sometimes a society forms around people who speak the same language.

Cultures may also be known for their customs, including the foods they make and the things they do. Our cultures help us understand who we are and what we believe. There are very strong emotions connecting us to our own society. Two different cultures may disagree on beliefs, especially if they both feel strongly about them. When that happens, war is a common result. People are learning better ways to communicate with each other. The more we learn, the more we appreciate the differences in cultures.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

14. Cultural rules made by a society are .....

- ☐ a) all written down
- ☐ b) divided between written and expected
- ☐ c) not expected
- ☐ d) made by old people

► 15. The underlined pronoun 'them' refers to .....

- a) cultures      b) rules      c) beliefs      d) feelings

16. According to the passage, culture can be identified by .....

- ☐ a) what people believe      b) what people do  
c) what people draw      d) what people believe and do

17. What role does culture play inside a family?

- ☐ a) It helps build relationships.  
b) It keeps the traditions.  
c) It defends people's language.  
d) It develops art.

18. According to the passage, culture leads to ..... with our society.

- a) war      b) strong emotions  
c) habits      d) fighting

19. Suggest a suitable title for the passage.

- a) The culture in our community  
b) Culture and life  
c) Culture and language  
d) Culture and customs

20. The more we learn, the more we appreciate the differences in cultures.

The word "appreciate" here means .....

- a) realise      b) we come  
c) go up in price      d) be grateful for

21. .... can have cultures.

- a) Humans only      b) Animals only  
c) Societies only      d) All creatures

► 22. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

(4M)

Egypt is famous for its ancient monuments that attract millions of tourists.

Thus, we should make good use of them to develop this important industry.

- a) تشتهر مصر بآثارها القديمة التي تجذب آلاف السياح. وبالتالي، يجب أن نستغلها بشكل دقيق لتطوير هذه الصناعة المهمة.  
b) تشتهر مصر بآثارها الحديثة التي تجذب ملايين السياح وبالتالي، يجب أن نستغلها بشكل جيد لتطوير هذه الآثار المهمة.  
c) تشتهر مصر بآثارها القديمة التي تجذب ملايين السياح وبالتالي، يجب أن نستغلها بشكل جيد لتطوير هذه الصناعة المهمة.  
d) تشتهر مصر بمبانيها الحديثة التي تجذب آلاف السياح. وبالتالي، يجب أن نروج لها بشكل جيد لتطوير هذه الصناعة المهمة.



### ► 23. Choose the correct English translation:

يعرض بعض الشباب حياتهم للخطر بالهجرة غير الشرعية للوصول إلى بعض الدول الأوروبية من أجل البحث عن حياة أفضل ومع ذلك يفقد البعض منهم حياتهم قبل الوصول لهدفهم.

- a) Some young people expose their lives to danger by illegal immigration to reach some European countries in order to look for a better life. However, some of them lose their lives before reaching their goal.
- b) Some young people expose their lives to danger by legal immigration to reach some European countries in order to look for a better life. However, some of them lose their jobs before reaching their goal.
- c) Some young people expose their families to danger by illegal immigration to reach some European villages in order to look for a better life. However, some of them lose their lives before reaching their goal.
- d) Some young people expose their lives to danger by illegal immigration to reach some European countries in order to look for a healthier life. However, some of them lose their lives before reaching the other country.

### ► 24. Answer the following questions: (The play)

(1.5M)

1. Edmund left so as not to see his father being punished by Cornwall. What does this show about him?
2. If you were Gloucester, would you help the King? Why?
3. Do you think that Cornwall was right to trust Edmund after betraying his own father? Why?

### ► 25. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following: (3.5M)

"The way advertisements can affect people"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

المزيد من التحريبات للطلبة الغافلين  
الرجوع بنهاية الكتاب ص 343



Assess your  
progress



< 50%

50 : 64%

Practise more

65 : 84%

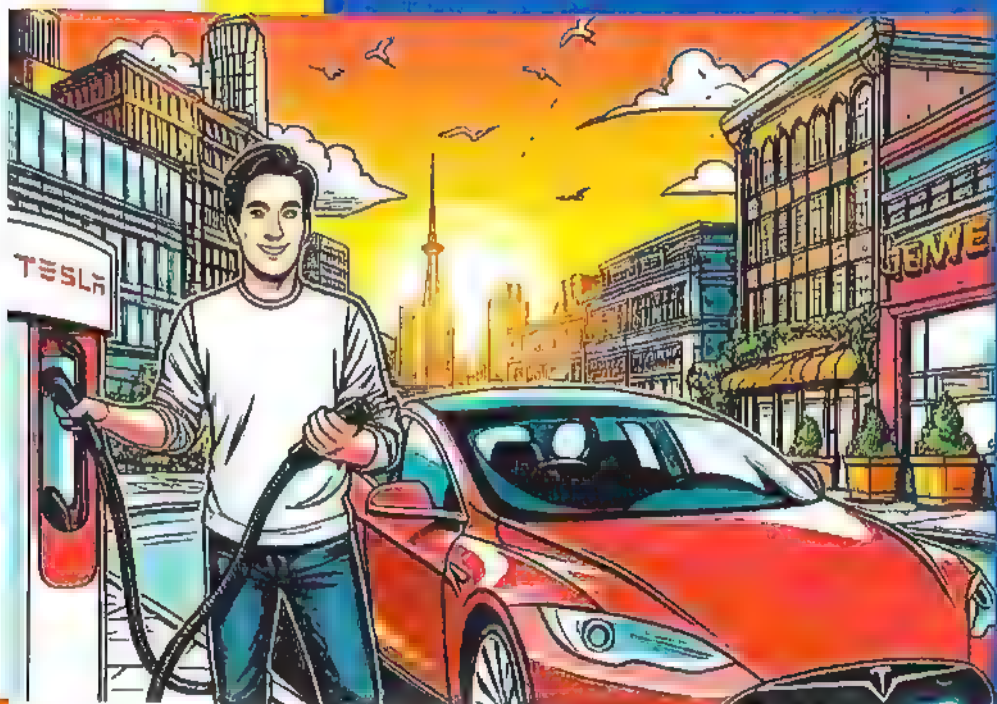
85 : 100%

Well done



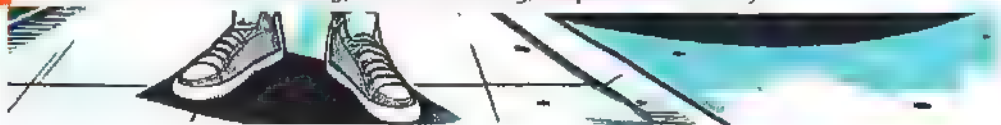
# Unit 8

## High-tech transport



### Objectives

- Reading** : A notice about the expansion of the Calro metro network
- Writing** : A speech for or against an argument; An email to the local government about public transport
- Listening** : A talk show debate about the future of transport
- Speaking** : A discussion about the advantages and disadvantages of using public transport; Asking and answering questions about a schedule
- Language** : Future perfect
- Life Skills** : Critical thinking; Problem solving; Respect for diversity





Watch a video

## A

## Vocabulary

## Key Vocabulary

## المفردات الرئيسية

expansion (n)	مد / تمديد	high-tech (adj)	ذوتكنولوجيا عالية	public (adj)	عام
facilities (n)	إمكانات / تسهيلات / مرافق	network (n)	شبكة	transport (n)	نقل / مواصلات

## Vocabulary on Reading &amp; Listening Texts

## مفردات لصوص القراءة والاستماع

add (v) (ed)	يضيف	gas (n)	غاز	precise (adj)	دقيق / محدد
addition (n)	إضافة	gate (n)	بوابة	private (adj)	خاص
affordable (adj)	يمكن تحمل نفقاته	guess (v) (ed)	يخمن	production (n)	إنتاج
authority (n)	سلطة / هيئة	importance (n)	أهمية	protect (v) (ed)	يحمي / يقي من
available (adj)	متوفر	improve (v) (d)	يحسن / يتحسن	replace (v) (d)	يستبدل
central (adj)	مركزي / متوسط	increase (v) (d) (n)	يزيد / زيادة	schedule (n)	جدول
check in (v) (ed)	يقوم بمراجعة أوراق السفر	instead (adv)	بدلاً من ذلك	security controls	إجراءات تحكم أمنية
complete (adj) (v) (d)	كامل / يكمل	length (n)	طول / مدة	size (n)	حجم / مقياس
connect (v) (ed)	يربط / يصل	line (n)	خط	take place (v)	يحدث / يتم
damage (v) (d)	يتلف	metro (n)	مترو	total (adj)	كلى / إجمالي
driverless (adj)	بلا سائق	notice (n)	ملاحظة / إشعار	tram (n)	ترام (وسيلة مواصلات)
electric (adj)	كهربى	organisation (n)	منظمة	underground (adj) (adv) (n)	تحت الأرض / مترو الأنفاق
environmentally (adv)	بيئيًا	passenger (n)	راكب / مسافر		
equipment (n)	معدات	persuade (v) (d)	يقنع	vehicle (n)	مركبة
expect (v) (ed)	يتوقع	polluting (adj)	مبوث		

## Workbook Vocabulary

## مفردات كتاب التدريبات

area (n)	منطقة / مساحة	emphasise (v) (d)	يؤكد على	monorail (n)	قطار كهربائي معنق
bridge (n)	جسر / كوبري	exactly (adv)	بالضبط	network (n)	شبكة
close (adj)	قريب	first-aid (n)	إسعافات أولية	New Administrative City	العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة
coast (n)	ساحل	form (n)	شكل	railway (n)	سكك حديدية
construction (n)	إنشاء / تشييد	Greater Cairo (n)	القاهرة الكبرى	series (n)	سلسلة / مسلسل (تلفزيوني)
create (v) (d)	يخلق / ينتج	interrupt (v) (ed)	يقاطع / يعترض	suburb (n)	ضاحية
disagreement (n)	عدم اتفاق / اعتراض	introduce (v) (d)	يقدم	tunnel (n)	نفق
doubt (n) (v) (ed)	شك / يشك	involve (v) (d)	يتضمن		

## Vocabulary

1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The government has announced an ambitious programme to modernise the railway ..... all over Egypt.  
☐ a) device      ☐ b) network      ☐ c) discipline      ☐ d) authority
- I believe that travelling by train is still one of the safest methods of .....  
☐ a) security      ☐ b) computer      ☐ c) transport      ☐ d) education
- According to the rules, passengers must ..... in one hour before the flight leaves.  
☐ a) get      ☐ b) look      ☐ c) apply      ☐ d) check
- We need to raise taxes to pay for better ..... healthcare.  
☐ a) public      ☐ b) private      ☐ c) accepted      ☐ d) awful
- We are seeing uncontrolled urban ..... in many African cities.  
☐ a) expectation      ☐ b) application      ☐ c) expansion      ☐ d) pressure
- The internet and all sorts of ..... gadgets are changing the way children learn.  
☐ a) outdated      ☐ b) degraded      ☐ c) old-fashioned      ☐ d) high-tech
- The marketing team will need to ..... communication with the suppliers.  
☐ a) prove      ☐ b) involve      ☐ c) persuade      ☐ d) improve
- She concluded her ..... by thanking the audience.  
☐ a) column      ☐ b) speech      ☐ c) schedule      ☐ d) seminar
- Egypt has a/an ..... population of more than 100 million people.  
☐ a) vague      ☐ b) avoidable      ☐ c) available      ☐ d) total
- A ..... is a passage that has been dug under the ground for cars, trains or people to go through.  
☐ a) funnel      ☐ b) tunnel      ☐ c) pipe      ☐ d) road

## Expressions, Phrases &amp; Prepositions

## التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

along the coast	عبر الساحل	forms of transport	وسائل المواصلات	over the next years	خلال السنوات القادمة
around the world	حول العالم	make notes	يدون ملاحظات	take a test	يمتحن
agree with	يتفق مع	go down	ينخفض	plan for	يخطط لـ
bad for	سيئ لـ	importance of	أهمية لـ	travel around	ينقل
close to	قريب من	increase in	زيادة في	work for	يعمل لدى
give up	يقلع عن	part of	جزء من		

## Derivatives

## المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
connect	يربط / يصل	connection	صلة / ارتباط	connected	متصل
construct	ينشئ / يشيّد	construction	إنشاء / تشييد	constructive	بُناء / تشييدي
create	يخلق / ينتج	creation creator	إبداع / خلق مبدع	creative	مبدع
emphasise	يؤكد على	emphasis	تأكيد	emphatic	مؤكد
expand	يعد / يوسع	expansion	مد / تمديد / توسيع	expandable	قابل للتوسع
interrupt	يقاطع / يعترض	interruption	مقاطعة / اعتراض	interrupted	مقاطع
introduce	يقدم	introduction	مقدمة	introductory	تقديمي
persuade	يقنع	persuasion	إقناع	persuasive	مقنع / إقناعي
produce	ينتج	production product producer	إنتاج منتج منتج / القائم على الإنتاج	productive	منتج
protect	يحمي / يقي من	protection	حماية / وقاية	protective	واقٍ

## Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

In the past, all houses were **constructed** of local materials. (v)Work has begun on the **construction** of the new airport. (n)Our manager welcomes any **constructive** suggestions. (adj)



## Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المتضاد
central	مركزي/متوسط	main/basic		additional/extra	إضافي
construction	إنشاء/تشديد	development/building		disarrangement/destruction	عدم ترتيب/تدمير
emphasise	يؤكد على	stress/assert		deny/ignore	ينكر/يتجاهل
expansion	توسيع/مد	growth/enlargement		decrease/reduction	تقليل/خفض
interrupt	يقاطع/يعترض	bother/disturb		assist/aid	يساعد
involve	يتضمن	include/contain		exclude/abandon	يستبعد
persuade	يقنع	convince/urge		discourage/prevent	يثبط (لا يشجع)
precise	دقيق/محدد	exact/accurate		imprecise/indefinite	غير دقيق/غير محدد
protect	يحمي/يقي من	keep/save		destroy/endanger	يدمر/يعرض للخطر
total	كلي/إجمالي	complete/whole		partial/incomplete	جزائي

## Vocabulary

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The manager's secretary ..... notes during our meeting for a report about the meeting.  
☐ a) ran                      b) did                      c) made                      d) invented
- I briefly introduced him to my parents. The noun of the verb "introduce" is .....  
☐ a) introduce              b) introduction              c) ntroductory              d) introduced
- The metro lines made it easier to travel ..... Greater Cairo and the new suburbs.  
☐ a) on                      b) at                      c) away                      d) around
- New laws have been passed to protect people's privacy online. The synonym of the verb "protect" is ".....".  
☐ a) keep                      b) destroy                      c) endanger                      d) construct
- In many countries, a lot of concrete barriers حواجز were built ..... the coast to protect the beaches from floods.  
☐ a) in                      b) along                      c) up                      d) down
- Karma had to ..... a test in English and German before she got the job.  
☐ a) give                      b) make                      c) devise                      d) take

7. Through the national projects, the government plans to ..... more jobs for young people.  
☐ a) create      ☐ b) creation      ☐ c) creator      ☐ d) creative
8. The precise recipe of this chicken is a secret. The synonym of the adjective "precise" is ".....".  
☐ a) written      ☐ b) ancient      ☐ c) accurate      ☐ d) imaginary
9. My little brother usually agrees ..... my view about spending our free time.  
☐ a) for      ☐ b) at      ☐ c) of      ☐ d) with
10. The test involves simple calculations, such as addition and subtraction. The verb "involve" can be the opposite to the verb ".....".  
☐ a) include      ☐ b) invent      ☐ c) exclude      ☐ d) consist

### Reading Text (1)



#### Cairo Metro network: Expansion work

We hope that all our passengers will enjoy using our new Line 3<sup>(1)</sup>. This expansion of the Cairo Metro adds seven kilometres and six new stations to our underground network.

Line 3 will help people in the east of the city to get to work faster and more easily because it connects Heliopolis and the central station of Adly Mansour. We expect that 1.5 million passengers will use the new line this year.

High-tech systems were used to build this 21<sup>st</sup> Century public transport system, and more expansion work is planned for in the future. By 2030, we expect to have built three more new lines to bring the total number to six<sup>(2)</sup>.

We are already building Line 4 and we will have completed it by 2024. Line 4 will connect the east and west of Cairo and make it easier for people to travel around the city. However, due to the expansion work on Line 4, some trains will be late and we may have to close some stations for short periods of time.

Although we don't have a precise schedule for the building work on Line 5 and 6 at the moment, we expect to have started building Line 5 by the end of next year.

We would like to thank all Cairo Metro passengers for your understanding while the building work is taking place. We hope that you will enjoy using the improved underground network.



#### Notes on some sentences:

#### ملاحظات على بعض الجمل

١- لاحظ استخدام (verb + ing) بعد الفعل (enjoy).

٢- لاحظ استخدام (have + P.P.) بعد الفعل (expect) وليس المصدر كالمعتاد وانمعنى هنا (نتوقع أن نكون أكملنا بناء).

## Reading Text (2) (Workbook)



### (Public transport) projects for the future

Public transport networks everywhere will improve a lot over the next ten years. Here is a look at some of the biggest projects being planned around the world.

In Cairo, there are plans to create the first public transport connection from both New Administrative City and 6<sup>th</sup> of October City to the Greater Cairo area.

The Cairo Monorail will involve the construction of two monorail lines which will take passengers 52 km from New Administrative City to East Cairo, and 42 km from 6<sup>th</sup> of October City to the Greater Cairo area. The lines will open in 2025.

There are plans for an expansion of the Paris underground network in France. Using the latest technology, the underground Line 18 will connect Orly airport to the suburb of Versailles. 21 km of the 35 km-long line will be high-tech. It will open in 2030.

By 2030, there are plans to build the longest tunnel in Australia's history.

The 50 km-long tunnel will be part of the new Sydney Metro West underground system<sup>(1)</sup>. The project involves 10,000 workers including engineers<sup>(2)</sup>.

In the north of Europe, Sweden is building a new train line along the coast of the country. The 270 km line will be finished in 2030 and will carry more than 1.6 million passengers a year.



### Notes on some sentences:

#### ملاحظات على بعض الجمل

١- لاحظ استخدام المفرد بعد العدد وليس الجمع (km) بسبب استخدامه قبل اسم كصفة مركبة.

٢- استخدمنا (including) هنا بمعنى (مشملاً على أو متضمناً) وقد تكون اختصاراً لضمير وصل تتبعه جملة

مبينة للمعلوم فالجملة يمكن أن يكون أصلها.

The project involves 10,000 workers which include engineers.

## Listening Text (1) (Workbook)



Scan & Listen



**Huda** : Which is the best way to travel?

**Inji** : I think the answer is quite clear. Flying.

**Huda** : I'm sorry, but that isn't true. Flying causes a lot of pollution.

**Inji** : I'm not so sure about that. Modern planes don't cause much pollution because ...

**Huda** : Can I just say something here? Planes create more than ten times the pollution of a train!

**Inji** : Yes, but it is much more expensive to build railway lines than airports. What would you say to that?



## Listening Text (2)



- Talk show host:** So, this evening, I'd like to welcome our two guests. We have Karima, who works for an organisation that wants us to use public transport more often. And we also have Nadiya, who works for a company that makes electric cars. Karima, maybe you could start the conversation. Why do you think more people will have decided to use public transport in twenty years' time?
- Karima:** Well, I think the answer is quite clear. Because the dangerous gases that cars produce are bad for the environment. By the 2040s, everybody will have realised that and decided to do something about it.
- Nadiya:** I'm sorry, but that isn't true of all cars. The electric cars that we make don't produce any gases that damage the environment. They're very environmentally friendly. Experts believe that by 2030 most people will have bought an electric vehicle.
- Karima:** I'm not so sure about that, Nadiya. Do you really think that all drivers will have changed the type of vehicle they drive in less than ten years? I think that by 2050 the price of electric cars won't have gone down so much that everyone can buy one.
- Talk show host:** Can I just say something here? By 2030, the types of transport available to us will have changed completely – don't you think? Perhaps we will have flying vehicles instead of driving on the roads. And if we do still have cars, we won't drive them ourselves<sup>(1)</sup> because we'll have bought driverless cars. What would you say to that?
- Nadiya:** Whatever happens in the future, in ten years we won't have given up on driving our own vehicles, because they are a private space. So, let's make sure those vehicles are environmentally friendly.
- Talk show host:** Karima?
- Karima:** Well, I think people will still want to travel in the future, of course, but everyone will have realised that protecting the environment is the most important thing and choose public transport instead.



### Notes on some sentences:

### ملاحظات على بعض الجمل

١- لاحظ استخدام (do) مع المصدر في جملة خبرية للتأكيد على الفعل بمعنى (بالفعل - حقًا).



## Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

### notice

ملاحظة / انتباه / اهتمام

تستخدم (notice) كاسم بمعانٍ مختلفة.  
This problem may not have received your **notice** so far.

### notice = sign

إشعار (بيان مطبوع لإعطاء معلومة أو تحذير)

The **notice** on the wall says "No smoking".

### notice = warning

تحذير من شيء مستقبلي

The authorities closed the factory, giving the workers only a week's **notice**.

### notice = review

نقد أو رأي عن فيلم /

قصة مطبوعة في جريدة

- The new play got mixed **notices** in the newspapers.

لاحظ أيضًا أن (notice) يستخدم كفعل بمعنى (يلاحظ).  
- He **noticed** a woman in a black dress sitting across from him.

### public

عام (يمكن للجميع استخدامه)

You now have to pay to use the **public** toilets at the park.

### general

عام (غير محدد)

They gave a **general** description of the new site of the company.

### electric

كهربائي (يعمل بالكهرباء)

(used about something that works using electricity)

- Is your cooker **electric** or gas?

### electrical

كهربائي (يستخدم الكهرباء - يعمل بإنتاج أو تصليح الكهرباء)

(used about things in general that use electricity, or people whose job is to make or repair these things)

- I work for a company manufacturing **electrical** goods.

- My uncle works as an **electrical** engineer.

### electronic

إلكتروني (خاصة بالتقنيات الحديثة)

(used about systems or things that work using computers or smartphones)

- Most kids love **electronic** games.

- Email is the short word for **electronic** mail.



take place

يحدث

*Treasure Island* took place in nineteenth-century England.

take someone's place

يحل محل شخص

I took my father's place in our shop while he was abroad.

test

١- اختبار (دراسي - غير دراسي)  
٢- فحص (طبي - لقياس الأداء لألة أو نظام)

- We have a test on irregular verbs tomorrow.  
- Mr Reda could pass his driving test and got his licence.  
- The doctor said I needed to have a blood test.

exam (examination)

اختبار دراسي (في نهاية مقرر أو فترة دراسية محددة)

There's a written examination at the end of the course.

quiz

اختبار قصير (بشكل دوري لقياس التعلم)

We have a chemistry quiz every Monday at the beginning of the lesson.

### Vocabulary Checkpoint 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The sales assure customers that they carry out safety ..... on all their products.  
☐ a) tests      ☐ b) exams      ☐ c) quizzes      ☐ d) finals
- Most dictionaries and encyclopedias ..... are available in paper and ..... form on CDs.  
☐ a) electricity      ☐ b) electric      ☐ c) electrica      ☐ d) electronic
- The company cut off the electricity without ..... for important repairs.  
☐ a) note      ☐ b) notice      ☐ c) sign      ☐ d) signal
- This guidebook gives you a good ..... idea of the city you will visit.  
☐ a) general      ☐ b) public      ☐ c) private      ☐ d) careful
- Our Arabic teacher is used to giving us a/an ..... on Arabic grammar every other day.  
☐ a) test      ☐ b) exam      ☐ c) quiz      ☐ d) show
- The young graduate was employed as an ..... engineer in the shipbuilding new factory.  
☐ a) electricity      ☐ b) electric      ☐ c) electrical      ☐ d) electronic
- There was a notice on the board saying the class had been cancelled. The word "notice" here means a/an ".....".  
☐ a) attention      ☐ b) review      ☐ c) observation      ☐ d) sign
- Experts are always advising people to use ..... transport because there are too many cars on the roads.  
☐ a) general      ☐ b) public      ☐ c) private      ☐ d) electronic



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

**Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook**

1. There are plans for a massive ..... of the oil and gas industries in many parts in Egypt.  
☐ a) deterioration    ☐ b) authority    ☐ c) expansion    ☐ d) notice
2. Misr Stadium has some of the newest equipment and best ..... for teams in Africa.  
☐ a) authorities    ☐ b) facilities    ☐ c) accessibilities    ☐ d) schedules
3. It's important for a successful businessman to build up a ..... of professional contacts.  
☐ a) transport    ☐ b) gate    ☐ c) network    ☐ d) station
4. By law, all parents have the ..... to discipline their children.  
☐ a) irresponsibility    ☐ b) authority    ☐ c) expansion    ☐ d) expiry
5. My teacher always ..... the importance of studying hard and encouraged us to be better.  
☐ a) emphasised    ☐ b) improvised    ☐ c) appeared    ☐ d) thought
6. Most applications can only be used on mobiles ..... to the internet.  
☐ a) contacted    ☐ b) communicated    ☐ c) connected    ☐ d) created
7. Because of climate change, all people have realised the need to ..... the environment.  
☐ a) cure    ☐ b) infect    ☐ c) protect    ☐ d) heal
8. Major engineering challenges were faced during the ..... of the New Administrative Capital.  
☐ a) construction    ☐ b) destruction    ☐ c) damage    ☐ d) waste
9. The scientists will hold a/an ..... of meetings over the next few weeks to discuss the new medicine.  
☐ a) team    ☐ b) amount    ☐ c) series    ☐ d) deviation
10. More and more people are moving to the ..... of Cairo, such as New Cairo City every year.  
☐ a) streets    ☐ b) villages    ☐ c) shores    ☐ d) suburbs
11. Unfortunately, the new book received little ..... in the national media.  
☐ a) preview    ☐ b) notice    ☐ c) sign    ☐ d) warning
12. When she got off the plane, her mother was waiting for her at the airport .....  
☐ a) gate    ☐ b) hole    ☐ c) dock    ☐ d) store
13. One of the main disadvantages of cars is the ..... gases which damage the environment.  
☐ a) variable    ☐ b) polluting    ☐ c) effective    ☐ d) impressive
14. We had to ..... our old air conditioner with a new one that is working properly.  
☐ a) place    ☐ b) position    ☐ c) replace    ☐ d) reflect
15. The information about the new vaccine is freely ..... on the internet.  
☐ a) available    ☐ b) secret    ☐ c) avoidable    ☐ d) affecting

### Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

16. There are plans to build more new cities in Egypt ..... the next years.  
☐ a) on                      b) off                      c) for                      d) over
17. Doctors emphasised the importance of fresh fruit and vegetables in the diet.  
 The noun of the verb "emphasise" is "                    ".  
☐ a) emphasises                      b) emphasised                      c) emphatic                      d) emphasis
18. In Europe, the temperature goes ..... below zero in the winter.  
☐ a) off                      b) down                      c) 'n                      d) 'nto
19. Prevention plays a central role in traditional medicine. The word "central" is similar in meaning to the word "                    ".  
☐ a) far                      b) main                      c) partial                      d) heavy
20. The museum is undergoing a major expansion to add more sections.  
 The antonym of the noun "expansion" is "                    ".  
☐ a) growth                      b) reduction                      c) del very                      d) enlargement

### Longman and Previous Exams

21. The ..... of the new monorail line will serve thousands of people. It will take passengers 52 kilometres from the New Administrative City to East Cairo. [Longman]  
☐ a) deduction                      b) destruction                      c) contradiction                      d) construction
22. There are plans to create the first public transport ..... from the New Administrative Capital to the Greater Cairo area. [Longman]  
☐ a) separation                      b) communication                      c) transmission                      d) connection
23. As Sami was a keen participant, he was the first to be ..... in the team working on the project. [Longman]  
☐ a) excluded                      b) involved                      c) elim nated                      d) separated
24. Unfortunately, I failed to ..... Hatim to change his mind and spend the weekend with us. [Longman]  
☐ a) let                      b) charge                      c) persuade                      d) force
25. I think the rent for the new flat could be ..... as long as I have extra work to increase my income. [Longman]  
☐ a) avoidable                      b) recyclable                      c) affordab e                      d) intolerable
26. The rapid growth of cities can cause social and economic problems. "Growth" is a synonym for "                    ". [Longman]  
☐ a) decrease                      b) decline                      c) reduction                      d) expansion
27. Most hotels have special ..... for helping people. [Longman]  
☐ a) factories                      b) facilities                      c) filters                      d) faces
28. .... means to describe something that uses a lot of new technology. [Longman]  
☐ a) Be-tech                      b) High-tech                      c) Highlight                      d) Sunlight
29. The bank has a/an ..... that connects its branches together. [Longman]  
☐ a) operation                      b) target                      c) network                      d) alternative
30. Using ..... transport reduces pollution. [Longman]  
☐ a) noisy                      b) republic                      c) spec'al                      d) public

## Future Perfect

المستقبل التام

## FORM التكوين

## Affirmative

الجملة المنفية

## Negative

الجملة المنفية

## Question

السؤال

## Passive

المصنف المجهول

- Subj. فاعل + will have + P.P. التصريف الثالث
- I **will have finished** this report by midday.
- Subj. فاعل + won't have + P.P. التصريف الثالث
- I **won't have finished** this report until 5 o'clock.
- Will + subj. فاعل + have + P.P. التصريف الثالث
- Will you **have typed** all these letters by the time the boss arrives?
- Wh- question أداة استفهام + will + subj. فاعل + have + P.P. التصريف الثالث
- How many letters **will you have typed** before the boss arrives?
- Obj. مفعول + will have been + P.P. التصريف الثالث
- Our car **will have been repaired** by tomorrow.

## USAGE الاستخدام

For actions that will or will not be completed before a specific time in the future.

يعبر عن حدث سوف (سوف لا) يكون قد اكتمل قبل وقت محدد في المستقبل.

- By 8 o'clock tomorrow, I'll **have sent** all these invitation cards.  
By next October, the new metro line **will have been built**.

For actions that will or will not be completed before another action in the future.

يعبر عن حدث سوف (سوف لا) يكون قد اكتمل قبل حدث آخر في المستقبل.

- I **will have read** the book **before** I return it to the library.  
**By the time** my father arrives, I'll **have finished** my homework.

The future perfect is used with the following time expressions:

before, by + فترة في المستقبل (2100), by the time, till/until, in a year's (2 years') time

My wife **won't have finished** preparing the lunch **till** 4 o'clock.

In a week's time, we'll have finished our exams.



Future perfect  
(will have + P.P.)

before, till/until,  
by the time, by

Present simple  
Present perfect

Before he arrives, I'll have completed the report.

By the time he has finished doing the homework, his father will have returned back home.

### Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- When he reaches his town, he ..... 3 kilometres.  
☐ a) will have walked                      b) will be walking  
☐ c) will have been walking                d) will walk
- By the time the new product goes on sale, the company ..... over 10 million dollars on promotion.  
☐ a) will be spent                              b) will spend  
☐ c) will have spent                            d) will be spending
- By the time we get to Assuit, we ..... for 5 hours.  
☐ a) drive    b) will drive  
☐ c) are driving                                  d) will have driven
- Say goodbye to Ann now. Before you return, she ..... for New York.  
☐ a) will be leaving                              b) will have left  
☐ c) will have been leaving                    d) is going to leave
- Surely, he ..... all this work until two a.m.  
☐ a) won't be finished                          b) won't have been finished  
☐ c) won't have finished                        d) hasn't finished



#### Note:

ملحوظة

1 نستخدم **by/by the time/before** لنقصد قبل وقت محدد في المستقبل.

We will have taken the test **by/before** June.

I won't have done all of my homework **by the time/before** you get home.

٢- ونستخدم **in (a year's/week's/2 weeks') time** لنقصد في نهاية هذا الوقت في المستقبل.

► In five years, I will have started work.

How much will you have done on your project in two months' time?



## Extra points

هناك أفعال تعبر عن المستقبل تلقائيًا عند استخدامها في صيغة المضارع مثل:

want, expect, hope, predict, wish, need, etc.

وعند استخدام **to** بعدها نستغنى عن **will** وعند استخدام المستقبل التام نستخدم بعده **to have + P.P.**

وفي المجهول **to have been + P.P.**

want, expect, hope,  
predict, wish, need, etc.

+ **to have + P.P.** .... معلوم

I expect **to have written**  
3 reports by next week.

want, expect, hope,  
predict, wish, need, etc.

+ **to have been + P.P.** ... مجهول

I expect 3 reports **to have**  
**been written** by next  
week.

By 2030, we expect to **have built** flats for all people in Egypt.

We expect to **have started** building more than 100 natural gas stations by the end of this year.

The food is expected to **have been prepared** by 6 p.m. today.





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. By the time you get home, I ..... the house from top to bottom.  
☐ a) will have cleaned                      b) will be cleaning  
☐ c) will clean                                  d) will be cleaned
2. In an hour, Ola ..... home with her father.  
☐ a) will be reached                          b) reaches  
☐ c) has reached                              d) will have reached
3. Whatever happens in the future, in ten years, we ..... up on driving our own vehicles.  
☐ a) won't be given                          b) won't have given  
☐ c) are giving                                  d) will be given
4. The writer's new story will ..... by the time the "Book Fair" starts.  
☐ a) be printed                                  b) be printing  
☐ c) have been printed                      d) have printed
5. Rana ..... the night shift by the time you get up in the morning.  
☐ a) won't be finished                      b) won't be finishing  
☐ c) won't finish                                d) won't have finished
6. Will she ..... enough Spanish to communicate before she moves to Madrid?  
☐ a) has learnt                                  b) have learnt  
☐ c) learn    d) be learning
7. Could you please return in 10 minutes? Your room will ..... by then.  
☐ a) have been cleaned                      b) be cleaned  
☐ c) be cleaning                                d) have cleaned
8. Our guests are expected to ..... by 4 o'clock this afternoon.  
☐ a) be arrived                                  b) have been arrived  
☐ c) have arrived                                d) will arrive
9. Will my workplace ..... when I come to the office tomorrow morning?  
☐ a) prepare                                    b) have been prepared  
☐ c) have been preparing                    d) be preparing
10. It's a big course. We ..... it by the time the vacation begins.  
☐ a) won't finish                                b) won't be finishing  
☐ c) won't have finished                    d) aren't finishing
11. By the time your children are in university, will e-books ..... traditional books?  
☐ a) have replacing                          b) have been replaced  
☐ c) replaced                                    d) have replaced

12. I hope a cure for this serious disease ..... by the end of this year.

- ☐ a) will have been discovered
- ☐ b) will have discovered
- ☐ c) will be discovering
- ☐ d) will be discovered

13. By the time I get home, my wife ..... supper.

- ☐ a) will have been prepared
- ☐ b) 's going to prepare
- ☐ c) will have prepared
- ☐ d) will prepare

14. Will the documents ..... by Thursday?

- ☐ a) have sent
- ☐ b) be sending
- ☐ c) be sent
- ☐ d) have been sent

15. Will he ..... all the English verb tenses by tomorrow?

- ☐ a) have studied
- ☐ b) has studied
- ☐ c) be studying
- ☐ d) be studied

16. I expect ..... much experience by the time I'm fifty years old.

- ☐ a) to have been gained
- ☐ b) to have gained
- ☐ c) will gain
- ☐ d) that I will gain

17. By the end of the first term, we ..... many English books.

- ☐ a) shall read
- ☐ b) will be reading
- ☐ c) will have read
- ☐ d) will be read

18. They won't have received the new machine ..... next Friday.

- ☐ a) before
- ☐ b) when
- ☐ c) as soon as
- ☐ d) when e

19. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically correct?

- ☐ a) After my father comes home, I'll be doing my homework.
- ☐ b) After my father comes home, I'll have done my homework.
- ☐ c) After my father will come home, I will do my homework.
- ☐ d) I won't have done my homework until my father comes home.

20. Which one of the following sentences is incorrectly structured?

- ☐ a) I hope I will pass my driving test next week.
- ☐ b) I hope I have passed my driving test next week.
- ☐ c) I hope I will have passed my driving test by next week
- ☐ d) I hope to have passed my driving test by next week.



Logonman

Logonman

- | Long | 1 | 3 |

| Long | 1 | 3 |

- 6.2.3.4. *id*

6.2.3.4. *id*

- Logon/Logout**

**Logon/Logout**

1. *Introduction*

1. *Introduction*

2. 7. 1

2. 7. 1

- مستوفى / أ.د.

مستوفى / أ.د.

- 2 —

— 2 —

- Puccinia*

*Puccinia* 23. 23)

- [illegible]

[illegible]

- ## Lessons 1 & 2



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### Vocabulary

- There has been a steady ..... of the private sector of the economy in many fields.  
☐ a) deterioration    b) authority    c) expansion    d) notice
- Drinking water is brought to the town through a/an ..... of underground pipes.  
☐ a) line    b) network    c) discipline    d) authority
- We have a tight ..... to get this project done. It must be completed in a month.  
☐ a) schedule    b) expectation    c) inquiry    d) prospect
- We need to work out the total cost of the project. The opposite of the adjective "total" is ".....".  
☐ a) complete    b) whole    c) gorgeous    d) partial
- The solar panels provide my uncle's farm with the ..... power it uses.  
☐ a) electronic    b) electrostatic    c) electric    d) static
- A ..... is a railway system that uses a single rail, usually high above the ground.  
☐ a) tunnel    b) monorail    c) loop    d) lane
- The new tourist village has special ..... for welcoming disabled people, such as lifts and wheelchairs.  
☐ a) talents    b) gifts    c) activities    d) facilities
- This mobile model is relatively ..... at just 5000 pounds.  
☐ a) flexible    b) unavailable    c) avoidable    d) affordable
- A ..... is an area where people live which is away from the centre of a town or city.  
☐ a) marsh    b) resort    c) suburb    d) region
- The businessman is trying to ..... local businesses to invest in his new project.  
☐ a) persuade    b) discourage    c) defy    d) risk
- The new secretary was caught looking through the manager's ..... papers and was fired.  
☐ a) general    b) private    c) public    d) indefinite
- The young athlete didn't give ..... her career when she had her first baby.  
☐ a) in    b) at    c) off    d) up
- The ..... date and place of birth of this famous writer are unknown.  
☐ a) expected    b) public    c) precise    d) indefinite
- The Olympics take ..... every four years in a different city.  
☐ a) part    b) place    c) in    d) off
- The writer's story has been made into a TV ..... of three parts.  
☐ a) series    b) cast    c) channel    d) podcast



## Language

16. I ..... the cooking by the time you arrive home. Then, you can have your lunch at once.  
☐ a) will be done ☐ b) will have been done  
☐ c) will have done ☐ d) will be doing
17. All Egyptian schools ..... e-learning by 2030.  
☐ a) will apply ☐ b) will have applied  
☐ c) will be applied ☐ d) will have been applied
18. Nancy ..... to a new apartment by this time next year.  
☐ a) will move ☐ b) moves  
☐ c) is going to move ☐ d) will have moved
19. By 10 o'clock, we ..... half the way to Australia.  
☐ a) will have flown ☐ b) will be flown ☐ c) will fly ☐ d) are flying
20. They ..... a new high-tech hospital by the end of next year.  
☐ a) will open ☐ b) will have opened ☐ c) will be opening ☐ d) are opening
21. They ..... the expansion of the rail line to other cities until 2040.  
☐ a) aren't completing ☐ b) will complete  
☐ c) complete ☐ d) won't have completed
22. By this time next week, I ..... my test results.  
☐ a) will have received ☐ b) will be receiving  
☐ c) will receive ☐ d) am going to receive
23. Will he ..... the message by the time your flight takes off?  
☐ a) receive ☐ b) be received ☐ c) have received ☐ d) has received
24. Wake me up by nine o'clock. I ..... long enough by then.  
☐ a) will sleep ☐ b) will have slept ☐ c) will be sleeping ☐ d) will be slept
25. We ..... all our needs in a week's time.  
☐ a) will be bought ☐ b) are buying  
☐ c) going to buy ☐ d) will have bought
26. When he finishes his course, he thinks he ..... 2000 new English words by the end of the month.  
☐ a) will have learnt ☐ b) learns  
☐ c) is going to ☐ d) will earn
27. By the end of this week, we hope all the thieves will .....  
☐ a) have caught ☐ b) catch ☐ c) have been caught ☐ d) be catching
28. Call me tomorrow at eleven. I'll know more because the meeting .....  
☐ a) will have finished ☐ b) will finish  
☐ c) will be finishing ☐ d) won't finish
29. I took my car to the service centre, but I think it won't ..... even by Friday.  
☐ a) have fixed ☐ b) be fixed ☐ c) fix ☐ d) have been fixed
30. After Dalia ..... this test, she will have answered all the exercises in the book.  
☐ a) will answer ☐ b) has answered  
☐ c) will have answered ☐ d) will be answered



## A

## Vocabulary

## Vocabulary on Reading &amp; Listening Texts

## مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

alternative (n) (adj)	بدیل	governorate (n)	محافظة	respond (v) (ed)	یرد / یرستجیب
argument (n)	جدال	grateful (adj)	شاکر / ممتن	satisfactory (adj)	مُرِض
consider (v) (ed)	یرتبر	impossible (adj)	مستحيل	significant (adj)	هام / ذو مغزی
convenient (adj)	مناسب	issue (n)	قضية	solution (n)	حل
crowded (adj)	مزدحم	pause (v) (d) (n)	یرصمت / صمت	stress (n) (v) (ed)	ضغط / یضغط / یؤكد على
effect (n)	تأثیر	point (n)	نقطة / رای	style (n)	اسلوب
environmentally-friendly (adj)	صديق للبيئة	popularity (n)	شهرة / ذیوع		
expect (v) (ed)	یرتوقع	possible (adj)	ممکن	timetable (n)	جدول المواعید
flying vehicle (n)	مركبة طائرة	provide (v) (d)	یزود / یوفر		

## Workbook Vocabulary

## مفردات کتاب التدریبات

appropriate (adj)	مناسب / ملائم	inexpensive (adj)	غير مكلف	present (adj)	حالی
conclusion (n)	خاتمة	lead (v)	یقود / یؤدی	region (n)	إقليم
cycle (v) (d)	یركب دراجة	level (n)	مستوى		
decrease (v) (d)	ینخفض / یقل	planet (n)	كوكب	wildlife (n)	الحياة البرية
disability (n)	إعاقة	playground (n)	ملعب		

## Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My father told us that he was ..... buying a new flat next to his office building.  
☐ a) considering    ☐ b) accepting    ☐ c) pausing    ☐ d) leading
2. The new worker won't get a pay rise unless his work is ..... and efficient.  
☐ a) grateful    ☐ b) inexpensive    ☐ c) satisfactory    ☐ d) unsuitable
3. Many children with mild ..... are integrated with general education.  
☐ a) arguments    ☐ b) conclusions    ☐ c) reasons    ☐ d) disabilities
4. There were a/an ..... among the marketing staff to lower the prices of their products, but they didn't reach a conclusion.  
☐ a) argument    ☐ b) arrangement    ☐ c) replacement    ☐ d) involvement
5. The new defender played a ..... role in helping our team to victory.  
☐ a) useless    ☐ b) poisonous    ☐ c) significant    ☐ d) valueless
6. Using the sun and wind to make electricity is a clean and green ..... for oil and gas.  
☐ a) affection    ☐ b) alternative    ☐ c) remain    ☐ d) attribute
7. I was upset because customer service called me at night which was not a/an ..... time for me.  
☐ a) crowded    ☐ b) convenient    ☐ c) extensive    ☐ d) unsuitable
8. This tropical forest ..... is characterised by frequent heavy rainfall.  
☐ a) district    ☐ b) planet    ☐ c) region    ☐ d) level
9. Experts believe that there are no simple ..... to the problem of overpopulation.  
☐ a) reasons    ☐ b) issues    ☐ c) solutions    ☐ d) timetables
10. Due to the high temperature in the whole world, climate change has become one of the most important global .....  
☐ a) solutions    ☐ b) conclusions    ☐ c) reasons    ☐ d) issues

### Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

### التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

at least	على الأقل	keep in mind	يتذكر/يبقى في ذهنه	on behalf of	بالنيابة عن
do some research	يقوم ببعض الأبحاث	make ... better	يجعله ... أفضل	point of view	وجهة نظر
alternative to	بديل لـ	decrease in	تقليل في	possible for	ممكن لـ
arrive at/in	يصل إلى	lead to	يؤدي إلى	respond to	يرد على / يستجيب لـ

## Derivatives

## المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
provide	يزود / يوفر	provision provider	تزويد مقدم / موفر	provisional	مؤقت
respond	يرد / يستجيب	response	رد / استجابة	responsive	متجاوب
solve	يحل	solution	حل	solvable	يمكن حله
satisfy	يرضى / يقنع	satisfaction	رضا / قناعة	satisfactory satisfied	مُرْضٍ راضٍ
stress	يضغط	stress	ضغط	stressed stressful	مضغوط مجهد
conclude	يختم / يستنتج	conclusion	خاتمة / استنتاج	concluding conclusive	خاتم / مستنتج جازم / قاطع

## Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

The company was unable to **satisfy** demand for the product. (v)

Good people find **satisfaction** in helping others. (n)

Although my son didn't get full marks, his exam results were **satisfactory**. (adj)

## Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
alternative	بديل	option/substitute		obligation	إلزام
convenient	مناسب	appropriate/suitable		Improper/unsuitable	غير مناسب
grateful	شاكر / ممتن	appreciative/thankful		ungrateful/rude	غير ممتن / وقح
present	الحالي	current/existing		distant/previous	بعيد / سابق
provide	يزود / يوفر	supply/present		deprive	يحرّم
respond	يرد / يستجيب	answer/reply		question/request	يستجوب / يطلب
satisfactory	مُرْضٍ	sufficient/adequate		inappropriate/unsatisfactory	غير مُرْضٍ / غير مناسب
significant	هام / ذو مغزى	important/noteworthy		insignificant/unimportant	غير هام

## Vocabulary Checkpoint 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You must ..... in mind that you won't get good exam results without working hard.  
☐ a) take                      b) give                      c) keep                      d) miss
2. Experts believe that there has been a decrease ..... the number of visitors to the Mediterranean beaches in summer.  
☐ a) out                      b) about                      c) for                      d) in
3. I sent three job applications, but no one responded. The synonym of the verb "respond" is "  
☐ a) send                      b) reply                      c) receive                      d) tell
4. Good planning usually leads ..... good profits for any business.  
☐ a) in                      b) to                      c) at                      d) away
5. Fruit juice is considered a healthier alternative to fizzy drinks. The word "alternative" is similar in meaning to "  
☐ a) mission                      b) obligation                      c) necessity                      d) substitute
6. The team captain receives the trophy on ..... of the whole team.  
☐ a) account                      b) behalf                      c) expense                      d) grade
7. All the candidates have failed to satisfy the examiners. The noun of the verb "satisfy" is "  
☐ a) satisfies                      b) satisfied                      c) satisfactory                      d) satisfaction
8. I find it convenient to be able to do my banking online. The synonym of the word "convenient" is "  
☐ a) suitable                      b) improper                      c) gorgeous                      d) strange
9. The new library will be double the size of the present one. The adjective "present" can be replaced by .....  
☐ a) current                      b) distant                      c) challenging                      d) available
10. The journalist has ..... some research into the background of the story of the crime.  
☐ a) made                      b) done                      c) carried                      d) replied



## Reading Text (1)



Dear Sir or Madam,

- (A) I am writing on behalf of myself and the other students in my class at school.
- (B) We would be very grateful if the governorate would consider organising the expansion to our town's public transport network. The current network is not satisfactory because there are not enough buses to take children to school early in the morning.
- (C) I have done some research and **some children arrive at school much earlier than they need to, and the buses are very crowded<sup>(1)</sup>**.
- (D) I would suggest that the governorate office either provides more buses at the time when students travel to school or it changes the bus timetable so that the buses arrive at our school twenty or thirty minutes earlier.
- (E) I would be very happy to discuss this issue further at any time that would be convenient. Then we could discuss which solution(s) would be possible for our city. **Should you have any further questions about the public transport students need, please respond to this email<sup>(2)</sup>**.

Yours faithfully,  
Sara Abdelaziz



### Notes on some sentences:

ملاحظات على بعض الجمل

- ١- لاحظ استخدام ( **much** ) قبل صفة المقارنة ( **earlier** ) للدلالة على الدرجة الكبيرة في المقارنة بمعنى (كثير).  
٢- لاحظ استخدام ( **Should + subj. + inf.** ) في بداية الجملة بدلاً أداة الربط ( **If** ) للتعبير عن الشرط في الحالة الأولى.

## Reading Text (2) (Workbook)



I'd like to make the argument that we will all have stopped driving cars in fifty years' time. That is because there will be lots of inexpensive and environmentally friendly forms of public transport. Another significant point I'd like to make is that, **because roads will be safer, there will be alternatives to using trains and buses, too<sup>(1)</sup>**. For example, more people will walk and cycle. It's important to keep in mind that these ways of travelling will lead to a significant decrease in levels of pollution.



### Notes on some sentences:

ملاحظات على بعض الجمل

- ١- لاحظ استخدام ( **verb + ing** ) وليس المصدر بعد ( **to** ) لاستخدامها كحرف جر بمعنى (لـ).

## Reading Text (3) (Workbook)



### Join us to help your community!

We are a group of volunteers who are working for the local government and we help out with local problems. Would you like to work with us?

Our present project is improving the local playgrounds<sup>(1)</sup>. These are great places for local families, but some of the equipment is not good enough.

Our volunteers are working hard to make sure that all the playground equipment is safe and fun to use for children of all ages.

We will be at the town hall all day on Tuesday 6<sup>th</sup> July. Come and join us at a time that is good for you!



### Notes on some sentences:

### ملاحظات على بعض الجمل

١- لاحظ استخدام (improving) بعد الفعل (is) كمفعول بمعنى (تحسين).

## Listening Text



Scan & Listen



**Presenter:** I'm here today to talk to you about cars and tell you why we will not have stopped driving them by 2050. The first argument I would like to make, and something we should never forget, is that cars are everywhere, everywhere. Just look around! Most people drive their cars every day. It's hard – perhaps impossible – to imagine that people will have changed the way they travel so much that by 2050, nobody will be driving.

Another very significant point that I'd like to make is that it's hard to imagine a good alternative to the car at the moment. Some people have suggested that we will have started using flying vehicles by 2030, but I doubt that. Alternatives to the car are usually too expensive, too dangerous, and many of them might also damage the environment in the same way that some cars do. It's important to keep in mind that more and more of the cars that we're making today are environmentally friendly. Just look at the popularity of electric cars. They don't damage the environment when we drive them and so we can expect that, in a few years' time, they will have become even more popular.

## Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

<b>effect</b> تأثير (يتبعه حرف الجر on/of)	Burning petrol and gas has a bad <b>effect on</b> the environment.
<b>affect</b> يؤثر على (لا يتبعه حرف جر)	Burning petrol and gas <b>affects</b> the environment badly.
<b>pause</b> صمت / توقف شخص عن الكلام أو فعل شيء (لفترة قصيرة قبل العودة)	There was a short <b>pause</b> before the minister continued his speech.
<b>silence</b> صمت / سكوت (لفترة طويلة)	Nothing disturbed the <b>silence</b> of the night.
<b>hesitation</b> تردد (التوقف عن الحديث / فعل شيء لعدم الاطمئنان أو التأكد)	After some minutes of <b>hesitation</b> , we continued our way through the forest.
<b>reason for + noun / v. + ing</b> سبب / مبرر	- I don't know the <b>reason for</b> his failure.
<b>reason + why + جملة</b>	- I don't know the <b>reason why</b> he failed.
<b>cause of + noun / v. + ing</b> سبب / مبرر / cause + مفعول / يسبب	- What was the <b>cause of</b> his death? = What <b>caused</b> his death?
<b>present (adj)</b> حاضر / الحالي / موجود	Carbon dioxide is one of the harmful gases <b>present</b> in the Earth's atmosphere.
<b>present (n)</b> هدية	I was given this book as a <b>present</b> from my father.
<b>present (v)</b> يقدم	The computer centre <b>presented</b> a cheque for L.E. 500 to cancer research.

## Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We do not have much information about the earthquake at the ..... time.  
☐ a) central      ☐ b) present      ☐ c) presented      ☐ d) gifted
- The group finished their meal in total ..... after hearing the bad news.  
☐ a) rejoice      ☐ b) pause      ☐ c) hesitation      ☐ d) silence
- Eating junk food will eventually have a bad ..... on your health.  
☐ a) affect      ☐ b) effect      ☐ c) infect      ☐ d) defect
- Your opinion will not ..... my decision about joining university.  
☐ a) affect      ☐ b) effect      ☐ c) infect      ☐ d) defect
- I can't think of any ..... for your desire to leave your good job.  
☐ a) result      ☐ b) aim      ☐ c) cause      ☐ d) reason



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

**Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook**

1. I'm so ..... for all the help and support my family gave me.  
☐ a) ungrateful    ☐ b) convenient    ☐ c) reliable    ☐ d) grateful
2. Social services try hard to ..... poor families with their needs.  
☐ a) respond    ☐ b) provide    ☐ c) prevent    ☐ d) pause
3. As he was greatly appreciated, many Arab novelists have tried to copy Naguib Mahfouz's .....  
☐ a) point    ☐ b) popularity    ☐ c) attack    ☐ d) style
4. We worked very hard for four hours without a ..... to complete the report.  
☐ a) pause    ☐ b) silence    ☐ c) trouble    ☐ d) state
5. Because of the floods, the river water rose to a dangerous .....  
☐ a) step    ☐ b) grade    ☐ c) level    ☐ d) rank
6. The rainforests are important ..... habitats for animals of many kinds.  
☐ a) humans    ☐ b) wildlife    ☐ c) biology    ☐ d) crop
7. I think it is more ..... to use a calculator, rather than adding the numbers yourself.  
☐ a) considered    ☐ b) appropriate    ☐ c) arranged    ☐ d) moved
8. The call centre worker told me that they would try to ..... to my complaints within 48 hours.  
☐ a) learn    ☐ b) refer    ☐ c) prefer    ☐ d) respond
9. I'm sorry for being grumpy غاضب. I've been under a lot of ..... at work lately.  
☐ a) stress    ☐ b) amusement    ☐ c) pleasure    ☐ d) cost
10. The spokesman ..... for drinking some water before continuing his speech.  
☐ a) acquired    ☐ b) offered    ☐ c) called    ☐ d) paused
11. It is ..... bad manners in some cultures to speak with your mouth full of food.  
☐ a) regarded    ☐ b) reminded    ☐ c) considered    ☐ d) assisted
12. Many experts warn of the bad effects of the ..... of violent video games on children and young people.  
☐ a) disappearance    ☐ b) spread  
☐ c) publication    ☐ d) speed
13. Road repairs were ..... to take three weeks, but they took much longer.  
☐ a) refused    ☐ b) accepted    ☐ c) expected    ☐ d) rejected
14. Hyundai has plans to show its first ..... vehicle that could be seen in the sky in a few years.  
☐ a) flying    ☐ b) steam    ☐ c) revised    ☐ d) explored
15. Chess is a game that has existed in its ..... form for more than 300 years.  
☐ a) present    ☐ b) updated    ☐ c) dead    ☐ d) available



## Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

16. Fish is a significant part of the diet of people in Alexandria. The antonym of the word "significant" is ".....".  
☐ a) important      ☐ b) noteworthy      ☐ c) unimportant      ☐ d) repetitive
17. Experts say that fruit is a healthy alternative ..... chips and sweet products as snacks.  
☐ a) in      ☐ b) to      ☐ c) of      ☐ d) out
18. Voluntary work doesn't only help society, but also can ..... you better.  
☐ a) do      ☐ b) miss      ☐ c) make      ☐ d) deny
19. I am extremely grateful to all the teachers for their help. The adjective "grateful" is similar in meaning to .....  
☐ a) rude      ☐ b) thankful      ☐ c) helpless      ☐ d) naughty
20. Some scientists are planning to ..... some research into the genetic causes of the disease.  
☐ a) carry      ☐ b) make      ☐ c) run      ☐ d) do
21. The spokesman did not respond ..... the reporter's embarrassing questions and ended the conference.  
☐ a) to      ☐ b) in      ☐ c) for      ☐ d) at

## Longman and Previous Exams

22. Pollution is a global ..... which is discussed in international conferences.  
☐ a) rate      ☐ b) ratio      ☐ c) tissue      ☐ d) issue
23. We asked our friend Adel to speak ..... behalf of us when meeting the general manager. [Longman]  
☐ a) in      ☐ b) by      ☐ c) on      ☐ d) with
24. The success Rami had achieved in his work was ....., so he was promoted. [Longman]  
☐ a) satisfactory      ☐ b) satisfied      ☐ c) satisfaction      ☐ d) satisfy
25. Due to the young man's ....., he isn't able to do difficult tasks.  
☐ a) ability      ☐ b) power      ☐ c) disability      ☐ d) strength
26. All energy companies are seeking ..... to fossil fuels.  
☐ a) hosts      ☐ b) representatives      ☐ c) alternatives      ☐ d) relatives
27. A/An ..... is the reason to say why something is right or wrong.  
☐ a) alternative      ☐ b) prove      ☐ c) agreement      ☐ d) argument
28. I think tomorrow's evening is a/an ..... time to meet.  
☐ a) facilities      ☐ b) convenient      ☐ c) delivered      ☐ d) inexpensive
29. There is a/an ..... increase in production rate that we might achieve self-sufficiency. (الزيادة / الزيادة المستمرة)  
☐ a) confusable      ☐ b) affordable      ☐ c) significant      ☐ d) confident
30. There are twenty-seven ..... in Egypt, and Cairo is the biggest one. (مناطق / محافظات)  
☐ a) districts      ☐ b) governorates      ☐ c) regions      ☐ d) governors



## B

## Language

## Future Perfect (extra points)

## المستقبل التام (نقاط إضافية)

## ملحوظة



## Note:

١- الجملة التي بعد الروابط الزمنية لا يستخدم فيها المستقبل من أي نوع ولكن تستخدم المضارع البسيط أو التام.

I am going to travel when I **have finished** my studies.

I am going to travel when I ~~will have finished~~ my studies.

٢- عند استخدام **for** مع التعبيرات الزمنية الدالة على المستقبل التام فيكون الزمن مستقبلاً تأملاً مستمراً مثل:

By next week, I'll **have been living** here for 10 years.

When he comes, I'll **have been waiting** here for 2 hours.

- ولكن إذا كان الفعل **stative** فنستخدم المستقبل التام فقط مثل:

By next October, I'll **have been** a teacher for 30 years.

By next week, I'll **have had** this mobile phone for 3 years.

## Language

## Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I came to live in Spain in 2016. Next year, I ..... here for ten years.

- ☐ a) won't be      ☐ b) will be      ☐ c) will be being      ☐ d) will have been

2. I'll have finished 3 reports before I ..... home.

- ☐ a) had gone      ☐ b) will go      ☐ c) go      ☐ d) went

3. By the time I get up in the morning, I ..... for 10 hours.

- ☐ a) will have slept      ☐ b) will sleep  
☐ c) will be sleeping      ☐ d) will be slept

4. By next week, we ..... here for eight years.

- ☐ a) will have been being      ☐ b) will have been  
☐ c) are going to be      ☐ d) are being

5. I shall be back by 6 and I hope you ..... a good sleep by that time.

- ☐ a) will have had      ☐ b) will have      ☐ c) would have      ☐ d) have had



Subj. فاعل + will + inf. مصدر

الاستخدام Usage

Examples

Future facts	حقائق المستقبل	Tomorrow <b>will be</b> 28 February, 2025.
Prediction without evidence	التنبؤ بدون دليل	It <b>will rain</b> tomorrow. I think you <b>will pass</b> the test.
On-the-spot decision	قرار فوري	This bag is nice. I'll <b>buy</b> it.
With: sure, think, expect, hope, probably, perhaps, promise, predict	تستخدم <b>will</b> مع الكلمات الآتية:	I'm sure my father <b>will buy</b> me a new mobile. He <b>will probably come</b> early tomorrow. I promise you that I'll <b>phone</b> you tonight.
hoped, thought + would		I thought (didn't expect) that she <b>would visit</b> us.
Offer	العرض (يكون جملة خبرية)	Since you are ill, I'll <b>clean</b> the room for you.
Request	الطلب	<b>Will you fetch</b> me my umbrella, please?
Warning	التحذير	If you don't study hard, you <b>won't get</b> high marks.
Threat	التهديد	I'll <b>punish</b> you if you insult your friend again.
promise + to + inf.		I have promised them <b>to come</b> early tonight.



Subj. فاعل + (be) going to + inf. مصدر

الاستخدام Usage

Examples

Prediction with evidence	التنبؤ بدليل (شيء يرقى)	▶ The wall is moving. It's <b>going to fall</b> . ▶ He is driving fast. I think he <b>is going to have</b> an accident.
decide, intend, plan	مع أفعال مثل:	▶ She's decided that she <b>is going to buy</b> a new dress.
Ambitions	الطموحات	▶ I'm <b>going to be</b> a doctor. This is my ambition.

**Look out! Be careful! Watch out!** ▶ Look out! The dog is going to bite you.  
 دلالة على قرب حدوث الفعل ▶ Be careful! The wall is going to fall.

## Note:

لاحظ:

**Be careful + will** ▶ Be careful and save money or you will suffer in summer.  
 تحذير من شيء ربما يحدث  
**Be careful + present cont.** ▶ Be careful! A car is coming.  
 التحذير من شيء يحدث بالفعل

## Future Continuous

المستقبل المستمر

التكوين

**Subj. + will (won't) + be + v. ing**

**Subj. + may (may not) + be + v. ing**

في الاحتمال نستخدم may

### Usage الاستخدام

يعبر عن حدث سوف يستمر لفترة في المستقبل.

### Time expressions التعبيرات الزمنية

**at** + وقت في المستقبل

**from ... to ...** + وقت في المستقبل

**This time** + وقت في المستقبل

**In** + مدة + time

**all ...** + وقت في المستقبل

**A routine in the future**

**Future continuous**

**Present continuous**

**Future continuous**

### Examples

**I'll be watching** the final match **at 7 p.m.** tomorrow.

**From 3 to 5 tomorrow**, I'll be visiting my relatives.

**This time next week**, we **will be travelling** to Luxor.

**In a week's time**, Ali **will be sitting** for the final exam.

You have a lot of homework. You **will be doing it all day** tomorrow.

**Don't invite** Samy by phone. I'll be **meeting** him tomorrow.

المستقبل المستمر والمضارع المستمر للأحداث المرتب لها في المستقبل.

**I'll be meeting** my old friends tomorrow.

**I'm meeting** my old friends tomorrow.

إذا كان الحدث مستمر في المستقبل ولا يكون مرتبطاً له نستخدم المستقبل المستمر فقط.

**Don't phone me after 11 p.m.** I'll be sleeping.  
 اليوم لا يرتب له



## Present Simple

المضارع البسيط

He, She, It, اسم مفرد + v + s, es or ies / You, We, They, اسم جمع + تصريف الأول

التكوين

### الاستخدام Usage

### Examples

#### Timetables

جداول المواعيد

The plane **reaches** London at 9 p.m.

بعد الروابط الدالة على المستقبل

Before the police **arrive**, I'll **leave** everything as it is.  
After he **finishes** his work, he **will help** me.  
When she **writes** the reports, she **will give** them to her boss.



## Present Continuous

المضارع المستمر

Subj. + am/is/are + v. ing

التكوين

### الاستخدام Usage

### Examples

For fixed arrangements in the near future (Arranged future plans).

- يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل مع الأشياء التي تم الترتيب لها في المستقبل القريب.

I'm **flying** to London tomorrow morning.

(I've got the ticket.)

I can't watch the final match with you we're **giving** a party tomorrow.

(Everything has been arranged.)

## Language

## Check point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She ..... to Spain next spring.

- ☐ a) is travelling    ☐ b) travels    ☐ c) has travelled    ☐ d) would travel

2. I feel terrible with a severe stomachache. I think I ..... be sick.

- ☐ a) should    ☐ b) am going to    ☐ c) am to    ☐ d) will

3. Most of our shopping ..... on the internet in the future.

- ☐ a) will be doing    ☐ b) will do  
☐ c) will be done    ☐ d) is going to do

4. We ..... the meeting as soon as he arrives.

- ☐ a) start    ☐ b) have started    ☐ c) started    ☐ d) will start

5. I wonder what I ..... this time next year.

- ☐ a) 'll do    ☐ b) shal do    ☐ c) do    ☐ d) 'll be doing



**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1.** Ola ..... the washing by 6 o'clock, so we can go out for dinner.  
☐ a) will finish                      b) is finishing  
      ☐ c) will have finished             d) is going to finish
- 2.** I expect that Egypt ..... much progress in the coming years.  
☐ a) will achieve    b) will have achieved    c) going to achieve    d) achieved
- 3.** Don't wait for me for dinner, I ..... my brother with his research.  
☐ a) will be helped    b) won't help             c) may have helped    d) may be helping
- 4.** Why don't you ask Ahmed for help? I'm sure that he ..... you.  
☐ a) is helping                          b) will help  
      ☐ c) will have helped                 d) will have been helping
- 5.** I expect the bridge ..... by next October.  
☐ a) to build            b) will build             c) to have been built    d) will have built
- 6.** We will wait at the station room until the train .....  
☐ a) will come            b) came                  c) had come             d) comes
- 7.** You're carrying too much. I ..... the door for you.  
☐ a) won't open        b) will open             c) will have opened    d) will be opening
- 8.** This time next week, I ..... for my first exam!  
☐ a) will be sitting    b) sat                    c) will sit                d) will have sat
- 9.** Oh, you'll recognise him. He ..... a brown leather jacket and a red scarf.  
☐ a) will wear                            b) will have been wearing  
      ☐ c) will have worn                      d) will be wearing
- 10.** Will lunch ..... by the time we arrive?  
☐ a) eat                    b) be eating             c) have been eaten    d) have eaten
- 11.** "I'll send you an email tomorrow." The right situation for the sentence is .....  
☐ a) request            b) promise             c) offer                  d) threat
- 12.** In the future, half of the world ... English and communicate well with each other.  
☐ a) will speak                            b) will have been spoken  
      ☐ c) will be spoken                         d) is speaking



13. We expect ..... building more than 100 natural gas stations by the end of this year.  
☐ a) will start      ☐ b) to be started      ☐ c) we will be starting      ☐ d) to have started
14. I'm sorry, but you need to stay in the office until you ..... your work.  
☐ a) had finished      ☐ b) will finish  
☐ c) have finished      ☐ d) will have finished
15. Do you think more people ..... to use public transport in twenty years' time?  
☐ a) will have decided      ☐ b) will be decided  
☐ c) are deciding      ☐ d) will be deciding
16. I promise to ..... these three pages by the time you come back home.  
☐ a) will have translated      ☐ b) have translated  
☐ c) will translate      ☐ d) translate
17. In three years' time, most cars in Egypt ..... on natural gas or solar energy.  
☐ a) are running      ☐ b) will have been run      ☐ c) will be run      ☐ d) will run
18. "Our team will probably win the game tomorrow." The right situation for the sentence is a .....  
☐ a) prediction      ☐ b) request      ☐ c) warning      ☐ d) promise
19. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically correct?  
☐ a) This time tomorrow, I'll have cleaned the whole house.  
☐ b) By this time tomorrow, I'll have cleaned the whole house.  
☐ c) By yesterday, I'll have cleaned the whole house.  
☐ d) Before tomorrow, I've cleaned the whole house.
20. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically correct?  
☐ a) By this time next year, I'll be learning Spanish at university.  
☐ b) Next week, I'll be learning 3 languages in addition to English.  
☐ c) In two years' time, I will be studying Spanish at university.  
☐ d) This time next year, I'll have visited my uncle in America.

## Longman and Previous Exams

21. The camera is very nice; I ..... it.

- ☐ a) will be buying      ☐ b) will buy  
☐ c) won't buy      ☐ d) will have bought

Longman

22. Tarek has decided to buy a new car, so he ..... the old one.

Longman

- ☐ a) will be selling    b) would be sold    c) will have sold    d) is going to sell

23. I'm sure more trees ..... along the way to our town by the end of next year.

Longman

- ☐ a) will have been planted    b) will be planting  
c) will have planted    d) were planted

24. I can't visit you tonight because I ..... for the final exam.

Longman

- ☐ a) will have studied    b) will study  
c) will be studying    d) will be studied

25. Which one of the following sentences is structurally correct?

Longman

- ☐ a) Perhaps Ahmed may visit us tomorrow.  
b) A new secondary school for girls will be building in our village.  
c) I will have bought a bigger flat by the end of next year.  
d) What will you be done all next evening?

26. In three months' time, how much ..... on your project?

Longman

- ☐ a) will you do    b) will you have been doing  
c) will you have done    d) may you do

27. Huda ..... to a new flat by this time next year.

Longman

- ☐ a) is going to move    b) will have moved  
c) will move    d) moves

28. Before I travel, I ..... all the pending work.

Longman

- ☐ a) will have finished    b) have finished  
c) finished    d) will have

29. Everything is arranged. I ..... to London next week.

Longman

- ☐ a) travel    b) going to travel  
c) am being travelled    d) am travelling

30. I can't meet you tonight because I ..... for my sister's wedding party.

Longman

- ☐ a) was preparing    b) have prepared  
c) will be preparing    d) will have prepared



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### Vocabulary

- The clerk in the tourist office said the passengers must ..... in mind that the trip price does not include transport.  
☐ a) keep                      b) change                      c) design                      d) damage
- The firefighters responded to the fire alarm in minutes. The adjective of the verb "respond" is ".....".  
☐ a) respondent                      b) response                      c) responsive                      d) responsively
- There has been a/an ..... increase in the number of women who work in politics in recent years.  
☐ a) sighted                      b) available                      c) significant                      d) useless
- Some YouTubers and influencers are ready to do even improper things to increase their ..... and views.  
☐ a) scene                      b) secrecy                      c) secrets                      d) popularity
- For a beginner, this camera produces satisfactory results. The antonym of the adjective "satisfactory" is ".....".  
☐ a) inappropriate                      b) sufficient                      c) adequate                      d) affluent
- Mansoura is the capital city of Dakahlia ..... in northeastern Egypt.  
☐ a) ministry                      b) governorate                      c) kingdom                      d) governor
- The spokesman ..... and thought for a moment before answering the reporter's question.  
☐ a) paused                      b) jogged                      c) shouted                      d) deleted
- Many new species have been discovered in the Amazon ..... when explorers reached it.  
☐ a) division                      b) suburb                      c) district                      d) region
- My grandfather used to leave his umbrella in a/an ..... place by the door so that he couldn't forget it on the way out.  
☐ a) minor                      b) convenient                      c) doubtful                      d) expected
- The authority was seeking the best ..... to the city's traffic problem.  
☐ a) evolution                      b) solution                      c) devotion                      d) deterioration
- Children have different ..... of learning: some learn by seeing, some by hearing and some by acting.  
☐ a) curricula                      b) grades                      c) styles                      d) terms
- Because of his ....., John depended on his mother to dress and feed him.  
☐ a) strength                      b) skill                      c) talent                      d) disability
- We had a/an ..... about what we should buy for our mother's birthday.  
☐ a) argument                      b) regret                      c) account                      d) settlement
- It is believed that every new system has its good ..... and its drawbacks.  
☐ a) points                      b) marks                      c) points                      d) revisions
- The old bridge will be closed for safety ..... until it is repaired completely.  
☐ a) routines                      b) recipes                      c) results                      d) reasons



## Language

16. I ..... him a lift until I've had my car repaired.  
☐ a) wasn't able to give      b) will be giving  
☐ c) won't be able to give      d) hadn't given
17. By the time he gets home, she ..... the entire house.  
☐ a) will have cleaned      b) will be cleaned  
☐ c) will have been cleaning      d) will have been cleaned
18. After Ahmed finishes this game, he ..... 6 computer games.  
☐ a) will be playing      b) will have played  
☐ c) will be played      d) is playing
19. When I see you tomorrow, I ..... you my new book.  
☐ a) show      b) will be showing      c) will have shown      d) will show
20. I ..... my friend at 8 o'clock on Friday.  
☐ a) am meeting      b) meet      c) will have met      d) will be met
21. Don't phone me tonight. I ..... for my French exam.  
☐ a) study      b) will be studying      c) will study      d) will have studied
22. If you don't have a car, wait and I ..... you to the station.  
☐ a) am driving      b) drive      c) will drive      d) will have driven
23. After you ..... a nap غفوة, you will feel a lot better.  
☐ a) will have taken      b) took      c) will take      d) have taken
24. A: Where is Judy?  
 B: She won't be here ..... 8 o'clock.  
☐ a) after      b) until      c) by the time      d) on
25. A new bridge will ..... over the Nile by next year.  
☐ a) be built      b) be building      c) have been built      d) have built
26. Do you think you ..... to drive in five years' time?  
☐ a) will have learnt      b) will be learnt  
☐ c) are learning      d) learn
27. Hopefully, by this time next week, I ..... my driving test and I'll finally be able to get a car.  
☐ a) will pass      b) will be passing      c) have passed      d) will have passed
28. Once this room is finished, we ..... six of the seven rooms in the house.  
 Not bad for two days' work.  
☐ a) will be painting      b) will paint  
☐ c) will have painted      d) are painting
29. Do you think you ..... children by the time you are 30?  
☐ a) will have      b) will have had  
☐ c) are going to have      d) are having
30. Which one of the following sentences is incorrectly structured?  
☐ a) The door is closed. Shall I open it for you?  
☐ b) As the door is closed, I'll open it for you.  
☐ c) The door is closed. Will you open it for me?  
☐ d) As the door is closed, I'll be opening it for you.



## Writing Skill

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات  
يرجى الرجوع لمسحقات المهارات.

## A BLOG POST

- You work with a group of volunteers helping the society. Write a post asking for volunteers.

## Writing tips

## Tips for preparing the post:

Say what your group does to help in the area.

Describe what issues you want to improve.

Say how you want to do this.

## MODEL BLOG POST

We are a group of volunteers who are working with the local authority, which looks after the river and canals in our town. We also help out with other local issues. Would you consider working with us?

Our current project is removing the rubbish from the river and canals near our town. These are important for getting drinking water and for agriculture. However, there is a lot of rubbish in them and this is not satisfactory.

Our volunteers are working hard to clean the river. We raised enough money for the equipment we will use and for hiring special vehicles to take the rubbish to landfill sites. We just need some young men and women to help us do the work.

We will be at the town youth hostel all day on Friday, March 3. Come and join us at a time that is convenient for you.





## (A) Reading Comprehension

قاموس بالخدمات الجديدة في  
قصر الشمام والقرايم نهاية الخراب

## 1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Modern means of transport have played an important role in the advancement of human civilisation. As humans moved from donkeys and horse carts to cars and trains, the pace of business and development increased rapidly. I believe bicycles are neither a convenient nor an efficient means of transport in the 21<sup>st</sup> century.

While a bicycle can be beneficial for travelling over short distances and keeping a person fit, when it comes to long distances, humans have no choice but modern transport, such as cars, buses and trains. These media move fast and help us get things done in a timely manner. For instance, a recent report by the World Trade Organisation claimed that countries with extensive road and rail network that support modern, fast transport have higher GDP growth rates than countries that rely on traditional means of movement.

Moreover, modern transport can carry people as well as goods over long distances conveniently. Not only are these safer and easier to use, but also support bulk movement of goods that increase commerce. Bicycle, on the other hand, is neither convenient nor suitable for bulk transport. A recent research has found that the amount of goods and number of people transported using trains in 2016 is equal to movement of all goods and people during the past one millennium ending in the year 1901.

Though bicycles are pollution-free and keep a person healthy, they are more suitable for health reasons than for transportation. Modern mechanised means of transport cannot be replaced with traditional and slow media. This will result in reducing the pace of human civilisation's growth.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## 1. What caused the rapid increase in business?

- ☐ a) The appearance of cars, trains, planes, etc.
- ☐ b) The disappearance of carts.
- ☐ c) The beginning of the 21<sup>st</sup> century.
- ☐ d) The size of countries.

## 2. The abbreviation "GDP" is something related to .....

- ☐ a) daily professions
- ☐ b) great patience
- ☐ c) gross domestic product
- ☐ d) good doctors

- 3. Although the bike is used for sports and short distances, it ..... .
- ☐ a) causes much pollution                      b) is inconvenient for bulk transport
- ☐ c) is unsuitable for adults                      d) costs much money
4. The load of trains in 2016 is equal to ..... years.
- ☐ a) 2000                      b) 100                      c) 1901                      d) 1000
5. Which one of the following choices gives the same meaning as the word "beneficial"?
- ☐ a) Disadvantageous.                      b) Harmful.
- ☐ c) Useless.                      d) Helpful.
6. One advantage of using the bicycle is that it ..... .
- ☐ a) is pollution free                      b) keeps a person wealthy
- ☐ c) is more unsuitable for health                      d) is earlier than tra'ns
7. What makes modern means of transport important is that they ..... .
- ☐ a) don't need large spaces to bark
- ☐ b) are smaller than those of the past
- ☐ c) can carry people as well as goods
- ☐ d) cost less money than those of the past
8. Infer if cars, trains and planes didn't exist, .... .
- ☐ a) we would return to the slow means of transport again
- ☐ b) we would invent other means that would be more modern
- ☐ c) the world would be destroyed
- ☐ d) we would stay at home

## (B) Translation

### 2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1. The expansion of the underground lines is one of the biggest challenges that Egypt faces nowadays. However, the Egyptians have always proved that they are able to carry out such great projects.

- (a) إن توسيع خطوط مترو الأنفاق أحد أكبر التحديات التي واجهتها مصر في الوقت الماضي ومع ذلك فلقد أثبت المصريون أنهم قادرون دائما على تنفيذ مثل هذه البرامج الكبيرة.
- (b) إن توسيع خطوط مترو الأنفاق أحد أكبر التحديات التي تواجهها مصر في الوقت الحالي ومع ذلك فلقد أثبت المصريون أنهم قادرون دائما على تنفيذ مثل هذه المشروعات الكبيرة.
- (c) إن تحديث خطوط مترو الأنفاق أحد أكبر التحديات التي واجهتها مصر في الوقت الحالي ومع ذلك فلقد أثبت المصريون أنهم قادرون دائما على تنفيذ مثل هذه المشروعات الكبيرة.
- (d) إن توسيع خدمات مترو الأنفاق أحد أكبر التحديات التي تواجهها مصر في الوقت الحالي ومع ذلك فلقد أثبت المصريون أنهم قادرون دائما على إصلاح مثل هذه المشروعات الكبيرة.

2. Private schools and universities can play an important role in developing education and enhancing students' abilities. They have more facilities than governmental ones.

- (a) يمكن أن تلعب المدارس والجامعات الخاصة دورًا هامًا في تطوير التعليم وتعزيز قدرات الطلاب فليديهم تسهيلات أكثر من مثيلاتها الحكومية.
- (b) لا بد أن تلعب المدارس والجامعات الخاصة دورًا هامًا في تطوير التعليم وتعزيز قدرات الطلاب فليديهم رأسمال أكثر من مثيلاتها الحكومية.
- (c) يمكن أن تلعب المدارس والجامعات الدولية دورًا هامًا في تطوير التعليم وإظهار قدرات الطلاب فليديهم تسهيلات أكثر من مثيلاتها الحكومية.
- (d) يمكن أن تلعب المدارس والجامعات الخاصة دورًا جديدًا في تطوير التعليم وتعزيز قدرات الطلاب فليديهم تسهيلات أكثر من مثيلاتها الحكومية.

3. The government has built one of the biggest solar power stations in Aswan. It is expected to produce about 90% of the electricity produced by the High Dam when the project is complete.

- (a) قامت الحكومة ببناء واحدة من أكبر محطات الطاقة الضوئية في أسوان، ومن المتوقع أن تنتج حوالي ٩٠٪ من الكهرباء التي ينتجها السد العالي قبل اكتمال المشروع.
- (b) ستقوم الحكومة ببناء واحدة من أهم محطات الطاقة الشمسية في أسوان، ومن المتوقع أن تنتج حوالي ٩٠٪ من الكهرباء التي ينتجها السد العالي عند اكتمال المشروع.
- (c) قامت الحكومة ببناء واحدة من أكبر محطات توليد الطاقة في أسوان، ومن المتوقع أن تنتج ما يزيد على ٩٠٪ من الكهرباء التي ينتجها السد العالي عند اكتمال المشروع.
- (d) قامت الحكومة ببناء واحدة من أكبر محطات الطاقة لشمسية في أسوان، ومن المتوقع أن تنتج حوالي ٩٠٪ من الكهرباء التي ينتجها السد العالي عند اكتمال المشروع.

**(B) Choose the correct English translation:**

٤. الزيادة السكانية أحد أهم معوقات التنمية والتقدم في كثير من بلاد العالم وخاصة الدول النامية، لذلك يجب البحث عن حلول لها.

- ☐ a) Overpopulation is one of the obstacles to development and progress in few world countries, especially developed ones. So, we should look for solutions to it.
- b) Overpopulation is one of the obstacles to investment and progress in many world countries, generally developing ones. So, we should look for solutions to it.
- c) Overpopulation is one of the obstacles to development and progress in many world countries, especially developing ones. So, we should look for solutions to it.
- d) Overpopulation is one of the obstacles to development and progress in many world communities, especially developing ones. So, we may look for solutions to it.

5. حماية الآثار مسئولية كل مواطن في مصر وليست مهمة تقوم بها الحكومة وموظفو الآثار فقط؛ فعلينا جميعاً أن نشارك في ذلك ولو حتى بحملات التوعية.

- a) Protecting the monuments is the responsibility of every citizen in Egypt. It is not a task done only by the government and monument officials. We all should take part in this, even through awareness campaigns.
- b) Protecting the monuments is the responsibility of every citizen in Egypt. It is not a task done only by the government and monument managers. We all should take part in this, even through awareness campaigns.
- c) Predicting the monuments is the responsibility of every citizen in Egypt. It is not a task done only by the environment and monument officials. We all should take part in this, even through awareness campaigns.
- d) Protecting the monuments is the responsibility of every citizen in Egypt. It is not a task done only by the government and monument offices. We all should take part in this, even through awareness campaigns.

6. تتطلع شعوب العالم إلى السلام والاستقرار اللذين تهدهما النزاعات التي تسود أجزاء كثيرة من العالم وأهمها منطقة الشرق الأوسط.

- a) World countries look forward to peace and stability which are frightened by the disputes which spread in many parts of the world, generally the Middle East.
- b) World countries look forward to peace and stability which are threatened by the disputes which spread in many parts of the world, especially the Middle East.
- c) World countries search for peace and stability which are threatened by the changes which spread in many parts of the world, especially the Middle East.
- d) World countries look forward to peace and capability which are threatened by the disputes which published in many parts of the world, especially the Far East.

## (c) Writing

3 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

► "Ways to solve the traffic problem in Egypt"

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.

I used the right structure.

I used a topic sentence.

wrote the conclusion.

I used the right punctuation.



### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

During the break at school, Aya is talking with her friend Walaa about her favourite music.

**Walaa:** Hi, Aya. Why are you putting on your headphone?

**Aya:** Hi, Walaa. (1).....

**Walaa:** What kind of music are you listening to?

**Aya:** (2).....

**Walaa:** That's strange. Nobody ever listens to this kind of music.

**Aya:** I think we have a duty to keep our heritage and this is one of them.

(3).....?

**Walaa:** For me, pop music is my love.

**Aya:** (4).....?

**Walaa:** Yes, it's a bit noisy, but I like its rhythm very much. I usually download it from the internet.

**Aya:** It's time to get back to class. Bye, Walaa.

**Walaa:** Bye, Aya.

### A Glimpse of Revelation II

#### 2 (A) Answer the following questions:

1. How has Al-Azhar proved itself as an eligible centre to accept differences?
2. What does Al-Azhar's call for a civilised dialogue between Muslims and non-Muslims aim at?

#### (B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. Al-Azhar ..... the rights of children, women, the poor and the weak.  
☐ a) denies      ☐ b) releases      ☐ c) advocates      ☐ d) challenges
4. Al-Azhar's initiative attempts to find ways to treat the disease of ..... violence and terrorism.  
☐ a) extremism      ☐ b) maternity      ☐ c) brotherhood      ☐ d) marriage

### King Lear

#### 3 (A) Answer the following questions:

1. Where does Edgar promise to take Gloucester?
2. How did Cordelia feel when she read the letter about her father's suffering?

#### (B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. The player's nose was ..... after he was hit by an opponent.  
☐ a) bleeding      ☐ b) curing      ☐ c) defecting      ☐ d) breeding
4. Why did Goneril intend to use Edmund?  
☐ a) Because he was Gloucester's son.      ☐ b) Because he was still young.  
☐ c) Because he fought many armies      ☐ d) Because he was hungry for power.

#### 4 (A) Translate into Arabic:

- Stress affects us both physically and mentally, so reducing it is a must.

#### (B) Translate into English:

- أظهر الأزهر دائما اهتمامه بقضايا الأمة الإسلامية، ومنها قضية فلسطين.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(13M)

1. Most new books are also available in an ..... form which you can read on an e-reader or mobile phone.  
☐ a) electricity    ☐ b) electric    ☐ c) electrical    ☐ d) electronic
2. The teacher has the ..... to punish the naughty students and discipline the whole class.  
☐ a) necessity    ☐ b) authority    ☐ c) validity    ☐ d) expiry
3. Egypt has a lot of sports ..... which make it able to host international competitions.  
☐ a) probabilities    ☐ b) accessibilities    ☐ c) facilities    ☐ d) availabilities
4. Can we look for a quieter place for our conversation? This café looks very .....  
☐ a) public    ☐ b) private    ☐ c) special    ☐ d) general
5. The railway system in Egypt will improve completely ..... the next ten years.  
☐ a) on    ☐ b) for    ☐ c) about    ☐ d) over
6. In the present economic climate, investors should be cautious. The antonym of the adjective "present" is ".....".  
☐ a) previous    ☐ b) informal    ☐ c) current    ☐ d) main
7. The meeting ended in a ..... so the team couldn't reach the right decision.  
☐ a) solution    ☐ b) disagreement    ☐ c) compromise    ☐ d) celebration
8. By the time he ....., Tamer will have taken all the necessary classes.  
☐ a) graduates    ☐ b) is going to graduate    ☐ c) graduated    ☐ d) will graduate
9. By this time next month, I hope they ..... the community centre.  
☐ a) will be building    ☐ b) have built    ☐ c) will build    ☐ d) will have built
10. We are already building a new shopping centre and we ..... it by 2025.  
☐ a) will have completed    ☐ b) are completing    ☐ c) complete    ☐ d) will be completing
11. You should come earlier if you want to speak to her. By three o'clock, she .....  
☐ a) won't leave    ☐ b) will leave    ☐ c) will have left    ☐ d) is leaving
12. Do you think you ..... writing that report by the time I get back?  
☐ a) will finish    ☐ b) will have finished    ☐ c) will be finishing    ☐ d) are finishing
13. The project is going to ..... before the deadline.  
☐ a) have been completed    ☐ b) be completing    ☐ c) complete    ☐ d) have completed

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

What does it mean to be lucky? It commonly means someone who gets something valuable without really trying, someone who is in the right place at the right time. The person who buys a winning lottery ticket or who discovers a lost painting by a famous painter—these are lucky people. Yet, luck does not guarantee happiness. Accepting ourselves exactly as we are at this moment provides the courage to move forward. Believing that all our choices in the past were the best we could have made frees us from regret. It also reinforces our belief that we are as good as we can be now.

We commonly speak of good luck and bad luck, and talk of people being lucky or unlucky, and of things happening by pure chance. Yet, science tells us there is no such thing like chance or luck. It's not luck, but labour that makes men. Luck is ever waiting for something to turn up. Labour with keen eyes and strong will always turn up something. Man's success in life will be proportionate to his efforts, to his industry and to his attention to small things.

The best preparation for the future is self-acceptance in the present. Self-acceptance and trust in people are the foundations of confidence and courage. Added to action, they lead to more opportunities for unexpected events—which people call luck—that can enrich our lives.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**14. Trust in people .....**

- ☐ a) leads to unexpected events
- ☐ b) reminds us of the past
- ☐ c) means a good choice
- ☐ d) leads to confidence and courage

**15. A person who ..... is a lucky person.**

- ☐ a) passes a final exam
- ☐ b) breaks a record
- ☐ c) runs into an old friend
- ☐ d) buys a car of the latest model

**16. The underlined word "they" refers to .....**

- ☐ a) self-acceptance and trust
- ☐ b) our choices in the past
- ☐ c) the right place at the right time
- ☐ d) unexpected events

► 17. The antonym of the underlined word "forward" is ".....".

- ☐ a) advancing b) heading  
☐ c) backward d) onward

18. The best title for the passage is ".....".

- ☐ a) Luck comes to those who work  
☐ b) Working hard doesn't bring luck  
☐ c) Waiting for luck brings happiness  
☐ d) Luck comes to those who wait for it

19. Self-acceptance and trust lead to .....

- ☐ a) frustration b) expected events  
☐ c) luck d) nervous breakdown

20. Science tells us that there .....

- ☐ a) will be much luck in the future  
☐ b) is no such thing like chance or luck  
☐ c) are many people who are lucky  
☐ d) is a medicine for bringing luck

21. The writer wants to tell us that man's success depends on .....

- ☐ a) how much he is lucky  
☐ b) turning bad luck into good luck  
☐ c) helping others to him  
☐ d) his efforts

► 22. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

(4M)

- We must try to make our world better. If humans contributed to controlling global warming, this world would be cooler, and the high temperatures we currently suffer from would decrease.

(a) يجب أن نحاول أن نجعل عالمنا أفضل. إذا ساهم البشر في السيطرة على الاحتباس الحراري، سيكون هذا العالم أكثر لطفاً ودرجات الحرارة المرتفعة التي نعاني منها حالياً ستخف.

(b) يجب أن نحاول أن نجعل عالمنا أفضل. إذا ساهم البشر في السيطرة على التنوع البيئي، سيكون هذا العالم أكثر لطفاً ودرجات الحرارة المرتفعة التي كنا نعاني منها ستخف.

(c) يجب أن نحاول أن نجعل بيئتنا أفضل. إذا ساهم البشر في التأقلم على الاحتباس الحراري، سيكون هذا العالم أكثر لطفاً ومعدلات الحرارة المرتفعة التي نعاني منها حالياً ستخف.

(d) يجب أن نحاول أن نجعل عالمنا أكثر راحة. إذا تجاهل البشر السيطرة على الاحتباس الحراري، سيكون هذا العالم أكثر سوءاً ودرجات الحرارة المرتفعة التي نعاني منها حالياً سترتفع.



- لقد أصبحت التكنولوجيا شيئاً أساسياً في حياتنا فقد قدمت التكنولوجيا الحديثة لنا الكثير من المعجزات الطبية، ومنها أشياء كان يظن البعض أنها خيال علمي يصعب الوصول إليه.

- [illegible]



- 1.



المؤيد من التدريبات لطلبة الفائقين  
الدعوة لعضية الخطاب ص 344



# Module

# 5



Unit 9

**Conservation**

Unit 10

**The News**



## Unit 9

# Conservation



### Objectives

- Reading** : An online advertisement for volunteer conservation trips
- Writing** : An email on the best solution to a local problem; An opinion essay about the benefits of volunteering
- Listening** : A news report about the protection of the environment
- Speaking** : Discussing the benefits of volunteering; Discussing problems and choosing the best solution
- Language** : Comparative phrases; Used to / didn't use to
- Life Skills** : Problem-solving; Negotiation and decision-making; Collaboration





Watch a video

## A

## Vocabulary

## Key Vocabulary

## المفردات الرئيسية

biodiversity (n)	التنوع البيئي	native inhabitants (n)	السكان الأصليين
challenging (adj)	متحد / صعب التحقيق	preserve (v) (d)	يحافظ على / يحفظ
expedition (n)	بعثة / رحلة استكشافية	scholarship (n)	منحة دراسية
		species (n)	نوع / فصيلة

## Vocabulary on Reading &amp; Listening Texts

## مفردات لصوص القراءة والاستماع

actually (adv)	بالفعل	ensure (v) (d)	يضمن / يؤكد	recycling (n)	إعادة التدوير
advert (n)	إعلان	environment (n)	البيئة	return (v) (ed)	يرجع / يعود
bay (n)	خليج	exotic (adj)	مثير / غريب	rewarding (adj)	مجز / مرضي
coast (n)	ساحل	face (n) (v) (d)	وجه / يواجه	rule (n)	قاعدة / قانون
colony (n)	مستعمرة	forest (n)	غابة	site (n)	موقع
colourful (adj)	زاهي الألوان	form (n) (v) (ed)	شكل / يشكل	slightly (adv)	بشكل طفيف
complain (v) (ed)	يشكو	generation (n)	جيل	soil (n)	تربة
conservation (n)	حفاظ / وقاية	Great Barrier Reef	الحاجز المرجاني العظيم	sports fields (n)	ملاعب رياضية
coral reefs (n)	الشعاب المرجانية	industry (n)	صناعة	starfish (n)	نجم البحر
council (n)	مجلس	involved (adj)	منخرط في / متورط / مشفرك	survival (n)	النجاة / البقاء حيا
creature (n)	مخلوق	limit (n)	حد / قيد	task (n)	مهمة
crop (n)	محصول	livestock (n)	ماشية	threat (n)	تهديد
culture (n)	ثقافة	monitor (v) (ed)	يراقب	tourism (n)	السياحة
digital (adj)	رقمي	partly (adv)	جزئيا	unique (adj)	متميز / منفرد
disappear (v) (ed)	يختفي	progress (n)	تقدم	variety (n)	تنوع
diving (n)	الغطس	project (n)	مشروع	volunteer (n) (v) (ed)	متطوع / يتطوع
economy (n)	اقتصاد	rainforests (n)	غابات استوائية	waste (n) (v) (d)	نفاية / يسرف / يضيع
endangered (adj)	معرض للخطر / للانقراض	realise (v) (d)	يدرك	well-known (adj)	مشهور / معروف جيدا



## Workbook Vocabulary

## مفردات كتاب التدريبات

art (n)	فن	original (adj)	أصلي / أساسي	state (n)	حالة
behaviour (n)	سلوك	recognise (v) (d)	يتعرف على	support (n) (v) (ed)	دعم / يدعم / يساند
female (n) (adj)	أنثى / أنثوي	rubbish (n)	قمامة	tusk (n)	ناب الفيل
male (n) (adj)	ذكر / ذكوري	souvenir (n)	تذكارات / هدية تذكارية	typical (adj)	أصلي / نموذجي

## Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Many plant and animal ..... are found only in the rainforests, so we must protect them.  
☐ a) species      b) pieces      c) spices      d) paces
- Some scientists plan to start a/an ..... into the Arctic to study the effects of climate change.  
☐ a) flight      b) duty      c) expedition      d) picnic
- The young businessman needed a loan from the bank to start his new .....  
☐ a) message      b) career      c) object      d) project
- Scientists say that by staying within the safe environmental limits, much of the ..... would be protected.  
☐ a) biology      b) biodiversity      c) biochemistry      d) geology
- The famous runner attended the university on an athletic .....  
☐ a) race      b) medal      c) scholarship      d) league
- The ..... inhabitants of America are now called the "Red Indians".  
☐ a) modern      b) native      c) mixed      d) foreign
- The fishermen praised the government's efforts to help ..... fish stocks in Lake Manzala.  
☐ a) damage      b) waste      c) reverse      d) preserve
- Some of the scenes in the action film 'Mission Impossible' were ..... even for an experienced actor.  
☐ a) challenging      b) simple      c) normal      d) ordinary
- I'm going to ..... to the customer service about the salesman's bad treatment.  
☐ a) complain      b) explain      c) greet      d) salute
- Regular tests enable teachers to monitor the ..... of each student.  
☐ a) decrease      b) failure      c) effect      d) progress

## Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

## التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

around big cities	حول المدن الكبيرة	go on a trip/journey	يذهب في رحلة	keep ... clean	يحافظ على النظافة
at the same time	في نفس الوقت	have a bath	يأخذ حماماً	make sure	يتأكد
apply for	يتقدم بطلب	fight for	يحارب / يناضل من أجل	Involved in	منخرط / مشارك في
care for	يهتم به	happen to	يحدث لـ		
difference between	اختلاف بين	interested in	مهتم به	ready for	مستعد لـ

## Derivatives

## المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
behave	يتصرف	behaviour	سلوك / تصرف	behavioural	سلوكي
challenge	يتحدى	challenge	تحدي	challenging	متحد / صعب التحقيق
conserve	يحفظ	conservation	حفاظ / وقاية	conservative	واقي / محفظ
preserve	يحفظ	preservation	حفاظ / وقاية	preservative	واقي / محافظ
recognise	يتعرف على	recognition	تعرف / تمييز	recognisable	يمكن تمييزه
recycle	يعيد تدوير	recycling	إعادة تدوير	recyclable recycled	يمكن تدويره معاد تدويره
support	يدعم / يساند	support supporter	دعم / مساندة مدافع / مساند	supportive/supporting	داعم / مساند
survive	ينجو	survival survivor	النجاة ناجي	surviving	ناجي
vary	يتنوع	variety	تنوع	various variable	متنوع متغير

## Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

These materials are **recycled** into other packaging products. (v)

There should be a **recycling** plan in each town to protect the environment. (n)

The blue basket in the park is for **recyclable** garbage. (adj)

## Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym	المتضاد
complain	يشكو	protest/disapprove/criticise		approve/agree	يستحسن
conservation	حفاظ	preservation/protection		destruction/negligence	تدمير/إهمال
ensure	يضمن	guarantee/assure		deny/endanger	ينكر/يعرض لخطر
monitor	يراقب	observe/supervise		ignore/neglect	يتجاهل
preserve	يحفظ	keep/care for		abandon/harm	يتروك/يُهجر/يُضر
rewarding	مُجْزٍ/مُرضٍ	profitable/valuable		worthless/valueless	بلا قيمة
support	دعم	backing/encouragement		disapproval hindrance	عدم استحسان إعاقة
task	مهمة	duty/assignment		irresponsibility/aid	عدم مسئولية/مساعدة
unique	متميز	extraordinary/exceptional		common/familiar	عادي/مألوف
variety	تنوع	diversity/variation		similarity	تشابه

### Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The police ensure security for people in the country. The word "ensure" is similar in meaning to the word ".....".  
☐ a) guarantee    ☐ b) ignore    ☐ c) refuse    ☐ d) show
- Our neighbour says that she can't go out to work because she has to stay at home to care ..... her elderly mother.  
☐ a) in    ☐ b) at    ☐ c) by    ☐ d) for
- When we were young, my mother insisted that we all should ..... a bath before going to bed.  
☐ a) have    ☐ b) give    ☐ c) do    ☐ d) devise
- Experts say that parents influence the ..... of their children by being their role models.  
☐ a) behave    ☐ b) behaving    ☐ c) behaviour    ☐ d) behaved
- You are supposed to press these two buttons ..... the same time to take a screenshot on the mobile.  
☐ a) in    ☐ b) at    ☐ c) with    ☐ d) of
- I think it's important to support local businesses by buying locally. The adjective of the verb "support" is ".....".  
☐ a) supports    ☐ b) supporter    ☐ c) supportive    ☐ d) supportively



## Reading Text



### Book your conservation volunteer trip today!

Are you interested in conservation? Are you ready for a new challenge? If your answer to both of these questions is 'yes', we have some excellent volunteer programmes for you.

#### A – New Zealand

Come to New Zealand and help us preserve the country's unique biodiversity. You'll plant trees so that endangered birds have a far better environment to live in<sup>(1)</sup>. You'll also help us to monitor changes in a variety of plant species in different areas. Another slightly more challenging task is cleaning beaches and helping to run recycling centres where local people can bring their waste<sup>(2)</sup>.

Twenty-one days/Prices with flights from \$3,799

#### B – Thailand

Here in Thailand, we're involved in caring for elephants who used to take tourists on rides around big cities. You'll monitor these elephants' progress as they start their new lives in the forest to make sure that they're healthy and happy. These unique and beautiful creatures love to play with our volunteers almost as much as they love having a bath in the river with them!

Fourteen days/Prices with flights from \$2,599

#### C – Brazil

Brazil is well-known for its amazing biodiversity. However, the native inhabitants of the Amazon face exactly the same threat as the rainforests<sup>(3)</sup> – they are also fighting for their survival. You can help the native inhabitants to preserve their languages in digital form for future generations. What is more, you can apply for a scholarship for the costs of this rewarding trip.

Sixteen days/Prices with flights from \$2,599



### Notes on some sentences:

#### ملاحظات على بعض الجمل

- ١- تستخدم أداة الربط (so that) بمعنى لكي، كم لاحظ استخدام (far) قبل صفة التفضيل بمعنى (أفضل بكثير).
- ٢- استخدام صيغة (cleaning) (verb + ing) بعد (is) هنا ليس زمن المضارع المستمر ولكن (cleaning) هنا اسم (التنظيف) بمثابة مفعول.
- ٣- لاحظ استخدام (as) كحرف جر بعد (the same).



## Listening Text (1)



My name's Mohamed Mansour, and I'm reporting from a small town on the Red Sea coast in Egypt. It's an area that has been popular with tourists from all over the world for a long time, but a few years ago, it became clear that tourism was causing damage to the local environment.

The biggest problem was that too many tourists would visit diving centres at the same time. Local companies didn't use to put a limit on how many people could dive. During the summer, they used to take ten divers at a time to explore one reef. That's just too many.

However, things have changed since the local council decided to take action. There are now rules about how many divers can be in one area at the same time. Divers also have to pay a small amount of money which goes towards projects which help to protect the local environment.

Another problem that the local people had in the past was that hotel companies would buy the best land in the town, remove any buildings already on it and build hotels instead. In places where there used to be facilities for local people like sports fields, cafés and a cinema; there are now hotels. Fortunately, the council now has new rules for how much land hotel companies can buy.

Local people used to complain about tourists in their town because it changed the lives that they were used to, but now they realise that the tourists can help local businesses, and they're a lot happier to see them. This should help tourists to enjoy their visit even more, and then, they will return to the area more often, helping to support the local economy into the future.

## Listening Text (2) (Workbook)



Scan & Listen



**Presenter** : Welcome to the programme. Today, I'm reporting from the Great Barrier Reef in Australia and I'm going to be talking about the problems this beautiful place is facing. The Great Barrier Reef is an area of coral which lives under the sea in an area that is 2,600 kilometres long. People love visiting the reef because there are so many colourful fish that live here. In the past, all of the reef used to have beautifully coloured coral. Today, things are changing and much of the coral is white. Why is this?

**Interviewee**: First, let me explain what coral and reef is for your listeners. Coral is made from millions of very small sea animals. Corals live in groups called colonies. Very large colonies are called reefs, like the Great Barrier Reef. Now, you asked me why the coral on the Great Barrier Reef is white. Well, it's partly because the sea didn't use to be as warm as it is today. Global warming is starting to kill the coral, which turns white when it dies. Another problem is starfish. In the past, there used to be many species of fish that ate the starfish. But people have caught so many of these fish that they have disappeared. There is nothing to eat the starfish, so today, the starfish actually eat the coral.

Another problem, I'm afraid, is people! The area did not use to have so many tourists visiting the Barrier Reef. **Now, about two million people visit every year<sup>1)</sup>**. Boats damage the reef and pollution is not good for the coral either.

**Presenter** : So life is difficult for the coral here. In next week's programme, we will be looking at what we can do about this problem.



### Notes on some sentences:

ملاحظات على بعض الجمل

١- لاحظ استخدام (million) في صيغة المفرد بعد (two) أما الشيء/الشخص المحدود فهو ما يأتي في صيغة الجمع (people).

## Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

### journey

رحلة طويلة أو معتادة

Although the train **journey** to Aswan was tiring, we enjoyed the sights.

### trip

رحلة قصيرة (لفرض معين - لمكان محدد)

My father went on a business **trip** to China to buy new machines.

### expedition

بعثة (رحلة منظمة خاصة إلى مكان خطر أو غير معتاد)

The soldiers were sent into a military **expedition** behind enemy lines.

### realise

١- يدرك (يعرف أو يفهم شيئاً)  
٢- يحقق (شيئاً كان يتمناه)

- Do you **realise** you're an hour late?  
- She never **realised** her ambition of winning an Olympic gold medal.

### recognise

١- يتعرف على (يعرف شخصاً أو شيئاً لرويته أو سماعه أو المروريه من قبل)  
٢- يقبل ويعترف أهمية شيء

- I didn't **recognise** you in your uniform.  
- The new doctor tried to get his work **recognised** by the medical profession.

### coast

ساحل (مساحة من اليابسة قريبة من البحر)

We set up many tourist villages along the north **coast** of the Red Sea.

### shore

شاطئ (جزء من اليابسة مُحاذٍ لحافة البحر)

The ship reached the **shore** after a long voyage.

### beach

بلاج (شاطئ مهاد)

People like to sit relaxed under umbrellas on the **beach**.

### bank

ضفة (نهر أو بحيرة)

The hotel is located on the river **bank**.

### help

يستخدم الفعل (help) بمعنى يساعد بأكثر من صيغة بعده.

- My teacher **helped** me **do** my research.  
- My teacher **helped** me **to do** my research.  
- My teacher **helped** me **with** my research.

ولاحظ أيضاً الاستخدام التالي:

(I can't help + v-ing)  
لا أستطيع أن أمتنع نفسي من:  
- I **can't help laughing** every time I see my funny neighbour.

## monitor

يراقب (الاستمرار في فحص شخص أو شيء  
لمعرفة ما يحدث على مدى فترة زمنية)

After the operation, the doctors **monitored** the patient's progress during the night.

## inspect

يفتش (ينظر إلى شيء ما بعناية ودقة للتأكد  
من أنه صحيح وآمن ويعمل بشكل صحيح،  
خاصة عندما تكون وظيفتك هي القيام بذلك).

The mall is regularly **inspected** by a fire-safety officer.

## Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A lot of water flooded the river ..... after heavy rain last month.  
☐ a) coasts      ☐ b) banks      ☐ c) beaches      ☐ d) harbours
2. The workers at the nuclear stations are constantly ..... for exposure to radiation.  
☐ a) healed      ☐ b) inspected      ☐ c) monitored      ☐ d) infected
3. We always help our mother ..... the housework when we have free time.  
☐ a) by      ☐ b) at      ☐ c) for      ☐ d) with
4. Lamia took a good book to read as she knew it was a long, boring .....  
☐ a) journey      ☐ b) trip      ☐ c) expedition      ☐ d) mission
5. The famous artist put on a large hat and glasses as a disguise and hoped no one in the mall would ..... him.  
☐ a) forget      ☐ b) organise      ☐ c) recognise      ☐ d) realise
6. Unfortunately, many illegal immigrants' boats sank near the Mediterranean ..... of Spain and Greece.  
☐ a) coast      ☐ b) beach      ☐ c) bank      ☐ d) ocean
7. The resort in the New Alamein has a beautiful golden ..... where you can enjoy marvellous time.  
☐ a) coast      ☐ b) beach      ☐ c) bank      ☐ d) side
8. An official from the Ministry of Health will be ..... the restaurant this afternoon.  
☐ a) constructing      ☐ b) revealing  
☐ c) mentoring      ☐ d) inspecting





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

**Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook**

1. .... is the number and types of plants and animals that exist in a particular area or in the world generally.  
☐ a) Conservation    ☐ b) Zoology    ☐ c) Biodiversity    ☐ d) Botany
2. Most farm owners said that they had a very good ..... of mangoes the last year.  
☐ a) crop    ☐ b) diary    ☐ c) spice    ☐ d) species
3. Four cups of coffee is my daily .....  
☐ a) border    ☐ b) limit    ☐ c) mark    ☐ d) remark
4. .... is the system by which a country's money and goods are produced and used, or a country considered in this way.  
☐ a) industry    ☐ b) Trade    ☐ c) Agriculture    ☐ d) Economy
5. Recycling reduces the amount of waste which goes into landfill ..... where rubbish is dumped.  
☐ a) sceneries    ☐ b) views    ☐ c) sites    ☐ d) scenes
6. It is believed that blue whales are the largest ..... ever to have lived.  
☐ a) creatures    ☐ b) features    ☐ c) cultures    ☐ d) materials
7. When his team lost the match, the coach had to ..... the consequences نتائج of his bad decisions.  
☐ a) involve    ☐ b) think    ☐ c) face    ☐ d) enjoy
8. My teacher advised me to ..... for a charity in order to help the community and spend my free time usefully.  
☐ a) enlist    ☐ b) deny    ☐ c) volunteer    ☐ d) fight
9. The assistant at the gallery pointed out ..... that none of these paintings is ..... but they are copied cleverly.  
☐ a) fake    ☐ b) original    ☐ c) stolen    ☐ d) normal
10. The report commented on the poor ..... of the old roads.  
☐ a) state    ☐ b) series    ☐ c) scenery    ☐ d) exhibition
11. All tourists enjoy the ..... wildlife of the deserts in Sinai and Siwa Oasis.  
☐ a) common    ☐ b) awful    ☐ c) exotic    ☐ d) terrible

**Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms**

12. All the guests complained about the noise. The synonym of the word "complain" is ".....".  
☐ a) protest    ☐ b) approve    ☐ c) agree    ☐ d) deprive
13. We ..... on a trip to Siwa Oasis during the vacation and we were happy.  
☐ a) gave    ☐ b) went    ☐ c) made    ☐ d) relied

14. They took steps to ensure the safety of the passengers. The verb "ensure" is the opposite of ".....".  
☐ a) guarantee    ☐ b) apply    ☐ c) assure    ☐ d) deny
15. We could apply ..... a loan to buy a car.  
☐ a) on    ☐ b) off    ☐ c) for    ☐ d) out
16. The club has improved under his unique style of leadership. The antonym of the adjective "unique" is ".....".  
☐ a) extraordinary    ☐ b) exceptional    ☐ c) common    ☐ d) respective
17. The captain couldn't understand what was happening ..... the boat and it began to sink.  
☐ a) of    ☐ b) on    ☐ c) in    ☐ d) to
18. Food prices can fairly vary from shop to shop. The noun of the verb "vary" is ".....".  
☐ a) variable    ☐ b) variety    ☐ c) various    ☐ d) variously

### Longman and Previous Exams

19. I'm happy to get such a/an ..... job in the New Administrative Capital.  
☐ a) defective    ☐ b) rewarding    ☐ c) interested    ☐ d) returning
20. A good teacher should ..... the behaviour of young children so that he/she can learn much about their characters.  
☐ a) monitor    ☐ b) interrupt    ☐ c) stop    ☐ d) corrupt
21. The variety of plants and animals in a particular place is called .....  
☐ a) biodiversity    ☐ b) biology    ☐ c) archaeology    ☐ d) geology
22. A lot of local communities are keen on the ..... of forest resources.  
☐ a) observation    ☐ b) reservation    ☐ c) conversation    ☐ d) conservation
23. The service was very bad in that restaurant, so we had to ..... to the manager.  
☐ a) complement    ☐ b) complain    ☐ c) compete    ☐ d) train
24. You can help the native ..... to preserve their languages for future generations.  
☐ a) species    ☐ b) biodiversity    ☐ c) scholarsh'p    ☐ d) inhabitants
25. A team of scientists were on a/an ..... to explore the Antarctic.  
☐ a) cruise    ☐ b) trip    ☐ c) journey    ☐ d) expedition
26. We should do our best to ..... the animals which are in danger.  
☐ a) damage    ☐ b) observe    ☐ c) deserve    ☐ d) preserve
27. .... is the money that is given to help pay for their education.  
☐ a) Hardsh'p    ☐ b) Steamship    ☐ c) Scholarship    ☐ d) Friendsh'p
28. Wildlife organisations aim to protect rare ..... of animals from becoming extinct.  
☐ a) species    ☐ b) spies    ☐ c) spices    ☐ d) spicks

## B

## Language

## A

## Comparative phrases

## تعبيرات المقارنة

عند المقارنة بين الأشخاص والأشياء نستخدم مجموعة من التعبيرات التي تبين ما إذا كان الشئان أو الشخصان متساويين أو كان هناك فارق كبير أو صغير في الصفة المشتركة بينهما:

## 1

**exactly the same (noun) as ...**

طرف المقارنة الثاني + **exactly the same (noun) as** + طرف المقارنة الأول

يستخدم هذا الشكل لبيان أنه لا فرق بين شخصين أو شئين.

Your bag is **exactly the same** as my bag.

Your bag is **exactly the same colour** as my bag.

Ola is **as old as** Hala. They are **exactly the same age**.

My father does **exactly the same job** as your father.

## 2

**almost as + adj. + صفة + as**

**slightly + صفة مقارنة + than**

يستخدم هذا الشكل لبيان أن الفارق ليس كبيراً بين شخصين أو شئين.

I'm **almost as tall as** my brother.

We're **almost as good at maths as** you.

The trip to New Zealand is **slightly more expensive than** the trip to Brazil.

## 3

**far + صفة مقارنة + than**

يستخدم هذا الشكل لبيان أن الفارق كبير بين شخصين أو شئين.

In my opinion, playing football is **far more interesting than** watching it on TV.

تنبيه هام: يجب مراجعة درس الصفات والمقارنة والتفضيل من الوحدة الثانية.

## Language

## Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Omar and Wessam are in the same position, so they get ... the same salary.

- ☐ a) slightly      ☐ b) exactly      ☐ c) almost      ☐ d) far

2. The hotel was ... as empty as the first time we visited it.

- ☐ a) slightly      ☐ b) exactly      ☐ c) almost      ☐ d) far

3. This bag is ... heavier than the other one.

- ☐ a) slightly      ☐ b) exactly      ☐ c) almost      ☐ d) slight

4. Your health is ... than your career at this point.

- ☐ a) far more important      ☐ b) slightly important  
☐ c) just as important      ☐ d) much important

5. My new flat is ... as the old one.

- ☐ a) slightly as big      ☐ b) slightly bigger      ☐ c) almost as big      ☐ d) so big



## Past habits

عادات الماضي

للتعبير عن عادات الماضي يمكن استخدام:



### Past simple

الماضي البسيط

نستخدم الماضي البسيط مع أحداث وعادات الماضي المتكررة ونستخدم معها عادة ظروف التكرار مثل:

always, often, every day, etc.

When I was young, I always **walked** to school.

When Omar was a student, he always **slept** after doing his homework.



### used to + inf.

نستخدم **used to** بمعنى اعتاد على للتعبير عن المواقف الدائمة وعدادات الماضي والروتين والحقائق التي كانت قديمًا ولكنها لم تعد الآن.

I **used to have** a bike, but now I don't.

My father **used to be** an accountant, but now he is a manager at a big company.

I **used to play** for the school team on Fridays when I was a student.

في السؤال والنفي نحذف **d** ونستخدم **use** بعد **Did/didn't**

### Yes/No questions السؤال بنعم / لا

Did	subj. فاعل	use to	base form
	you		you were
Did	she	use to	have a mobile phone when she was young?
	they		they were

### Negative النفي

Subj. فاعل	didn't	use to	base form
I			I was
She	didn't	use to	have a mobile phone when she was young.
They			they were

ويمكن النفي بـ **never used to + inf.**

My father **never used to have** a mobile phone when he was young.

نستخدم **used to** أيضًا للأشياء التي كانت دائمًا حقيقية ولم تعد الآن.

This building is now a furniture shop. It **used to be** a cinema.

Jeans **used to come** only in blue. Now, you can buy them in any colour.

## ملحوظة



## Note:

Subj. + **used to** + inf., but now + present simple.

He **used to** sleep early, but now he **sleeps** late.

لا تستخدم **used to** للتعبير عن الماضي القريب.

We can't say: I **used to** get up early last week. ✗

▶ But we can say: I **got up** early last week. ✓

## 3 would + inf.

تستخدم **would + inf.** للتعبير عن العادات والسلوك النمطي المتكرر في الماضي وليس عن الشيء الدائم وثوابت الأشياء.

At weekends, my father **would go** and buy fruit, and also he **would buy** me sweets.

هذه الجملة تعبر عن سلوك متكرر لشخص وليس عن موافق وأشياء حقيقية مثل امتلاك شخص لشيء أو وظيفة لديه.

I **used to have** a bike when I was ten years old. (Not: ~~I would have a bike.....~~)

Hotel companies **would buy** the best land in the town. There **used to be** a lot of tourists. (NOT: ~~There would be a lot of tourists.~~)

- أفعال **state verbs** لا تستخدم مع **would** لأنها أفعال ثابتة وتدل على الحالة ولكنها تستخدم مع **used to** مثل،

I **didn't use to know** about plants before joining the Faculty of Agriculture.

لا نستخدم **wouldn't know** في المثال السابق.

## Language Checkpoint 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He ..... an aspirin half an hour ago.

- ☐ a) used to take    b) took    c) would take    d) had taken

2. Samy ..... a lot of money on clothes. These days he can't afford it.

- ☐ a) never spent    b) wouldn't spend  
c) used to spend    d) didn't use to

3. When we were children, we ..... early and go for a swim.

- ☐ a) got up    b) never got up  
c) were used to getting up    d) would get up

4. I've started drinking tea recently. I ..... it before.

- ☐ a) never used to like    b) liked  
c) would like    d) wouldn't like

5. Whenever Maher was angry, he ..... out of the room.

- ☐ a) walks    b) would walk    c) was walking    d) had walked





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Your shirt is similar to mine, but not ..... the same.  
☐ a) almost      b) exactly      c) slightly      d) more
2. Their house is ..... two times as big as ours.  
☐ a) almost      b) almost as      c) slightly      d) much
3. My friend wants to be a player, but I don't have the same .....  
☐ a) ambitiously      b) ambitious      c) ambition      d) an ambition
4. My laptop is ..... more powerful than Osama's.  
☐ a) exactly      b) slightly      c) the same      d) a most
5. She's a lovely little girl. I think that she's going to be almost ..... her mother.  
☐ a) more pretty than      b) prettier as  
    c) so pretty as      d) as pretty as
6. Strangely, this food has exactly ..... meat.  
☐ a) much tastier      b) the same taste as      c) a good taste as      d) tastier than
7. Petrol is ..... expensive as it was last year.  
☐ a) slightly      b) far      c) almost      d) almost as
8. My leg hurts. Can you walk ..... more slowly?  
☐ a) almost      b) as      c) slightly      d) lot
9. It's strange to find that BMW is exactly the same price ..... Toyota.  
☐ a) than      b) as      c) from      d) at
10. Your phone is exactly ..... mine.  
☐ a) better than      b) so good as  
    c) the same quality as      d) much better than
11. When I was younger, I ..... swimming with my friends and spend a nice time on the beach.  
☐ a) used to      b) would go      c) went      d) am used to go
12. When he was young, he ..... his bike to school.  
☐ a) used to ride      b) was riding      c) rides      d) had ridden
13. On holidays, Mum ..... me a big breakfast.  
☐ a) was making      b) is making  
    c) had made      d) would always make

14. Did she ..... cry a lot when she was a baby?  
☐ a) use to      ☐ b) used to      ☐ c) using      ☐ d) be used to
15. When he was a driver, my dad ..... home from work at 7 pm.  
☐ a) had arrived      ☐ b) arrives  
☐ c) would always arrive      ☐ d) used to arriving
16. Ola's laptop ..... very good. But now she can't download photos from the internet.  
☐ a) didn't use to be      ☐ b) used to be  
☐ c) wasn't      ☐ d) would be
17. He used to send letters to his friends, but now he ..... emails.  
☐ a) was sending      ☐ b) used to send      ☐ c) sends      ☐ d) is sending
18. When we were children, mother ..... accompany us to bed and read us a bedtime story.  
☐ a) would      ☐ b) was used to      ☐ c) wasn't used to      ☐ d) didn't used to
19. Your car is expensive and so is Hany's. This means that .....  
☐ a) Hany's car is slightly more expensive than yours  
☐ b) your car is slightly more expensive than Hany's  
☐ c) your car is far more expensive than Hany's  
☐ d) your car is exactly the same price as Hany's
20. My flat overlooks two streets. Each is 20 metres wide. This means that .....  
☐ a) the two streets are exactly the same wide  
☐ b) one street is wider than the other  
☐ c) the two streets are exactly the same width  
☐ d) the two streets are not as wide as each other

### Longman and Previous Exams

21. **Student:** Are African elephants ..... Asian elephants?

**Teacher:** No, African ones are slightly larger.

[Longman]

- ☐ a) small than      ☐ b) the same price as      ☐ c) the same size as      ☐ d) as tall as
22. There ..... a lot of tourists visiting that historic place. Now, the number of tourists is a lot lower.

[Longman]

- ☐ a) will be      ☐ b) used to being      ☐ c) would be      ☐ d) used to be

23. My father ... go to work by car, but now he does.

- ☐ a) didn't use to    ☐ b) isn't used to    ☐ c) is used to    ☐ d) used to

24. Your bag is ..... mine. It is the same colour, size and price.

- ☐ a) almost as expensive as    ☐ b) exactly the same as  
☐ c) not similar to    ☐ d) slightly different from

25. You aren't careful, Amir; you make ..... mistakes you have made before.

- ☐ a) exactly same    ☐ b) a slightly different  
☐ c) exactly the same    ☐ d) a completely different

26. He is ..... taller than me. He is 2 cm taller than me.

- ☐ a) slightly    ☐ b) a lot    ☐ c) much    ☐ d) more

27. In the past, the sea ..... as warm as it is today; matters are getting worse nowadays.

- ☐ a) wouldn't be    ☐ b) used to being  
☐ c) didn't use to be    ☐ d) doesn't use to be

28. The trip to Canada was ..... expensive than the trip to India.

- ☐ a) slightly more    ☐ b) as slightly    ☐ c) almost as    ☐ d) the same as

29. The documentary is ..... as interesting as you might think.

- ☐ a) exactly    ☐ b) almost    ☐ c) slightly    ☐ d) much

30. My father would always go to the cinema on Thursdays when he was young.

The underlined part can be replaced by .....

- ☐ a) always goes to the cinema    ☐ b) used to go to the cinema  
☐ c) never went to the cinema    ☐ d) went to the cinema once



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### Vocabulary

1. A camera crew accompanied the explorer on his last Arctic ..... to record it.  
☐ a) flight      ☐ b) duty      ☐ c) picnic      ☐ d) expedition
2. Mary is attending college on a full ..... that pays fully for a student's fees.  
☐ a) race      ☐ b) medal      ☐ c) scholarship      ☐ d) league
3. Most people in Cameroon speak French as it was a former French African .....  
☐ a) district      ☐ b) colony      ☐ c) attorney      ☐ d) space
4. The exhibition is a/an ..... opportunity to see the famous artists' latest works.  
☐ a) unique      ☐ b) excited      ☐ c) simple      ☐ d) ordinary
5. We need to take action to help ..... fish stocks in the Nile.  
☐ a) damage      ☐ b) pollute      ☐ c) deserve      ☐ d) preserve
6. I bought a model of the Eiffel Tower as a/an ..... of my visit to Paris.  
☐ a) souvenir      ☐ b) idea      ☐ c) reward      ☐ d) trophy
7. It is believed that the older ..... tends to have more traditional views.  
☐ a) generation      ☐ b) provision      ☐ c) prohibition      ☐ d) invention
8. We need to find ways to avoid unnecessary ..... which causes pollution.  
☐ a) crop      ☐ b) waste      ☐ c) diet      ☐ d) entry
9. Many young men and women became actively involved ..... politics after the revolution.  
☐ a) on      ☐ b) out      ☐ c) in      ☐ d) for
10. The animals' temperature and heartbeat are regularly monitored. The synonym of the verb "monitor" is ".....".  
☐ a) neglect      ☐ b) improvise      ☐ c) ignore      ☐ d) observe
11. It is important to encourage environmental ..... and awareness among ordinary people.  
☐ a) accommodation      ☐ b) convention  
☐ c) conservation      ☐ d) scholarship
12. We live in a/an ..... age where everything can be downloaded from the internet.  
☐ a) digital      ☐ b) ordinary      ☐ c) historical      ☐ d) artistic
13. More and more species are added to the list of ..... animals and plants on our planet.  
☐ a) preserved      ☐ b) endangered      ☐ c) lasting      ☐ d) persevered
14. The medicine can be taken in the ..... of a liquid or tablet.  
☐ a) device      ☐ b) figure      ☐ c) equation      ☐ d) form
15. Nurses in the intensive care unit are constantly ..... the patients' condition.  
☐ a) appearing      ☐ b) monitoring      ☐ c) designing      ☐ d) devising

## Language

16. The word "lovely" and the word "nice" are ..... meaning.  
☐ a) far the same                      b) slightly the same  
☐ c) exactly the same                  d) exactly same
17. She ..... and go away two or three times a year.  
☐ a) did used to travel                  b) travelled  
☐ c) never use to travel                d) used to travel
18. Our present leader is ..... than the last one.  
☐ a) slightly more experienced        b) almost as experienced  
☐ c) exactly more experienced        d) much experienced
19. What food ..... like when you were ten?  
☐ a) do you use to    b) you used to    c) did you use to    d) would you
20. My father is almost ..... my mother.  
☐ a) more enthusiastic than            b) as enthusiastic as  
☐ c) so enthusiastic as                  d) the same enthusiastic as
21. I ..... alone in the past, but I no longer do this.  
☐ a) would live    b) used not to live    c) lived                  d) didn't live
22. Tamer has ..... number of books as Osama. Their bags are the same weight.  
☐ a) slightly the same                  b) almost the same  
☐ c) slightly much                      d) exactly the same
23. My father ..... slim, but now he suffers from obesity السمنة.  
☐ a) would be    b) had been    c) used to be    d) wasn't
24. Let's walk. It's almost ..... taking the bus!  
☐ a) as quick than    b) as quick as    c) as quickly as    d) quicker as
25. When my uncle visited us in the past, he ..... us sweets and give us money.  
☐ a) would buy    b) bought    c) was buying    d) used to buying
26. My brother leaves home exactly at ..... time as my father.  
☐ a) better    b) same    c) good    d) the same
27. It's not warm, It is ..... yesterday.  
☐ a) almost as cold than              b) almost as cold  
☐ c) almost as cold as                d) almost as colder than
28. The area has changed a lot. There ..... a large car park on this site.  
☐ a) are    b) would be    c) will be    d) used to be
29. Ali can carry heavy weights, and so can Osama. This means that .....  
☐ a) Ali is stronger than Osama  
☐ b) Osama is stronger than Ali  
☐ c) Ali and Osama have the same strength  
☐ d) Ali is strong, but Osama is weak
30. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically correct?  
☐ a) When I was young, I would go shopping with my mother every Friday.  
☐ b) When I was young, I would have blond hair.  
☐ c) How many friends would you have?  
☐ d) As a child, I would hate having to get up early.





Watch a video

## A

## Vocabulary

## Vocabulary on Reading &amp; Listening Texts

## مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

achieve (v) (d)	يحقق / ينجز	inspire (v) (d)	يلهم / يحث / يوحى به	related (adj)	مرتبط
arise (v)	ينشأ	laptop (n)	كمبيوتر محمول	relax (v) (ed)	يسترخى
benefit (n) (v) (ed)	فائدة / يستفيد	lead (v)	يقود / يؤدي	repair (v) (ed)	يصنع
career (n)	حياة مهنية	leader (n)	قائد	sign (n)	علامة / لافتة
certain (adj)	محدد	majority (n)	أغلبية	skateboard (n) (v) (ed)	لوح تزلج / يتزلج بلوح
community (n)	مجتمع	mental (adj)	عقلي / ذهني	skatepark (n)	منتزه للتزلج
consequently (conj.)	بناءً على ذلك	operating system (n)	نظام تشغيل	solve (v) (d)	يحل
contacts (n)	اتصالات / معارف	opportunity (n)	فرصة	sound (v) (ed)	يبدو
contrast (n)	تناقض	organisation (n)	منظمة	specific (adj)	محدد
cost (v) (n)	يتكلف / تكلفة	organise (v) (d)	ينظم	suggest (v) (ed)	يقترح
discussion (n)	مناقشة	pick up (v) (ed)	يلتقط / يجمع	suitable (adj)	مناسب
enjoyable (adj)	ممتع	positive (adj)	إيجابي	valuable (adj)	قيم
exist (v) (ed)	يوجد	program (n)	برنامج	visible (adj)	مرئي
explain (v) (ed)	يشرح / يفسر	psychological (adj)	نفسى	volunteering (n)	تطوع
goal (n)	هدف	purpose (n)	غرض	youth (n)	شباب

## Workbook Vocabulary

## مفردات كتاب التدرجات

argue (v) (d)	يجادل	expression (n)	تعبير	reward (n) (v) (ed)	مكافأة / يكافئ
charity (n)	عمل خيري / مؤسسة خيرية	formal (adj)	رسمي	shade (n)	ظل
definition (n)	تعريف	gain (v) (ed)	يحصل على / يكتسب	solution (n)	حل
eventually (adv)	أخيراً / في النهاية	necessary (adj)	ضروري	sunny (adj)	مشمس
expert (n)	خبير	result in (v) (ed)	يؤدي إلى / يسفر عن		

## Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. English speakers form the ..... of the population in Canada although some people speak French.  
☐ a) minority      ☐ b) priority      ☐ c) seniority      ☐ d) majority
2. A parent's first ..... is to help their child become an independent adult.  
☐ a) talent      ☐ b) present      ☐ c) goal      ☐ d) destination
3. During his long ..... in football, Hossam Hassan got awards and honours.  
☐ a) job      ☐ b) task      ☐ c) work      ☐ d) career
4. Mr Mammdouh's knowledge and experience as a lawyer would be very ..... to the company.  
☐ a) valuable      ☐ b) valueless      ☐ c) devalued      ☐ d) unvalued
5. There is a need for better public transport for people in rural .....  
☐ a) shores      ☐ b) resorts      ☐ c) communities      ☐ d) abilities
6. The film may not be ..... for very young children as it contains battle scenes.  
☐ a) affordable      ☐ b) suitable      ☐ c) possible      ☐ d) achievable
7. All songs are now available for ..... from many online websites.  
☐ a) loading      ☐ b) overloading      ☐ c) uploading      ☐ d) downloading
8. You can't ..... your problems by running away; you must face them.  
☐ a) solve      ☐ b) deal      ☐ c) cause      ☐ d) care
9. Our teacher always advises us to have a series of goals to ..... by the end of the year.  
☐ a) apply      ☐ b) achieve      ☐ c) fail      ☐ d) aspire
10. Stress has an effect on both your physical and ..... health.  
☐ a) bodily      ☐ b) imaginative      ☐ c) improper      ☐ d) mental

### Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

### التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

as a result	نتيجة لذلك	go diving	يعارس الغطس	take turns	يتبادل الأدوار
give ... the opportunity	يعطي ... الفرصة	make contacts	يكون صداقات / معارف	the pros and cons of	مزايا وعيوب
aim of	هدف لـ	contact with	اتصال مع	lead to	يؤدي إلى
arise from	ينشأ من	contrast between	تناقض بين	result of	نتيجة لـ
benefit for	فائدة لـ	download from	يحمل من		



## Derivatives

## المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
achieve	يحقق / ينجز	achievement	إنجاز	achieved	محقق
				achievable	يمكن تحقيقه
argue	يجادل	argument	جدل	argumentative	جدلي
				arguable	قابل للجدل
define	يعرف	definition	تعريف	defined	محدد / معرف
exist	يوجد	existence	وجود	existing/existent	موجود
explain	يفسر / يشرح	explanation	شرح / تفسير	explanatory	تفسيري
				explicable	قابل للتفسير
express	يعبر عن	expression	تعبير	expressive	معبّر
inspire	يلهم / يحث	inspiration	إلهام / إحاء	inspiring	ملهم / موحى به
				inspirational	ملهم
relax	يسترخي	relaxation	استرخاء	relaxing	مريح
				relaxed	مسترخ
solve	يحل	solution	حل	solved	محلول
				solvable	قابل للحل
value	يقدر	value	قيمة	valuable	قيم

## Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

During my illness, I learned to **value** the ordinary things in life. (v)

It is believed that cars go down in **value** quickly. (n)

The thieves took three pieces of **valuable** jewellery. (adj)

## Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word		Synonym		Antonym	
argue	يجادل	dispute/quarrel	اتفاق / يستسلم	agree/surrender	يوافق / يستسلم
arise	ينشأ	emerge/appear	يختفي / ينتهي	disappear/end	يختفي / ينتهي
contrast	تناقض	contradiction/difference	اتفاق / تناغم	agreement/harmony	اتفاق / تناغم
inspire	يلهم / يحث / يوحى به	motivate/stimulate	يثبط / يحبط	discourage/depress	يثبط / يحبط

necessary	ضروري	essential/basic	extra/minor/unnecessary	إضافي / غير هام
psychological	نفسى	mental	physical	جسمانى
reward	مكافأة / يكافئ	honour	penalty	جزاء / عقوبة
specific	محدد	definite/particular	common/indefinite	شائع / غير محدد

## Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Some animals don't like water, but will swim if the necessity arises. The opposite of the verb "arise" is ".....".  
☐ a) emerge      ☐ b) appear      ☐ c) disappear      ☐ d) intend
- More charitable organisations are formed with the aim ..... helping local people.  
☐ a) for      ☐ b) to      ☐ c) in      ☐ d) of
- The duties of some posts are difficult to define. The noun of the verb "define" is ".....".  
☐ a) define      ☐ b) definition      ☐ c) defined      ☐ d) defines
- The two sisters ..... turns to do the washing up after school.  
☐ a) take      ☐ b) give      ☐ c) add      ☐ d) provide
- There is an obvious ..... contrast ..... the cultures of East and West.  
☐ a) In      ☐ b) between      ☐ c) at      ☐ d) for
- I go to my uncle's house in the country at weekends. It's so calm and ..... there.  
☐ a) relax      ☐ b) relaxation      ☐ c) relaxing      ☐ d) re axed
- To grow independently, the children should be ..... the opportunity to make their own choices.  
☐ a) taken      ☐ b) turned      ☐ c) denied      ☐ d) given
- The young man's frequent accidents are the direct result ..... his own carelessness.  
☐ a) of      ☐ b) in      ☐ c) at      ☐ d) for
- We don't always agree about everything. The verb "agree" can be the opposite of the verb ".....".  
☐ a) express      ☐ b) approve      ☐ c) disagree      ☐ d) excite
- A good diet is necessary for having a healthy body. The word "necessary" is the synonym of ".....".  
☐ a) minor      ☐ b) essential      ☐ c) trivial      ☐ d) unacceptable

## Reading Text (1) (Workbook)



### Can volunteering benefit young people today?

Several research studies have proven that significant psychological benefits that can arise from volunteering, for people of any age. For young people though, there are many reasons why volunteering would benefit them. In my opinion, the most important benefit is that it simply makes them feel good about themselves.

I believe that a further important benefit is that young people can develop useful skills and valuable experience. These can prove extremely useful not only at school, but also in their careers.

For example, a volunteer job with an organisation may lead to paid work. Volunteering could also provide the opportunity to find out if working in a certain area would be enjoyable and suitable.

The third and final benefit of volunteering is that it gives young people the opportunity to make useful contacts. A majority of volunteers work together in order to achieve a specific goal<sup>(1)</sup>. Consequently, they often get to know each other very well and team leaders may then put volunteers into contact with people who can offer them other interesting opportunities.

In conclusion, it is clear that volunteering brings several important benefits for the volunteers involved. However, as I explained above, the most important benefit is the positive effects that volunteering has on the volunteers' mental health.



#### Notes on some sentences:

ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- تستخدم (in order to) بمعنى لكي و يتبعها الفعل في صيغة المصدر.



## Reading Text (2) (Workbook)



### The problem

Many students at your school take the bus home at the end of each day. The problem is that the bus stop is always very sunny. It is **very hot** waiting for the bus<sup>(1)</sup> and some children don't feel well if the bus is late.

### Possible solutions:

1. Give sun shades to all the students, so that they can stay out of the sun. You can also advise them to wear hats.
2. Plant trees around the bus stop, so that students can stay out of the sun while they are waiting.
3. Move the bus stop next to a building, so that students can stay out of the sun while they are waiting.
4. Tell the students to wait inside the school until they can see the bus arriving<sup>(2)</sup>.



### Notes on some sentences:

ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

٢/١ - لاحظ استخدام صيغة (verb + ing) بدلًا من أدوات الربط (while - when) فالجملتان أصلهما.

- It is very hot **while they are waiting** for the bus .....
- ..... they can see the bus **when it arrives**.

## Reading Text (3) (Workbook)



### We should reward all volunteers

Some people argue that we should reward volunteers by giving them some money for their work. However, I believe that this is not necessary. Why is this?

The definition of **to volunteer** is to work or help someone without being paid. Many charities need volunteers **in order to** help people who have problems or who are very poor. In my opinion, the charities need all the money they receive to help these people. **Consequently**, they do not have enough money to pay volunteers.

So, why should volunteers work for no money? **Not only do volunteers gain valuable experiences from volunteering, but they also teach them skills<sup>(1)</sup>** that they can use in their careers. I believe that voluntary work can eventually lead to a volunteer getting a good job.

In conclusion, I would say that there are many benefits that **arise from** volunteering rather than being paid.



### Notes on some sentences:

ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- لاحظ استخدام صيغة السؤال (do volunteers gain) بعد أداة الربط (Not only) إذا جاءت في أول الجملة.

### Listening Text (1)



Scan & Listen



**Student 1:** So, we're trying to find a solution for a problem that a lot of young people are having in our town at the moment.

**Student 2:** Yes, there aren't enough facilities for young people in our town. When you're not at school or doing your homework, the only things you can do are: to go for a walk, go shopping or go swimming.

**Student 1:** Yes, I think we should have a far wider range of facilities for young people here.

**Student 2:** We could ask the local council to build a skatepark. That wouldn't cost very much money, and it wouldn't take up very much space either.

**Student 1:** That's true, but not all young people like skateboarding, and what if there's a storm or it's too hot outside?

**Student 2:** That's a good point. Do you have any other suggestions?

**Student 1:** Well, what about starting a youth club in a building that's already there? The council wouldn't have to build anything new and the youth club could offer lots of different activities, so there's something for everyone.

**Student 2:** Well, the council would still need to pay some people to organise the youth club, so it wouldn't be completely free.

**Student 1:** OK, but it might not cost a lot and they could ask for volunteers.

**Student 2:** OK, but what activities could we do at the youth club? Playing games and drawing aren't very interesting for older kids.

**Student 1:** OK, so we have two possible solutions so far. It seems like we need to find something that doesn't cost very much money, but which is interesting and a lot of young people will find interesting.

## Listening Text (2) (Workbook)



Scan & Listen



**Presenter:** In today's programme, we listen to your computer problems, then ask three experts to suggest a solution. First, we have Ola. What's your problem, Ola?

**Ola:** Hi. I have an old laptop which used to be really good. At school, we did a project for homework about sea life. All my friends could download photos and information from the internet, but now my laptop won't do this. What should I do?

**Presenter:** OK, let's ask our first expert. What do you think Ola should do, Amal?

**Amal:** Well, it sounds like your computer is very old. Why don't you buy a new one? Then, I think your problem will be solved.

**Presenter:** Thanks. Do you agree, Dina?

**Dina:** No, because new computers are expensive! Even an old laptop should be able to download photos, so perhaps there is a problem with it. I think you should take it to a shop. I'm sure they can repair it.

**Presenter:** OK. What about you, Manal? What advice do you have?

**Manal:** I think you can solve the problem yourself. You probably just need a new operating system. This is a program you can download from the internet; I think this will solve your problem.

### Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

<b>work</b>	عمل / مكان العمل (اسم لا يعد)	I like this company very much. The <b>work</b> is really easy.
<b>works</b>	أعمال فنية أو أدبية (اسم يعد)	A collection of Shakespeare's <b>works</b> is offered for a cheap price at the Book Fair.
<b>job</b>	وظيفة (اسم يعد)	The young man has applied for several <b>jobs</b> recently.
<b>career</b>	مهنة (الحياة العملية للفرد)	My father received a lot of honours during his <b>career</b> as a doctor.
<b>profession</b>	مهنة (تحتاج إلى مؤهلات وتدريب)	(the medical / legal / nursing / teaching profession) People who work in the medical <b>profession</b> receive much appreciation.

**present**

هدية

My little brother has received a lot of **presents** on his birthday.

**prize**

جائزة

I won this new bike as a **prize** in the sports competition.

**reward**

مكافأة

The young clerks were given a **reward** for helping complete the project in a short time.

**award**

وسام / جائزة رسمية

The young actor is hoping for the best actor **award** in the film festival.

**argue for**

يناضل من أجل / يؤيد

Dr Aisha Abdel Rahman, the Egyptian writer, always **argued for** women's rights.

**argue against**

يناضل ضد / يعارض

He **argued** powerfully **against** capital punishment.

**argue with**

يجادل مع شخص (في الرأي)

Don't **argue with** me, Emad. Just do what I tell you.

**rise (rose/risen)**

يرتفع من تلقاء نفسه / تشرق / يزداد / يستيقظ / يقف / يتصاعد (لا يأتي بعده مفعول)

- The river has **risen** by several metres.
- The price of petrol has **risen** by 3 percent.

**arise (arose/arisen)**

يحدث / يظهر / ينشأ (لا يأتي بعده مفعول)

- Several problems have **arisen** recently.
- Some learning difficulties **arise** from the way children are taught at school.

**raise (raised/raised)**

يزيد / يربي / يجمع / يرفع / يثير (يأتي بعده مفعول)

- I've never heard him even **raise** his voice.
- We are **raising** money for charity.

**arouse (aroused/aroused)**

يثير (يسبب رد فعل معين / عاطفة لدى الناس) يأتي بعده مفعول

- arouse** feelings / مشاعر / interest / اهتمام / fears / مخاوف / suspicions (doubts) / شكوك
- The event **aroused** considerable interest and media coverage.

## Vocabulary EXERCISE 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A serious health problem can ... .. if the heart stops pumping effectively.  
☐ a) raise                      b) arise                      c) as'de                      d) arouse
2. The famous actress is a feminist activist whose films argue ..... .. women's rights.  
☐ a) in                      b) for                      c) against                      d) with
3. It's sad that so many young people are unable to find ..... .. these days.  
☐ a) jobs                      b) works                      c) careers                      d) professions
4. The police offered a/an ..... .. for any information about the robbery.  
☐ a) present                      b) award                      c) reward                      d) prize
5. Used car sales have .. .. because of the increased cost of new cars.  
☐ a) risen                      b) ra:sed                      c) aroused                      d) arisen
6. My elder brother gave me new headphones as a/an . . . . . for my birthday.  
☐ a) present                      b) award                      c) reward                      d) pr ze





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

**Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook**

1. Egypt has maintained trade ..... with India for more than fifty years.  
☐ a) debates      b) contacts      c) facts      d) enemies
2. The writer's novels were ..... by his long experience working as a diplomat in many countries.  
☐ a) inspired      b) respired      c) des'igned      d) devised
3. I work for a national ..... campaigning for the preservation of the countryside.  
☐ a) community      b) band      c) organisation      d) league
4. I couldn't sleep well at the hotel room as a neon ..... flashed on and off in the window.  
☐ a) project      b) note      c) scene      d) sign
5. Most children's television programmes are aimed at a ..... age group.  
☐ a) specific      b) discussing      c) vague      d) private
6. Many people believe that small companies will cease ..... in a few years' time due to the hard business competition.  
☐ a) resist      b) persist      c) exist      d) vanish
7. Most medical ..... believe that a healthy lifestyle is the key element of preventing diseases.  
☐ a) exports      b) experts      c) reports      d) tra'nees
8. My parents always advise me to spend my money on something that will ..... me.  
☐ a) harm      b) injure      c) heal      d) benefit
9. More and more businessmen donate to ..... work to relieve the effects of the economic prices.  
☐ a) popularity      b) corporation      c) charity      d) abil'ity
10. My uncle is beginning to ..... strength again after his long illness.  
☐ a) rise      b) gain      c) earn      d) deal
11. The doctor suspects that my headache is purely ..... as he couldn't find any physical reason.  
☐ a) psychological      b) medical      c) defective      d) optional
12. "Windows" is probably the most popular ..... system; it is used by millions of computers all over the world.  
☐ a) sports      b) building      c) research      d) operating
13. The temperature can reach 40°C in the ..... in Upper Egypt, especially in summer.  
☐ a) shadow      b) shade      c) figure      d) moisture
14. From the plane, the tops of the mountains were ..... above the clouds.  
☐ a) available      b) accessible      c) vis'ible      d) obtainable

## Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

15. The national hero has inspired us to lead better lives. The verb "inspire" is similar in meaning to ".....".  
☐ a) motivate      ☐ b) discourage      ☐ c) deny      ☐ d) express
16. The young mother expressed surprise at her son's rude behaviour. The noun of the verb "express" is ".....".  
☐ a) expressed      ☐ b) expression      ☐ c) expressive      ☐ d) expressively
17. We are here to give help and support when necessary. The antonym of the adjective "necessary" is ".....".  
☐ a) essential      ☐ b) basic      ☐ c) suitable      ☐ d) minor
18. Seven copies of the original book are still known to exist. The adjective of the verb "exist" is ".....".  
☐ a) exists      ☐ b) existence      ☐ c) existing      ☐ d) existed
19. The young actor has ..... a lot of contacts in the media who help him a lot.  
☐ a) made      ☐ b) done      ☐ c) given      ☐ d) built

## Longman and Previous Exams

20. I do my best to ..... more progress in my career.  
☐ a) relieve      ☐ b) achieve      ☐ c) believe      ☐ d) deceive
21. My uncle's ..... as an English teacher lasted for more than 30 years.  
☐ a) career      ☐ b) carrier      ☐ c) cure      ☐ d) craft
22. The ..... of people like to have lunch at home; only a few people prefer to eat outdoors.  
☐ a) possibility      ☐ b) minority      ☐ c) whole      ☐ d) majority
23. My friends and I ..... teams to go to the beach every day and pick up the rubbish there.  
☐ a) economised      ☐ b) realised      ☐ c) colonised      ☐ d) organised
24. I need a specific type of camera for my sister's wedding. "Specific" can be replaced by ".....".  
☐ a) cheap      ☐ b) big      ☐ c) particular      ☐ d) ordinary
25. Hard work and sound planning have ..... the wonderful success of the new project.  
☐ a) resulted from      ☐ b) worried about      ☐ c) resulted in      ☐ d) cared for
26. Low achievement at school often ..... from poverty and bad social conditions.  
☐ a) rises      ☐ b) arises      ☐ c) roses      ☐ d) raises
27. My brother plays a/an ..... part in society; his role is really wonderful.  
☐ a) negative      ☐ b) positive      ☐ c) minor      ☐ d) unknown
28. He bought an expensive ring for his wife. Another word for "expensive" is ".....".  
☐ a) valuable      ☐ b) inexpensive      ☐ c) cheap      ☐ d) suitable

## B

## Language



## Important Notes



## Comparative phrases

تعابير المقارنة

- بالإضافة إلى ما تم شرحه في الجزء الأول، هناك كلمات أخرى تستخدم لبيان الفارق الكبير والصغير في درجة المقارنة ومنها:

## 1. a bit/a little/even/rather/slightly + صفة مقارنة + than

يستخدم هذا الشكل لبيان أن الفارق ليس كبيراً بين شخصين أو شئين.

Travelling by train is **a bit/a little/even/rather/slightly** cheaper **than** travelling by car.

## 2. much/a lot/ far + صفة مقارنة + than

يستخدم هذا الشكل لبيان أن الفارق كبير بين شخصين أو شئين.

Gold is **much/a lot/far** more expensive **than** salt.

## Language

## Checkpoint 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You look like your brother, but he is ... than you.

- ☐ a) slightly taller    ☐ b) more tall    ☐ c) more taller    ☐ d) as tall

2. Wood is ... than gold, but in some cases, it is more useful.

- ☐ a) as cheap    ☐ b) more cheaper    ☐ c) cheapest    ☐ d) far cheaper

3. Manal has ... money than her friend.

- ☐ a) fewer    ☐ b) much    ☐ c) much more    ☐ d) little

4. This TV has got a ... picture than the one we saw yesterday.

- ☐ a) good    ☐ b) much better    ☐ c) more better    ☐ d) best

5. I think French is ... than English.

- ☐ a) difficult    ☐ b) much d'fficult  
☐ c) as difficu t    ☐ d) much more d'fficult



## Expressing habits

التعبير من العادات

## 1. Be (get) used to + v.ing

(Be used to) means "be accustomed to", "be in the habit of".

- تعبر be (get) + used to + v-ing/noun/pronoun عن عادة في الحاضر.

My father is very active. He is **used to** getting up early.

I didn't like my job at first, but I'm (get) **used to** it now.

She **isn't used to** living in hot climates.

2. Object مفعول + (be + used to ) + inf. مصدر = passive مبنى للمجهول

- إذا جاء قبل be used to مفعول فيأتي بعدها المصدر، وفي هذه الحالة يكون المعنى (يُستخدم) وليس يعتاد.

This knife **is used to cut** onions.

3. Object مفعول + (be + used for ) + (v. ing)

- وتستخدم be used for + (v. ing) للإشارة إلى الاستخدام العام للأشياء:

Knives **are used for cutting** things.

Pens **are used for writing**.

4. No longer/any longer

- نستخدم no longer وبعدها فعل مضارع أو any longer معها مضارع منفى بدلاً من used to

Osama **no longer smokes**.

= Osama **used to smoke**.

Osama **doesn't smoke any longer**.

لاحظ

1 في النفي دائماً نجد didn't use to ولكن هناك نفي صحيح أيضاً وهو used not to.

Long time ago, clothes **used not to be** expensive.

2 هناك used التي تستخدم صفة بمعنى مستخدم (مُسْتَعْمَل) وهي من الفعل use بمعنى يستخدم.

It's very dangerous to buy **used** clothes nowadays because of diseases.

**Used cars** are always much cheaper than the new ones, but they need repairing.

Language

5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

▶ 1. A saw is used ..... wood.

- ☐ a) to cutting      ☐ b) cutting      ☐ c) to cut      ☐ d) to be cut

2. When we worked in the same office, we ..... coffee together.

- ☐ a) didn't used to have      ☐ b) often have  
☐ c) were used to have      ☐ d) would often have

3. On summer evenings, they ..... out in the garden and having cold drinks.

- ☐ a) used to sit      ☐ b) are used to sitting  
☐ c) would sit      ☐ d) sat

4. This dictionary is used to ..... up the new and difficult words.

- ☐ a) look      ☐ b) looking      ☐ c) looks      ☐ d) being looked

5. My brother ..... lives in the countryside.

- ☐ a) used to      ☐ b) no longer      ☐ c) would      ☐ d) any longer



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In the morning, my father ..... on the front entrance and reading the paper.  
☐ a) used to sit    b) is used to sitting    c) would sit    d) sat
2. I thought she was younger than me, but in fact she's .....  
☐ a) far younger    b) the same old  
☐ c) almost younger    d) slightly older
3. Every weekend I ..... a long bike ride during summer vacations.  
☐ a) would take    b) had    c) use to take    d) am having
4. I study in London, so I ..... abroad.  
☐ a) was used to living    b) would live  
☐ c) used to live    d) am used to living
5. It was difficult to live in the hot climate at first, but I soon ..... it.  
☐ a) got used to    b) get used to    c) changed to    d) used to
6. When I was a student, schools ..... have more children in the class.  
☐ a) no longer    b) used to    c) were using to    d) were use to
7. His behaviour was ..... than what we thought at first.  
☐ a) strange    b) slightly strange  
☐ c) much stranger    d) a most strange
8. All my friends are ..... than me during races.  
☐ a) far quickly    b) far quicker    c) more quickly    d) quick
9. I've started drinking tea recently. I never ..... like it before.  
☐ a) didn't use to    b) no longer    c) used to    d) any longer
10. She ..... in tropical climates. When she does, she suffers a lot.  
☐ a) would live    b) used to live  
☐ c) is used to living    d) isn't used to living
11. You'd better wear your coat. It's ..... yesterday.  
☐ a) much colder than    b) colder as  
☐ c) cold as    d) almost colder as
12. He used to live in Italy, but he ..... lives there.  
☐ a) used to    b) no longer    c) any longer    d) still



13. I ..... a lot, but I do now.

- ☐ a) am used to reading                      b) used to read  
c) didn't use to read                      d) am not reading

14. She used to eat a lot of sweets, but she doesn't do .....

- ☐ a) any more              b) hardly              c) no longer              d) longer

15. Her illness was ..... than we thought at first.

- ☐ a) serious enough                      b) far more serious  
c) as serious                      d) slightly serious

16. My brother ..... be a better swimmer than me and he ..... always win.

- ☐ a) used to/would                      b) would/used to  
c) used to/used to                      d) would/would

17. He made his money from buying and selling ..... cars.

- ☐ a) used to              b) used              c) would use              d) is used to

18. Which sentence is NOT grammatically correct?

- ☐ a) I didn't use to like cheese when I was younger.  
b) I didn't use to walk home after school.  
c) As a child, I would hate having to get up early.  
d) I'm used to reading short stories.

19. When I was young, I ..... a lot in bed.

- ☐ a) was reading                      b) used to read  
c) used to reading                      d) didn't use to reading

20. The cheapest thing in this shop is the blue suit. This means that: .....

- ☐ a) Everything in the shop is exactly the same price as the blue suit  
b) Everything in the shop is slightly cheaper than the blue suit  
c) Everything in the shop is more expensive than the blue suit  
d) The blue suit is almost as cheap as everything in the shop

21. Osama and I have bought two small T-shirts size 8. This means that my T-shirt is .....

- ☐ a) exactly the same size as Osama's                      b) slightly smaller than Osama's  
c) much smaller than Osama's                      d) almost as big as Osama's

22. I used to catch fish when I was young, but now I don't do .....

- ☐ a) any more              b) some more              c) no more              d) lot more

## Longman and Previous Exams

23. There ..... as many people living on that isolated island as we see nowadays; the number of people has greatly increased.

- ☐ a) didn't use to have      ☐ b) used to be  
☐ c) used to have      ☐ d) didn't use to be

24. My father no longer smokes as he .....

- ☐ a) used to be      ☐ b) used to have  
☐ c) is used to      ☐ d) used to

25. Which of the following ISN'T structurally correct?

- ☐ a) Is your mobile phone the same price as mine?  
☐ b) A lot of people think that Arabic is most difficult than English.  
☐ c) A train is far faster than a tram.  
☐ d) No invention is more important than the internet.

26. My neighbours were used to renewing their car, but now they .....

- ☐ a) don't      ☐ b) are      ☐ c) aren't      ☐ d) do

27. Learning Spanish is a bit difficult. I'm sure that I'll soon ..... it.

- ☐ a) used to      ☐ b) didn't use to      ☐ c) never used      ☐ d) get used to

28. There is only a slight difference. This mobile is ..... bigger than that one.

- ☐ a) far      ☐ b) more      ☐ c) as      ☐ d) a bit

29. She ..... living in such hot weather, she came from Scotland.

- ☐ a) used to      ☐ b) isn't used to      ☐ c) doesn't used      ☐ d) uses to

30. There didn't use to be a bus stop here. This means .....

- ☐ a) there was a bus stop here  
☐ b) there is a bus stop here  
☐ c) a bus stop used to be here  
☐ d) a bus stop never used to be here

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### Vocabulary

- The ..... of the summer festival is to attract more tourists to the new city.  
☐ a) argument      b) reason      c) degree      d) purpose
- During the emergency, a lot of people ..... to work through the night.  
☐ a) immigrated      b) volunteered      c) duplicated      d) relieved
- She pointed to her watch as a ..... that it was getting late and she wanted to leave.  
☐ a) comment      b) traffic      c) sign      d) note
- Mohamed has been a ..... role model for his brother and helped him to succeed.  
☐ a) positive      b) negative      c) defective      d) relative
- Thanks to a large gift from an anonymous ..... donor, the ..... was able to continue its work.  
☐ a) stock      b) charity      c) identity      d) popularity
- The sales of electric devices dropped and ..... a result, companies' profits have declined.  
☐ a) at      b) with      c) as      d) for
- Amateurs play games more for the love of sport than for financial reward. The antonym of the word "reward" is ".....".  
☐ a) honour      b) trophy      c) immigration      d) penalty
- World ..... should meet regularly to consider the world problems and encourage peace.  
☐ a) readers      b) citizens      c) leaders      d) clients
- Our teacher always tries to make his lessons ..... for all students.  
☐ a) interested      b) enjoyable      c) detestable      d) perplexing
- Sleep disorders ..... are a serious ..... problem, but they aren't very hard to cure.  
☐ a) physical      b) herbal      c) psychological      d) scientific
- Our new neighbours rarely ..... with each other. They are a perfect couple.  
☐ a) agree      b) argue      c) support      d) discuss
- There was a worried ..... on my father's face when I told him about my difficult journey.  
☐ a) intention      b) description      c) aviation      d) expression
- We should all work to find an effective ..... to the city's traffic problem.  
☐ a) ambition      b) impression      c) solution      d) condition
- Although he started work only last month, he was able to ..... many contacts in the company.  
☐ a) do      b) make      c) practise      d) avoid
- You should read the ..... notes at the front of the book to understand its structure.  
☐ a) explain      b) unexplained      c) explanatory      d) explains

## Language

16. Shima ..... long dark hair, but she looks different now.  
☐ a) would have      b) has      c) used to have      d) was having
17. He behaves ..... worse than before.  
☐ a) slight      b) as      c) more      d) even
18. After her husband died, the old woman had to get used to ..... on her own.  
☐ a) living      b) lived      c) ive      d) ives
19. My job is far ..... than I expected.  
☐ a) much interesting      b) more interesting  
☐ c) interesting      d) as interesting
20. I can't take your smart car. I ..... driving an automatic car.  
☐ a) am not used to      b) used to      c) am used to      d) didn't use to
21. The mouse is almost as ..... as the cat. That's amazing.  
☐ a) bigger      b) biggest      c) big      d) far big
22. She ..... gets up early; as she used to.  
☐ a) frequently      b) always      c) anymore      d) no longer
23. I think we should have a ..... wider range of facilities in primary schools.  
☐ a) farther      b) far      c) many      d) ot of
24. I'm terribly nervous, I'm not used to ..... to a large number of audience.  
☐ a) speaking      b) speak      c) being speak      d) speaks
25. Every evening, local people ..... out onto the streets and sell souvenirs.  
☐ a) are used to going      b) had gone      c) use to go      d) would go
26. This gadget is used to ..... onions.  
☐ a) chop      b) chopped      c) chopping      d) being chopped
27. The building is ..... taller than the tree.  
☐ a) as      b) a little more      c) a bit      d) many
28. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect?  
☐ a) Ali is much shorter than Hossam.  
☐ b) A i and Hossam are exactly the same engh.  
☐ c) Hossam and Ali are exactly the same neight.  
☐ d) Ali is slightly taller than Hossam.
29. I had difficulty in driving cars in the past, but now I can drive well. This means that: .....  
☐ a) I used to drive cars well in the past  
☐ b) I was used to driving cars well in the past  
☐ c) Driving cars in the past wasn't so easy for me  
☐ d) I no longer drive cars well now
30. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect?  
☐ a) When I was young, I always went to the public library with my friends.  
☐ b) When I was young, I used to go to the public library with my friends.  
☐ c) When I was young, I would go to the public library with my friends.  
☐ d) Last week, I used to go to the public library 3 times.



للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات،  
يرجى الرجوع لملاحق للمهارات.

## Writing

## tips

## مقال الرأي: Opinion essay

مقال الرأي هو مقال توضح فيه رأيك في موضوع ما، ويجب ذكر رأيك بوضوح خلال المقال، كما تقدم حججك وأسبابًا ووجهات نظر مختلفة حول الموضوع وتدعمها أدلة أو أمثلة:

## Outline of an Argumentative Essay

## Introduction

في المقدمة يجب أن تقوم بتقديم موضوعك وأبداء رأيك بوضوح. تأكد من أنها تحتوي على جملة الموضوع أي جملة تلخص النقطة الرئيسية في مقالتيك.

## Main body

بعد المقدمة يجب أن تدعم بيان رأيك، اكتب عدة فقرات، كل منها يقدم وجهة نظر منفصلة مدعومة بالأسباب. تأكد من أنك لا تبدأ فقرة جديدة؛ لأن الفقرة التي تكتبها الآن طويلة جدًا. ابدأ فقرة جديدة فقط عندما تريد مناقشة فكرة جديدة.

## Conclusion

لاختتام مقال رأيك، اكتب فقرة تعيد فيها التعبير عن رأيك باستخدام كلمات مختلفة. يجب تجنب طرح فكرة جديدة أو الرجوع عن رأيك الذي بدأت به المقدمة.

## THE BENEFITS OF VOLUNTEERING

## 1. Introduction

Volunteering is important for many reasons that benefit both the community and the volunteers themselves. When someone donates a handful of time, the difference made is tremendous and it shapes a community for the better, while the experience improves the person who donated the time.

## 2. Main body

Volunteering is what makes a community because it brings people together to work on a goal. Whether it is to cure a disease that affects the whole world, or to help a local family who has fallen in a time of calamity مصيبة، volunteers make it happen. Community life is improved by helping others and giving a hand to get a job done more effectively. More people working equals less work for each person and less time for the project. So, when it comes to getting the job done, like a community clean up, the more the better.

Donating time will also help volunteers themselves in the future. Volunteering strengthens present skills and also shows an employer that an effort has been made to make an improvement. Such skills include communication skills, the ability to work with others, the ability to take direction and lead others, dedication and time management. Employers realise that as a volunteer you must be able to prioritise your timetable in order to devote time for activities that benefit others. When employers see active volunteer work, they are much more likely to hire such a person rather than someone who doesn't volunteer. Employers are aware that most people who offer their time are conscientious, honest and hardworking individuals.

## 3. Conclusion

These are just a few reasons why volunteering is important. Not only does it bring hope and happiness to people, but it also leads to spiritual and personal growth. It is an experience that cannot be bought with any amount of money.





## (A) Reading Comprehension

## 1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The basic function of education is to teach children knowledge, values and patterns of behaviour they will need in the adult world and will move from one generation to another. Education is largely informal that occurs within the family. Family members teach children the values of their society as well as certain basic skills. Parents may teach their children the skills of cooking, food gathering, hunting and fishing. By this way, children learn the way of society by participating in adult activities.

Formal education which involves instruction by specially trained teachers who follow officially recognised policies, is called schooling. Schools fulfil this function through a set of courses that include such subjects as languages and literature, history, geography, mathematics, science and foreign languages. Also, schools develop the critical thinking of students' skills that are necessary to meet their needs in the future.

Education refers to a process which continues all throughout life, and which is promoted by almost every experience in life. In this sense, educational materials are to be found in all walks of life. This concept of education emphasises chiefly the process by which personality is developed, and by which we realise the relationships of man to man and man to the universe.

To sum up, education is an aspect of socialisation which involves the gaining of knowledge and learning of skills. It shapes our beliefs and moral values through a systematic formal transmission. Education is said to be an essential function of society, as it provides a contributory characteristic which helps to maintain and adapt society and its values.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "their" refers to .....

- a) members  
c) students

- b) parents  
d) teachers

2. This passage mentioned ..... type(s) of education.

- a) two  
c) one

- b) three  
d) four

► 3. The best title for the passage is ".....".

- ☐ a) Education through courses
- b) Teaching children the values of society
- c) Teaching children how to live well
- d) Education at home and school

4. Schools fulfil this function through a set of courses. The synonym of the underlined word "fulfil" is ".....".

- ☐ a) frustrate      b) achieve      c) stop      d) discourage

5. The aim of education is to teach children .....

- ☐ a) knowledge
- b) values
- c) the behaviour needed for the future
- d) all of the previous answers

6. According to the passage, education has an effect on our .....

- a) personality and beliefs      b) happiness and wealth
- c) economy and tourism      d) prosperity and welfare

7. Schools are responsible for .....

- ☐ a) bringing up children and educating them
- b) developing and shaping the students' skills
- c) providing jobs for their graduates
- d) developing agriculture and industry

8. Education is a process which .....

- ☐ a) ends at a specific time      b) will be important in the future
- c) continues all throughout life      d) starts with the person's maturity

## (B) Translation

### 2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

► 1. Being successful is not an easy task. However, having a set of clear aims and giving priority to the urgent ones are vital to achieve success.

(a) النجاح ليس بالمهمة السهلة. ولذلك، فإن امتلاك مجموعة من الأهداف المعقدة وإعطاء الأولوية للأهداف العاجلة أمر حيوي لتحقيق النجاح.

(b) تحقيق التمتع ليس بالمهمة السهلة. ومع ذلك، فإن امتلاك بعض من الأهداف الواضحة وإعطاء الأولوية للأهداف المؤقتة أمر حيوي لتحقيق النجاح.

(c) تأجيل النجاح ليس بالمهمة السهلة. ومع ذلك، فإن امتلاك مجموعة من الأهداف الواضحة وإعطاء الأسبقية للأهداف الدائمة أمر حيوي لتحقيق النجاح.

(d) تحقيق النجاح ليس بالمهمة السهلة. ومع ذلك، فإن امتلاك مجموعة من الأهداف الواضحة وإعطاء الأولوية للأهداف العاجلة أمر حيوي لتحقيق النجاح.



2. Environmental conservation has become one of the most important issues that need to be discussed to fight climate change and global warming. Sustainable development can save the earth from pollution.

- (a) لقد أصبح الحفاظ على البيئة إحدى أهم القضايا التي يجب نشرها لمواجهة تغير المناخ والاحتباس الحراري ويمكن للتنمية المؤقتة أن تنقذ الأرض من التلوث.
- (b) لقد أصبح الحفاظ على بيئة إحدى أهم القضايا التي يجب مناقشتها لمواجهة تغير المناخ والاحتباس الحراري. ويمكن للتنمية المستدامة أن تنقذ الأرض من التلوث.
- (c) لقد أصبح الحفاظ على الكائنات إحدى أهم القضايا التي يجب مناقشتها لمساعدة تغير المناخ والاحتباس الحراري. ويمكن للتنمية المستدامة أن تنقذ الأرض من الازدحام.
- (d) لقد أصبح دعم البيئة إحدى أهم القضايا التي يجب تجاهلها لمواجهة تغير المناخ والاحتباس الحراري. ويمكن للتنمية المستدامة أن تنقذ الأرض من التلوث.

3. Volunteering and tolerance are two of the most important social values. Schools and educational curricula should aim at training children on them at an early age.

- (a) العمل التطوعي والتسامح قيمتان من أهم القيم الثقافية. وينبغي أن تهدف المدارس والمناهج التعليمية إلى تدريب الأطفال في سن متأخرة.
- (b) العمل التطوعي والتسامح قيمتان من أهم القيم الاجتماعية. وينبغي أن تهدف المدارس والمناهج التعليمية إلى تدريب الأطفال في سن مبكرة.
- (c) العمل التطوعي والتسامح قيمتان من أهم النظم الاجتماعية. وينبغي أن تهدف المدارس والمناهج التعليمية إلى تدريب الشباب في سن مبكرة.
- (d) العمل الخيري والتسامح حاصيتان من أهم القيم الاجتماعية. وينبغي أن تهدف المدارس الأهداف التعليمية إلى تدريب الأطفال في سن مبكرة.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

4. لا يحب الكثير من الشباب مشاهدة الأفلام الوثائقية التي تثرى معارفهم وعيهم بالعالم من حولهم، بل يفضلون مشاهدة أفلام الحركة والرعب التي قد تسبب المشكلات لبعضهم.

- (a) Many young people don't like watching documents which enrich their knowledge and awareness of the world around them. They prefer active and horror movies which can cause problems for some of them.
- (b) Many young people don't like watching documentaries which enrich their knowledge and awareness of the world around them. They prefer action and horror movies which can cause problems for some of them.
- (c) Many young people don't like watching documentaries which offer their knowledge and awareness of the world around them. They dislike action and horror movies which can cause problems for some of them.
- (d) Many young people don't like watching documentaries which enrich their ambitions and awareness of the world around them. They prefer action and sorrow movies which can cause problems for some of them.

5. يجب أن تكون المنتجات المصرية عالية الجودة لكي تتمكن من منافسة المنتجات الأخرى في الأسواق العالمية؛ لذا تهتم الحكومة بتدريب كل العاملين على أحدث طرق الإنتاج.

- a) The Egyptian production should be of high quality so as to be able to compete the other products in the international markets. So, the government is interested in treating all workers on the latest production methods.
- b) The Egyptian products should be of high quantity so as to be able to compete with the other products in the national markets. So, the government is interested in training all workers on the latest production styles.
- c) The Egyptian products should be of high quality so as to be able to compete with the other products in the international markets. So, the government is interested in training all workers on the latest production methods.
- d) The Egyptian products should be of high quality so as to be able to compete with the other products in the international markets. So, the environment is interested in training all workers on the latest production systems.

6. يجب أن تهتم المدارس بمواهب الطلاب ومحاولة تنميتها من خلال الأنشطة المختلفة التي تعزز عملية التعلم وتجعل التعليم ممتعاً.

- a) Schools should be interested on students' talents and try to develop them through similar activities that enhance the learning process and make education fun.
- b) Schools should be interested in students' talents and try to develop them through different activities that enhance the learning process and make education fun.
- c) Schools should be interested in students' hobbies and try to develop them through different activities that enhance the learning cycle and make education fun.
- d) Schools should be interested in students' talents and arrange to develop them through different activities that enhance the learning process and make education cheaper

## (c) Writing

3 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

► "The benefits of reading"

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.

I used the right structure.

I used a topic sentence

I wrote the conclusion.

I used the right punctuation.



### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

Nadine meets her friend Amira after the English exam.

**Nadine** : Hello, Amira. (1)..... ?

**Amira** : It was perfect. In fact, it was a piece of cake. (2)..... ?

**Nadine** : I didn't do well.

**Amira** : Why?

**Nadine** : To tell the truth, the test was really easy, but (3).....

**Amira** : Why didn't you get ready for it?

**Nadine** : (4).....

**Amira** : And how's your mum now?

**Nadine** : She is getting better.

**Amira** : Anyway, you can compensate the next exam.

### A Glimpse of Revelation II

#### 2 (A) Answer the following questions:

1. How can tolerance help understanding and co-existence in the world?
2. Islam teaches tolerance on all levels. Show how.

#### (B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. We should ..... the message of Islam to others and call them to become Muslims.  
☐ a) envy      b) meet      c) convey      d) leave
4. By promoting unity and diversity to our children, we can .....  
☐ a) conquer other countries      b) create a more harmonious society  
☐ c) build huge empires      d) contro the world's riches

### King Lear

#### 3 (A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why was Oswald determined to kill Gloucester?
2. What did Gloucester do after he said goodbye to Edgar?

#### (B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. The students have worked really hard and they deserve a/an .....  
☐ a) present      b) reward      c) award      d) assistance
4. Cordelia returned back to Britain with the French army in order to .....  
☐ a) kill her sisters      b) help her father  
☐ c) punish Cornwall      d) punish her father

#### 4 (A) Translate into Arabic:

- It is said that travel has seven benefits, including entertainment, earning a living, education, learning about culture and literature, and making friends.

#### (B) Translate into English:

- يدعو القرن الكريم و لسنة إلى نشر قيم التسامح في المجتمع.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(13M)

1. There should be more laws to help ..... our natural resources.  
☐ a) damage      b) reserve      c) deserve      d) preserve
2. Doctors believe that children abuse الإساءة للأطفال can lead to serious ..... and emotional problems.  
☐ a) fictional      b) psychological  
☐ c) economic      d) criminal
3. Up till now, there is no ..... proof that life exists on other planets.  
☐ a) negative      b) doubtful  
☐ c) positive      d) valueless
4. Motor racing is really a/an ..... game that attracts only adventure seekers.  
☐ a) challenging      b) simple  
☐ c) excited      d) clear
5. The child is advised to ..... a bath before going to bed every day.  
☐ a) give      b) do      c) take      d) make
6. My teacher is a volunteer in an organisation working on wildlife conservation.  
 The synonym of the word "conservation" is ".....".  
☐ a) destruction      b) negligence      c) protection      d) doubt
7. Volunteering at the animal shelter was a ..... experience for everyone involved. They want to do it again.  
☐ a) boring      b) rewarding      c) frustrating      d) tiring
8. Kamal is exactly ..... as Nader.  
☐ a) the same age      b) old      c) so old      d) older
9. After the trip, my brother was ..... tired as my father.  
☐ a) so      b) almost as  
☐ c) almost so      d) slightly as
10. I liked the museum. It was ..... more interesting than I expected.  
☐ a) lot      b) almost      c) many      d) far
11. This bag is ..... than the other one.  
☐ a) slightly heavier      b) slightly heavy  
☐ c) almost heavy      d) as heavy

12. Tourists ..... to dive in this area, but now they do.

- ☐ a) used to come                      b) didn't use to come  
c) would come                      d) came

13. Jeans ..... in different colours, but now they do.

- ☐ a) are used to coming                      b) didn't use to come  
c) used to come                      d) used not coming

► Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

(8M)

Animals are very useful creatures to not only humans but also to the world, they can be used for various reasons like food, transportation, material uses, safety and recreation.

Animals and plants are dying out at an alarming rate. Throughout history living things have become extinct, mainly due to climate change.

Today, humans are the biggest threat. Forests are being cut down and wetlands are being drained for building on which has caused thousands of animals and plants to become endangered. The environment is being changed so much that animals and plants cannot survive. We call this habitat loss. Trees are cut down and burned for timber. The land is then used for buildings and roads.

Hunting is another great threat. Animals are hunted for their fur, horns and meat. Conservation includes sheltering and trying to save animals and plants from destruction by humans. There are organisations all over the world protecting endangered creatures and providing safe places for them to live.

The snow leopard is an endangered cat and is still hunted illegally in some areas for its fur.

CITES (The Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species) protects the snow leopard. Whales, dolphins, porpoises, monkeys, apes, and lemurs are also protected by CITES.

Experts help endangered species by capturing a few animals in the wild and raising them in captivity. Offspring are then released into a safe, suitable area.

Pollution also threatens animals and plants, damaging oceans, rivers and forests.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

14. What is the problem of animals and plants?

- ☐ a) They are taking in much oxygen.  
b) They are dying out at an alarming rate.  
c) They are increasing at an alarming rate.  
d) They are killing man and other creatures.

► 15. What does the underlined verb "dying out" mean?

- ☐ a) Becoming wild.
- ☐ b) Being killed by other animals.
- ☐ c) In danger of extinction.
- ☐ d) Cutting down trees.

16. The extinction of animals is due to .....

- ☐ a) climate change
- ☐ b) human activities
- ☐ c) conservation measures
- ☐ d) both a and b

17. When we shelter and try to save animals and plants from destruction, we are ..... them.

- ☐ a) conserving
- ☐ b) killing
- ☐ c) endangering
- ☐ d) threatening

18. Like vehicles, animals are used for .....

- ☐ a) food
- ☐ b) transportation
- ☐ c) safety
- ☐ d) material uses

19. .... are to blame for changing the environment and endangering animals.

- ☐ a) Big animals
- ☐ b) Plants
- ☐ c) Humans
- ☐ d) Conservation centres

20. The snow leopard is still hunted for its .....

- ☐ a) safety
- ☐ b) recreation
- ☐ c) meat
- ☐ d) fur

21. When endangered species are captured and raised in captivity, their offspring are then .....

- ☐ a) protected
- ☐ b) endangered
- ☐ c) killed
- ☐ d) threatened

► 22. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

(4M)

- Our society needs more individuals that possess good moral values in order to grow and develop the right way. Morals are really the best sign of a civilised society.

- (a) يحتاج مجتمعنا إلى القليل من الأفراد الذين يمتلكون قيمًا أخلاقية حميدة من أجل النمو والتطوير بالطريقة الصحيحة. فالأخلاق هي حقًا أفضل إشارة للإقليم المتحضر.
- (b) يحتاج مجتمعنا إلى المزيد من العمال الذين يمتلكون قيمًا أخلاقية حميدة من أجل النمو والتطوير بالطريقة التقليدية. فالأخلاق هي حقًا أفضل إشارة للمجتمع المتحضر.
- (c) يحتاج مجتمعنا إلى المزيد من الأفراد الذين يمتلكون قيمًا أخلاقية حميدة من أجل النمو والتطوير بالطريقة الصحيحة. فالأخلاق هي حقًا أفضل سمة للمجتمع المتحضر.
- (d) تحتاج بيئتنا إلى المزيد من الأفراد الذين يمتلكون صفات أخلاقية حميدة من أجل النمو والتطوير بالطريقة الصحيحة. فالأخلاق هي حقًا أفضل سمة للمجتمع المتحضر.



### ► 23. Choose the correct English translation:

- للهوايات تأثير إيجابي على صحتنا. فالقراءة هواية مفيدة جدًا لأنها تحفز عقلك، ويقول الخبراء إن لها تأثيرًا مهدئًا. فهي يمكن أن تحفض مستويات الإجهاد وتساعدك على الاسترخاء.

- a) Hobbies have a positive effect on our health. Reading is a very useful hobby because it motivates your mind, and experts say it has a pacifying effect. It can lower stress levels and help you relax.
- b) Hobbies have a positive affection on our health. Reading is a very useful hobby because it motivates your mind, and experts say it has a specific effect. It can lower stress levels and help you relax.
- c) Hobbies have a proper effect on our health. Reading is a very useful hobby because it motivates your mind, and experiences say it has a pacifying effect. It can lower stress levels and help you relax.
- d) Hobbies have a positive effect on our wea th. Reading is a very common hobby because it motivates your mind, and experts say it has a pacifying effect. It can lower stress levels and help you relax.

### ► 24. Answer the following questions: (The play)

(1.5M)

1. If you were Oswald, would you agree to let Regan open Cordelia's letter to Edmund?
2. What do you think Regan's message to Edmund is?
3. What do you think of Edgar's behaviour with his father?

### ► 25. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following: (3.5M)

"Why is the preservation of biodiversity on Earth important?"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

املئ في التدريبات لطبية الفلاحيين  
الرجوع لصفحة الخطاب ص 345



Assess your  
progress



< 50%



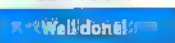
50 : 64%

Practise more

65 : 84%



85 : 100%



# The News



## Objectives

**Reading** : Online news stories

**Writing** : A news report

**Listening** : News stories

**Speaking** : Presenting news stories

**Language** : Past perfect and past perfect passive

**Life Skills** : Critical thinking recognising facts and opinions; Self-management: weighing up situations and taking the appropriate actions





Watch a video

A

## Vocabulary

## المفردات الرئيسية

## Key Vocabulary

broadcast (n) (v)	interview (n) (v) (ed)	reporter (n)
نشر/إذاعة/ينشر/يذيع	مقابلة/يجري مقابلة	مراسل صحفي
editor (n)	newsreader (n)	search engine (n)
محرر/رئيس تحرير	مذيع/قارئ الأخبار	محرك بحث
fact checker (n)	photographer (n)	source (n)
مراجع حقائق	مصور فوتوغرافي	مصدر

## Vocabulary on Reading &amp; Listening Texts

## مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

accurate (adj)	headlines (n)	record (n) (v) (ed)
دقيق	عناوين الأخبار	تقرير/رقم قياسي/يسجل
admit (v) (ted)	identify (v) (ried)	regularly (adv)
يعترف بـ	يحدد/يتعرف على	بانتظام
alarm (n)	investigator (n)	responsible (adj)
إنذار	محقق/مفتش	مسئول
Caribbean Islands	journalist (n)	scene (n)
جزر البحر الكاريبي	صحفي	مشهد/موقع حدث
channel (n)	Lebanese (adj)	select (v) (ed)
قناة	لبناني	ينتقى/يختار
collect (v) (ed)	online (adj) (adv)	serious (adj)
يجمع	عبر الإنترنت	جاد/خطير
contain (v) (ed)	opportunity (n)	social media (n)
يحتوي على	فرصة	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
correspondent (n)	originally (adv)	traditional (adj)
مراسل صحفي أو تلفزيوني	أصلاً/أولاً	تقليدي
deliberately (adv)	perfect (adj)	trust (n) (v) (ed)
عمداً	كامل/ممتاز	ثقة/يثق في
digital nomads (n)	photography (n)	truth (n)
الحالة الرقميون	التصوير الفوتوغرافي	حقيقة
disaster (n)	print (v) (ed)	unclear (adj)
كارثة	يطبع	غير واضح
fear (n) (v) (ed)	printing press (n)	unreliable (adj)
خوف/يخشى	الطباعة/المطبعة	غير موثوق فيه
fire service (n)	produce (v) (d)	upload (v) (ed)
خدمة الإطفاء	ينتج	يحمّل إلى الإنترنت
flame (n)	range (n)	
لهب/شعلة نار	مجال/معدل	

astronaut (n)	رائد فضاء	frequently (adv)	غالبًا/ بشكل متكرر	properly (adv)	بشكل صحيح
bomb (n)	قنبلة	income (n)	دخل	recent (adj)	حديث
competition (n)	مسابقة	inform (v) (ed)	يبلغ	satellite (n)	قمر صناعي
confirm (v) (ed)	يؤكد	injury (n)	صاغة	space walk (n)	السهر في الفضاء
crash (n) (v) (ed)	تحطم/ يرتطم/ يتحطم	leader (n)	قائد	species (n)	نوع/ فصيلة (حيوانية/ نباتية)
crime (n)	جريمة	meteorite (n)	نيازك	suffer (v) (ed)	يعانى
digital (adj)	رقمي	onboard (adj)	على متن (سفينة/ طائرة)	talent (n)	موهبة
discovery (n)	اكتشاف	origin (n)	أصل/ مصدر	title (n)	عنوان/ لقب
find (n)	اكتشاف	politician (n)	رجل سياسة		
fix (v) (ed)	يصلح	press conference (n)	مؤتمر صحفي	zoom in (v) (ed)	يقرب الصورة

## Vocabulary Challenge 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An ..... is a person employed by a newspaper, a television station, to report on a particular subject or send reports from a foreign country.  
☐ a) manager      b) agent      c) correspondent      d) boss
2. The window is the only ..... of light, so the room is dark when that window is closed.  
 a) source      b) section      c) factory      d) resource
3. My cousin, Zein, works as a/an ..... for one of the major networks and travels to many cities to get news.  
 a) consumer      b) reporter      c) fighter      d) inspector
4. The famous player refused to be ..... after the match as he had to travel soon.  
 a) offered      b) tested      c) searched      d) interviewed
5. A search ..... is a computer program that helps you find information on the internet.  
 a) engine      b) power      c) motor      d) page



6. BeIN Sports ..... live Premier League matches exclusively in the Middle East.  
 a) investigated    b) arranged    c) broadcast    d) accepted
7. By law, office buildings must install a fire ..... system and train the employees how to deal with it.  
 a) sale    b) alarm    c) extinguisher    d) service
8. Burning fossil fuel is ..... for causing a lot of damage to our environment.  
 a) available    b) acceptable    c) unreliable    d) responsible
9. Our new next-door neighbour is a former ..... of Al-Ahram Newspaper.  
 a) investigator    b) reader    c) editor    d) inventor
10. The invention of the ..... press is considered the most important invention as it helped transfer knowledge and science to the next generations.  
 a) printing    b) sewing    c) cutting    d) welding

### المعبريات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

cause serious problems	يسبب مشكلة خطيرة	have the chance to	لديه الفرصة أن	make an amazing discovery	يقوم باكتشاف مذهل
come true	يصبح حقيقة / يتحقق	in charge of	مسئول عن	take photographs	يلتقط صوراً
broadcast on	ينذرع على	look into	يفحص	turn to	يتحول إلى
care about	يهتم بـ	range of	سلسلة من	upload to	يحمل إلى
crash into	يصطدم بـ	send out	يُبعث	worried about	قلق بشأن
hear about/of	يسمع عن	share ... with	يشارك ... مع		

### Derivatives

### المشتقات

accuracy	دقة	accurate	دقيق
compete	يتنافس	competition	تنافس
		competitor	متنافس
fear	يخشى	fearful	مخيف
identify	يحدد	identity	هوية / شخصية
		identifiable	يمكن تحديده

inform	يبلغ	information informer	معلومات مخبر	informative	معلوماتي
investigate	يحقّق / يفتش	investigation investigator	تحقيق محقق / مفتش	investigatory	تفتيشي / تحقيقي
select	يختار / ينتقى	selection	اختيار	selective	انتقائي

### Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

The leaflet **informs** customers about healthy eating. (v)

How can I get **information** about enrolling on the course? (n)

This book is very **informative** about local customs in Africa. (adj)

### Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

accurate	دقيق	precise/exact	inaccurate/false	غير دقيق / مزيف
broadcast	ينشر / يذيع	announce/transmit	hide/conceal	يخفي
collect	يجمع	gather/accumulate	scatter/separate	يبعثر / يفصل
fear	يخشى	worry/fright	face	يواجه
frequently	غالبًا / بشكل متكرر	generally/often	rarely/seldom	نادرًا
identify	يحدد	recognise/determine	confuse/disguise	يربك
professional	محترف	efficient/skilful	amateur/inexperienced	هاو / بلا خبرة
properly	بشكل صحيح	correctly/appropriately	wrongly/improperly	بشكل خاطئ
select	يختار / ينتقى	pick out/choose	refuse/reject	يرفض / ينبذ
source	مصدر	origin/root	outcome/result	نتائج
traditional	تقليدي	conventional/old	modern/up-to-date	حديث
trust	ثقة	confidence/faith	doubt/uncertainty	شك / عدم تأكيد
unreliable	غير موثوق فيه	inaccurate/untrustworthy	dependable/reliable	موثوق فيه

# Vocabulary Checkpoint 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The President's speech will be broadcast on all channels at 6:00 this evening. The verb "broadcast" is similar in meaning to ".....".  
 a) transmit      b) download      c) consume      d) watch
- All the employees wonder who will be in ..... of the department when the present manager retires.  
 a) change      b) charge      c) account      d) balance
- I trust my son to make the right decision. The antonym of the verb "trust" is ".....".  
 a) recognise      b) realise      c) depend      d) doubt
- A working team has been set up to look ..... the problem of power cuts in the area.  
 a) for      b) of      c) into      d) up
- Winning the Olympic medal was like a dream that ..... true for the karate player.  
 a) came      b) went      c) fell      d) grew
- The judge found that the former criminal was an unreliable witness. The synonym of the adjective "unreliable" is ".....".  
 a) dependable      b) untrustworthy      c) helplessly      d) strangely
- The ..... newsletter النشرة الإخبارية at the British Council is published once every two months.  
 a) inform      b) informed      c) informative      d) information
- All young people have turned ..... social media for news and information.  
 a) with      b) on      c) at      d) to
- Athletes from all over the world compete in the Olympics. The noun of the verb "compete" is ".....".  
 a) competed      b) competitive      c) competition      d) competitively
- After the boxer won the championship, he turned professional. The word "professional" can be the opposite of ".....".  
 a) academic      b) smart      c) amateur      d) experimented





It seems that today less than 50% of us get our news from traditional sources like newspapers and television. Everyone is turning to the internet and social media for news, and some experts fear that we might accept some unreliable news stories as fact because we read social media sites which share our opinions. But is this true?

Search engines lead us to a wider range of sources which means we can read the news from many different places<sup>(١)</sup>. However, we should always question what we read and never just accept it as true.

Secondary school students in the UK have had the chance to become news reporters for the day. Students created a news website and produced a news report. They selected reporters and photographers who went out to look for interesting news in their community. When they had interviewed people and had written their stories, the reporters gave their work to the newsreaders who then recorded the news. The videos were uploaded to the news website and some were broadcast on local television.



#### Notes on some sentences:

#### ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- يستخدم ضمير الوصل (which) هنا للإشارة إلى الجملة قبلها.

Saeed Yousuf is a fact checker. He checks the facts in reports before they are sent to the editor<sup>(١)</sup>. Saeed explains that news stories can use both facts and opinions, but it must be clear which is which<sup>(٢)</sup>. Facts can be checked, but opinions are the points of view held by the writer<sup>(٣)</sup>. He believes that it's very important for the public to trust the information in the story, but some newspapers, he admits, are better at checking facts than others. It can cause serious problems if newspapers print stories without checking the information carefully first.



#### Notes on some sentences:

#### ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- لاحظ استخدام جملتين في زمن المضارع البسيط مع أداة الربط (before) لتكرار حدوث الفعلين بنفس الترتيب.

٢- لاحظ العبارة (which is which) والتي تعني التمييز بين شيئين فالجملة أصلها.

..... but it must be clear which is fact and which is opinion.

٣- هذه الجملة أصلها.

..... but opinions are the points of view which are held by the writer.

- لاختصار الجملة تم حذف (which are) وتم الإبقاء على التصريف الثالث (held) لأن الجملة مبنية للمجهول.



Astronauts have made yet another amazing discovery in space. During a recent space walk to fix part of a satellite, which had been damaged after a meteorite had hit it, they saw an unexpected shape on the moon. Using their onboard digital cameras, they zoomed in to discover what appeared to be a plane, which used to carry bombs during World War 2 and had crashed into the moon. After reporting the find, NASA confirmed that there are still 124 planes which were lost during the Second World War, and they believe this may be one of them.

### Listening Text



Scan &amp; listen



#### Newsreader:

Good morning. Here are today's headlines on Monday, 5<sup>th</sup> October.

A fire started in a supermarket late last night and 20 firefighters are still at the scene. Investigators say it is unclear how the fire began, but the police think it had been started deliberately. The police and fire services had been called earlier in the evening, but left when everything appeared to be OK. At the time they believed it was yet another false alarm. At midnight, a woman phoned again and said she had seen flames at the back of the supermarket, and by the time the firefighters arrived, the fire had moved to the front of the shop.

A Lebanese photographer has won a top photography competition for his photo of a desert sunrise. Twenty-two-year-old, Marwan Hamed told journalists that he had used an old digital camera to take his photo and was surprised that it had looked so good. Marwan entered his first photo competition when he was only eight years old after he had been given a book about photography by his uncle. He didn't win that time, but has continued to take photos and is now working as a professional photographer for a news channel.

Antigua and Barbuda is the latest country to offer digital nomads, people who can work anywhere in the world on their computer, the opportunity to live and work there for two years. Until COVID-19 arrived, the country's main income had been tourism, but now with people having fewer holidays, the government has offered digital nomads a fantastic opportunity to enjoy life on their Caribbean islands. Our Caribbean correspondent, Melody Smith, told us if you want a relaxing place to work, then this is perfect.

## Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

### investigator

محقق / مفتش (شخص وظيفته اكتشاف الحقائق في الأحداث وخاصة الجرائم والحوادث)

A team of special **investigators** have gone to the scene of the explosion.

### inspector

مفتش / مراقب (شخص وظيفته التأكد من أن الناس يؤدون أعمالهم بطريقة صحيحة)

Last year, school **inspectors** reported that 20% of young pupils were unable to read or write.

### conductor

مفتش القطارات أو الأتوبيس (كمسافر)

As the train pulled out, the senior **conductor** came around.

### admit

يعترف / يقر (والمصدر هنا admission)

يستخدم الفعل (**admit**) بمعنىين مختلفين ويختلف المصدر المشتق منه في كل منهما:

- She **admitted** (that) she had made a mistake.
- In court, he **admitted** (to) lying about the accident.

### admit

يسمح بدخول جامعة أو مدرسة أو مبنى (والمصدر هنا admission/admittance)

You will not be **admitted** to the theatre after the performance has started.

### fact

حقيقة / معلومة حقيقية

a piece of information that is known to be true  
- The book is full of **facts** about the World Cup.

### truth

حقيقة / صدق

the state or quality of being true  
- There is no **truth** in the rumour they spread about the scientist.

### scene

- 1- منظر / مشهد (في فيلم / مسرحية)
- 2- موقع / مكان (أحداث)

- The opening **scene** of the movie is a battle field.
- Firefighters arrived at the **scene** of the fire within minutes.

### scenery

مناظر طبيعية جميلة

We drove through some very beautiful **scenery** in the country.

### view

منظر طبيعي ثابت

We had a fantastic **view** of the mountains from our room.

**record**

سجل (معلومات عن شيء ما في صورة مكتوبة)

I have to keep a **record** of all my spending when I'm travelling on business.**file**

ملف (مجموعة من السجلات مجمعة معا)

He began reading the **file** on the case.**ledger**

دفتر الحسابات (لشركة / مؤسسة)

The costs have been moved from one column of the **ledger** to another.**Vocabulary Check point 3**

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Most rooms of the SouthMED hotels will enjoy panoramic ..... of the Mediterranean Sea.  
a) views      b) sceneries      c) landscapes      d) scenes
- The ..... fined **يغرم** the young man who got into the train without buying a ticket.  
a) investigator      b) sel er      c) conductor      d) leader
- Leaving the company is a clear ..... that he was responsible for the great losses.  
a) admittance      b) admission      c) affection      d) invention
- My father always speaks the ..... whether people like it or not.  
a) honour      b) fact      c) deal      d) truth
- During my last vacation **راجزة** I tried to keep a ..... of everything I spent.  
a) record      b) ledger      c) file      d) folder
- A ..... is a book in which a business keeps the documents of how much money it receives and spends.  
a) record      b) ledger      c) file      d) fo der
- After confessing his guilt, the criminal agreed to cooperate with the police .....  
a) investigators      b) conductors      c) employers      d) leaders
- The movie opens with a ..... in a New York skyscraper.  
a) view      b) scenery      c) landscape      d) scene





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

**Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook**

1. The press ..... with the President was published in all national newspapers.  
a) view                      b) interview                      c) seminar                      d) date
2. I've always thought you have the right voice to be a/an .....  
a) photographer      b) programmer                      c) editor                      d) newsreader
3. The talented player was ..... to play for his country's national team at the age of only 18.  
a) selected                      b) replaced                      c) reformed                      d) depicted
4. Experts advise us that ..... of failure should not stop us trying to get success.  
a) pleasure                      b) fear                      c) treasure                      d) delight
5. The secretary ..... the file to the company's website as soon as she had finished working on it.  
a) set                      b) made                      c) downloaded                      d) uploaded
6. Social media have become an important advertising tool in the present ..... world.  
a) false                      b) facial                      c) digital                      d) trivial
7. I think the school bus driver didn't hit the cat .....; it must have been an accident.  
a) hopefully                      b) excitedly                      c) inventively                      d) deliberately
8. The camera ..... in on the old man's face, hearing the bad news.  
a) zoomed                      b) boomed                      c) bombed                      d) faded
9. Farming is the main source of ..... in this village, but it also has a small factory.  
a) energy                      b) effort                      c) income                      d) entertainment
10. The new machines were not yet ..... enough to give useful results.  
a) valued                      b) complex                      c) hazardous                      d) accurate
11. Some local farmers still use ..... farming methods which have been used for hundreds of years.  
a) developed                      b) modern                      c) traditional                      d) applied
12. You can enjoy an excellent ..... of leisure and sporting facilities in Sharm El-Sheikh.  
a) range                      b) queue                      c) row                      d) line

**Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms**

13. The witness identified the suspect in the crime. The verb "identify" is the opposite of ".....".  
a) mistake                      b) confuse                      c) recognise                      d) defy
14. I'd always dreamed of owning my own home, and now my dream has ..... true.  
a) gone                      b) taken                      c) come                      d) made



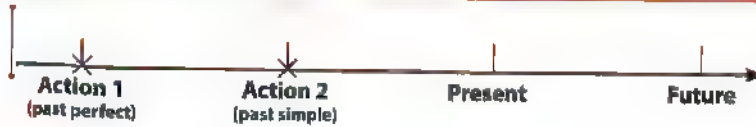
15. Scientists believe that a large meteorite **نيزك** may have crashed ... the Earth 65 million years ago leading to dinosaurs' dying out.  
a) to                      b) into                      c) of                      d) out
16. The police are still investigating the murder. The adjective of the verb "investigate" is ".....".  
a) investigates      b) investigation      c) investigator      d) investigatory
17. Visitors are not allowed to ..... photographs inside some famous museums.  
a) take                      b) do                      c) paint                      d) design
18. Passengers complain that trains are frequently cancelled. The antonym of the adverb "frequently" is ".....".  
☐ a) generally                      b) often                      c) rarely                      d) daily

### Longman and Previous Exams

19. My uncle is a/an ..... He collects and reports the news for newspapers, radio and TV. (Longman)  
☐ a) reporter                      b) interviewer                      c) photographer                      d) newsreader
20. A/An ..... is a person who makes sure the information is true. (Longman)  
a) newsreader                      b) interviewer  
c) newspaper seller                      d) fact checker
21. It is important to know the ..... of each piece of news to make sure it is true. (Longman)  
☐ a) reason                      b) result                      c) source                      d) end
22. When the police arrived at the ..... of the crime, the criminal was about to run away. (Longman)  
a) vision                      b) view                      c) sight                      d) scene
23. The ..... of news stories are usually about the most important events. (Longman)  
a) headlines                      b) headphones                      c) headmasters                      d) headquarters
24. To ..... is to send out a programme on TV or radio. (نسى سوييف / إدارة اميديا)  
a) broadcast                      b) interview                      c) transport                      d) dream
25. A/An ..... is a person who is in charge of a newspaper or magazine and decides what should be included in them. (امبيا / إدارة سمبود)  
a) newsreader                      b) conductor                      c) photographer                      d) editor
26. News channels always ..... politicians to comment on important events. (سوهاج / إدارة البيتا)  
a) offer                      b) test                      c) search                      d) interview
27. If you want to find out some information on the internet, use a good ..... engine. (اسوان / إدارة اسوان)  
☐ a) channel                      b) search                      c) electric                      d) machine
28. He works as a/an ..... for the Egyptian TV in Italy. (ابورستيد / ساره شمس)  
☐ a) actress                      b) news correspondent  
c) artist                      d) actor

## Past perfect

الماضي التام



## FORM التكوين



- التصريف الثالث + had + فاعل + Subj.  
By yesterday, I **had read** 5 stories.
- التصريف الثالث + hadn't + فاعل + Subj.  
I **hadn't seen** him before he talked to me.
- ? التصريف الثالث + P.P. + فاعل + Had  
**Had Osama bought** the tickets by yesterday?
- P.P. + فاعل + Subj. + Wh- question  
**What had she done** before going out?
- التصريف الثالث + had been + مفعول + Obj.  
By the time I reached the cinema, all the tickets **had been sold**.

## USAGE الاستخدام

1 For an action which happened before another past action or before a stated time in the past.

يعبر عن حدث تم قبل حدث ماضي آخر أو قبل وقت محدد في الماضي؛ الحدث الأول تام والثاني بسيط.

I **showed** my mother what I **had bought** from the market.  
He **admitted** that he **had lied** to his father more than once.

2 For an action which finished in the past and whose result was visible in the past.

يستخدم لحدث انتهى في الماضي ونتيجته كانت واضحة في الماضي.

There **was** glass on the floor as Osama **had broken** the window.

3 For duration before something in the past (with state verbs).

يستخدم لحدث كان مستمرًا لفترة في الماضي قبل حدث آخر مع لأفعال التي لا تستخدم في الاستمرار.

I **had had** the bike for ten years before I bought a car.  
By the time I got used to life in Cairo, I **had been** there for five years.

The past perfect is used with the following time expressions:

يستخدم الماضي التام مع التعبيرات الآتية:

before, after, till/until, when, by, by the time, as soon as

1 **After** / **As soon as** + **Past perfect** (ماضي تام) + **Past simple** (ماضي بسيط) →

After I had looked both ways, I crossed the street.

2 **Before** / **By the time** + **Past simple** (ماضي بسيط) + **Past perfect** (ماضي تام) →

Before I crossed the street, I had looked both ways.

3 **Negative past simple** (ماضي بسيط منفي) + **till/until** + **Past perfect** (ماضي تام) →

- مع ملاحظة أن الماضي البسيط المنفي له عدة أشكال:

- didn't + Inf.

ماضي بسيط منفي مبني للمعلوم

- wasn't - weren't + P.P.

ماضي بسيط منفي في المبني للمجهول

- couldn't + inf.

عدم استطاعة في الماضي

- refused - denied - ...

كلمة تعلى معنى النفي

• My son didn't buy the phone until he had taken the money.

4 **After** / **Before** + **n. / (v. ing)** + **Past simple** (ماضي بسيط) / **Past perfect** (ماضي تام) →

إذا لم يوجد فاعل بعد **After** أو **Before** نستخدم (v. ing) ويكون فاعل الجملة الثانية هو الفاعل المحذوف في الجملة الأولى.

After finishing his work, he helped me. = After he had finished, ...

Before helping me, he had finished his work. = Before he helped, ...

5 لاحظ الفرق بين جمل **when** الآتية:

**When + Past simple, Past perfect**

When I reached the station, the train had left.

غادر القطار قبل وصولي (لم الحق به)

**When + Past simple, Past simple**

When I reached the station, the train left.

غادر القطار عند وصولي (ربما لحقته أو رأيته)

**When + Past perfect, Past simple**

When I had reached the station, the train left.

وصلت المحطة قبل مفارقة القطار (لحقته)



After  
Before  
As soon as  
When

+

Past simple  
ماضي بسيط

+

Past simple  
ماضي بسيط

إذا لم يكن هناك فارق  
زمني بين الأحداث

When he entered the flat, he took off his shoes.

After he paid the driver, he got out of the taxi.

Before he left, he asked me to close the door behind him.

As soon as he read the story, he gave it to me.

### Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. As soon as I ..... a story, I started the next one.

a) 'a finished

b) finish

c) have finished

d) was finishing

2. We got very wet because we ..... to take our umbrellas.

a) forgotten

b) forget

c) had forgotten

d) have forgotten

3. When I ..... the station, the train left. I caught it.

a) have reached

b) had reached

c) reach

d) was reaching

4. When I reached home, father wasn't there. He ..... out.

a) has gone

b) went

c) goes

d) had gone

5. He kept looking at her, wondering where he ..... her.

a) had seen

b) would see

c) was seeing

d) has seen

### لاحظ

إذا وجد أكثر من حدثين في الجملة فيجب تحديد الحدث الأول ليوضع ماضيًا تمامًا والأحداث الباقية إما ماضي بسيط وإما مستمر حسب المعنى.

As soon as I saw Ahmed, I realised that I had met him before.

- لم نضع الماضي التام بعد **as soon as** مباشرة لأنه ليس الحدث الأول وأن الحدث الأول هو (المقابلة).

After he got to the station, he realised that he had left the train ticket at home.

- لم نضع الماضي التام بعد **After** مباشرة لأنه ليس الحدث الأول وأن الحدث الأول هو (ترك التذكرة في المنزل).

I was shopping with my friend when I realised that I had lost my wallet.

- الحدث الأول فقدان المحفظة.



2 يستخدم الماضي التام مع أفعال مثل think/say/know/realise عند استخدامها في الماضي للحديث عن اعتقادات ومحادثات ومعرفة وإدراك لشيء سابق.

I **thought** I **had finished** my homework, but I **realised** I **had forgotten** the last page.  
I **knew** where I **had put** the keys.

3 يجب ملاحظة المبنى للمجهول جيداً إذا بدأت الجملة بالمفعول وهذا نستخدم **had been** + P.P. للماضي التام و **was/were** + P.P. للماضي البسيط.

After the food **had been cooked**, it **was eaten**.  
Before the email **was sent**, it **had been written**.

4 يمكن استخدام الاسم بعد **after/before/until** وليس جملة كاملة.

My friends **visited** me **after** lunch yesterday.  
**Before** the war, the two countries **had threatened** each other.

5 يمكن أن يستخدم الماضي التام للإشارة إلى حدث تم في وقت محدد على عكس المضارع التام وفي هذه الحالة يمكن استخدام الماضي البسيط بدلاً منه.

He **had been** to Aswan once in 2000 before he **moved** there in 2015.  
He **went** to Aswan once in 2000 before he **moved** there in 2015.

- ولكن إذا أشار الماضي التام إلى خبرة وليس حدثاً محدداً لا يمكن استخدام الماضي البسيط.

He **had never seen** snow until he moved to Europe. NOT ~~He never saw snow...~~

## Language checkpoint 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I ..... in the essay until I had completed it.  
a) have handed    b) didn't hand    c) handed    d) had handed
- We ordered our food after we ..... at the restaurant.  
a) sitting    b) sit    c) had sat    d) were sitting
- I couldn't buy the new phone until the money .....  
a) had been saved    b) saved  
c) had saved    d) has been saved
- The prisoner ..... free until he had returned the stolen things.  
a) didn't set    b) doesn't set    c) won't set    d) wasn't set
- When I ..... the news, I couldn't believe it.  
a) will hear    b) hear    c) heard    d) was hearing





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When I got to school, the first lesson ..... I missed the start.  
 a) had already begun                      b) has already begun  
 c) began                                      d) hadn't begun
2. Tamer ..... all his exams before he travelled abroad.  
 a) passes                                      b) had passed  
 c) has passed                                d) had been passed
3. He felt that he ..... it wrong.  
 a) has made                      b) makes                      c) was made                      d) had made
4. The weather was worse last year than I ... it to be.  
 a) expect                      b) have expected                      c) had expected                      d) was expected
5. I ..... my homework when my mother came.  
 a) already did                                      b) had already done  
 c) have already done                              d) already do
6. When I counted my change, I realised they ..... me 100 pounds.  
 a) had given                      b) gave                      c) have given                      d) had been given
7. .... I left the office, I had written 5 reports.  
 a) Having                      b) After                      c) As soon as                      d) By the time
8. He ..... a camel before he came to Siwa.  
 a) has never seen                                      b) did never see  
 c) had never seen                                      d) will never see
9. I wasn't hungry at four because I ..... a big meal at one.  
 a) was having                      b) had had                      c) have had                      d) have
10. It was the first time she ..... a prize.  
 a) had won                      b) has won                      c) is won                      d) would win
11. He continued his journey ..... he had changed the tyre.  
 a) before                      b) ago                      c) since                      d) after
12. They waited patiently until the headmaster ..... speaking.  
 a) was finishing                      b) has finished                      c) finished                      d) finishes
13. I was doing my homework when I realised that I ..... to study 2 pages.  
 a) had forgotten                                      b) forgot  
 c) was forgetting                                      d) have forgotten

▶ 14. At first, I was very nervous, but after a while I ..... to feel more confident.

- ☐ a) begin      b) began      c) have begun      d) had begun

15. My father read the article which ..... about cloning.

- ☐ a) had written      b) written  
c) had been written      d) has been written

16. By the time Mariam was 26, she ..... married for three years.

- a) has      b) was being      c) has been      d) had been

17. .... she cooked the food, she washed the dishes.

- a) Until      b) After      c) No sooner      d) By

18. Ali looked both ways, and then he crossed the street. This means: .....

- a) Ali crossed the street after looking both ways  
b) When Ali had crossed the street, he looked both ways  
c) After crossing the street, Ali had looked both ways  
d) Before looking both ways, Ali crossed the street

19. Which one of the following is correctly structured?

- a) As soon as Samy phoned me, I had visited him.  
b) As soon as Samy had phoned me, I had visited him.  
c) As soon as Samy phoned me, I visited him.  
d) As soon as Samy phones me, I visited him.

20. Which one of the following isn't correctly structured?

- a) When I reached home, my mother had cooked dinner.  
b) When I had reached home, my mother cooked dinner.  
c) When I reached home, my mother finished cooking dinner.  
d) When I had reached home, my mother had cooked dinner.

### Longman and Previous Exams

21. He refused to lend me his camera until I ..... to return it on the same day.

[Longman]

- ☐ a) had been promised      b) had promised  
c) promise      d) have promised

22. Finally, I finished the task you ..... me to carry out.

[Longman]

- a) had asked      b) had been asked      c) ask      d) will ask

23. When I went to the service centre, I was pleased to find that my car ..... well.

(تقريباً)

- ☐ a) has been repairing
- b) was repairing
- c) had repaired
- d) had been repaired

24. After the plane ..... off, I felt sad to leave my country.

(تقريباً)

- ☐ a) is taking
- b) had been taken
- c) had taken
- d) has taken

25. Which of the following is structurally incorrect?

(تقريباً)

- a) When we returned home, our mother had already prepared lunch.
- b) By the time I visited Hatim, I had bought him a nice present.
- c) I met my friends as soon as I went to the club
- d) I didn't return home until I have finished my work.

26. The facts ..... by the scientist before they wrote their reports.

(تقريباً)

- a) had checked
- b) had been checked
- c) have checked
- d) has been checked

27. After ..... this article, I summarised it.

- a) has read
- b) had read
- c) read
- d) reading

28. Yesterday, my sister gave me the money she ..... the day before.

(تقريباً)

- a) borrowed
- b) has borrowed
- c) had borrowed
- d) borrows

29. I finally finished reading the novel you ..... me.

(تقريباً)

- a) had lent
- b) have lent
- c) had been lent
- d) were lending

30. He ..... to sit down until he had apologised.

(تقريباً)

- a) doesn't allow
- b) didn't allow
- c) wasn't allowed
- d) hadn't allowed



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### Vocabulary

1. The Head of the Organisation put the young scientist in ..... of the research team.  
☐ a) change      ☐ b) charge      ☐ c) account      ☐ d) balance
2. Around 2001, the Google search ..... rose to prominence. بروز / شهرة  
☐ a) engine      ☐ b) power      ☐ c) motor      ☐ d) page
3. As an amateur ....., he compiled جمع remarkable shots of forests and their by-products.  
☐ a) reporter      ☐ b) correspondent      ☐ c) photographer      ☐ d) writer
4. The lazy student was ashamed to ..... his mistakes to the teachers.  
☐ a) admit      ☐ b) deny      ☐ c) deploy      ☐ d) apply
5. The research team have been ..... data from various sources for months.  
☐ a) scattering      ☐ b) spreading      ☐ c) telling      ☐ d) collecting
6. The earthquake was the worst natural ..... to hit the city for over 50 years.  
☐ a) disaster      ☐ b) achievement      ☐ c) acceptance      ☐ d) trend
7. The marketing leaflets were sent ..... to all of the email addresses on the list.  
☐ a) in      ☐ b) out      ☐ c) away      ☐ d) off
8. There are plans to send ..... and some ordinary people to Mars by 2030.  
☐ a) collectors      ☐ b) sailors      ☐ c) astrologers      ☐ d) astronauts
9. 'Capitano' is a TV programme where football scouts are looking for new ..... all over Egypt.  
☐ a) presents      ☐ b) talents      ☐ c) coaches      ☐ d) managers
10. The announcement of the new Capital was made in an international ..... conference.  
☐ a) archaeological      ☐ b) code      ☐ c) dress      ☐ d) press
11. We often cook traditional Egyptian meals for our guests. The synonym of the word "traditional" is "  
☐ a) convent onal      ☐ b) modern      ☐ c) relied      ☐ d) designed
12. The President addressed the nation in a television ..... after the elections.  
☐ a) publication      ☐ b) spread      ☐ c) broadcast      ☐ d) meeting
13. Mrs Mary is a/an ..... for a small publishing fashion magazine in Oxford.  
☐ a) editor      ☐ b) discoverer      ☐ c) programmer      ☐ d) actor
14. The famous TV announcer has ..... celebrities مشاهير and political leaders on her programme for over 25 years.  
☐ a) reviewed      ☐ b) interviewed      ☐ c) replied      ☐ d) recovered
15. In the last few years, there has been a great investment in the new ..... of energy which don't cause pollution.  
☐ a) causes      ☐ b) results      ☐ c) consumptions      ☐ d) sources

## Language

16. I couldn't imagine what ..... to her.  
 a) had been happened                      b) has been happened  
 c) had happened                              d) has been happen ng
17. The criminal ..... until he had tried to leave the country.  
 a) arrested                                      b) wasn't arrested  
 c) didn't arrest                                d) won't be arrested
18. We ..... the station before the train arrived.  
 a) had reached    b) were reaching    c) would reach    d) reach
19. After the house ..... we furnished it.  
 a) is painted                                      b) has painted  
 c) had painted                                      d) had been painted
20. As soon as I ..... a space, I parked my car.  
 a) was finding    b) find                      c) had found                      d) have found
21. After he had written the email, he ..... it to the manager.  
 a) nas sent                      b) sent                      c) was sending                      d) was sent
22. As soon as the bell ....., the students left the classroom.  
 a) rang                      b) didn't ring                      c) rings                      d) was ringing
23. I applied for a job in a nearby bank ..... I graduated.  
 a) until                      b) while                      c) just                      d) as soon as
24. The facts ..... by the reporter before he wrote his report.  
 a) had checked    b) had been checked    c) are checked                      d) are checking
25. By the time we got to the stadium, our team ..... two goals.  
 a) has scored    b) were scoring                      c) had scored                      d) will score
26. After ..... school, Mahmoud worked in a restaurant for a year.  
 a) leaving                      b) had left                      c) being left                      d) leave
27. Ahmed ..... for the publishing company before he quit and went with its rivals.  
 a) was working    b) is work ng                      c) has worked                      d) had worked
28. I didn't go with you to the cinema because I ..... that film.  
 a) already see                                      b) have already seen  
 c) had already seen                                      d) didn't see
29. The student decided not to make that mistake again after ..... by the teacher.  
 a) being punished                                      b) punish'ing  
 c) had punished                                      d) punished
30. When they ..... the theatre, the play had already started.  
 a) reach                      b) reached                      c) had reached                      d) w'll reach





Watch a video

A

## Vocabulary

## Vocabulary on Reading &amp; Listening Texts

## مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

adults (n)	كبار/بالغين	involved (adj)	متورط	teenager (n)	مراهق
agree (v) (d)	يوافق	journalism (n)	صحافة	tone (n)	نغمة / نبرة صوت
brilliant (adj)	متميز/رائع	keen (adj)	حريص / متحمس	uninjured (adj)	غير مصاب
coastal (adj)	ساحلي	launch (v) (ed)	يطلق	unknown (adj)	غير معروف
compare (v) (d)	يقارن	lucky (adj)	محظوظ	wave (n)	موجة
creation (n)	خلق / إنتاج	pronunciation (n)	نطق	website (n)	موقع إترنت
education (n)	التعليم	speed (n)	سرعة	witness (n) (v) (ed)	شاهد / يشهد
emergency (n)	طوارئ	stick (v)	يلتصق		
grateful (adj)	شاكر / ممتن	teenage (n)	مرحلة المراهقة		

## Workbook Vocabulary

## مفردات كتاب التدريبات

artist (n)	فنان	historian (n)	مؤرخ	recent (adj)	حديث
barrier (n)	حاجز	incident (n)	حادث	remains (n)	بقايا / آثار
bury (v) (ied)	يدفن	location (n)	موقع	remarkable (adj)	رائع
cave (n)	كهف	monument (n)	أثر	route (n)	طريق
century (n)	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	necropolis (n)	مقبرة كبيرة	sculpture (n)	تمثال / نحت
consequences (n)	نتائج / عواقب	objects (n)	أشياء	spokesperson (n)	متحدث رسمي
council (n)	مجلس / هيئة / معهد	order (n)	ترتيب	successful (adj)	ناجح
erect (v) (ed)	يبني / يشهد	overhead (adj)	هوائي	whale (n)	حوت
exploration (n)	استكشاف	permission (n)	إذن / تصريح		

## Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. China is planning to ..... a space project to send more spacecraft to the moon in the next few years.  
a) attack      b) compete      c) prevent      d) launch
2. All educational experts don't ..... with hitting children as a punishment.  
a) accept      b) agree      c) expect      d) explore
3. Many websites specifically choose topics that will appeal to ..... up to 19 years old.  
a) adults      b) infants      c) teenagers      d) directors
4. Archaeologists have recently uncovered a ..... of an ancient Egyptian king in Saqqara where they found his mummy.  
a) palace      b) necropolis      c) valley      d) hut
5. All the pictures in the modern art exhibition were painted by Egyptian young .....  
a) fans      b) explorers      c) enemies      d) artists
6. Hundreds of people became sick as a ..... of the drinking polluted water during the war in Gaza.  
a) purpose      b) cause      c) consequence      d) reason
7. The documentary about the 6<sup>th</sup> October War was made in the ..... of the battles.  
a) post      b) location      c) destination      d) posture
8. Doctors need written ..... from the patient before they can do any operations.  
a) position      b) treaty      c) contract      d) permission
9. This school is devoted ..... to the ..... of children with reading difficulties.  
a) practising      b) prohibition      c) education      d) obligation
10. Karam Gaber, the Egyptian wrestler, had a long and ..... career and won a gold Olympic medal.  
a) brilliant      b) awful      c) amazed      d) terrible

### التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

(be) stuck in	يعلق / يُحتجز في	cover the important information	يفغطى / يتناول المعلومات الهامة	give permission	يمنح إذنًا / تصريحًا
call for help	يطلب / يتصل للمساعدة	for some unknown reason	لسبب ما غير معروف	in the hope of	على أمل أن
able to	قادر أن	happy about	سعيد بـ	keen on	حريص على
example of	مثال لـ	interested in	مهتم بـ	spokesperson for	متحدث لـ

## Derivatives

## المشتقات

bury	يدفن	burial	دفن	buried	مدفون
compare	يقارن	comparison	مقارنة	comparative	مقارن / نسبي
educate	يعلم	education	التعليم	educational	تعليمي
explore	يستكشف	exploration explorer	استكشاف مستكشف	exploratory	استكشافي
locate	يحدد موقعاً/يقع	location	موقع	located	قالم / موضوع
permit	يسمح	permission	إذن / تصريح	permitted	مسموح
succeed	ينجح	success	نجاح	successful	ناجح

## Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

I **compared** several cars before buying one. (v)He's a well-behaved child in **comparison** with his brother. (n)She did a **comparative** study of classical and modern art. (adj)

## Words, Synonyms &amp; Antonyms

barrier	حاجز	obstruction/blockade	assistance opening	مساعدة افتتاح
brilliant	متميز/رائع	outstanding/distinguished	ordinary/common	عادي/شائع
compare	يقارن	contrast	discard	يستبعد
consequences	نتائج / عواقب	results	causes/reasons	أسباب
erect	يبني / يشيد	build/construct	destroy/demolish	يهدم
keen	حريص / متحمس	eager/enthusiastic	unconcerned/indifferent	غير مهتم
launch	يطلق	initiate/introduce	end/stop	ينهي / يوقف
permission	إذن / تصريح	agreement/license	denial/refusal	إنكار / رفض
remarkable	رائع	extraordinary	familiar ordinary	مألوف عادي

## Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I was angry when my father refused to ..... me permission to attend my friend's party as it was late.  
a) follow                      b) get                      c) give                      d) obtain
2. A spokesperson ..... the oil company met the reporters to announce the new projects.  
a) for                      b) with                      c) off                      d) on
3. On coastal areas, houses are often erected of local materials. The verb "erect" is similar in meaning to the verb ".....".  
a) demolish                      b) destroy                      c) set                      d) construct
4. You should compare three or four computers before buying one. The noun of the verb "compare" is ".....".  
a) compare                      b) comparison                      c) compared                      d) comparative
5. The lady taught her children to ..... for help if there was an emergency.  
a) offer                      b) set                      c) launch                      d) call
6. Sameh started to be interested ..... squash when he saw Ramy Ashour, the world champion receive the prize.  
a) in                      b) of                      c) at                      d) about
7. Karma went to her grandfather's house in the ..... of getting a loan to start her private business.  
a) species                      b) call                      c) hope                      d) shout
8. They were very keen to start work as soon as possible. The antonym of the adjective "keen" is ".....".  
a) indifferent                      b) eager                      c) strange                      d) accurate
9. My family were not happy ..... my decision to leave my job to start a private business.  
a) in                      b) about                      c) of                      d) up
10. Our neighbour, Mr Ahmed, was a ..... businessman before becoming a writer.  
a) succeed                      b) success                      c) successful                      d) successfully

## Reading Text (1)



## A teenage world!

A new website has just been launched by teenagers for teenagers.

**Our World** is the creation of Jake and Amy Hope who wanted a news website that other teenagers would enjoy. 'Adults think teenagers are only interested in music and sport,' explained Amy, 'but that isn't true!'

**Our World** has news, technology, education, music and sport, but what makes it different is that all the reporters are teenagers.

'Teenagers sometimes see the world differently to adults,' Jake told us and it seems he's right. 'It's brilliant,' said 13-year-old Henry<sup>(1)</sup>, 'it's much more interesting than most websites<sup>(2)</sup>.' His sister agrees, 'I really like the fact that all the reports are by teenagers who are keen on the same things as me.'



## Notes on some sentences:

ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- لاحظ استخدام صيغة المفرد (year) بسبب استخدام العبارة كاملة كصفة للاسم بعدها.

٢- لاحظ استخدام (much) مع صفة المقارنة (more interesting) للتعبير عن درجة المقارنة بمعنى (بكثير).

## Reading Text (2) (Workbook)



Two days ago historian, José Galán and his team discovered the ancient remains of a 15 or 16-year-old girl who had been buried for 3,600 years. José was part of a team of Spanish and Egyptian experts, who had been given permission to explore a necropolis on Luxor's West Bank, in the hope of finding out more about the history of the area. What makes the discovery so amazing is that the teenager had been buried with lots of interesting objects.

The Egyptian government was very happy about the new discovery<sup>١</sup>. The government said it was one of the most remarkable discoveries in recent years. 'We plan to show the objects in a museum very soon for everyone to see,' a spokesperson for the government said.



## Notes on some sentences:

ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- لاحظ استخدام الفعل في صيغة المفرد (was) مع (government) لأن المقصود الحكومة ككل وليس كأفراد.





Scan &amp; listen



1. Two walkers had a lucky escape last night after a storm hit the small coastal village of Largs in Scotland. Heavy rain started at 5 pm and by 6 pm strong winds had blown a lot of water onto the footpath on the sea front. Witnesses say that the walkers were halfway along the path when a huge wave knocked them over. Police believe that the walkers were two local women, but no names have been given, and the women have been returned safe and well to their families.
2. Police were called to a house in Beedon yesterday to help a teenager stuck in a bathroom window. Neighbours saw the feet of 13-year-old Leila Tahar sticking out of the window and thought it was a thief. When the police managed to free the teenager, they discovered that Leila lived at the house, but had forgotten her keys! She said, 'The only window open was the bathroom one, but it was a bit small!'



Scan &amp; listen

**Newsreader:**

Welcome to the Rotterdam local news. Today we have an amazing story of how a sea animal saved the lives of many adults and children by stopping a train ten metres in the air in the middle of a city. Yes, you heard me correctly. The plastic sculpture of a whale's tail, which had been created twenty years earlier by a local artist, had been erected by the Local Council at the end of an overground railway line. **Little did they expect the work of art to save lives<sup>(1)</sup>**. However, last week when, for some unknown reason, the train could not stop at the final station on its route, it crashed through the safety barriers. The sculpture at the end of the railway line was able to catch the runaway train and prevent it from falling into a park below where parents with their children were playing happily.

Luckily, the train had been emptied just moments before, so the only person onboard was the train driver. As he got off the train uninjured, he said he was glad that nobody had been hurt and was very grateful to the artist who had created the tail. So, it just goes to show you; art can save lives!

In other news ...

**Notes on some sentences:**

ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١ - لاحظ استخدام صيغة الاستفهام (**did they expect**) لأن الجملة بدأت بـ (**Little**) وهو ما يعتبر (**inversion**).  
و نفس الشيء قد يحدث مع تركيبات كثيرة إذا بدأنا بها مثل:

(No sooner - Hardly - Not only - In no way - Seldom - Rarely)

## Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

يستخدم الفعل (launch) بمعاني متعددة مثل:

١- يطلق صاروخًا أو مركبة فضائية.

- A test satellite was **launched** from Cape Canaveral.

٢- يبدأ منتجًا جديدًا أو مجموعة منتجات جديدة.

- The company hopes to **launch** the new drug by next October.

٣- يبدشن سفينة أو غوصة جديدة.

- The navy is **launching** three new submarines next month.

٤- يشغل برنامجًا أو تطبيقًا على الكمبيوتر أو الهاتف.

- You should double-click on this icon to **launch** the application.

### location

موقع / مكان (للتصوير مثلاً)

- We have not found a suitable **location** for the new offices.

- Most of the movie was shot on **location** in Africa.

### position

- موضع (مثل الوقوف أو الجلوس مثلاً)  
- مكانة / وظيفة / مركز في الملعب

- First, get yourself into a comfortable **position**.

- I'm not sure what I would do if I were in your **position**.

### recent

حديث (مصنوع / تام منذ فترة قصيرة)

All applicants should send a **recent** photo with their CV.

### modern

حديث / متطور (نتيجة لاستخدام طرق أو وسائل حديثة)

**Modern** technology has had a huge impact on all of us.

### exploration

استكشاف (مكان)

Scientists from all over the world have plans for space **exploration**.

### discovery

اكتشاف (شيء لم يكن معروفًا من قبل)

The **discovery** of oil has shared in the development of industry.

### invention

اختراع (شيء لم يكن موجودًا من قبل)

No other **invention** had a greater effect on people's life than the internet.

**permission (uncountable)**  
(تصريح) موافقة / رضا

Osama drove his father's car without his **permission**.

**permit (countable)**  
تصريح رسمي مكتوب

People from other countries require work **permits**.

**proud of**  
(verb + ing) فخور به (يتبعها اسم / ضمير أو

The company is **proud of** its achievements.

**proud to**  
فخور أن (يتبعها الفعل في صيغة المصدر)

I'm **proud to** say we made the right decision.

**proud that**  
فخور أن (يتبعها جملة كاملة)

We're **proud that** they chose our school for the competition.

### Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- There have been great medical advances in the world during the ..... few years.  
a) old                      b) recent                      c) modern                      d) vague
- I'm very proud ..... take part in this great project.  
a) of                      b) to                      c) in                      d) that
- Millions of dollars are spent on space ..... that should be spent on solving peoples' problems.  
a) discovery                      b) invitation                      c) exploration                      d) invention
- The exact ..... of the hotel where the royal couple is staying is a secret.  
a) site                      b) location                      c) destination                      d) sight
- The pilot of the Australian plane asked the authorities for ..... to land in India for emergency.  
a) permission                      b) permit                      c) licence                      d) degree
- One by one, the old buildings in the city have been demolished and replaced with ..... tower blocks.  
a) old                      b) recent                      c) modern                      d) vague
- The ..... of the computer has revolutionised the business world.  
a) discovery                      b) invitation                      c) exploration                      d) invention
- EGYPTAIR will launch its new flights to new cities service next month.  
The verb "launch" here means ".....".  
a) reverse                      b) fire                      c) send out                      d) start



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

**Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook**

1. The ..... of the famous Lighthouse of Alexandria are well preserved.  
☐ a) remains      ☐ b) heritage      ☐ c) specks      ☐ d) cells
2. According to eye ....., the robbery was carried out by two teenage boys.  
☐ a) inspectors      ☐ b) criminals      ☐ c) witness      ☐ d) authors
3. According to the rules, no child is allowed out of the school during the day, unless accompanied by a/an .....  
☐ a) friend      ☐ b) adult      ☐ c) driver      ☐ d) advocate
4. These small boats aren't strong enough to withstand high ..... deep in the sea.  
☐ a) waves      ☐ b) droughts      ☐ c) currants      ☐ d) snots
5. A good university ..... is often the best way to get a good job.  
☐ a) treatment      ☐ b) surgery      ☐ c) education      ☐ d) punishment
6. I was extremely ..... to the bank's staff who have provided help.  
☐ a) regretful      ☐ b) useful      ☐ c) hateful      ☐ d) grateful
7. My book got wet in the rain and all the pages have ..... together.  
☐ a) spread      ☐ b) stuck      ☐ c) wasted      ☐ d) affected
8. Scientists believe that many ..... areas are in danger of being flooded because of the changes caused by global warming.  
☐ a) desert      ☐ b) empty      ☐ c) coastal      ☐ d) mountain
9. In case of ....., you can call 122 for police, the fire department or an ambulance.  
☐ a) evaluation      ☐ b) emergency      ☐ c) accuracy      ☐ d) presentation
10. We found that the motorway is the most direct ..... outside the city.  
☐ a) street      ☐ b) route      ☐ c) road      ☐ d) avenue
11. The police have put ..... up to stop angry people from getting through the main square.  
☐ a) waves      ☐ b) stations      ☐ c) states      ☐ d) barriers
12. Winning the cup was a ..... achievement for our national team.  
☐ a) horrible      ☐ b) strict      ☐ c) remarkable      ☐ d) fearful
13. My son is ..... to learn more about art history, that's why he will study it at university.  
☐ a) profound      ☐ b) keen      ☐ c) brave      ☐ d) refrained
14. Electric cables are usually ..... beneath the streets ground.  
☐ a) excavated      ☐ b) buried      ☐ c) drilled      ☐ d) deployed
15. Ancient ..... are protected by law as part of the human civilisation.  
☐ a) regulations      ☐ b) mountains      ☐ c) monuments      ☐ d) points

## Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

16. She's trying to launch a new career as a singer. The synonym of the verb "launch" is ".....".  
 a) initiate                      b) end                      c) stop                      d) explore
17. Because Leila seemed very tired, the teacher ..... her permission to go home early.  
 a) followed                      b) relied                      c) took                      d) gave
18. Many photographers waited outside the hotel ..... the hope of taking some photos for the famous couple.  
 a) on                      b) off                      c) in                      d) for
19. Photographs should only be taken with the permission of the person. The noun "permission" is the opposite of ".....".  
 a) agreement                      b) license                      c) selection                      d) refusal
20. My younger sister likes biology, but she's not keen ..... physics.  
 a) up                      b) on                      c) at                      d) by
21. The former war hero was buried with full military honours. The noun of the verb "bury" is ".....".  
 a) buries                      b) buried                      c) burial                      d) briefly
22. The artist's drawings are remarkable for their accuracy. The antonym of the adjective "remarkable" is ".....".  
 a) extraordinary                      b) odd                      c) ordinary                      d) delayed

## Longman and Previous Exams

23. Do you think that a new satellite will be ..... in Egypt next year?  
 a) launched                      b) stopped                      c) appeared                      d) explored
24. Unfortunately, I have been ..... in a very busy street in one of Cairo's districts.  
 a) stood                      b) started                      c) stuck                      d) stored
25. This is a/an ..... programme; I'm sure you will enjoy it.  
 a) boring                      b) excited                      c) brilliant                      d) normal
26. A ..... is an area of land where dead people are buried, especially a large ancient one.  
 a) hall                      b) necropolis                      c) hell                      d) palace
27. You can ..... your suit with mine and you will see the difference.  
 a) appear                      b) compare                      c) arrange                      d) complain
28. We plan to ..... a new website for children.  
 a) lunch                      b) shape                      c) launch                      d) crash
29. The ..... in this museum date back to the Greek era.  
 a) explorations                      b) inventions                      c) sculptures                      d) scenes



## B

## Language

## Past perfect (Extra points)

الماضي التام

No sooner  
Hardly  
Scarcely

+

لم يكن ..... حتى .....  
 التصريف الثالث P.P. + فاعل. **had + subj.**  
 المصدر. **did + subj.** + فاعل  
 الماضي التام أو البسيط في شكل سؤال


+

than  
when  
when

+

Past simple  
ماضي بسيطNo sooner **had** Marwa **found** the money **than** she **reported** the police.No sooner **did** Marwa **find** the money **than** she **reported** the police.

إذا جاءت هذه الكلمات في أول الكلام تكون القاعدة السابقة، وإذا لم تأت في أول الكلام يكون الآتي:

Subject + **had** + **no sooner**  
**hardly**  
**scarcely** +  + **than**  
**when**  
**when** + **Past simple**  
 ماضي بسيط

Marwa **had** **hardly** **found** the money **when** she **reported** the police.

On + v.ing = When + clause جملة

On **looking** at the question, I **knew** the answer. = **When** I **looked** ..., I **knew** ...

By + ماضي تام + فترة في الماضي

By **yesterday** أمس، he **had** **applied** for the job.

Having + P.P. = After + Past perfect

**Having** **booked** the tickets, I **took** the train to Assuit. = **After** I **had** **booked**, ...

- It was only when إنه فقط عندما + ماضي بسيط + that + ماضي تام  
 - It wasn't until لم يكن حتى

It was only **when** he **had** **finished** his work **that** he **helped** me.It wasn't until he **had** **finished** his work **that** he **helped** me.

Subject + **only** + **Past simple** → ماضي بسيط + **when** + **Past perfect** → ماضي تام

I **only** **solved** the problem **when** my father **had** **helped** me.

## Past perfect (other uses)

## استخدامات أخرى للماضى التام

1 في فعل شرط الحالة الثالثة من if

If our team **had played** well yesterday, they would have won the cup.

2 بعد wish/If only للتعبير عن الندم أو اللوم في الماضى.

I wish I **had studied** harder last year.

3 بعد I'd rather في حالة وجود فاعل بعدها لتعبير عن اللوم والندم في الماضى.

I'd rather you **hadn't done** that = I wish you hadn't done that.

## Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The hotel was full, so I was glad that we ..... in advance.

- a) had never booked
- b) have booked
- c) would book
- d) 'd booked

2. Hardly ..... out of the car when fans surrounded her.

- a) has she stepped
- b) she had stepped
- c) had she stepped
- d) she stepped

3. No sooner had my father bought the computer ..... it broke down.

- a) when
- b) than
- c) that
- d) then

4. On ..... the old house, we were sure it would collapse.

- a) leaving
- b) left
- c) we had left
- d) we left

5. It wasn't until Ahmed had made the serious mistake that he .....

- a) punished
- b) had punished
- c) was punished
- d) had been punished





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hardly ..... the match when I felt that pain.  
☐ a) played      ☐ b) I had played      ☐ c) had I played      ☐ d) will pay
2. On ..... the bad news, he fainted.  
☐ a) hearing      ☐ b) had heard      ☐ c) heard      ☐ d) he had heard
3. Having ..... a lot of problems, he asked his uncle for help.  
☐ a) had had      ☐ b) he had had      ☐ c) have      ☐ d) had
4. It wasn't until midnight that I ..... better and went to sleep.  
☐ a) had felt      ☐ b) felt      ☐ c) feeling      ☐ d) was feeling
5. As soon as I ..... a story, I started the next one.  
☐ a) 'd finished      ☐ b) finish      ☐ c) have finished      ☐ d) 'd been finished
6. No sooner ..... his country than he had lots of problems.  
☐ a) he had left      ☐ b) he left      ☐ c) had he left      ☐ d) was he leaving
7. He ..... the film until he had booked the ticket.  
☐ a) had seen      ☐ b) wasn't seen      ☐ c) hadn't seen      ☐ d) cou dn't see
8. .... typed the report, the secretary handed it to the manager.  
☐ a) While      ☐ b) Having      ☐ c) When      ☐ d) After
9. No sooner ..... he stepped on my foot than he apologised to me.  
☐ a) nad      ☐ b) did      ☐ c) nas      ☐ d) was
10. .... In a big city before you moved to Alexandria?  
☐ a) Have you worked      ☐ b) Were you working  
☐ c) Had you worked      ☐ d) Would you work
11. My cousin ..... to a big city before he visited Cairo.  
☐ a) wasn't been      ☐ b) has never been  
☐ c) won't be      ☐ d) had never been
12. It was only when he ..... the instructions that he knew how to operate the machine.  
☐ a) was reading      ☐ b) had read      ☐ c) has read      ☐ d) reads
13. When we got the bill, Mohamed ..... on paying.  
☐ a) has insisted      ☐ b) had insisted      ☐ c) Ins sted      ☐ d) insists

► 14. After the parcel ....., I received it.

- a) has arrived                      b) arrives
- c) had been arrived                d) had arrived

15. .... had he finished the report when he handed it to the boss.

- a) No sooner                      b) Scarce y
- c) After                              d) It was only when

16. .... the money, my wife bought the kitchen machine.

- ☐ a) Having saved                      b) Having been saved
- c) After had saved                      d) No sooner had she saved

17. .... we had booked the tickets that we took the train to Aswan.

- ☐ a) No sooner                      b) Hardly
- c) By the time                      d) It was only when

18. .... my friend, I welcomed him.

- ☐ a) By the time I met                      b) On meeting
- c) Having been met                      d) Had I met

19. Hardly had he made the mistake when he was dismissed. This means ".....".

- a) He was dismissed at first, then he made the mistake
- b) He didn't make the mistake, but he was dismissed
- c) He was dismissed as soon as he made the mistake
- d) He was dismissed before making the mistake

20. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect?

- a) By the time I came back from my trip, a lot of things had changed.
- b) By the time I come back from my trip, a lot of things will have changed.
- c) By the time I had come back from my trip, a lot of things changed.
- d) By the time I have come back from my trip, a lot of things will have changed.

## Longman and Previous Exams

21. No sooner had I arrived at the office than I ..... an email to the exporting company.

- a) was sending    b) have sent                      c) sent                      d) had sent

22. I had hardly returned home ..... my close friends for lunch.

- a) than I met                      b) when I had met
- c) when I met                      d) when I was meeting



23. .... the factory became ready to produce high-quality cotton clothes. الجاهز

- a) Having constructed                      b) After constructing  
c) Before constructing                      d) Having been constructed

24. Which of the following is structurally correct? البنية

- a) Having decorated, the house became quite ready for the wedding party.  
b) When I reached the office, I realised that I had left my phone at home.  
c) Did you understand the lesson that I had explained again?  
d) Before I go home, I had bought the things I need.

25. Which of the following doesn't give the same meaning of this sentence:

Having heard about the bad accident, I contacted my friend. المراد

- a) After I had heard about the accident, I contacted my friend.  
b) I didn't contact my friend until I had heard about the accident.  
c) I had contacted my friend before I heard about the accident.  
d) As soon as I heard about the accident, I contacted my friend.

26. No sooner ..... finish writing the report than he sent it to the manager. الوقت

- a) did he                      b) had he                      c) he had                      d) has he

27. Having ..... on, the fan started to make loud noise. بعد

- a) switched                      b) been switched                      c) being switched                      d) switching

28. The people of the city hardly ..... safe until the police had caught the criminal. أبداً / الظاهر

- a) hadn't felt                      b) didn't feel                      c) felt                      d) won't feel

29. He ..... out of the building than it collapsed. الوقت

- a) did no sooner go                      b) had gone no sooner  
c) no sooner had gone                      d) had no sooner gone

30. After the house ..... , we furnished it. بعد

- a) had been painted                      b) has painted  
c) had painted                      d) is painted





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## Vocabulary

- The hotel is in a central ..... near the facilities at the city centre.  
a) post      b) location      c) destination      d) posture
- A new version of the game for computers will be ..... in February.  
a) populated      b) printed      c) consumed      d) launched
- I called Mona early in the ..... of catching her before she went to work.  
a) despair      b) fair      c) hope      d) attention
- The mother's quick thinking in the health ..... saved the baby's life.  
a) facility      b) test      c) emergency      d) talent
- The desert forms a natural ..... between many countries in Africa.  
a) barrier      b) limit      c) building      d) search
- The National Circus is ..... a big tent for the summer shows next month.  
a) demolishing      b) erecting      c) detecting      d) evading
- The Ministry of Youth and Sports ..... permission for the rally to take place in March.  
a) followed      b) took      c) gave      d) asked
- What were the economic consequences of the war? The antonym of the noun "consequence" is ".....".  
a) result      b) cause      c) barrier      d) research
- Mohamed was very ..... to pass the test because he hadn't studied very well.  
a) obvious      b) strange      c) keen      d) lucky
- I think that starting your own project is a/an ..... idea that will bring you success.  
a) brilliant      b) interested      c) minor      d) mean
- The violent storm caused ..... damage to farm buildings, and they would take a lot of time to be repaired.  
a) simple      b) serious      c) light      d) dark
- This dictionary can serve as a guide to English ..... as well as meaning.  
a) reading      b) connection      c) pronunciation      d) communication
- You shouldn't use that rude ..... of voice with old people.  
a) ton      b) note      c) syllable      d) tone
- A ..... is a large natural hole in the side of a cliff, hill or under the ground.  
a) tunnel      b) gap      c) hut      d) cave
- The movie is set in the 19<sup>th</sup> ..... during the reign of Queen Victoria.  
a) decade      b) calendar      c) millennium      d) century

## ► Language

16. We weren't allowed to take the plane because we ..... the tickets.  
 a) forget      b) had forgotten      c) have forgotten      d) forgetting
17. Hardly had he found a good job ..... he told his father.  
 a) than      b) then      c) when      d) what
18. Ramy was hungry because he ..... anything all day.  
 a) hasn't eaten      b) wasn't eaten      c) never eats      d) hadn't eaten
19. After ..... in the company for ten years, he left it.  
 a) works      b) worked      c) had worked      d) working
20. The police had solved the problem before many people ..... the protest.  
 a) joined      b) had joined      c) jo'ining      d) have joined
21. They ..... all the doors before they left.  
 a) have locked      b) will lock      c) had been locking      d) locked
22. I didn't want to have lunch because I ..... with my friends at a restaurant.  
 a) have eaten      b) had eaten      c) was eating      d) hadn't eaten
23. The children weren't allowed to watch TV because they ..... their homework.  
 a) had done      b) haven't done      c) must have done      d) hadn't done
24. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically correct?  
 a) The ancient Egyptians used hieroglyphs to write on the walls.  
 b) The ancient Egyptians had used hieroglyphs to write on the walls.  
 c) The ancient Egyptians had built the Pyramids.  
 d) The ancient Egyptians believed in life after they had died.
25. On ..... tired, he went back home.  
 a) feeling      b) had felt      c) felt      d) being felt
26. I saw that most people ..... the party when I went there. I didn't see them.  
 a) leave      b) left      c) have already left      d) had already left
27. The criminal changed his name after he ..... his hometown.  
 a) left      b) had been leaving      c) was leaving      d) leaves
28. Hany was late for the meeting and was angry we ..... without him.  
 a) were starting      b) starting      c) nad started      d) have started
29. Ramses II ..... over ancient Egypt for more than fifty years.  
 a) was ruling      b) had ruled      c) has ruled      d) ruled
30. Which one of the following is grammatically incorrect?  
 a) Hardly nad Osama applied for the job when he took it.  
 b) No sooner had Osama applied for the job when he took it.  
 c) No sooner had Osama applied for the job than he took it.  
 d) No sooner did Osama apply for the job than ne took it.



المهارات

تعزيز من الشرح والتدريب  
يرجى الرجوع لمطابق المهارات

Writing

tips

## A NEWS REPORT تقرير إخباري

### A Volunteering Campaign!

A group of teenage students in East Alexandria have started a volunteering campaign to clean the beaches in their area. They have been working for ten hours daily. They have done great work and people started to know about them and give them all the help they could.

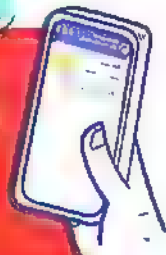
"Summer is about to start and a lot of people are about to visit our city, so it would be suitable to find our beaches clean," said Ahmed Agamy, who started the campaign. They collected a lot of rubbish from the dirty beaches and collected it in plastic bags. Some restaurant owners near the beaches provided them with vehicles to take this rubbish to landfill sites.

The beaches are cleaner now and look great. Mariam, one of the participants, said, "It was hard work, but we are all delighted to help our society." All the students who took part in the campaign were excited after the work had been done. They said that cleaning the beaches is good for the environment and would help the economy in their city.

## تطبيق الأخبار

راجع إيمانك من خلال  
وتطبيقه تسخينك من الإجابات الكاملة  
كتاب الأخبار من داخل التطبيق.

من التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأخبار  
www.riadowab.com





## (A) Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Communication through gestures and facial expressions can be defined as the transfer of messages without the use of words. It uses physical movement, such as hand gestures and body language, and also facial expressions; for example, eye contact, frowning, and smiling.

Gestures are a common part of communication that we all use to communicate every day and most of us do not even think twice about using them. Hand-signs and gestures were used long before men learned to speak in words. Words are not man's only means of communicating with each other. Red Indians, for example, once spoke different languages but has a common sign language. The sight of smoke and the sound of drums are means of sending different messages. These are common sign languages without words.

Today, people who are deaf or mute make even greater use of sign language. Though, they may never be able to speak or hear, they can understand each other by gestures or hand signals. Signs are as good as words. In African jungles, drum messages warn people against dangers. In the Canary Islands, a whistling language passes messages among sailing boats. In cities, of course, traffic lights; red, yellow and green control vehicles and people. They give to them different instructions without words.

Shaking hands and bowing show that we are friendly to each other. Gestures which mean Yes or No are most interesting. In some countries people say no by shaking their heads from side to side. This happens in Egypt, but in Lebanon people lift their heads up and back so that their chins move forward.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People in the Canary Islands communicate by .....

- a) whistling      b) shouting      c) smoke      d) drums

2. According to the passage, the oldest method of communication is .....

- a) words      b) pictures      c) traffic lights      d) hand signs

3. Lifting the heads up and back in Lebanon is a sign of .....

- a) agreement      b) showing anger  
c) refusal      d) praying

- 4.** Signs are as good as words to the people who ..... .  
a) can't see very well                      b) are deaf or mute  
c) can see each other well                d) live far from each other in cities
- 5.** What is the best title for the passage? - ..... .  
a) Communication through words  
b) Communication around the world  
c) How to communicate with others  
d) Using gestures as a kind of communication
- 6.** To warn people against dangers, Africans ..... .  
a) ring loud bells                          b) use big horns  
c) use drums in jungles                  d) set fire to the woods
- 7.** Traffic lights use ..... to control vehicles and people.  
a) drums                                      b) red, yellow and green  
c) traffic men                                d) the law
- 8.** The synonym of the underlined word "physical" is ".....".  
a) mental                                      b) material                                      c) natural                                      d) sensible



**3. Education is considered the cornerstone of achieving progress in all fields. That's why schools must be attractive places suitable for educational reform.**

- (a) إن التعليم هو الحجر الأساسي لتحقيق النجاح في كل الطرق لذلك من الممكن أن تكون المدارس أماكن جذابة مناسبة للإصلاح التعليمي.
- (b) يُعتبر التعليم حجراً أساسياً لتحقيق التقدم في كل المجالات لذلك يجب أن تكون المدارس أماكن جذابة مناسبة للإصلاح التعليمي.
- (c) يُعتبر التعليم ركن الأساس لزيادة التقدم في كل المجالات وهذا لأن المدارس من الممكن أن تكون أماكن جذابة مناسبة للإصلاح العلمي.
- (d) إن التعليم هو حجر الأساس لإنجاز التقدم في بعض المجالات لذلك يجب أن تكون المدارس أماكن جذابة مناسبة للإصلاح التعليمي.

**(B) Choose the correct English translation:**

4. هل توافق على وضع قوانين لمراقبة وحظر بعض مواقع الإنترنت وصفحات التواصل الاجتماعي خاصة التي أصبحت مصدراً للشائعات، المهددة للمجتمع؟

- a) Do you accept putting laws to watch and prohibit any websites and mass media pages generally those that become a source of rumours which threat society?
- b) Do you agree with making laws to monitor and proh'bit some websites and social media pages especially those which have become a source of rumours which threaten society?
- c) Do you agree with making laws to mon tor and let some webs tes and social med a b ogs specially what have become a resource of facts and threaten society?
- d) Are you for putting laws to watch and ban any webs'tes and social media ads especially those which became a source of truth and threatened society?

5. يختلف الناس في نظرتهم لتطور الاتصالات فمنهم من يرى أنها تطور طبيعي، ومنهم من يظن أن أضرارها تفوق مزاياها وأنها أصبحت تضرب العلاقات الاجتماعية.

- a) People differ in their view of communication development. Some of them think it is a natural development. Others think that its harms exceed its advantages and it is harming social relationships.
- b) People are different in their sight of communication progress. Few of them think it is normal development. Some of them believe that its damage passes the r advantages and it is hurting social relationships
- c) People differ in their opinion of connection development. Some of them see t is a usual development. Others guess that its benefits are equal to harms and t is damaging social relationships.
- d) People are different in their view of commun cation development. Some of them say it is a neutral development. Others th nk that its harms overwe'ght its advantages and t is harmless to socia l relationships.

6. يُعتبر اهتمام الشباب بأفلام العنف ظاهرة تستحق اهتمام كل علماء الاجتماع والمفكرين لمحاولة إيجاد الحلول لها. يقول الخبراء إنه ربما يكون لها آثار على ارتفاع معدل الجريمة.

- a) Young people's regard in adventure films is a phenomenon which pays the attention of all sociologists and believers trying to give solutions for it. Experts say that it can have an impact on the rise in crime number.
- b) Young people's interest in violence films is a phenomenon which deserves the attention of all sociologists and thinkers trying to find solutions for it. Experts say that it may have an effect on the rise in crime rate.
- c) Young people's interest in funny movies is a phenomenon which deserves the attention of all psychologists and thinkers trying to find solutions for it. Experts say that it may have an effect on the rise in crime number.
- d) Young people's concern in violent films is a phenomenon which pays the attention of all writers and thinkers trying to find solutions for it. Experts think that it must have an affection on the raise in crime rate.

## (c) Writing



Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"How can stories about national heroes inspire young people?"

Handwriting practice lines for the writing task. The lines are numbered 1 to 10 and contain a series of dots for tracing and letter formation practice.

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.

I used the right structure.

I used a topic sentence.

I wrote the conclusion.

I used the right punctuation.



### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

Ahmed is talking to Waleed who is taking the final exam next week.

**Ahmed :** Hello, Waleed. What's wrong with you?

**Waleed :** Hi, Ahmed. (1) .....

**Ahmed :** Why do you feel worried?

**Waleed :** (2) .....

**Ahmed :** Be calm and confident. Think carefully about your revision.

**Waleed :** (3) .....

**Ahmed :** You should plan to finish revision before your exams.

**Waleed :** (4) .....

**Ahmed :** Yes, I think you can finish, but don't waste your time.

**Waleed :** Thank you for your advice.

**Ahmed :** Best wishes for you.

### A Glimpse of Revelation II

#### 2 (A) Answer the following questions:

1. What does the concept of justice in the Islamic political system mean?
2. Why do you think the Prophet (PBUH) encouraged and praised altruism?

#### (B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. The principle of justice within the Islamic political system was practically ..... by the Prophet (PBUH).  
a) demonstrated    b) refused    c) derived    d) retained
4. An altruistic individual shows a/an ..... concern for the well-being of others.  
a) selfish    b) imaginary    c) ingenious    d) selfless

### King Lear

#### 3 (A) Answer the following questions:

1. What did Oswald ask Edgar before he died?
2. How was the King treated in the French camp?

#### (B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. The hero is on the ..... for most of the play. He feels really tired at the end.  
a) screen    b) pitch    c) stage    d) platform
4. .... defended Gloucester when Oswald tried to kill him.  
a) Edmund    b) Edgar    c) A servant    d) Cornwall

#### 4 (A) Translate into Arabic:

- Governments encourage the culture of volunteering and donation because of the importance of charitable work in solving many problems.

#### (B) Translate into English:

- يؤدي مفهوم العدل في الاسلام إلى المساواة بين الحاكم والمحكوم.

(13M)

- 198 Unit 10

11. I didn't leave ..... I had taken my pocket money.

- a) as soon as  
c) until

- b) because  
d) after

12. Hardly ..... the phone down when it started ringing again.

- a) had I put  
c) do I put

- b) will I have put  
d) have I put

13. By yesterday, she ..... to quit her job.

- a) decided  
c) had decided

- b) has decided  
d) was decided

► Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

(8M)

Litter is any kind of trash thrown in small amounts, especially in places where it doesn't belong. With time, it heaps up. The practice is unlawful because it costs municipalities millions of dollars annually in cleanup costs. It also reflects a bad picture of an area. The most frequently littered stuff include fast food packaging, cigarette butts, used drink bottles, chewing gum wrappers, broken electrical equipment parts, toys, broken glass, food scraps or green wastes.

Global litter is an ongoing problem which many nations have to deal with. Fortunately, there are a number of possible solutions which could lead to a permanent reduction in the waste that has increased worldwide.

One way would be to encourage companies to use biodegradable packaging for their products. Biodegradable items decompose naturally and therefore they do not add to the problem of litter. Another would be to save old metal in order to put it to further use.

As a result, all discarded metal products such as vehicles, water tools and machine parts could be melted down and used to make other products. The most effective method of reducing litter, however, is to educate people to recycle their household waste products. In fact, schemes such as paper, bottle and aluminium can collections have all been successful in reducing litter in many countries.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

14. What does the expression "heaps up" mean?

- a) Hides.  
c) Disappears.

- b) Increases in amount.  
d) Affects greatly.



► 15. Why don't biodegradable items add to the problem of litter?

- a) Because they decompose naturally.
- b) Because they cause much harm.
- c) Because they are in few countries.
- d) Because they are found underground.

16. The antonym of the underlined word "worldwide" is ".....".

- a) internationally
- b) universally
- c) globally
- d) locally

17. In the writer's opinion, the waste problem is not .....

- a) decomposed
- b) ongoing
- c) temporary
- d) molten

18. Litter is a/an ..... problem that should be dealt with.

- a) national
- b) universal
- c) invaluable
- d) cultural

19. .... is an effective means to reduce litter.

- a) Recycling
- b) Cycling
- c) Reading
- d) Production

20. To dispose litter, people should .....

- a) call the government to help them
- b) scatter it everywhere
- c) use everything they buy
- d) throw it in places where it belongs

21. Using biodegradable packaging and saving old metal are two ..... methods to reduce waste.

- a) old
- b) effective
- c) useless
- d) molten

► 22. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

(4M)

- Young people should appreciate their elders' sensible advice and wisdom. They are the outcome of their long experience through which they have faced different situations.

(a) يجب أن يمتدح الشباب إلى كلمات وحكمة كبار السن لحساسية فهي نتاج خبرتهم في حياتهم والتي واجهوها في المواقف المختلفة.

(b) يجب أن يقدّر الشباب نصائح وحكمة كبار السن العاقلة فهي نتاج خبرتهم في الحياة والتي واجهوها في المواقف المختلفة.

(c) من المهم أن يقدر الشباب كلاما وحكمة من هم أكبر منهم فهي نتاج تجاربهم في الحياة والتي واجهوها في المناسبات المختلفة.

(d) ينبغي أن يقدر الناس نصائح وحكمة من هم أكبر منهم العاقلين فهي نتاج تجاربهم في الحياة والتي واجهوها في المناسبات المختلفة.

► 23. Choose the correct English translation:

-تؤدي النزاعات والحروب إلى آثار نفسية كثيرة على الأطفال من أهمها فقدان الشعور بالأمان والخوف الدائم من المستقبل. لذلك علينا أن نتجنب الحروب بشتى السبل.

- a) Wars and fights lead to many social effects on children; one of them is missing the sense of stability and the constant fear of the future. Therefore, we should spread peace by all means.
- b) Wars and disputes lead to many psychological effects on children; one of which is losing the feeling of safety and the constant fear of death. So, we must avoid wars in all fields.
- c) Wars and disputes bring many social effects on children; one of them is losing the sense of security and the constant pain of the future. Therefore, we don't have to avoid wars by all means.
- d) Wars and disputes lead to many psychological effects on children; one of which is losing the feeling of safety and the constant fear of the future. Therefore, we should avoid wars by all means.

► 24. Answer the following questions: (The play) (1.5M)

1. If you were King Lear, would you go mad because of Goneril and Regan's bad treatment? Why?
2. Oswald received the punishment he deserved. Do you agree? Why?
3. Was Gloucester right to love the King despite the harm he suffered because of him? Why?

► 25. Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words: (3.5M)

To your friend Salim telling him about your new school in the United Arab Emirates and about making new friends when you moved there with your family. Your name is Adel. Your email address is adel2024@yahoo.com. Salim's email is salimreda@hotmail.com.

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة،  
رجوعاً للقائمة الكتاب ص 348



Assess your  
progress



< 50%

Study again

50 : 64%

Practise more

65 : 84%

Well done!

85 : 100%

Well done!

# Module 6



Unit 11

**What a performance!**

Unit 12

**Achievements and goals**

# Unit 11

## What a performance!



### Objectives

**Reading** : Online film reviews

**Writing** : Two film reviews

**Listening** : Interview with a film critic; intonation

**Speaking** : Explain how a film affects you

**Language** : Tag questions, adjectives and adverbs

**Life Skills** : Critical thinking; listening to others' opinions; recognising differences in opinion





Watch a video

A

## Vocabulary

## Key Vocabulary

## المفردات الرئيسية

action (n)	حركة	historical (adj)	تاريخي	romantic (adj)	رومانسي
animation (n)	الرسوم المتحركة	horror (n)	رعب	science fiction (sci-fi) (n)	خيال علمي
comedy (n)	فيلم كوميدي / كوميديا	musical (n)	مسرحية غنائية / فيلم غنائي		

## Vocabulary on Reading &amp; Listening Texts

## مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

adapted (adj)	مقتبس / مأخوذ	film (v) (ed)	يصور فيلمًا	remake (v)	يعيد صناعة
approve (v) (d)	يوافق / يستحسن	incredibly (adv)	بشكل رائع	rescue (n) (v) (d)	إنقاذ / ينقذ
bestselling (adj)	ذو أفضل مبيعات	intonation (n)	نبرة صوت	review (n)	عرض نقدي / مراجعة
cartoon (n)	رسوم متحركة (كارتون)	lack (n) (v) (ed)	نقص / ينقصه	scared (adj)	مرعوب
certain (adj)	محدد / معين	Martian (n)	مريخي (متعلق بكوكب المريخ)	script (n)	سيناريو / نسخة حوار
choice (n)	اختيار	marvellous (adj)	رائع	soundtrack (n)	تسجيل صوتي
colleague (n)	زميل (عمل)	mate (n)	زميل / رفيق	special effects (n)	مؤثرات خاصة
constantly (adv)	بشكل دائم / باستمرار	mathematician (n)	عالم رياضيات	storyline (n)	قصة / سير الأحداث
crew (n)	طاقم العمل	meanwhile (adv)	في غضون ذلك / في نفس الوقت	style (n)	أسلوب
critic (n)	ناقد	mission (n)	مهمة / بعثة	surprising (adj)	مدهش
demonstrate (v) (d)	يثبت / يبرهن	mixed (adj)	مختلط	survive (v) (d)	ينجو / يبقى حيًا
director (n)	مدير / مخرج	neighbourhood (n)	الحي / الجيرة	typical (adj)	نموذجي / أصلي
documentary (n)	فيلم وثائقي	performance (n)	أداء	version (n)	نسخة / إصدار
enjoyable (adj)	متع	pity (n)	شفقة / حسرة	visuals (n)	مرئيات / مشاهد مرئية
fan (n)	معجب	recommend (v) (ed)	يوصي بـ / يرشح	warmth (n)	دفء





## Workbook Vocabulary

## مفردات كتاب التدريبات

acting (n)	تمثيل	hostile (adj)	عدائي	return (v) (ed)	يرجع / يعود
cruel (adj)	قاس	negative (adj)	سلبي	rule (v) (d)	يحكم
escape (n) (v) (d)	هروب / يهرب	positive (adj)	إيجابي	space (n)	الفضاء
genuine (adj)	أصلي	powerful (adj)	قوي / مؤثر	talented (adj)	موهوب

## Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A ..... film is a film in which very frightening or unnatural things happen, for example, dead people coming to life and people being murdered.  
a) comic      b) horror      c) romantic      d) musical
2. Most of the people who live near the workshop complain ..... about the noise.  
a) helpfully      b) vainly      c) skilfully      d) constantly
3. The director shot several ..... of the TV commercial to see which one works best.  
a) plays      b) versions      c) series      d) animations
4. The UN team were on a mercy ..... to take food to the refugees when they were attacked.  
a) mission      b) trip      c) flight      d) treaty
5. A ..... is someone whose job is to make judgments about the good and bad qualities of art, music or films.  
a) producer      b) fan      c) director      d) critic
6. The studio that made the new film used computer ..... for some of the special effects.  
a) romance      b) horror      c) animation      d) terror
7. Mr Magdy, the new boss, is described by our office ..... as a workaholic.  
a) colleagues      b) classmates      c) fans      d) commuters
8. Firefighters worked for six hours to ..... people from the burning building.  
a) reserve      b) rescue      c) preserve      d) deserve
9. The team ..... the skill to compete at the highest level, so they were not qualified for the Olympics.  
a) leaked      b) locked      c) lacked      d) licked
10. The new musical's songs and ..... are now available on CD.  
a) soundtrack      b) review      c) revision      d) replay

## Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

## التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

of the same name	بنفس الاسم	get lost	يضل الطريق / يتوه	rule over a country	يحكم بلدًا
adapted from	مأخوذ من / مقتبس من	go back	يرجع / يعود	similar to	مشابه لـ
climb onto	يصعد إلى	leave behind	يخلف / يترك خلفه	take off	يطير / يقلع
escape from	يفرب من	shout at	يصرخ في وجه	type of	نوع من

## Derivatives

## المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective
adapt	adaptation	adapted
comedy	comedy	comic
demonstrate	demonstration	demonstrative
power	power	powerful
recommend	recommendation	recommended
rule	ruler	ruling
scare	scare	scared scary
survive	survival survivor	surviving

## Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

The gas station generates enough energy to **power** a town of 6000 people. (v)

Solar **power** generation is greatly affected by cloud cover. (n)

Prizes and rewards are a **powerful** tool for successful encouragement at schools. (adj)



## Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	التقارب	Antonym	التضاد
cruel	قاس	violent/brutal		merciful/kind	رحيم / عطوف
demonstrate	يثبت / يبرهن	illustrate/prove		confuse disprove	يربك يدحض
horror	رعب	fear/terror		calmness/delight	هدوء / سعادة
hostile	عدائي	unfriendly/unsympathetic		friendly/kind	لطيف / عطوف
Incredibly	بشكل رائع	amazingly/astonishingly		normally/slightly	بشكل طبيعي
powerful	قوي / مؤثر	impressive/influential		impotent/dull/powerless	ضعيف / ممل
recommend	يوصي بـ / يشرح	propose/suggest		deny/oppose	ينكر / يعارض
rule	يحكم	govern/dominate		surrender/serve	يستسلم / يخدم
scared	مرعوب	frightened/terrified/ afraid		brave/courageous	شجاع
talented	موهوب	gifted		untalented/unskilled	غير موهوب / غير ماهر

## Vocabulary Checkpoint 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- These paintings demonstrate the painter's extraordinary ability. The synonym of the verb "demonstrate" is ".....".  
 a) improve      b) illustrate      c) disprove      d) approve
- The tour guide warned us not to be away from the group as we could .....  
 lost easily in the Safari.  
 a) give      b) come      c) get      d) turn
- Ramses II is known to have ..... over Egypt for more than seventy years.  
 a) captured      b) ruled      c) spread      d) surrendered
- Because of the bad weather, the plane to Paris took ..... an hour late.  
 a) at      b) out      c) in      d) off

5. Fish and other sea animals struggle for ..... when the water level drops in the lake.  
 a) survive      b) survival      c) survived      d) survivable
6. The doctor recommended that I get more exercise. The antonym of the verb "recommend" is ".....".  
 a) advise      b) relate      c) associate      d) oppose
7. The brave soldier refused to escape and leave his fellow soldiers .....  
 a) about      b) off      c) behind      d) for
8. Alexander the Great ruled over a huge empire. The antonym of the verb "rule" is ".....".  
 a) surrender      b) seize      c) conquer      d) aspire

### Reading Text (1)



## The Martian

Clever, exciting, and surprisingly funny, *The Martian* is a brilliant film, adapted from the bestselling book of the same name, and demonstrates the talents of actor Matt Damon and director Ridley Scott<sup>(1)</sup>.

When astronauts take off from the planet Mars, they leave behind Mark Watney (Damon), who they believe had died in a storm. Watney is left with little food or water and has to find a way to survive on the empty planet. Meanwhile, back on Earth, NASA and a team of international scientists work constantly to bring him home<sup>(2)</sup>. At the same time his crew mates plan a brave rescue mission.

Unlike most sci-fi films, *The Martian* has no fight scenes. Instead, it is a clever and powerful film and perhaps the best science fiction film that I've seen in a long time.



### Notes on some sentences:

#### ملاحظات على بعض الجمل

- ١- لاحظ عدم استخدام "أداة نكرة أو معرفة قبل (actor - director) لأنه مضاف إليها اسم علم.
- ٢- لاحظ استخدام الفعل في صيغة الجمع مع (team) لأننا نقصد أعضاء الفريق.



## The Lion King

Although the visuals in the 2019 version of *The Lion King* are quite brilliant, this remake lacks the warmth and energy of the original cartoon film. This is even more surprising when you look at the list of talented actors involved. The storyline is the same and the music and songs are great, but it just isn't as much fun and it's difficult to know why.

Like the 1994 film, the story is about the young lion Simba, his unkind uncle who kills Simba's father and Simba's life in the desert with his new friends Timon and Pumbaa. The director Jon Favreau has created an animation which looks incredibly real and maybe that's the problem – it doesn't look like an enjoyable film, more like a wildlife documentary!

### Reading Text (2) (Workbook)



I don't expect to like films about children who get lost, but the film *Lion* was surprisingly good. It's about a family in India who are constantly trying to find enough work to live well. One day, five-year-old Saroo goes to a town with his older brother, but when his brother doesn't return from a job, Saroo climbs onto a train and becomes lost. The story is about the brave boy as he tries to live in a city where the people are often hostile and unfriendly.

I found the second half of the film less enjoyable, although it is still good. Saroo is now a talented student of 25. He has a good life with a kind family who took him to Australia, but he wants to find out what happened to his brother and family in India. The story is very powerful and I'll always remember it. The acting was totally brilliant and I definitely recommend it.





## Listening Text



Scan & listen



**Adel** : Tonight, I'm talking to film critic Seleem about the films he's seen recently.  
Seleem, welcome.

**Seleem** : Hi, Adel.

**Adel** : You've been a film critic for many years, so I guess you love watching films, don't you?

**Seleem** : I do, and there are some great ones out there. You're a fan of action films, aren't you?

**Adel** : Yes, have you seen any good ones recently?

**Seleem** : *Black Panther*. I really enjoyed it, but it's had mixed reviews. The special effects were great and so were the fight scenes<sup>1)</sup>, but the dialogue was difficult to follow at times, which was a pity. The best film I've seen lately was the award-winning *Hidden Figures*. I don't often watch historical films but this one is brilliant. It's the true story of black female mathematicians working at NASA in the 1960s and how hard they had to work to prove themselves.

**Adel** : They both sound good. Any others?

**Seleem** : *A Beautiful Day in the Neighbourhood*. This is another true story. It's about Fred Rogers, an American children's TV presenter and a journalist. It's a story of kindness and has a wonderfully positive message.

**Adel** : Tom Hanks was in that, wasn't he?

**Seleem** : Yes, and as you know, I'm a big Tom Hanks fan. He's a marvellous actor and his films are so different. He's done comedy, animation, action – you name it, he's done it.

**Adel** : Very true. So, when you're not working, what kind of film would you choose to watch?

**Seleem** : Well, believe it or not, I love musicals. You thought I'd say action or science fiction, didn't you?

**Adel** : I did yes, but why not. I mean I love horror films!

**Seleem** : Really?



### Notes on some sentences:

ملاحظات على بعض الجمل

١- تستخدم (and so) كأداة ربط بمعنى (وكذلك) كما تستخدم صيغة الاستفهام (were the fight scenes) بعدها.

## Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

colleague

زميل عمل

Friends and **colleagues** will remember him with affection.

classmate

زميل دراسة

Osama has been my **classmate** for years. We are in the same class.

crew

١- طاقم عمل (في طائرة/سفينة غالبًا)  
٢- طاقم من الفنيين لإنتاج شيء مثل فيلم أو مسرحية

- The plane crashed, killing two of the **crew** and four passengers.  
- The film **crew** were making a political documentary.  
لاحظ أننا يمكن أن نستخدم (**cast**) في المعنى الثاني.

staff

طاقم عمل (في مصنع/مدرسة/منظمة)

The school has over 100 full-time **staff**.

review

١- مراجعة/إعادة نظر/مراجعة (دروس)  
٢- مقال نقدي.

- The writer sent the press a **review** of the research.  
- The newspaper published many **reviews** about the new film.

revision

مراجعة/إعادة نظر/مراجعة (دروس)

- I'm making some **revisions** to the book for the new edition.  
- I know I haven't done enough **revision** for tomorrow's exam.

documentary

فيلم وثائقي

There were some interesting interviews in the **documentary** about Naguib Mahfouz.

podcast

تدوين صوتي (ملف يمكن سماعه أو تحميله عبر الإنترنت)

To listen to the **podcast**, click on the link below.

webcast

البث الشبكي (مباشر عبر الإنترنت)

There will be a live **webcast** of the total solar eclipse in the country.

approve

يوافق على

The Medical Research Council has **approved** the use of a new drug for cancer.

pass

يمرر قانونًا (بالتصويت)

Many anti-smoking laws have been **passed**.

ratify

يصدق على (اتفاق أو معاهدة بالتوقيع عليها فتصبح رسمية)

The treaty was **ratified** by the Parliament.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The famous writer thanked all the hospital ..... who cared for him so well.  
☐ a) staff  
b) crew  
c) cast  
d) group
2. A ..... is a film or a television or radio programme that gives detailed information about a particular subject.  
☐ a) documentary  
b) podcast  
c) webcast  
d) musica
3. The famous journalist writes film ..... for the newspapers.  
☐ a) animations  
b) revisions  
c) talents  
d) reviews
4. Most world countries have agreed to ..... the treaty about the earth's environment.  
☐ a) approve  
b) pass  
c) ratify  
d) succeed
5. When my brother started his new job, all his ..... were friendly and helpful.  
☐ a) colleagues  
b) competitors  
c) classmates  
d) riva s
6. The captain and ..... welcomed the famous footballer themselves on entering the plane.  
a) staff  
b) crew  
c) cast  
d) group
7. We were able to watch a live ..... of the launch of the first spaceship to Mars.  
☐ a) documentary  
b) podcast  
c) webcast  
d) musical



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

**Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook**

1. The police officer said that the front passengers weren't able to ..... the accident.  
☐ a) detect      ☐ b) deprive      ☐ c) survive      ☐ d) derive
2. There were clashes between opposing ..... of both teams after the game and some people were hurt.  
☐ a) fans      ☐ b) inspectors      ☐ c) assistants      ☐ d) enemies
3. My parents don't ..... of some of my friends believing that they aren't fit for me.  
☐ a) discover      ☐ b) apply      ☐ c) remake      ☐ d) approve
4. The famous writer is currently working on a ..... of a historical film about Khalid ibn al-Walid.  
☐ a) wave      ☐ b) soundtrack      ☐ c) script      ☐ d) current
5. There were some interesting interviews in the ..... about the 6<sup>th</sup> of October War.  
☐ a) correspondence      ☐ b) copy      ☐ c) documentary      ☐ d) competition
6. Although they are old, Ismail Yassin's ..... are still liked by elderly people.  
☐ a) fictions      ☐ b) romances      ☐ c) horrors      ☐ d) comedies
7. When it was first produced, "Jurassic Park", the famous science ..... film, shocked many people.  
☐ a) faction      ☐ b) fission      ☐ c) fiction      ☐ d) fact
8. The novel's ..... revolves around يدور حول a woman who is searching for her missing sister.  
☐ a) sale      ☐ b) criticism      ☐ c) review      ☐ d) storyline
9. I sold my old computer in order to buy a more ..... model.  
☐ a) powerful      ☐ b) minor      ☐ c) unsuccessful      ☐ d) affecting
10. This announcer is a/an ..... who is known for asking tough صعبة questions.  
☐ a) interviewer      ☐ b) interviewee      ☐ c) simplifier      ☐ d) applicant
11. When I lost my bag at the airport, I was ....., and I wanted to go home.  
☐ a) delighted      ☐ b) effective      ☐ c) scared      ☐ d) fanned

**Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms**

12. It's so cruel to keep a dog chained up like that all the time. The antonym of the adjective "cruel" is ".....".  
☐ a) violent      ☐ b) brutal      ☐ c) merciful      ☐ d) strange
13. In England, the Prime Minister has the right to rule ..... the country and he should be the head of the ruling party.  
☐ a) over      ☐ b) for      ☐ c) at      ☐ d) on

14. Some kinds of bacteria can survive in high temperatures. The adjective of the verb "survive" is ".....".  
 a) survives      b) survival      c) survivor      d) surviving
15. The Brazilian team includes some highly talented young players. The synonym of the word "talented" is ".....".  
 a) unskilled      b) gifted      c) fabulous      d) romantic
16. I wish all teachers would stop shouting ..... the children at school.  
 a) about      b) for      c) of      d) at
17. I have two cousins who are ..... the same name as they were both named after our grandfather.  
 a) out      b) off      c) of      d) for
18. A hostile audience refused to listen to Senator Drummond's reply. The word "hostile" is the opposite of ".....".  
 a) friendly      b) cruel      c) devastated      d) unsympathetic
- Longman and Previous Exams**
19. Teachers usually use ..... aids in the classroom; children like to see what is being introduced.  
 a) unclear      b) visual      c) listening      d) audio
20. A lot of young people prefer watching ..... films in which a hero strives to marry the lady he prefers.  
 a) documentary      b) romantic      c) economical      d) historical
21. All workers are very ..... to the idea of closing the factory; it's very difficult for them to find other jobs.  
 a) welcoming      b) hospitable      c) accepting      d) hostile
22. The film ..... had a bitter comment on a lot of fight scenes in the new film.  
 a) critical      b) criticism      c) critic      d) critically
23. I don't like such films; I'm a ..... of action films only.  
 a) fan      b) fan      c) fine      d) fan
24. We would like to thank all the medical ..... at hospital for their great efforts.  
 a) crew      b) cast      c) staff      d) group
25. The engineers are working ..... to set up the new bridge. They work around the clock.  
 a) specially      b) constantly      c) totally      d) friendly
26. The final ..... of the book omitted some important details.  
 a) version      b) vision      c) division      d) image
27. *The Martian* is a brilliant film ..... from the bestselling book of the same name.  
 a) adopted      b) addicted      c) adapted      d) admitted
28. If you like ..... films, then you will like this film about ghosts.  
 a) animation      b) comedy      c) horror      d) romantic



## B

## Language

## Tag Questions

## السؤال المذيّل

- السؤال المذيّل هو سؤال يكون آخر الجملة الخبرية لتأكيد المعنى.
- يتم عمل هذا السؤال من الفعل المساعد أو الناقص فقط وبعده الضمير العائد على الاسم.
- إذا كانت الجملة المراد تأكيدها مثبتة يكون السؤال المذيّل منفيًا والعكس صحيح.
- يستخدم لطلب الموافقة أو التأكيد.
- لا بد أن يكون السؤال المنفي مختصرًا.
- السؤال المذيّل يأتي قبله (,).

Positive  
statement

+

Negative  
question tag

+

You are a student , aren't you?

Negative  
statement

+

Positive  
question tag

-

+

Hala is not a nurse , is she?

+ Sentence → - Tag

- Sentence → + Tag

Ali is Egyptian , isn't he?

John isn't Egyptian , is he?

You study hard , don't you?

You don't study hard , do you?

He lives in Cairo , doesn't he?

He doesn't live in Cairo , does he?

You were at home , weren't you?

You weren't at home , were you?

Ola visited her uncle , didn't she?

Ola didn't visit her uncle , did she?

Omar was watching TV , wasn't he?

Omar wasn't watching TV , was he?

You have seen my bag , haven't you?

You haven't seen my bag , have you?

You have dinner at 8 p.m. , don't you?

You don't have dinner at 8 p.m. , do you?

She's finished the report , hasn't she?

She hasn't finished yet , has she?

She has blonde hair , doesn't she?

She doesn't have blonde hair , does she?

He'd finished by 6 p.m.	, hadn't he?	He hadn't come by 6 p.m.	, had he?
He'd rather leave now	, wouldn't he?	He'd rather not come	, would he?
He'd better find a job	, hadn't he?	He'd better not go now	, had he?
They'll help us	, won't they?	They won't help us	, will they?
He can ride a horse	, can't he?	He can't ride a horse	, can he?
We need more money	, don't we?	We needn't more money	, need we?
He used to get up early	, didn't he?	He didn't use to help us	, did he?
I think he is a thief	, isn't he?	I don't think he is a thief	, is he?
I'm right	, aren't I?	I'm not mistaken	, am I?

حالات خاصة:

Let's go out اقتراح	, shall/shan't we?	Let us go out طلب	, will/won't you?
Interesting	, isn't it?	Beautiful	, isn't she?
This/That is Ahmed's car	, isn't it?	These are Ali's pens	, aren't they?
There's a celebrity here	, isn't there?	There're 2 cars here	, aren't there?
Stop talking	, will/won't you?	Don't speak loudly	, will you?

### لاحظ

1 الجملة لتي تحتوى على never – rarely hardly seldom – nor – neither – few – little – no تعتبر جملة منفية لذلك يكون السؤال المذيل مثبتاً.

He can hardly run, can he?  
He rarely visits you, does he?

2 إذا كان الفاعل Everything, Something, Nothing يكون الضمير It.  
Nothing can live without energy, can it?

3 إذا كان الفاعل Everyone, body Someone, body - No one, body يكون الضمير they.  
Everyone is coming to the party, aren't they?

## Language Checkpoint 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She hasn't got a brother, ..... she?  
☐ a) does      ☐ b) hasn't      ☐ c) has      ☐ d) doesn't
2. I would never go with them, ..... I?  
☐ a) wouldn't      ☐ b) would      ☐ c) did      ☐ d) aren't
3. Reham arrived late, .... she?  
☐ a) didn't      ☐ b) did      ☐ c) wasn't      ☐ d) was
4. The film will start soon, ..... it?  
☐ a) can      ☐ b) will      ☐ c) should      ☐ d) won't
5. Karim and Magid love comedy films, .....?  
☐ a) aren't they      ☐ b) are they      ☐ c) don't they      ☐ d) do they

## Adjectives and Adverbs

## Adjectives

الصفات

- الصفة تصف الاسم وتأتي قبله مثل: an interesting film/an easy test  
 - أو تصف الاسم والضمير وتأتي بعدهما مسبوقه بـ v. to be مثل The boys/They are clever  
 - الصفة تأتي بعد أفعال معينة وهي أفعال stative مثل:

look/ sound/ seem/ taste/ appear/ get/ feel/ become/ smell, etc.

The medicine tastes awful.

The food smells bad.

The man looks happy.

## Adverbs

الأحوال / الظروف

٢- الصفة

الحال أو الظرف يصف: ١- الفعل

1. He drives carelessly.

(Verb + Adverb)

2. The shirt is terribly expensive.

(Adverb + Adjective)

## Adverbs

Manner

الطريقة

Degree

الدرجة

هي الظروف التي تبين طريقة أو كيفية حدوث الفعل.

He must take his study **seriously**.

1 يتكون هذا النوع بإضافة (ly) للصفة.

Adjective	Adverb	Adjective	Adverb
bad	سئاً <b>badly</b>	nervous	بقلق <b>nervously</b>
correct	صحيح <b>correctly</b>	nice	بلطف <b>nicely</b>
foolish	أحمق <b>foolishly</b>	permanent	دوماً <b>permanently</b>
loud	عالي <b>loudly</b>	quick	بسرعة <b>quickly</b>
quiet	هادئ (صوت) <b>quietly</b>	slow	ببطء <b>slowly</b>
sad	حزين <b>sadly</b>	sudden	فجأة <b>suddenly</b>

2 إذا انتهت الصفة بـ (a) تضاف (ly) أما إذا انتهت بـ (e) فنحذف e ونضع (y).

Adjective	Adverb	Adjective	Adverb
beautiful	جميل <b>beautifully</b>	careful	بحرص <b>carefully</b>
terrible	فظيع <b>terribly</b>	horrible	بشكل رهيب <b>horribly</b>
real	حقيقي <b>really</b>	probable	من المحتمل <b>probably</b>

3 إذا انتهت الصفة بـ (y) تقلب (i) قبل إضافة (ly).

Adjective	Adverb	Adjective	Adverb
angry	غاضب <b>angrily</b>	easy	بسهولة <b>easily</b>
heavy	ثقل <b>heavily</b>	hungry	بحسرة <b>hungrily</b>
happy	سعيد <b>happily</b>	lucky	لحسن الحظ <b>luckily</b>

It was an **easy** test. (adj)

The students answered the test **easily**. (adv)

4 إذا انتهت الصفة بـ (ic) نضيف (ally).

Adjective	Adverb	Adjective	Adverb
fantastic	رائع <b>fantastically</b>	dramatic	بشكل درامي <b>dramatically</b>
drastic	قاس / عنيف <b>drastically</b>	automatic	أوتوماتيكياً <b>automatically</b>



Adjective	Adverb	Adjective	Adverb
good	جيد well	fast	بسرعة fast
long	طويل long	low	بشكل منخفض low
fine	جيد fine	high	بشكل مرتفع high
straight	مستقيم straight	right	بشكل صحيح right

Ali is a **fast** swimmer. (adj)

All swims **fast**. (adv)

لاحظ

بعض الصفات تستخدم كظرف بدون إضافة (ly) مثل الصفات في الجدول السابق، ولكن إذا أضيفت لها (ly) يكون لها معنى مختلف مثل:

Adjective	Adverb	Adverb
late	متأخر late	مؤخرًا (منذ وقت قريب) lately
hard	صعب / شديد hard	بالكد / تقريبًا لا hardly
wrong	خاطئ / مخطئ wrong	بظلم wrongly
near	قريب near	تقريبًا nearly

She **hardly** ever goes out of the house. (She almost never goes out of the house).

You **wrongly** accused him. = (unfairly بظلم) not incorrectly

6 هناك صفات تنتهي بـ ly ولا تتغير عند التحويل إلى حال ومنها:

hourly	في كل ساعة daily	يومي / يوميًا weekly	أسبوعي / أسبوعيًا
monthly	شهري / شهريًا yearly	سنوي / سنويًا early	مبكر / مبكرًا

My father is reading his **daily** newspaper. (adj)

My father reads the newspaper **daily**. (adv)

7 هناك صفات تنتهي بـ ly وعند التحويل إلى حال تكون كالتالي:

in a/an + adj-ly + way/manner

elderly	مسن lonely	وحيد / يشعر بالوحدة ugly	قبيح
fatherly	أبوي lovely	محبوب deadly	مميت
friendly	ودود motherly	كالأم heavenly	سموي
lively	مفعم بالحياة silly	سخيف cowardly	جبان
brotherly	أخوي likely	متوقع / محتمل sisterly	خاص بالاخت

He is a **friendly** man. (adj)

He greets/treats me in a **friendly** way. (adv)



## Language Checkpoint 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. As Samy hasn't eaten anything since the morning, he is waiting ..... for the food.  
a) patient      b) impatient      c) impatiently      d) impatience
2. The teacher shouted ..... at the students who forgot their homework.  
a) angry      b) angrily      c) anger      d) angered
3. Ramy ..... dressed and took his bag as the school bus was near his house.  
a) quickly      b) quick      c) quicker      d) quickness
4. My father is very ..... to see what the performance is about.  
a) eagers      b) eagerly      c) eagerness      d) eager
5. Although the train was 2 hours late, we waited .....  
a) patient      b) patience      c) patiently      d) impatiently



### Adverbs of degree

### ظروف الدرجة

1 هي الظروف التي تبين درجة الصفة والظروف الأخرى.

extremely	very للغاية	جداً
quite	fairly/slightly تماماً	قليلاً
Mount Everest is extremely high.	My little brother speaks English very well.	
She is quite good at maths.	The question is slightly difficult.	

2 الأحوال التي تصف الصفة تأتي قبلها وهي تساوي very في المعنى تقريباً:

الاسم	الحال	الصفة
	very	جداً
	extremely للغاية	
The Nile is	fantastically بشكل مذهش	long.
	incredibly لا يصدق	
	tremendously جداً / هائل	

3 وعند تحويل الصفة إلى اسم يتحول الحال إلى صفة ليصف ذلك الاسم ونحذف ly ونضع a/an قبل الصفة.

الاسم	الصفة	الاسم
	an extreme للغاية	
The Nile has	a fantastic بشكل مذهش	length.
	an incredible لا يصدق	
	a tremendous جداً / هائل	



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There's a fly in your soup, .....?  
☐ a) is it      ☐ b) is there      ☐ c) isn't there      ☐ d) isn't it
2. Somebody is knocking at the door, .....?  
☐ a) is it      ☐ b) isn't it      ☐ c) are they      ☐ d) aren't they
3. You think that Ali will come soon, but you aren't sure, .....?  
☐ a) don't you      ☐ b) aren't you      ☐ c) will he      ☐ d) do you
4. Give Ahmed this camera tomorrow, .....?  
☐ a) don't you      ☐ b) will you      ☐ c) do you      ☐ d) aren't you
5. He had lunch at home today, .....?  
☐ a) did he      ☐ b) didn't he      ☐ c) hadn't he      ☐ d) had he
6. She has never been to Egypt, ..... she?  
☐ a) has      ☐ b) does      ☐ c) hasn't      ☐ d) doesn't
7. You'd better leave now, ..... you?  
☐ a) hadn't      ☐ b) don't      ☐ c) had      ☐ d) wouldn't
8. I think he's from India, .....?  
☐ a) don't I      ☐ b) doesn't he      ☐ c) isn't he      ☐ d) hasn't he
9. There has been no rain for the last couple of weeks, .....?  
☐ a) hasn't it      ☐ b) hasn't there      ☐ c) isn't it      ☐ d) has there
10. ...., Isn't it?  
☐ a) It's not your dog      ☐ b) It's very hot in the Sahara  
☐ c) This isn't Ahmed      ☐ d) It's never cold in Aswan
11. ...., aren't I?  
☐ a) I'm not your English teacher      ☐ b) He is your English teacher  
☐ c) I'm your English teacher      ☐ d) You're my English teacher
12. Her voice sounds beautiful. She sang the song ..... as it was written.  
☐ a) exacting      ☐ b) exactness      ☐ c) exact      ☐ d) exactly
13. The guide was good at showing us the sights, he didn't speak very ..... to me.  
☐ a) polite      ☐ b) politely      ☐ c) politeness      ☐ d) impolitely
14. Ali won the race because his horse was strong and obeyed .....  
☐ a) loyally      ☐ b) loyal      ☐ c) loyalty      ☐ d) disloyally
15. I find this novel very interesting. It was ..... written.  
☐ a) interested      ☐ b) interest  
☐ c) interestingly      ☐ d) interesting
16. They beat the enemy because the soldiers fought .....  
☐ a) braved      ☐ b) braveness      ☐ c) brave      ☐ d) bravely

17. Although he arrived an hour ....., he started work immediately.  
☐ a) ate                      b) lately                      c) a late                      d) latest
18. The footballer played ..... today. He scored three goals!  
☐ a) brilliance                      b) brilliant                      c) brilliantly                      d) bri liancy
19. He was a very ..... person. He acted very .....  
 a) sensibly / sensibly                      b) sensib e / sensibly  
 c) sensibly / sensible                      d) sensible / sensible
20. Which one of the following is grammatically correct?  
☐ a) The teachers in my school are friendly.  
 b) The teachers in my school treat us friendly.  
 c) The teachers in my school treat us in a friend way.  
 d) The teachers in my school treat us friendlier.

### Longman and Previous Exams

21. You're an ..... and punctual worker; the manager is going to promote you.  
☐ a) actively                      b) activate                      c) action                      d) active
22. Lions aren't tame animals, .....?  
 a) isn't it                      b) are they                      c) aren't they                      d) don't they
23. He'd come to the party if I invited him, .....?  
☐ a) don't I                      b) hadn't he                      c) wouldn't he                      d) didn't I
24. This food tastes .....; you can share the meal with me.  
☐ a) delicious                      b) deliciously                      c) badly                      d) bad
25. He performs .....; he is a ..... performer.  
 a) surprising / surprising                      b) surprisingly / surprising y  
 c) surpris'ngly / surprising                      d) surprising / surprisingly
26. She hardly goes anywhere alone, .....?  
☐ a) is she                      b) does she  
 c) doesn't she                      d) hasn't she
27. You don't think I will pass the exam, .....?  
☐ a) won't I                      b) don't you  
 c) wil. I                      d) do you
28. I am allowed to take photos here, .....?  
☐ a) aren't I                      b) can't I  
 c) shall I                      d) am I
29. It was raining ..... so, I took two hours to come home.  
☐ a) heavy                      b) as heavy  
 c) heavily                      d) heavy that
30. Which of the following is correctly structured?  
 a) He looked happily last week.                      b) He looked happy last week.  
 c) He looked happy at the children.                      d) He looked happiness at the children.



### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: Vocabulary

- My father doesn't like horror films saying that they can make people nervous. The antonym of the word "horror" is ".....".  
☐ a) fear      ☐ b) terror      ☐ c) calmness      ☐ d) sorrow
- The Japanese film "The Seven Samurai" was ..... in Hollywood as "The Magnificent Seven".  
☐ a) remade      ☐ b) derived      ☐ c) depicted      ☐ d) foretold
- Thanks to the computer ....., It is now possible to make cartoons much more quickly than in the past.  
☐ a) romance      ☐ b) horror      ☐ c) animation      ☐ d) terror
- The old hotel is ..... of buildings built during the late 19<sup>th</sup> century.  
☐ a) genuine      ☐ b) original      ☐ c) fake      ☐ d) typical
- A/An ..... is responsible for everything on making a film.  
☐ a) director      ☐ b) officer      ☐ c) employee      ☐ d) clerk
- Tamer Hosny, the famous singer, is well-known for his exciting live concert .....  
☐ a) conferences      ☐ b) intentions      ☐ c) invitations      ☐ d) performances
- The ..... in the new animation film were so amazing that all the audience were very impressed.  
☐ a) sights      ☐ b) reviews      ☐ c) visuals      ☐ d) rehearsals
- The final ..... of the report deleted some important points.  
☐ a) scene      ☐ b) version      ☐ c) site      ☐ d) image
- The study ..... the link between poverty and malnutrition سوء التغذية saying it is clear.  
☐ a) hides      ☐ b) develops      ☐ c) invents      ☐ d) demonstrates
- The ..... of the plane instructed everyone to remain seated.  
☐ a) crew      ☐ b) staff      ☐ c) cast      ☐ d) flock
- My brother is fond of ..... films which are full of fights or racing scenes.  
☐ a) comic      ☐ b) romantic      ☐ c) historical      ☐ d) action
- Many children and young people buy books after they have been ..... for television.  
☐ a) painted      ☐ b) adapted      ☐ c) viewed      ☐ d) reviewed
- "Romeo and Juliet" is thought to be one of the most ..... plays of all times.  
☐ a) terror      ☐ b) romantic      ☐ c) comic      ☐ d) collaborative
- We're having a small party for one of our ..... who's leaving the company next week.  
☐ a) colleagues      ☐ b) classmates      ☐ c) fans      ☐ d) commuters

15. Sales representatives need to be outgoing, because they are ..... meeting customers.

- a) helplessly      b) gradually      c) temporarily      d) constantly

### Language

16. She comes from a rich family in London, .....?

- a) didn't she      b) doesn't she      c) hasn't she      d) won't she

17. You have finished your work, .....?

- a) don't you      b) didn't you      c) haven't you      d) have you

18. You lived here 3 months ago, .....?

- a) didn't you      b) don't you      c) had you      d) do you

19. My brother isn't here, .....?

- ☐ a) he is      b) is there      c) isn't he      d) is he

20. He can't swim, ..... he?

- ☐ a) does      b) will      c) can      d) is

21. They used to live in the New Valley, ..... they?

- a) didn't      b) aren't      c) don't      d) d d

22. Somebody has taken my dictionary, .....?

- a) hasn't one      b) haven't they      c) don't they      d) doesn't he

23. Which one of the following is grammatically incorrect?

- a) Ali is never lucky, is he?      b) Ali is always lucky, sn't he?  
c) Ali is never unlucky, is he?      d) Ali is always unlucky, is he?

24. We were happy as our new flat was ..... decorated.

- ☐ a) colour      b) colourfully      c) coloured      d) colourful

25. Although I told him a silly joke, my friend laughed quite .....

- a) loudest      b) louder      c) oudly      d) aloud

26. You must send payments ..... We deal on a strict cash basis.

- a) regularity      b) regularisation      c) regular      d) regularly

27. He did not pass the course as ..... as he thought he would.

- ☐ a) easily      b) easy      c) eas er      d) easiest

28. The cost of living has risen ..... these days all over the world.

- a) dramatic      b) dramatical      c) dramatically      d) drama

29. All my friends speak .....

- ☐ a) fluently English      b) fluent Eng ish  
c) English more fluent      d) English fluent

30. As he was found ..... the scene of the robbery with a gun in his hand, he was arrested.

- ☐ a) nearest      b) nearing      c) nearly      d) near





## A

## Vocabulary

## Vocabulary on Reading &amp; Listening Texts

## مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

animated (adj) معروض برسوم متحركة	fight (n) (v) قتال / يقاتل	personally (adv) شخصيًا
annoying (adj) مزعج	generally (adv) بشكل عام	politely (adv) بطريقة مهذبة / بأدب
awful (adj) فظيح / سيئ جدًا	gun (n) سلاح ناري / مسدس	popular (adj) شائع / محبوب
boring (adj) ممل	harness (v) (ed) يستخدم / يستغل	right (n) (adj) حق / على صواب
carefully (adv) بحرص	hilarious (adj) مرح / مضحك جدًا	silly (adj) سخيف
chase (n) (v) (d) مطاردة / يطارده	island (n) جزيرة	
cheerful (adj) مرح / مبتهج	Malawi (n) مالاوي (بلد إفريقي)	windmill (n) طاحونة هوائية
ending (n) نهاية	partner (n) شريك	

## Workbook Vocabulary

## مفردات كتاب التدرجات

burning (adj) محترق	owner (n) مالك	scenery (n) مناظر طبيعية
equipment (n) معدات	prefer (v) (red) يفضل	stupid (adj) غبى
mistake (n) خطأ	realise (v) (d) يدرك	war (n) حرب

## Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The teacher asked each student to choose a ..... for the role-play activity.

- ☐ a) servant      b) partner      c) hero      d) champion

2. It was a ..... to come to this restaurant without a reservation. We can't find a table.

- ☐ a) mistake      b) signal      c) crime      d) mark

3. We are all proud that our grandfather fought in the 6<sup>th</sup> October ..... .  
 a) tournament                      b) race  
 c) war                                  d) conference
4. The area near the river has some of the most awesome ..... especially the forest area.  
 a) site                      b) treasury                      c) situation                      d) scenery
5. Most films for kids under twelve are ..... rather than live action.  
 a) animated                      b) romantic                      c) devastated                      d) delivered
6. Many years ago, scientists could ..... the power of the waterfall to create electricity.  
 a) recover                      b) harness                      c) expand                      d) expire
7. For centuries, traditional ..... used the wind to drive machinery for grinding wheat into flour.  
 a) waterfalls                      b) workshops                      c) windmills                      d) panels
8. Many people enjoyed the ..... BBC comedy series "Absolutely Fabulous".  
 a) serious                      b) hilarious                      c) dangerous                      d) romantic
9. The children did not ..... the danger of the swings and slides until they were hurt.  
 a) organise                      b) achieve                      c) deny                      d) realise
10. Doctors always tell their assistants that all of the medical ..... must be sterilised before use.  
 a) equipment                      b) hardware                      c) design                      d) machine

### Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

### التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

all the time	طوال الوقت	get married	يتزوج	make lots of mistakes	يرتكب أخطاء كثيرة
couldn't stop laughing	لم أستطع التوقف عن الضحك	have the right to	لديه الحق أن	tell a story	يحكي قصة
hostile to	عدائي / معادٍ لـ	opinion about	رأى عن	think about	يفكر في
look like	يشبه	terrible at	فطيع في	travel to	يسافر إلى

## المشتقات

## Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
animate	يصور/يرسوم	animation	رسوم متحركة	animated	معروض برسوم متحركة
annoy	يزعج	annoyance	إزعاج	annoying	مزعج
				annoyed	مزعج
burn	يحرق	burn	حرق	burning	محترق
prefer	يفضل	preference	تفضيل	preferred	مفضل
realise	يدرك	realisation	إدراك	realistic	حقيقي / واقعي

## Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

The journalist **annoyed** the speaker with too many questions. (v)

Salim's silly jokes caused great **annoyance** to his colleagues. (n)

That noise is very **annoying**. I can't go on with my studies. (adj)

## Words, Synonyms &amp; Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	العنوان	Antonym	العكس
annoying	مزعج	disturbing/irritating		agreeable/pleasant	مفضل / سار
cheerful	مرح / مبتهج	joyful/merry		depressed/gloomy	مكتئب
harness	يستخرج / يستخدم	exploit/use/utilise		consume	يستهلك
				neglect	يهمل
hilarious	مرح / مضحك جدا	humorous/funny		serious/tragic	جاد / درامي
mistake	خطأ	error/misunderstanding		correction/accuracy	تصحيح / دقة

## Vocabulary Checkpoint 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's annoying that we didn't know about this before. The synonym of the adjective "annoying" is ".....".

- a) helpful      b) disturbing      c) romantic      d) funny

2. Unlike most of my friends, I have a ..... for healthy food over fast meals.

- a) prefer      b) preferred      c) preference      d) preferable

3. Technology is improving ..... the time.

- ☐ a) all                      b) in                      c) for                      d) both

4. I think it is acceptable for a nursery kid to ..... lots of mistakes in his first year.

- ☐ a) correct                      b) make                      c) take                      d) explore

5. Many people in the village were openly hostile ..... the new factory's establishment.

- ☐ a) in                      b) to                      c) at                      d) from

6. He felt bright and cheerful and full of energy after the vacation. The adjective "cheerful" is the opposite of the adjective ".....".

- ☐ a) merry                      b) terrible                      c) funny                      d) gloomy

7. The artist's jokes are absolutely hilarious and we can't stop laughing.

The antonym of the word "hilarious" is ".....".

- ☐ a) funny                      b) irritable                      c) hopeful                      d) serious

8. By law, everyone should have the right ... ..... a fair trial محاكمة and treatment in court.

- a) to                      b) in                      c) out                      d) up

### Reading Test 100



I saw a great film last night. It was called '*The Boy Who Harnessed the Wind*'. It was about a boy in Malawi who built a windmill and helped his village get water<sup>(1)</sup>. I thought it had a really powerful message about positive thinking and never giving up.

I also saw '*Toy Story 4*', which was great fun. It's a brilliant animated film, and personally, I think that these kinds of films always make people feel good<sup>(2)</sup>. They're not too long and the stories always have a happy ending.



### Notes on some sentences:

#### ملاحظات على بعض الجمل

١- يتبع الفعل (help) المصدر بدون (to) أو (to + inf.).

٢- يستخدم الفعل (make) بمعنى يجعل ويتبعه المصدر بدون (to).

## Reading Text (2) (Workbook)



- 1) If you like musicals, then you'll love the film "We Met in Greece". It's about a man who travels to a Greek island and meets the daughter of a hotel owner.
- 2) At first, the hotel owner is very hostile to the man, but when he realises he's both kind and talented, **he lets his daughter marry him<sup>(1)</sup>**. Then it also becomes a romantic story!
- 3) The music is brilliant and the scenery on the island is beautiful. I would definitely recommend this film.
- 4) Some comedies are hilarious, but I didn't think that "Visit to a Farm" was funny at all. It's about a young man from the city who goes to help on his uncle's farm one summer.
- 5) The young man is terrible at farming, and makes lots of mistakes all the time. **I'm not sure why this was supposed to be funny<sup>(2)</sup>**. Personally, I thought the man was annoying!
- 6) The farmer is a kind man and some of the acting was quite good, but most of the film was too stupid to enjoy. I would not recommend this film.



## Notes on some sentences:

## ملاحظات على بعض الجمل

- ١- يستخدم الفعل (let) بمعنى يسمح ويتبعها المصدر بدون (to).
- ٢- لاحظ استخدام صيغة الجملة الخبرية (why this was) بعد (I'm not sure).

## Listening Text



Scan &amp; Listen



- Ramy** : What kinds of film do you like watching, Dareen? Romantic ones, like Mum?
- Dareen** : Not really, most of them are a bit silly. I love comedies, especially the old ones, they make me laugh. I always feel happy afterwards. What about you, Tamer?
- Tamer** : My favourite films are action films. They're really exciting and I love all the car chases and gun fights!
- Dareen** : Really? I think most of them are really boring and they don't usually have a good story either.
- Tamer** : True, but I don't mind that. It's all about the action for me. You like action films too don't you, Ramy?
- Ramy** : Some, but I agree with Dareen that they're generally not very interesting. I don't mind some science fiction films, but I enjoy horror films best.
- Dareen** : Aren't you scared?
- Ramy** : Yes, but that's what I like about them.



لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

### realise

- ١- يدرك (يعرف أو يفهم شيئاً)  
٢- يحقق (شيئاً كان يتمناه)

- Do you **realise** you're an hour late?  
- She never **realised** her ambition of winning an Olympic gold medal.

### recognise

- ١- يتعرف على (يعرف شخصاً أو شيئاً لرؤيته أو سماعه أو المرور به من قبل)  
٢- يقبل ويعترف بأهمية شيء

- I didn't **recognise** you in your uniform.  
- The new doctor tried to get his work **recognised** by the medical profession.

### prefer

prefer + (v-ing/noun) ..... to + (v-ing/noun)  
(would) prefer + to + inf. .... rather than + inf.

يفضّل ..... عن .....

يفضّل أن ..... عن أن .....

- He **prefers watching** tennis **to playing** it.  
- I **prefer English** **to physics**.  
- I'd **prefer to stay** at home **rather than go out**.

### most

- Love is what the children need **most**.  
- The Pyramids at Giza are the **most** interesting monuments for many tourists.

تعبّر عن التفضيل بمعنى (أكثر/الأكثر) وقد يتبعها صفة.

- **Most** people think of robots as machines that look like people.  
- **Most** business meetings are held at the company's headquarters.

تأتي بمعنى معظم للتعبير عن الأغلبية بشكل عام ويتبعها اسم جمع.

- **Most of** the people who attended the party brought me presents.  
- My cousin spent **most of** his life abroad.

تأتي بمعنى معظم للتعبير عن الأغلبية من عدد أو شيء محدد ويتبعها حرف الجر (of) مع اسم مفرد أو جمع.

### equipment

- معدات (أجهزة أو آلات تستخدم لغرض ما)  
تعتبر مفردة ولا تسبق بإداة تكرة

We are raising money for **equipment** for our playgroup.

### kit

- طاقم أدوات (مجموعة من الأدوات تستخدم لغرض ما مثل الخياطة)

You can buy a special **kit** for sewing clothes here.

### apparatus

- جهاز (آلة أو أداة تستخدم لغرض فني مثل الطب والعلوم)

This experiment can be performed using the **apparatus** shown in the diagram.

The article was full of spelling mistakes.

Your argument has a fundamental **flaw**.

The fire was caused by an electrical fault.

Machines are usually tested for **defects** before they are sold.

### Checkpoint 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The young doctor always keeps an emergency medical ..... in his car.  
☒ a) kit                      b) device  
c) equipment             d) apparatus
2. I hadn't seen my old classmate for ten years, but I ..... her immediately.  
a) realised                b) preserved  
c) organised              d) recognised
3. Grandfather always prefers ..... by train saying that it is the safest way.  
a) travel                  b) to travelling  
c) travelling              d) travelled
4. .... the boys I know prefer football to any other game.  
☐ a) Most                    b) Most of  
c) Mostly                  d) The most
5. All the cars must be tested for ..... before they leave the factory.  
☐ a) mistakes              b) flaws  
c) defects                 d) faults
6. When you buy an expensive piece of ....., you need to insure it.  
☐ a) kit                      b) device  
c) equipment              d) apparatus
7. The rocket launch was delayed because of a technical ..... which was harmful.  
☐ a) mistake                b) flaw  
c) defect                  d) fault
8. When he watched the TV show, he ..... he'd seen it before.  
☐ a) realised                b) recognised  
c) organised              d) forgot



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook

- "Beauty and the Beast" was the first ..... film ever nominated for a 'Best Picture Oscar'.  
a) allied      b) historical      c) apparent      d) animated
- If you like high-speed car ....., you should watch the "Fast and Furious" series.  
a) chases      b) shapes      c) scripts      d) vogues
- All children should have the ..... to have a good education and a good health care.  
a) detention      b) duty      c) fight      d) right
- Radar ..... is used to detect enemy aircraft to protect the country.  
a) equipment      b) exploration      c) derivative      d) inspection
- All important documents must be signed ..... by the bank president.  
a) secretly      b) personally      c) aimlessly      d) partially
- The army soldiers are responsible for ..... the invaders of their homeland.  
a) inventing      b) devising      c) fighting      d) improving
- This TV show is especially ..... among women as most of the guests are top chefs.  
a) hateful      b) detesting      c) popular      d) affecting
- The restaurant's previous ..... was unable to make a profit, so he sold it.  
a) consumer      b) owner      c) robber      d) prisoner
- The film was very dull and terribly ..... I regretted wasting my time on it.  
a) exciting      b) exotic      c) boring      d) marvelous
- Dr El Baz is ..... regarded as the world's greatest expert in remote sensing.  
a) hatefully      b) privately      c) awfully      d) generally

## Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

- We must harness the skill and creativity of our workforce. The verb "harness" is the opposite of ".....".  
a) exploit      b) neglect      c) defy      d) trust
- People ..... the right to know the truth about the economic situation in their country.  
a) have      b) do      c) gave      d) missed
- We realised a small profit on the sale of the house. The adjective of the verb "realise" is ".....".  
a) realises      b) realisation      c) realistic      d) reality

14. She was a cheerful and agreeable companion. The synonym of the adjective "cheerful" is ".....".

- ☐ a) developed    ☐ b) gloomy    ☐ c) depressed    ☐ d) joyful

15. It is better to admit your mistake and apologise. The noun "mistake" is the antonym of ".....".

- ☐ a) error    ☐ b) misunderstanding  
☐ c) credit    ☐ d) correction

16. Leaving school so young was the biggest mistake of my life. The noun "mistake" is similar in meaning to the noun ".....".

- ☐ a) crime    ☐ b) state    ☐ c) error    ☐ d) correction

17. Her most ..... habit was eating with her mouth open.

- ☐ a) annoy    ☐ b) annoyance    ☐ c) annoying    ☐ d) annoyed

18. After driving for an hour on the desert road, I suddenly ..... that I was lost.

- ☐ a) recognised    ☐ b) realised    ☐ c) replied    ☐ d) puzzled

### Longman and Previous Exams

19. A ..... is a building or structure with parts that turn around in the wind, used for producing electrical power or crushing grain.

- ☐ a) windmill    ☐ b) lighthouse    ☐ c) tower    ☐ d) factory

20. Last night, the weather was .....; there was a lot of thunder, lightning and heavy rains.

- ☐ a) tolerable    ☐ b) awful    ☐ c) bored    ☐ d) terrific

21. It's really ..... to visit people late at night without a previous appointment.

- ☐ a) pleasant    ☐ b) relieving    ☐ c) annoying    ☐ d) annoyed

22. Most of Adel Imam's films are absolutely funny. The synonym of "funny" is .....

- ☐ a) serious    ☐ b) hilarious    ☐ c) tragic    ☐ d) gloomy

23. We can ..... the power of the wind to generate electricity.

- ☐ a) harness    ☐ b) discover    ☐ c) explore    ☐ d) invent

24. We went on a boat trip to enjoy the ..... of the fields on the river banks.

- ☐ a) scenery    ☐ b) sense    ☐ c) scene    ☐ d) station

25. That film was the best comedy I've ever seen. It was .....

- ☐ a) annoying    ☐ b) awful    ☐ c) upset    ☐ d) cheerful

## Tag Questions

## السؤال المذيّل

لغة المحادثات لها طبيعة خاصة تعتمد على الموقف وطبيعة السؤال ومنها:

1 إذا كانت الجملة التي نريد تأكيدها مثبتة فالإجابة بـ **Yes** هي الموافقة و **No** للرفض مثل:

A: You like chemistry, don't you?

B: Yes, I do. موافقة

B: No, I don't. رفض

2 إذا كانت الجملة التي نريد تأكيدها منفية فالإجابة بـ **No** هي الموافقة و **Yes** للرفض مثل:

A: You don't like chemistry, do you?

B: No, I don't. It's very difficult. موافقة B: Yes, I do. I like it and I find it very easy. رفض

3 يمكن أن يكون السؤال آخر الجملة الجبرية موجهاً إلى المخاطب وليس عائداً على الجملة الأولى مثل:

A: I love comedy films, don't you?

B: Yes, I do. I like watching comedy films with my family. We can all laugh together.

السؤال هنا يعود على المخاطب وليس على المتكلم، وهذا لا يصلح إلا في المحادثات.

4 نبرة الصوت **Intonation** ترتفع وتنخفض في السؤال حسب طبيعة السؤال وهذا لا يظهر بالكتابة ولكن يظهر في

الحديث الشفهي:

- عندما يكون المتكلم متأكداً من صحة الجملة تنخفض نبرة صوته وتتبعها حركة جسد توضح ذلك.

He's your brother, isn't he?

- عندما يسأل المتكلم عن شيء يريد التأكد منه ترتفع نبرة صوته وتتبعها حركة جسد توضح ذلك.

You eat meat, don't you?

5 عندما تكون **has** و **have** للملكية يكون النفي بـ **hasn't/haven't** وعندما تكون بمعنى آخر نستخدم **v. to do**.

He has a new car, hasn't he?

He has lunch at 3 pm every day, doesn't he?

6 في الاستنتاج الفعل العائد على **P.P. + must have** هو **mustn't**.

Hesham must have won the gold medal, mustn't he?

## Adjectives and adverbs

## الصفات والأحوال

بالإضافة إلى وصف الفعل والصفة فإن الحال يصف أيضاً الحال مثله والجملة،

They started the race slowly.

الحال يصف الفعل

He is an incredibly amazing cook.

الحال يصف الصفة

He cooks really amazingly. (very well)

الحال يصف الحال

Interestingly, he won the first medal.

الحال يصف الجملة





– نستخدم الظروف التالية قبل الصفات الشديدة بمعنى جدًا أما في الصفات العادية فنستخدم (very).

(terribly – absolutely – awfully – really – completely – totally –  
awfully – pretty – entirely – incredibly)

Mr Ahmed is a **very** good teacher.

Mr Ahmed is an **absolutely** amazing teacher.

ومن أمثلة الصفات العادية والشديدة ما يلي:

Ordinary	Extreme	Ordinary	Extreme
big	enormous/ huge	tired ضخم	exhausted منهك
bad	awful/ terrible	frightened فظيع	terrified هلع
angry	furious	happy حائق	delighted مُفْتَخِرٌ
surprised مندهش	amazed	cold مذهول	freezing متجمد
clean	spotless	good نظيف جدًا	wonderful/ excellent ممتاز
crowded مزدحم	packed	hot مُخْتَلِّطٌ	boiling مُغْتَاظٌ / حائق
hungry	starving	old يموت جوعًا	ancient عتيق
interesting	fascinating	small خُلاَّب	tiny دَقِيقٌ
clever	brilliant	pretty بايع	gorgeous جَذَابٌ رالغ

لاحظ

– هناك بعض الظروف التي تُستخدم مع الصفات والظروف الأخرى:

almost	تقريبًا	partly	إلى حد ما / جُزئيًا	a lot/much	جدًا	a little	قليل
enough	بدرجة كافية	too	أكثر من اللازم / جدًا	just	فَقَطْ / تَقْرِيبًا / بِصُعُوبَةٍ	a bit	قليل

– نستخدم بعض ظروف قبل الفعل.

The earthquake **completely** destroyed the area.

## Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Pass me the salt, .....?  
☐ a) won't you    ☐ b) aren't I    ☐ c) aren't you    ☐ d) do you
2. There are so many people in the street, .....?  
☐ a) aren't they    ☐ b) are there    ☐ c) isn't there    ☐ d) aren't there
3. Let's go to the cinema, .....?  
☐ a) will we    ☐ b) shall we    ☐ c) do we    ☐ d) won't you
4. Whoever made the cake did a ..... job.  
☐ a) wonder    ☐ b) wonderfully    ☐ c) wonderful    ☐ d) more wonderfully
5. That's a/an ..... amazing picture.  
☐ a) absolutely    ☐ b) hardly    ☐ c) fairly    ☐ d) bit

### Extra points

تنقسم الأحوال التي تصف الفعل إلى:

1 الطريقة (manner) تجيب عن السؤال بـ **How**.

They are **eagerly** waiting for the e-mail.  
 بهمة/يشوق

2 المكان (place) تجيب عن السؤال بـ **Where**.

There is a cinema **nearby**.  
 بالقرب

3 الزمن (time) تجيب عن السؤال بـ **When**.

I'll meet you **tomorrow**.

4 التكرار (frequency) تجيب عن السؤال بـ **How often**.

She is **always** ready to help. He **often** complains about the salary.

### لاحظ

- عندما يأتي اثنان أو أكثر من الأحوال يكون الترتيب كالآتي:

(manner + place + time).

Ali is studying **quietly in his room now**.

- لو كان في الجملة فعل من أفعال الحركة مثل **go/ come/ leave** يكون الترتيب كالآتي:

(place + manner + time).

He came **to work by bus this morning**.



➤ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They have to ask somebody else to help them, ..... ?  
☐ a) do they      ☐ b) haven't they      ☐ c) have they      ☐ d) don't they
2. Nothing was wrong, ..... ?  
☐ a) was it      ☐ b) were they      ☐ c) wasn't it      ☐ d) weren't they
3. They had left early, ..... they?  
☐ a) had      ☐ b) didn't      ☐ c) hadn't      ☐ d) weren't
4. Playing a musical instrument isn't as easy as supposed, ..... ?  
☐ a) aren't you      ☐ b) is it      ☐ c) isn't it      ☐ d) aren't they
5. Please, call me when he comes, ..... ?  
☐ a) won't I      ☐ b) shall I      ☐ c) aren't you      ☐ d) will you
6. He never thought what might come out of it, ..... ?  
☐ a) hasn't he      ☐ b) didn't he      ☐ c) did he      ☐ d) won't he
7. Let's have a morning walk, ..... we?  
☐ a) shall      ☐ b) haven't      ☐ c) don't      ☐ d) should
8. ...., could she?  
☐ a) The band couldn't sing well      ☐ b) Nour couldn't sing well  
☐ c) Shady couldn't sing well      ☐ d) Shady could sing well
9. ...., don't they?  
☐ a) They often talk to their neighbours  
☐ b) They don't often talk to their neighbours  
☐ c) We often talk to our neighbours  
☐ d) We often talk to their neighbours
10. A: I'm late, aren't I? B: ..... . You are just on time.  
☐ a) Yes, you aren't      ☐ b) Yes, you are  
☐ c) No, you aren't      ☐ d) No, you are
11. Hany doesn't know how to cook, does he?  
☐ a) Yes, he doesn't. He hates cooking.  
☐ b) No, he doesn't. It isn't one of his interests.  
☐ c) No, he does. He likes cooking.  
☐ d) Yes, he doesn't, but he is trying to learn.

12. I'm going to ... next term, because the exams are getting closer.  
 a) studying hard                      b) study hardly  
 c) hardly study                      d) study hard
13. Sara thought that the film was ..... interesting.  
 a) terribly              b) extremely              c) extreme              d) abso ute
14. The young woman spoke to us .....  
 a) mother              b) motherly              c) in a motherly way      d) motherhood
15. The teacher read my essay and checked everything I had written very .....  
 a) carefully              b) careful              c) care              d) carefu ness
16. In 2015, Messi was ..... famous and had scored most of the goals for his team.  
 a) a blt              b) a little              c) rather              d) incredibly
17. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically correct?  
☐ a) He works hard.  
 b) He works hardly.  
 c) He arrived lately at the party.  
 d) The bird flew nighly in the sky.
18. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect?  
☐ a) Yasser has a good chance to win the game.  
 b) Yasser has a well chance to win the game.  
 c) Yasser has a better chance to win the game than others.  
 d) Yasser has the best chance to win the game.
19. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect?  
☐ a) I speak English fluently now.  
 b) I speak fluent English now.  
 c) I speak fluently English now.  
 d) I speak English more fluently now than last year.
20. Which sentence is correctly structured?  
 a) The food looked perfect good to me.  
 b) The food looked perfectly well to me.  
 c) The food looked perfect well to me.  
 d) The food looked perfectly good to me.



## Longman and Previous Exams

21. Everyone is ready for the exam, .....?

- ☐ a) aren't they    ☐ b) isn't he    ☐ c) are they    ☐ d) isn't she

22. I don't think Tamer is angry, .....?

- ☐ a) don't I    ☐ b) isn't he    ☐ c) do I    ☐ d) is he

23. Gaber is a very active worker; he ..... all the time.

- ☐ a) works hardly    ☐ b) hardly works    ☐ c) works hard    ☐ d) a hard worker

24. After he had finished his work, she contacted him, .....?

- ☐ a) hadn't he    ☐ b) didn't she    ☐ c) hadn't she    ☐ d) didn't he

25. Which of the following is structurally incorrect?

- ☐ a) Hatim is a fast runner.  
☐ b) This soup smells badly.  
☐ c) You should speak politely with others.  
☐ d) What a wonderful book!

26. Always obey the rules, .....?

- ☐ a) do you    ☐ b) do I    ☐ c) will you    ☐ d) shall I

27. He always forgets his homework, .....?

- ☐ a) never he    ☐ b) don't you    ☐ c) doesn't he    ☐ d) did he

28. No one was inside the house when it collapsed, .....?

- ☐ a) weren't they    ☐ b) were they    ☐ c) did it    ☐ d) didn't it

29. Your bag is ..... my bag. It is the same colour, size and price.

- ☐ a) slightly different from    ☐ b) almost as expensive as  
☐ c) exactly the same as    ☐ d) not similar to

30. My friend was ..... furious when we laughed at him/her.

- ☐ a) very    ☐ b) slightly    ☐ c) a little    ☐ d) completely





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## Vocabulary

- Today, modern versions of ..... called wind turbines, are used to create electricity.  
☐ a) waterfalls      b) windmills      c) pane s      d) stations
- Tourists come to Hurghada to enjoy water sports and the beautiful .....  
☐ a) site      b) treasury .      c) audience      d) scenery
- This make-up ..... can be ordered more cheaply online.  
☐ a) equipment      b) kit      c) apparatus      d) press
- You're ..... to be annoyed - you've been treated by the sales assistants very badly.  
☐ a) right      b) mora      c) wrong      d) rightly
- The Lion King was the first ..... film to make profits of more than one hundred million dollars in its time.  
☐ a) bad      b) historical      c) apparent      d) animated
- My friends thought that the film by Henidi was so ..... that they couldn't stop laughing.  
☐ a) serious      b) hilarious      c) dangerous      d) romant'c
- The teacher found two spelling .. ..... in the student's essay, so he wasn't given top marks.  
☐ a) mistakes      b) deeds      c) signs      d) marks
- It was a good idea that they didn't go camping last weekend - the weather was .....  
☐ a) fabulous      b) awful      c) exciting      d) soothing
- The manager blamed me ..... for causing the problem with the customer.  
☐ a) faintly      b) personally      c) gradually      d) funnily
- I couldn't ..... my friend Munir who has just returned home from his long stay in Europe.  
☐ a) realise      b) achieve      c) recognise      d) respire
- Most companies are ..... technology to provide better service to their customers.  
☐ a) containing      b) wast'ng      c) consuming      d) harness'ng
- Egypt and Emirates have become close trading ..... in the last few years.  
☐ a) servants      b) partners      c) heroes      d) champions
- Tea and coffee are considered the most ..... drinks all over the world.  
☐ a) hateful      b) detesting      c) popular      d) affect'ng
- Please, stop making that noise - it's getting annoying. The antonym of the adjective "annoying" is ".....".  
☐ a) irritating      b) terrible      c) interested      d) pleasant

15. "Robinson Crusoe" is a novel about a sailor who was shipwrecked on a desert ..... near South America.  
☐ a) beach      ☐ b) road      ☐ c) island      ☐ d) village

### Language

16. Help your brother with his homework, .....?  
☐ a) isn't he      ☐ b) don't you      ☐ c) shan't you      ☐ d) will you
17. You have read all Charles Dickens' novels, .....?  
☐ a) didn't you      ☐ b) haven't you      ☐ c) have you      ☐ d) don't you
18. She rarely cooks meat, ..... she?  
☐ a) has      ☐ b) doesn't      ☐ c) does      ☐ d) hasn't
19. Nothing can be done at this moment, .....?  
☐ a) can it      ☐ b) can they      ☐ c) can't it      ☐ d) can't they
20. You have never seen that film before, ..... you?  
☐ a) do      ☐ b) have      ☐ c) haven't      ☐ d) don't
21. Hala thinks that the film will be interesting, .....?  
☐ a) won't she      ☐ b) doesn't it      ☐ c) won't it      ☐ d) does it
22. A: The manner of addressing people in Britain is quite different from ours, .....?  
 B: Yes, it is. You're right.  
☐ a) isn't it      ☐ b) isn't there      ☐ c) It is      ☐ d) is it
23. Don't talk to Nabil during the lesson, ..... you?  
☐ a) don't      ☐ b) do      ☐ c) won't      ☐ d) will
24. .... aren't they?  
☐ a) Omar and I are from Maadi  
☐ b) Omar and Hazem aren't from Assuit  
☐ c) Everyone in your class is working hard  
☐ d) Your parents are never lazy
25. They were ..... delighted with the service in this hotel.  
☐ a) very      ☐ b) a bit      ☐ c) extreme      ☐ d) abso utely
26. Mona did ..... in her exam. She was ill that day.  
☐ a) terriple      ☐ b) terribly      ☐ c) good      ☐ d) wel
27. The children are very ..... What are they doing?  
☐ a) quiet      ☐ b) quietness      ☐ c) quietly      ☐ d) quieter
28. When I play football indoors, I feel ..... exhausted.  
☐ a) very      ☐ b) a little      ☐ c) a bit      ☐ d) abso utely
29. It's ..... hot in the desert in August, sometimes up to 50°C.  
☐ a) rather      ☐ b) quite      ☐ c) extremely      ☐ d) slightly
30. He was careful when he wrote the report to his boss. This means: .....  
☐ a) He was carefully when he wrote the report to his boss.  
☐ b) He carefully wrote the report to his boss.  
☐ c) He carefully when he wrote the report to his boss.  
☐ d) He careful wrote the report to his boss.



## Writing Skill

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات  
يرجى الرجوع لملاحق لمهارات.

## Writing tips

## Film review

- Write about a film. It can be a film you liked very much or didn't like at all.

Introduce the film.

Say if you would or would not recommend the film and why.

Say what happens in the film.

Try to include different adjectives and adverbs.

- 1) If you like action films, then you'll love **Casablanca**. It's about a gang of three companions who worked in illegal acts and their struggle for a huge sum of diamonds which was stolen. The events of the film are divided between Egypt and Morocco. The main actors, Amir Karara, Amr Abdel Gileel and Eiad Nassar, are all marvellous. Although the film is full of illegal acts, the atmosphere and action scenes are amazing. I would recommend this film to people who like excitement and adventure.
- 2) Some comedies are hilarious, but I didn't think that "**El Harb El A amia El Talta**" "**The Third World War**" was funny at all! It's about a young man who lives near a wax museum where statues come alive at night. It is an imitation of an American film. The events are all farfetched, the script is not nice and the acting is exaggerating. I really regret wasting my time on this film and I wouldn't recommend it to anyone.

## تطبيق الأشخاص

تطبيق الأشخاص  
تطبيق الأشخاص

إلى التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأشخاص  
www.aldawaa.com





## (A) Reading Comprehension

## 1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Is it difficult for you to remember things for a test? Do you feel tired a lot of the time? Try eating breakfast. Eating a good breakfast can improve memory, concentration and test marks, especially in maths and reading. Breakfast eaters usually eat more fruit, drink more milk and eat a larger variety of food than non-breakfast eaters. This gives them more energy.

People who eat a lot of fruit and vegetables are less likely to have heart problems. You should eat at least five portions of fruit and vegetables a day. One portion is, e.g., a banana, an apple, one slice of melon or pineapple or two plums.

Eating too much salt can raise your blood pressure. People with high blood pressure are three times more likely to develop heart disease or have a stroke than people with normal blood pressure. Three-quarters (75%) of the salt we eat is already in the food we buy, such as breakfast cereals, soups, sauces and ready meals. So, you could easily be eating too much salt without realising it.

Having too much saturated fat can cause heart disease. Products that contain large amounts of saturated fats are meat pies, cheese, butter, lard, cream and cakes.

You should replace butter and lard with vegetable oils, which don't contain saturated fat.

Having sugary foods and drinks too often can cause tooth decay. Cutting down on sugar will help you control your weight. Sugar is added to many types of food, e.g., fizzy drinks, juices, sweets, biscuits, cakes and ice cream.

We should be drinking about 6 to 8 glasses of water every day and even more when the weather is warm. Don't drink too much coffee or tea, as they can dehydrate you.

## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## 1. What can breakfast do to us?

- a) It helps us to misunderstand.
- b) It helps us to concentrate.
- c) It helps us to reduce salt.
- d) It helps us to raise pressure.

## 2. Which school subjects are most affected by having breakfast?

- a) English and Arabic.
- b) Reading and English.
- c) Maths and reading.
- d) Maths and sports.

► 3. What helps protect against heart attacks?

- ☐ a) Eating a lot of fruit and vegetables.
- ☐ b) Salt and plums.
- ☐ c) Drinking coffee and tea.
- ☐ d) Having too much saturated fat

4. What causes blood pressure to raise?

- ☐ a) Having a lot of fruit and vegetables.
- ☐ b) Eating too much salt.
- ☐ c) Having sugary foods and drinks.
- ☐ d) Drinking too much water.

5. Why should we replace butter and lard with vegetable oils?

- ☐ a) Because butter and lard contain much sugar.
- ☐ b) Because butter and lard contain much blood pressure.
- ☐ c) Because vegetable oils contain much water.
- ☐ d) Because vegetable oils are less harmful.

6. What is the best title for the passage?

- a) Cutting down on salt.
- b) Cutting down on sugar.
- c) Dangers of saturated fat.
- d) How to stay healthy.

7. We can control our weight by . . . . .

- ☐ a) cutting down on sugar
- ☐ b) sleeping early
- ☐ c) drinking too much coffee or tea
- ☐ d) eating too much vegetable oil

8. The synonym of the underlined word "decay" is ".....":

- ☐ a) growth
- ☐ b) flourish
- ☐ c) rotting
- ☐ d) evolution

**(B) Translation**

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- 1. Many young men and women are fond of watching horror and action films. However, these types of films can affect them psychologically and socially.

- (a) كثير من الشباب رجالاً ونساءً مفرمون بمشاهدة أفلام الرعب وأفلام الحركة ومع ذلك فإن هذه الأنواع من الأفلام تؤثر عليهم نفسياً واجتماعياً.
- (b) كثير من الرجال والنساء غير مفرمين برؤية أفلام الرعب وأفلام الحركة ولكن هذه الأنواع من الأفلام لا تؤثر عليهم نفسياً واجتماعياً
- (c) يفرح كثير من الرجال والنساء الصغار بمشاهدة أفلام الرعب وأفلام الكوميديا ولذلك فإن هذه الأنواع من الأفلام تؤثر عليهم نفسياً واجتماعياً.
- (d) يفرح كثير من الرجال و نساء المصغار بالمشاركة في أفلام المغامرات وأفلام الحركة ومع ذلك فإن هذه الأنواع من الأفلام غير مؤثرة عليهم نفسياً واجتماعياً.





2. Egypt can only reach an outstanding position among countries with hard work and production. Everyone should have sincere intentions and a strong will. The more effort we exert, the more advanced Egypt will be.

- (a) تستطيع مصر أن تصل إلى مكانة مميزة بين القارات بالعمل الجيد والإنتاج ويجب أن يكون لكل شخص النية الصادقة والإرادة القوية وكما بذلنا مجهودًا أكثر تقدمت مصر
- (b) يمكن لمصر أن تصل إلى مكانة مهمة بين الدول عن طريق العمل الصعب والإنتاج وينبغي أن يكون لكل فرد الطموح الصادق والإرادة القوية فكلما بذلنا مجهودًا أقل تقدمت مصر
- (c) بإمكان مصر أن تصل لمكانة مميزة بين الدول بالعمل الجاد والإنتاج ويجب أن يكون لكل فرد النية الصادقة والإرادة القوية وكما بذلنا مجهودًا أكثر تقدمت مصر
- (d) من الممكن أن تصل مصر لمكانة مختلفة بين الدول بالعمل الصعب والمنتجات ويجب أن يكون لكل فرد النية الصادقة والإرادة القوية وكما بذلنا مجهودًا أكثر كانت مصر متقدمة

3. To solve the problem of unemployment, young people should take training that will allow them to get several kinds of jobs and mainly studies connected with technology.

- (a) لكي نحل مشكلة البطالة يجب أن يقوم الشباب بتدريب يسمح لهم بالحصول على أنواع عديدة من الوظائف بالإضافة إلى دراسات متصلة بالتكنولوجيا.
- (b) لأننا لا نجد حلًا لمشكلة البطالة يجب أن يقوم الشباب بتمارين تسمح لهم بالحصول على أنواع متعددة من المهام بالإضافة إلى دراسات متصلة بالتكنولوجيا.
- (c) لإيجاد حل لمشكلة البطالة يجب أن يقوم الشباب باكتساب مهارات تسمح لهم بالحصول على أنواع متعددة من الوظائف بالإضافة إلى دراسات لها علاقة بالتكنولوجيا.
- (d) لكي نحل مشكلة البطالة يجب أن يقوم الشباب بتمارين تسمح لهم بإيجاد أنواع عديدة من المهام بالإضافة إلى دراسات ليس لها علاقة بالتكنولوجيا.

#### (B) Choose the correct English translation:

4. تمثل الدراما أهم وسائل قضاء وقت الفراغ لدى معظم الناس لذا يستخدمها المنتجون للوصول بمنتجاتهم إلى المستهلكين رغم التكلفة الكبيرة لهذه الإعلانات

- (a) Drama is not one of the most main ways of spending free time for some people. Therefore, sellers use it to get their products to consumers despite the high increase of these advertisements.
- (b) Drama is one of the most important means of spending free time for most people. Therefore, producers use it to get their products to consumers despite the high cost of these commercials.
- (c) Drama is one of the most important methods of enjoying spare time for most people. Hence, producers use it to get their production to customs despite the high cost of these announcements.
- (d) Drama is not one of the most main means of spending spare time for most people. Therefore, producers use it to get their produce to sellers in spite of the high rise of these commercials.

5. يعتقد الخبراء أن استخدام الشباب المفرط للتليفون المحمول يؤثر على صحتهم وممارستهم للهوايات المفيدة، كما يؤدي إلى تدهور علاقاتهم الاجتماعية بعائلاتهم وأصدقائهم.

- Experts believe that young people's overuse of mobile phones affects their health and practising useful hobbies. It may also lead to the deterioration of the social relations with their family and friends.
- Scientists believe that young people's overdose of mobile phones ruins their health and practising useful habits. It can also lead to the decrease of the social connections with their family and friends.
- Experts guess that young people's overuse of mobile phones influences their health and making useful hobbies. It may also lead to the deterioration of the social relations with their family and friends.
- Scientists say that young people's overdose of mobile phones enhances their health and doing useful habits. It can also lead to the decrease of the social communications with their family and friends.

6. تُعتبر الكوارث الطبيعية كالزلازل والبراكين فرصة لاختبار وحدة وتماسك أي أمة، فكلما كان الأفراد متعاونين قلت الخسائر التي يمكن لهذه الكوارث أن تخلفها.

- Natural disasters such as earthquakes and volcanoes are a chance to test the unity and integrity of any nation. The more cooperative people are, the less the losses that these disasters can cause.
- Interneuron d disasters such as earthquakes and volcanoes are a choice to test the unity and integrity of any people. The more people are cooperative, the less the losses that these disasters can cause.
- Unnatural disasters such as earthquakes and volcanoes are an option to check the unity and integrity of any nation. The most cooperative people are, the least the losses that these disasters can cause.
- Environmental disasters such as earthquakes and volcanoes have a chance to examine the unity and integrity of any country. The more people have been cooperative, the less the losses that these disasters can be caused.

### (c) Writing

3 Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

- "The kind of stories or films you enjoy in your free time." Your name is Menna and your email address is: menna10@example.com. Your friend is Mariam and her email address is: mariam@example.com.

I used more than  
4 new vocabulary.

I used the right  
structure.

I used a topic  
sentence.

I wrote the  
conclusion.

I used the right  
punctuation.



### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

**Receptionist:** Hello, sir. (1) .....

**Guest:** : I want to reserve a room.

**Receptionist:** (2) .....

**Guest:** : Single with a bath.

**Receptionist:** (3) .....

**Guest:** : I want it for fortnight.

**Receptionist:** OK, please fill in this form.

**Guest:** : (4) .....

**Receptionist:** The room is 100 pounds per night including breakfast.

**Guest:** : Can I pay with my credit card?

**Receptionist:** We accept all kinds of payment.

### A Glimpse of Revelation II

#### 2 (A) Answer the following questions:

1. What saved Moses (PBUH) from being killed by the pharaoh?
2. Ubāda ibn al-sāmit had many skills which helped Islam. Illustrate.

#### (B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. The Torah ..... the prophethood of Prophet Muhammad (PBUH).  
☐ a) foretells    ☐ b) invites    ☐ c) forbids    ☐ d) covers
4. Ubāda ibn al-sāmit was buried in .....  
☐ a) Egypt    ☐ b) Mecca    ☐ c) Medina    ☐ d) Palestine

### King Lear

#### 3 (A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why was Goneril unhappy about Edmund working for Regan?
2. What news did Edgar tell Gloucester about the battle?

#### (B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. The young man had lied to his mother, and she couldn't ..... him for that.  
☐ a) discover    ☐ b) deny    ☐ c) forg've    ☐ d) award
4. What did Edmund decide to do to take control of the kingdom?  
☐ a) To make Lear King again.    ☐ b) To marry Regan.  
☐ c) To help the French army.    ☐ d) To get rid of Regan, Goneril and Albany.

#### 4 (A) Translate into Arabic:

- We must train innovative young people to start their own business.

#### (B) Translate into English:

- تم ذكر سيدنا موسى في القرآن أكثر من أي نبي آخر مما يؤكد على مكانته في العقيدة الإسلامية.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(13M)

1. My cousin joined the ..... of a large fishing boat as he had always dreamed of working in the sea.  
 a) crew                      b) staff                      c) cast                      d) group
2. The children read the novel in its simplified .....  
 a) video                      b) version  
 c) episode                      d) animation
3. At the university gate, you must present ..... proof of your admittance.  
 a) correspondence                      b) forged  
 c) documentary                      d) competitive
4. The Nile passes through a rich variety of ..... in some African countries.  
 a) sites                      b) treasury  
 c) situations                      d) scenery
5. The manager was openly hostile ..... any kind of criticism of his project.  
 a) to                      b) for                      c) about                      d) in
6. This game is recommended for children aged 12 and above. The antonym of the verb "recommend" is .....  
 a) propose                      b) depress                      c) create                      d) oppose
7. The weather was so ..... that we had to cancel the picnic.  
 a) awfu                      b) amazing                      c) pleasant                      d) perfect
8. The children haven't finished yet, ..... they?  
 a) haven't                      b) have                      c) do                      d) don't
9. We must be at school at 8 o'clock, ..... we?  
 a) aren't                      b) don't                      c) needn't                      d) mustn't
10. He used to be a famous doctor, ..... he?  
 a) didn't                      b) wasn't                      c) wouldn't                      d) weren't
11. How ..... can a sportsman run?  
 a) quick                      b) quicker                      c) quickest                      d) quickly
12. It's a pretty village, but there's ..... anything to do here.  
 a) hardly                      b) harden                      c) hard                      d) hardship



13. Kamal isn't a rash driver. He always drives .....

☐ a) rashly

☐ b) rash

☐ c) carefully

☐ d) in a carefully way

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

(8M)

Throughout history, there have been reliable reports on dolphins playing with people and helping them. The earliest accounts are from over 2000 years ago.

There is no doubt that many dolphins are interested in people. They often seek human companionship, enjoy playing ball games and like being petted. However, their life-saving is perhaps not due to concern for us but is a result of the fact that they naturally support a sick brother to keep him near the surface so that he can breathe. When they help a human, perhaps they are just doing what comes naturally.

Their intelligence is difficult to determine. We qualify animals as intelligent if they can do things that we ourselves are good at. When a monkey uses a stick as a tool, we say that this shows intelligence. On the other hand, some birds fly accurately for thousands of kilometres, but we do not normally call this intelligence.

What then of dolphins? First, they navigate extremely accurately, even in dirty water, relying on sound reflection like bats. Second, they communicate – in ways we do not understand – both facts and feelings. One dolphin can pass on to another without touching it or showing it something that it has learnt. They also know when another is sad. So evidence suggests that dolphins are both friendly and intelligent, but in order to be sure we'll just have to learn. Then we can simply ask them.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

14. What does the underlined word 'They' refer to?

☐ a) Dolphins.

☐ b) People.

☐ c) Birds.

☐ d) Reports.

15. It's clear from the text that dolphins .....

☐ a) are afraid of human beings

☐ b) often save drowning people

☐ c) can't learn anything

☐ d) kill other sick dolphins



► 16. We don't understand how dolphins .....

- ☒ a) copulate
- b) imitate
- c) communicate
- d) facilitate

17. When do we usually call an animal "intelligent"?

- ☒ a) When it imitates us.
- b) When it travels long distances.
- c) When it saves a person.
- d) When it runs fast.

18. In what way are dolphins like bats?

- ☒ a) They fly accurately.
- b) They like humans.
- c) They navigate relying on sound reflection.
- d) They save drowning persons.

19. What shows that dolphins are interested in people?

- ☒ a) They often seek human companionship
- b) They enjoy playing ball games.
- c) They like being petted.
- d) All of these.

20. Why do dolphins keep a sick person near the surface?

- ☒ a) To eat him.
- b) So that he can breathe.
- c) To cure him.
- d) To play with him.

21. What do you think of dolphins?

- ☒ a) Friendly and ignorant.
- b) Intelligent and violent.
- c) Friendly and intelligent.
- d) Strong and foolish.

► 22. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

(4M)

- Mass media – represented in television, the radio and the press – have a vital effect on everyone. They form the public opinion of any nation.

(a) وسائل التواصل الإعلامي على رأسها التلفزيون والإذاعة والصحف لها تأثير حيوي على المجتمع فهي تشكل الرأي العام لدى شعب

(b) وسائل الإعلام مثل التلفزيون والإذاعة والصحافة ليس لها تأثير حيوي على المجتمع فهي تشكل الرأي العام لدى شعب

(c) وسائل الإعلام ممثلة في التلفزيون والإذاعة والصحافة لها تأثير حيوي على الجميع فهي تشكل الرأي العام لدى أمة.

(d) صفحات التواصل الإعلامي مثل التلفزيون والإذاعة والصحف ليس فقط لها تأثير قوي على الجميع بل تشكل الرأي العام لدى أمة.

### ► 23. Choose the correct English translation:

– لو استطاع كل فرد القيام بدوره على أكمل وجه لتقدمت مصر في كل المجالات، ولأصبحنا من أرقى الأمم. فتنمية البلاد لا تتحقق دون الجهد والصبر.

- ☐ a) When somebody plays their role in a complete way, Egypt will develop in all fields and we will be one of the most developing countries. Developing a country can be achieved with hard work and patience.
- ☐ b) If everyone played their role properly, Egypt would develop in all fields and we would be one of the most developed countries. Developing a country cannot be achieved without hard work and patience.
- ☐ c) If everyone played their role right, Egypt would develop in all fields and we wouldn't be one of the most developing nations. Development of a country cannot be achieved with hard work and patience.
- ☐ d) Unless nobody had played their role in a complete way, Egypt would have developed in all fields and we have been one of the most developing countries. Development of a country can be achieved without hard work and patience.

### ► 24. Answer the following questions: (The play) (1.5M)

1. Albany proved to be a patriotic وطني politician. Do you agree? Give an example.
2. Do you think that Edmund planned to rule the kingdom before he started his plot مؤامرة against his father? Why?
3. Do you agree with Regan's view of Edmund? Why?

### ► 25. Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words: (3.5M)

To your friend Wafaa telling her about a reading competition on famous writers you are going to take part in and ask her for suggestions. Your name is Sara. Your email address is saranew@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is wafaa2020@gmail.com.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الشغافين  
الرجوع للنهاية الكتاب ص 347



Assess your  
progress



< 50%

Study again

50 : 64%

Practise more

65 : 84%

Take more quiz

85 : 100%

Well done!

# Unit 12

## Achievements and goals



### Objectives

**Reading** : An article about a young entrepreneur

**Writing** : A report about an experience

**Listening** : A talk about SMART goals

**Speaking** : Discussing goals and how to achieve them

**Language** : Defining and non-defining relative clauses

**Life Skills** : Self-management; Decision-making; Collaboration

## A

## Vocabulary

## Key Vocabulary

## المفردات الرئيسية

achievable (adj)	قابل للتحقيق	measurable (adj)	قابل للقياس	set (v)	يحدد
entrepreneur (n)	رائد عمل	profit (n) (v) (ed)	ربح / يربح	specific (adj)	محدد
goal (n)	هدف	recipe (n)	وصفة طعام	time-bound (adj)	مقيد زمنيًا
honeybee (n)	نحلة عسل	relevant (adj)	ذو صلة		

## Vocabulary on Reading &amp; Listening Texts

## مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

aim (n) (v) (ed)	هدف / يهدف	highlight (v) (ed)	يلقي ضوءًا / يميز نصًا	range (n)	معدل / سلسلة
business (n)	عمل تجاري	honey (n)	عسل	react (v) (ed)	يقوم برد فعل
charity (n)	منظمة خيرية / عمل خيري	importance (n)	أهمية	sensible (adj)	عاقل / حكيم
coach (n)	مدرب	locally (adv)	محليًا	series (n)	سلسلة
company (n)	شركة	long-term (adj)	طويل الأمد	share (v) (d)	يشارك
conservation (n)	محافظة / حفاظ	manage (v) (d)	يدير / ينجح / يتمكن	short-term (adj)	قصير الأمد
definitely (adv)	بالتأكيد	manager (n)	مدير	smart (adj)	ذكي
donate (v) (d)	يتبرع به	mention (v) (ed)	يذكر	stand for (v)	يمثل / ينوب عن
drop (v) (ped)	يسقط / يخرج (من فريق)	passionate (adj)	عاطفي / متحمس	unlikely (adv)	من غير المحتمل
educate (v) (d)	يعلم / يدرس	physics (n)	مادة الفيزياء	vague (adj)	غامض / غير واضح
end date (n)	تاريخ الانتهاء	possession (n)	ملكية	well-known (adj)	معروف
experience (n)	خبرة	president (n)	رئيس (شركة أو مؤسسة)	whenever (conj)	حينما
failure (n)	فشل / حالة فشل	progress (n) (n) (ed)	تقدم / يتقدم		
final (adj) (n)	نهائي	protect (v) (ed)	يحمي	winner (n)	فائز
give up (v)	يتوقف عن / يستسلم	qualify (v) (y-ied)	يتأهل / يؤهل		



## Workbook Vocabulary

## مفردات كتاب التدريبات

architecture (n)	العمارة	individual (n) (adj)	فرد / فردي	practise (v) (d)	يمارس / يتدرب
detailed (adj)	مُفصّل	lucky (adj)	محظوظ	profession (n)	مهنة
essential (adj)	ضروري	magnificent (adj)	رائع	record (v) (ed)	يسجّل
fear (n) (v) (ed)	خوف / يخشى	memory (n)	ذاكرة	related (adj)	مرتبط
fit in (v)	يجد وقتاً لـ	multi-national (adj)	متعدد الجنسيات	relax (v) (ed)	يسترخي
forever (adv)	للأبد	non-essential (adj)	غير ضروري	tutorial (n)	دورة تعليمية / درس خصوصي
guitar (n)	جيتار	objective (n)	هدف		

## Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Some of the children in our school have ..... learning difficulties such as dyslexia.  
☐ a) silly      b) hilarious      c) timing      d) specific
- The manager said that we couldn't make a decision until we had all the ..... information and numbers.  
☐ a) unaccepted      b) achievable      c) relevant      d) unrel'able
- The new Prime Minister delivered a powerful and ..... speech in front of the Parliament.  
☐ a) rare      b) passionate      c) specific      d) secret
- All the money that the concert collected will go to a ..... which helps sick children.  
☐ a) charity      b) chain      c) chorus      d) market
- Many organisations are trying to raise money for ..... of the environment and save the world.  
☐ a) imagination      b) convention      c) conservation      d) condensat on
- Diplomacy is always the most ..... way to resolve all kinds of disputes and wars.  
☐ a) sensible      b) unreasonable      c) sensitive      d) irresponsible
- The efficient new clerk was given an award by the ..... of the bank branch.  
☐ a) minister      b) president      c) member      d) captain
- A/An ..... is a person who makes money by starting or running businesses, especially when this involves taking financial risks.  
☐ a) entertainer      b) designer      c) entrepreneur      d) consultant
- The problems of pollution and global warming are closely .....  
☐ a) achievable      b) specific      c) relevant      d) related
- The mountain ..... in Morocco stretches away hundreds of kilometres.  
☐ a) serial      b) department      c) range      d) district





## Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

## التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

achieve their goals يحققون أهدافهم	had my first sight رأيت لأول مرة	pass (my) driving test يجتاز اختبار القيادة
feel different يشعر بأنه مختلف	in public علناً / أمام الجمهور	play the guitar يعزف على الجيتار
give a presentation يقدم عرضاً تقديمياً	make a difference يحدث فرقاً	reach my goal أصل لهدفي
add to يضيف إلى	get over يتغلب على	passionate about متحمس بخصوص
depending on اعتماداً على	importance of أهمية لـ	related to مرتبط بـ
donate to يتبرع لـ	look after يعنى بـ	relevant to ذو صلة بـ

## Derivatives

## المشتقات

Verb فعل	Noun اسم	Adjective صفة
achieve يحقّق / ينجز	achievement إنجاز	achievable قابل للتحقيق
conserve يحافظ على	conservation حفاظ conservationist محافظ على البيئة	conservative محافظ
manage يدير	management إدارة manager مدير	managerial إداري
measure يقيس	measurement قياس	measurable قابل للقياس
-----	passion عاشقة / حماس	passionate عاطفي / متحمس
possess يملك	possession ملكية	possessive تملكي / اقتنائي
profit يربح	profit ربح	profitable مربح
relax يسترخي	relaxation استرخاء	relaxed مستريح / مسترخ
-----	relevance صلة / علاقة	relevant ذو صلة

## Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

We can **measure** the energy that food provides in calories. (v)

Take **measurements** of the room before you buy any new furniture. (n)

There has been a **measurable** improvement in the company's performance. (adj)

## Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	التعريف	Antonym	التضاد
achievable	قابل للتحقيق	attainable/feasible		impossible unattainable	مستحيل بعيد المنال
conservation	حفاظ	preservation/protection		destruction/waste	تدمير/إهدار
detailed	مفصل	precise/specific		inaccurate/incomplete	غير دقيق/غير كامل
entrepreneur	رائد عمل	administrator/manager		employee	موظف
forever	للأبد	everlasting/eternally		temporarily	مؤقتا
individual	فردى	single		team	جماعى
manage	يدير	direct/administer		obey/follow	يطيع
measurable	قابل للقياس	determinable		immeasurable	غير قابل للقياس
passionate	عاطفى / متحمس	enthusiastic		unconcerned	غير مهتم
profit	ربح / يربح	benefit/interest		loss	خسارة
progress	تقدم	advance/growth		decline/failure	تدهور / فشل
related	مرتبط	associated/linked		irrelevant	ليس له صلة
relax	يستريح	calm		worry	يقلق
sensible	عاقل / حكيم	reasonable/rational		irrational/unwise	غير عقلى / غير حكيم
smart	ذكى	intelligent/brilliant		foolish/stupid	أحمق / غبى



## Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Squash is an individual game in which a lot of Egyptians are champions.  
The antonym of the word "individual" is ".....".  
☐ a) team      ☐ b) single      ☐ c) unique      ☐ d) distinctive
2. Just five minutes' exercise a day could ..... a difference to your health.  
☐ a) do      ☐ b) make      ☐ c) devise      ☐ d) design
3. The lady was able to give a detailed description of her attacker. The synonym of the adjective "detailed" is ".....".  
☐ a) general      ☐ b) private      ☐ c) specific      ☐ d) public
4. The students hope to ..... their goal of raising 10,000 pounds for charity.  
☐ a) sit      ☐ b) set      ☐ c) arrive      ☐ d) reach
5. Most young people feel nervous about speaking ..... public.  
☐ a) at      ☐ b) in      ☐ c) of      ☐ d) about
6. The UN warns that too many nations already ..... chemical weapons.  
☐ a) possess      ☐ b) possession      ☐ c) possessive      ☐ d) possessively
7. The amount of protein you need is directly related ..... your lifestyle.  
☐ a) in      ☐ b) to      ☐ c) at      ☐ d) for
8. I listen to music for ..... before I go to bed.  
☐ a) relax      ☐ b) relaxation      ☐ c) relaxed      ☐ d) relaxes
9. I don't know how we're going to get ..... this problem.  
☐ a) off      ☐ b) in      ☐ c) into      ☐ d) over
10. The supermarket's daily profit is usually around five thousand pounds.  
The synonym of the word "profit" is ".....".  
☐ a) benefit      ☐ b) loss      ☐ c) exhibit on      ☐ d) charity

## Reading Text (1)



To succeed in life, it's important to have specific aims or goals. How often have you started something and then given up because it was either too difficult or took too long to complete? It's very easy to give up when things get hard, so how can we make sure we achieve the goals we set ourselves? One way, often mentioned by managers, is to have SMART goals. These are five different things you need to consider if you want to meet your goal.

Whenever you plan to set a goal, you need to ask yourself these questions: Is my goal specific? Is it measurable? Is it achievable? Is it relevant? and finally Is it time bound? If you answer 'no' to any of these questions, then you are unlikely to reach your goal.

## Reading Text (2)



Andy Robson, who is still a teenager, is the president of Green and Red, which is a small, but successful apple juice business in Maine. What is incredible is that Andy was only eight years old when he started selling apple juice outside his home in Auburn, where he still lives with his family.

Andy adapted a 1920s recipe that he got from his grandmother, but he added honey to the juice to make it a little different from his grandmother's. The reason he decided to add honey was because he is passionate about helping bees and wants to help protect them. His company now donates 15% of its profits to bee conservation groups who are fighting to save the honeybee.

Andy, whose picture is on every bottle of apple juice, has become very well-known in Maine. And Green and Red, which has been sold in a range of shops across Maine for years, is now selling in some restaurants and is very popular.

But that's not all. Andy has started his own charity with Jessica Webb, whom he met at school. Jessica keeps her own bees and is also a young entrepreneur – she sells her own honey locally. The two teenagers want to teach children about how to look after bees and about how to become an entrepreneur. They plan to go into schools and share their experiences as well as educating the children<sup>(1)</sup> about the importance of bees and why we need to look after them.



### Notes on some sentences:

ملاحظات على بعض الجمل

١ لاحظ استخدم (verb + ing) بعد (بالإضافة إلى as well as) لأن الفاعل في الجملتين واحد.

## Reading Text (3) (Workbook)



## Tarek

Ever since I saw my cousin playing the guitar last year, I've wanted to learn too<sup>(1)</sup>. This year I have a little more time, and so I'm going to do it! I bought a guitar last month and I'm going to classes once a week. I've set myself one goal which is to be able to play one song by next month. My father says he's sure I can do it. I practise the song every day for twenty minutes, and this also helps me relax after studying and revising for all my exams<sup>(2)</sup>.

## Salma

I want to be a newsreader when I'm older, so I know I have to get over my fear of speaking in public. The presentations I have to give at school are useful, but they still make me very nervous. I've been talking in front of the mirror and recording myself on video talking in front of the camera. I then watch myself and correct the things I don't like. By doing this once a week, I hope that by this time next month I won't feel nervous when I have to give a presentation in school about the future of the internet. Wish me luck!



## Notes on some sentences:

## ملاحظات على بعض الجمل

١- لاحظ استخدام (verb + ing) بعد (saw) كما يمكن أيضًا استخدام المصدر.

٢- لاحظ استخدام (verb + ing) بعد أداة الربط (after) لعدم وجود فاعل بعدها. ولاحظ استخدام المصدر بعد (help).

## Reading Text (4) (Workbook)



## Cairo from a visitor's view

Cairo, which is the capital city of Egypt, is a place which offers the visitor a wide range of experiences. Therefore, depending on who/whom you talk to, they will give you a very different picture of the city.

Last year was a time when I decided to fit in as many difference experiences as possible and so I visited Cairo. I was lucky enough to be invited by a friend 4) whose family lived there and wanted to show me everything the city had to offer. My friend Fares, with whom I had shared a flat in my first year at university, travelled with me by train to the city. It was at the Ramses Railway Station where I had my first sight of the magnificent architecture the city has to offer. However, this was not the only surprise which the city had for me. In my next blog post, I will tell you about all the wonderful people who/whom I will never forget and the places which will forever live in my memory.



## Listening Text



Scan & Listen



Now, let's look at these SMART goals one at a time and check what each one actually means. If you are serious about achieving your goals, you need to make sure they are sensible and definitely something you can do, even if they are a little bit difficult. But your goals mustn't be too general or you'll never reach them. So if your goal is to get fit by next month, it's too vague. Your goal needs to be much more specific such as, 'I want to be able to run ten kilometres without stopping in six months' time.'

Next, you need to make sure that your goal is measurable. To make sure you keep working towards your final goal, you need to have smaller, short-term goals along the way. Instead of saying 'I want to run ten kilometres', start with 1 kilometre. Then, when you can do that, aim for three kilometres and so on until you reach ten. By having smaller targets, you will find that it is easier to achieve your final goal. So, the 'A' in SMART means 'achievable', and your goal should never be too easy, but it should always be possible.

Now let's look at the last two letters 'R' and 'T'. The 'R' stands for relevant. This is about making goals that are important to you, not your family or friends. If you don't really care about the goal, then you're unlikely to succeed. And finally, 'T' is for time-bound, in other words there is a final time when your goal has to be reached. There's no point saying, 'I'm going to run 10 kilometres one day,' because you won't. You need to plan it and write down a time when you want to finally be able to achieve this.

So, if you want to achieve your goals, you need to ask yourself a series of SMART questions.

## Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

### work

عمل / مكان العمل (اسم لا يعد)

- I started **work** when I was sixteen.

- Much of the heavy **work** on farms is now done by machines.

### works

أعمال فنية أو أدبية (اسم يعد)

The **works** of Naguib Mahfouz are still read all over the world.

### job

وظيفة (اسم يعد)

- It's not his **job** to tell us what we can and can't do.

- I've applied for several **jobs** without success.

### career

مهنة (الحياة العملية للفرد)

Choosing a **career** can be a very difficult decision.

### profession

مهنة (تحتاج إلى مؤهلات وتدريب)

(the medical / legal / nursing / teaching profession)

We admit that a few members of our **profession** have behaved badly.

**recipe**

وصفة (مجموعة من الإرشادات  
لطباق معين)

Could you give me the **recipe** for that chocolate cake?

**prescription**

روشتة (وصفة طبية)

Dr Magdy gave me a **prescription** for some sleeping tablets.

**goal**

هدف (مستقبلي هام قد يستغرق  
وقتاً طويلاً)

something important that you hope to achieve in the future, even though it may take a long time  
- The country can still achieve its **goal** of reducing poverty by a third.

**objective**

هدف (تم مناقشته وتحديد مسبقاً)

the specific thing that you are trying to achieve  
- used especially about things that have been officially discussed  
- We met to set the business **objectives** for the coming year.

**target**

هدف / مستهدف (كم أو مقدار محدد  
تتمنى تحقيقه)

a particular amount or total that you want to achieve  
- The company is on track to meet its **target** of increasing profits by 10%.

**manage**

ينجح / يتمكن من (يتبعها اسم أو  
ضمين) أو (المصدر + to)

- I don't think I can **manage** a long walk today.  
- We **managed** to persuade him to come with us.

**succeed**

ينجح / يتمكن من (يتبعها  
in + verb + ing) أو noun

- Many women were able to **succeed** in politics.  
- My brother **succeeded** in passing his final tests.

**Vocabulary****3**

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I want to make an apple pie. Could you give me the ..... , please?  
☐ a) prescription    ☐ b) recipe    ☐ c) direction    ☐ d) observation
- The pilot skilfully ..... to keep the plane on the runway although an engine stopped.  
☐ a) succeeded    ☐ b) passed    ☐ c) managed    ☐ d) accepted
- There's a feeling among the nursing ..... that their work is undervalued.  
☐ a) work    ☐ b) job    ☐ c) career    ☐ d) profession
- The factory workers are working towards a/an ..... of twenty cars a week.  
☐ a) target    ☐ b) aim    ☐ c) consumption    ☐ d) goal
- My elder brother got a ..... in a car factory after he had his degree in engineering.  
☐ a) work    ☐ b) job    ☐ c) career    ☐ d) profession



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

**Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook**

1. The company began as a small family ..... and now it is a big corporation.  
☐ a) business      ☐ b) penalty      ☐ c) income      ☐ d) profit
2. Building such a big house within only six months isn't a/an ..... goal.  
☐ a) awful      ☐ b) achievable      ☐ c) hilarious      ☐ d) imaginary
3. When you have a job as well as children to look after, you have to learn how to ..... your time.  
☐ a) succeed      ☐ b) research      ☐ c) manage      ☐ d) devise
4. Your CV should ..... your skills and achievements as well as your qualifications.  
☐ a) highlight      ☐ b) export      ☐ c) expel      ☐ d) exp re
5. The lawyer insists that the ..... documents will be presented in court.  
☐ a) charitable      ☐ b) unimportant      ☐ c) relevant      ☐ d) subsid ng
6. My father always encourages us to give a small amount of what we earn to ..... to help poor people.  
☐ a) entertainment      ☐ b) charity      ☐ c) ability      ☐ d) oyalty
7. A team should learn from experience, both successes and .....  
☐ a) achievements      ☐ b) failures      ☐ c) exercises      ☐ d) trainings
8. The instructions he wrote were ..... and difficult to follow.  
☐ a) vague      ☐ b) clear      ☐ c) precise      ☐ d) accurate
9. Not many people know that ATM ..... for "automated teller machine".  
☐ a) sits      ☐ b) fights      ☐ c) stands      ☐ d) represents
10. The newspaper decided to ..... the story of the crime from today's edition because of security reasons.  
☐ a) break      ☐ b) involve      ☐ c) drop      ☐ d) discover
11. I'll ..... the lecture on video and we can all watch it later.  
☐ a) renease      ☐ b) overload      ☐ c) re oad      ☐ d) record
12. Mobil Oil Company is a ..... corporation which has branches all over the world.  
☐ a) national      ☐ b) local      ☐ c) multinational      ☐ d) multimedia

**Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms**

13. Experts are asking people to be sensible about the amount of water they use. The opposite of the adjective "sensible" is ".....".  
☐ a) logical      ☐ b) rational      ☐ c) sensitive      ☐ d) unwise
14. There has been significant progress in controlling heart disease. The noun "progress" is similar in meaning to ".....".  
☐ a) decline      ☐ b) advance      ☐ c) fa' lure      ☐ d) planning



15. You must be careful on dealing with your fiancée as most ladies like to ..... different or special.  
☐ a) feel                      b) make                      c) defy                      d) keep
16. Body temperature is measured with a digital thermometer. The adjective of the verb "measure" is ".....".  
☐ a) measures                      b) measurement                      c) measurable                      d) measurably
17. Many valuable works of art were lost forever because of the war. The antonym of the word "forever" is ".....".  
☐ a) eternally                      b) constantly                      c) direction                      d) temporarily
18. Before you set your goals, make sure that they are achievable. The synonym of the adjective "achievable" is ".....".  
☐ a) attainable                      b) impossible                      c) difficult                      d) reliable
19. A new TV costs between five thousand and twenty thousand pounds, depending ..... the size you want.  
☐ a) at                      b) out                      c) on                      d) for

### Longman and Previous Exams

20. Smoking is a very harmful habit to give .....  
☐ a) up                      b) back                      c) away                      d) in
21. Your goals should be specific, measurable and time- .....; they should be met by a specific date.  
☐ a) bound                      b) out                      c) consuming                      d) repeating
22. Our company ..... 10% of its profits to people with disabilities.  
☐ a) refuses                      b) borrows                      c) agrees                      d) donates
23. One should ..... his/her goals according to their abilities and efforts.  
☐ a) let                      b) set                      c) sit                      d) fit
24. Our project is a great success; it has achieved a lot of .....  
☐ a) losses                      b) files                      c) replacements                      d) profits
25. It is often a good idea to start with smaller, easily ..... goals.  
☐ a) impossible                      b) achievable                      c) forgettable                      d) probable
26. Dr Sabry gave me a ..... for some sleeping tablets.  
☐ a) prescription                      b) recipe                      c) direction                      d) observation
27. The project is time- ..... , so we only have two weeks to complete it.  
☐ a) relevant                      b) bound                      c) measure                      d) setting
28. Be careful; these games are suitable for specific age groups. "Specific" here is opposite in meaning to .....  
☐ a) special                      b) ordinary                      c) distant                      d) near
29. My son has a/an ..... interest in animal rights and conservation.  
☐ a) passionate                      b) illegal                      c) awful                      d) criminal



## Relative clauses

## جمل الوصل

- هي الجمل التي تستخدم فيها ضمائر الوصل للربط بينها. وضمائر الوصل هي:

who/ that	whom	which/ that	whose	where	when
للفاعل والمفعول العاقل	للمفعول العاقل	غير العاقل	للملكية	للمكان	للزمان

- تحل ضمائر الوصل بدل الاسم أو الضمير المكرر في الجملة الثانية.

- يأتي ضمير الوصل بعد الاسم المراد وصله مباشرة.



## verb + الذي / التي / الذين / who/ that + اسم عاقل

- تحل (who/ that) محل الفاعل العاقل المكرر في الجملة الثانية ويأتي بعدهما فعل.

Mr Said is very rich. He owns this enormous house.

Mr Said, **who (He)** owns this enormous house, is very rich. (بعدها فعل فهي في محل فاعل)

The footballer has been banned from playing again. He took drugs.

The footballer **who/that (He)** took drugs has been banned from playing again.

- هي الجملة الأولى Mr Said اسم علم فجملة الوصل التي بعده تعتبر معلومة زائدة **extra information** فالجملة الأصلية Mr Said is very rich. تؤدي معنى تام بمفردها ولا نضع **that** هنا ونضع **comma**.

- في الجملة الثانية جملة الوصل ضرورية لإتمام المعنى لمعرفة من اللاعب الذي منع من اللعب، وهنا تسمى جملة الوصل **defining** وهنا يمكن استخدام **that** مع عدم وضع **comma**.



## subject + الذي / التي / الذين / who/ whom/ that + اسم عاقل

- تحل (who/whom/that) محل المفعول العاقل المكرر في الجملة الثانية ويأتي بعدهم فاعل.

The woman was happy. We gave **her** the money.

The woman **who/whom/that** we gave the money was happy.

The people were very friendly. We met **them** at the party.

The people **who/whom/that** we met at the party were very friendly.

بعدها فاعل فهي محل مفعول.

Ahmed is my neighbour. I go to school with **him**.

Ahmed, **who/whom** I go to school **with**, is my neighbour.

- لاحظ عدم وضع **that** لأن الجملة بها **comma** لأن جملة الوصل **non-defining** ولاحظ أيضًا أن حرف الجر **with** لم يأت قبل ضمير الوصل فإذا جاء قبل ضمير الوصل لا نستخدم إلا **whom**.

Ahmed, **with whom** I go to school, is my neighbour.



## Language checkpoint 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My uncle, ..... I love most, helps me with maths.  
☐ a) which      ☐ b) that      ☐ c) whose      ☐ d) whom
2. Heba, ..... works as a nurse, comes from Alexandria.  
☐ a) who      ☐ b) whose      ☐ c) whom      ☐ d) that
3. The woman ..... lives next door is a doctor.  
☐ a) whose      ☐ b) that      ☐ c) whom      ☐ d) who's
4. This is Hossam, ..... you met at our house last year.  
☐ a) who's      ☐ b) that      ☐ c) whom      ☐ d) whose
5. We don't know the person ..... donated this money.  
☐ a) which      ☐ b) whose      ☐ c) whom      ☐ d) who

verb/subject + الذى/الذى/التي/الذين + which/that + اسم غير عاقل

- تحل (which/ that) محل الفاعل أو المفعول غير العاقل المكرر في الجملة الثانية.

إذا كانتا في محل فاعل يأتي بعدهما في الربط فعل وإذا كانتا في محل مفعول فيأتي بعدهما فاعل.

The food went bad. It was left out of the fridge.

The food which/that was left out of the fridge went bad. (بعدها فعل فهي في محل فاعل)

The film was boring. We watched it yesterday.

The film which/that we watched yesterday was boring. (بعدها فاعل فهي في محل مفعول)

في الجمل السابقة وضعت that لأن جملة الوصل defining ولم نضع comma أيضا ولكن لاحظ الجملة الآتية:

The Nile is the main source of water in Egypt. It flows from south to north.

The Nile, which flows from south to north, is the main source of water in Egypt.

- جملة ينساب من الجنوب إلى الشمال معلومة إضافية فهي تعتبر non-defining ولذلك لم نضع that ووضعنا comma.

- إذا وجد حرف جر قبل ضمير الوصل لا نستخدم that ونستخدم which فقط.

The car in which (that) I go to work needs replacing.



### Note:

### ملحوظة

يمكن حذف ضمير الوصل إذا حل محل مفعول به مثل:

The boy was very polite. We met him at Adly Street yesterday.

The boy who/whom/that we met at Adly Street yesterday was very polite.

The boy who/whom/that we met at Adly Street yesterday was very polite.

The stories were interesting. We read them at the school library.

The stories which/that we read at the school library were interesting.

The stories which/that we read at the school library were interesting.

4

الملكىة whose + اسم عاقل/غير عاقل + sentence (subj. + v. + obj.)

- تستخدم (whose) للملكىة ويتبعها اسم يملكه الاسم الذى قبلها.

- تحل محل صفات الملكىة الآتية his/her/its/their

The writer was extremely delighted. His novel won the Nobel Prize.

The writer whose novel won the Nobel Prize was extremely delighted.

My cousin visits Italy a lot. His wife is Italian.

My cousin, whose wife is Italian, visits Italy a lot.

فى الجملة الثانية وضعنا comma لأن جملة الوصل (زوجته إيطالية) معلومة إضافية non-defining.



### Note:

ملحوظة

من الممكن استخدام حرف جر مع whose كما فى المثال التالى:

Mr Ali, in whose house we had our meal, is a generous man.

### Language

### Check point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. An orphan is a person ..... parents have died.

- ☐ a) whose      ☐ b) who's      ☐ c) who      ☐ d) whom

2. Their new house, ..... they bought quite cheaply, needs some fixing up.

- ☐ a) whose      ☐ b) when      ☐ c) what      ☐ d) which

3. The programme ..... we missed is repeated this evening.

- ☐ a) whose      ☐ b) that      ☐ c) what      ☐ d) when

4. The mistake ..... Ola made was fortunately not very serious.

- ☐ a) whose      ☐ b) when      ☐ c) which      ☐ d) what

5. We met the man ..... car was advertised in the local newspaper.

- ☐ a) whose      ☐ b) who's      ☐ c) who      ☐ d) whom

5

الملكىة where = which ..... + حرف جر + sentence + مكان

- تستخدم (where) للمكان بمعنى حيث.

The place was really beautiful. We spent our holiday there.

The place where we spent our holiday was really beautiful.

The hotel wasn't very clean. We stayed there for 3 days.

The hotel where we stayed for 3 days wasn't very clean.

- تحل where محل ظروف المكان here - there أما which تحل محل it/they لغير العاقل ولذلك يمكن أن تأتى which

وقبها مكان بدون حرف جر وذلك لأنها جاءت محل الصمير المكرر it/they.

Cairo is the capital of Egypt. It is very crowded.

Cairo, which is very crowded, is the capital of Egypt.

The flat is very small. I live **in it**.

The flat **where** I live (**which I live in**) is very small. (حيث أسكن = التي أسكن فيها)

The flat **where** I live (**in which I live**) is very small.

- يأتي قبل **which** حرف جر.

## 6 sentence + حرف جر ... **when = that/ which** + اسم يدل على الزمن

= تستخدم (**when**) للزمان بمعنى (عندما).

It's seven o'clock. I get up **at that time**.

It's seven o'clock **when** I get up.

Ramadan is a holy month شهر مقدس. We fast **in it**.

Ramadan **when** we fast (**which/that we fast in**) is a holy month.

### أنواع جمل الوصل

1 النوع الأول يعطى معلومات أساسية، ويدون هذه المعلومات سيكون من الصعب أن نعرف من أوما هو المقصود. ونستخدم في هذا النوع (**who/ which/ whom**) ولا نستخدم (**comma**) قبل أو بعد عبارة الوصل. ويمكن استخدام (**that**) بدلاً من ضمائر الوصل المذكورة.

The man **who (that)** robbed the bank was sent to prison.

The book **which (that)** tells you about history is useful.

2 النوع الثاني يعطى معلومات إضافية وليست ضرورية لفهم معنى الجملة ولا بد من استخدام (**comma**) قبل وبعد عبارة الوصل ولا تستخدم (**that**) في هذا النوع.

My father, **whom** I love, works as a teacher.

Alaa's car, **which** he left outside, cost him L.E. 200,000 (Alaa has one car).

ولمزيد من التوضيح لاحظ الفرق بين المثالين الآتيين:

My sister, **who** lives in Assuit, came to visit me in Cairo last week.

My sister **who** lives in Assuit came to visit me in Cairo last week.

- في المثال الأول جملة الوصل معلومة إضافية وهذا يعني أن لدى أختاً واحدة فقط فلا احتاج للتعريف.

- في المثال الثاني جملة الوصل تعطي معلومة أساسية وضرورية وهذا يعني أنني لدى أكثر من أخت فوجب التفريق من التي رأتني منهن.

## Language Checkpoint 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The town ..... we spent the holiday was very beautiful.

- a) that                      b) which                      c) when                      d) where

2. This is the time of the year ..... so many people suffer from bad colds.

- a) when                      b) which                      c) who                      d) where

3. This is the park ..... we first met. Do you remember?

- a) that                      b) where                      c) when                      d) which

4. The tourists really enjoyed the time ..... they went to that Egyptian restaurant.

- a) who                      b) which                      c) when                      d) where

5. Do you remember the meeting at ..... we met our classmates?

- a) that                      b) where                      c) when                      d) which



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ola, ..... mother is a physician, is very good at biology.  
☐ a) whose      ☐ b) who's      ☐ c) who      ☐ d) whom
2. I like the people with ..... I work.  
☐ a) who      ☐ b) that      ☐ c) whose      ☐ d) whom
3. She didn't see the snake ..... was lying on the ground.  
☐ a) where      ☐ b) whose      ☐ c) that      ☐ d) what
4. The woman ..... sitting at the desk is Mr Tamer's secretary.  
☐ a) whose      ☐ b) who's      ☐ c) who      ☐ d) whom
5. You wanted to tell me about the time ..... you lost your keys.  
☐ a) that      ☐ b) where      ☐ c) which      ☐ d) when
6. The meal ..... we ordered was very expensive.  
☐ a) where      ☐ b) when      ☐ c) which      ☐ d) at which
7. My mother ..... is the best person in the world.  
☐ a) who I love      ☐ b) , who I love,  
☐ c) that I love      ☐ d) , which I love,
8. This school is only for children ..... first language is not English.  
☐ a) whose      ☐ b) who      ☐ c) that      ☐ d) who's
9. Cairo, ..... we live, is a crowded city.  
☐ a) what      ☐ b) which      ☐ c) where      ☐ d) that
10. Alexandria, ..... is the second capital city, has many comfortable resorts.  
☐ a) where      ☐ b) which      ☐ c) what      ☐ d) that
11. The man about ..... you were talking has just come in the room.  
☐ a) which      ☐ b) whose      ☐ c) where      ☐ d) whom
12. His wife, ..... lives in Paris, is a fashion model.  
☐ a) who      ☐ b) who's      ☐ c) whom      ☐ d) whose
13. A river ..... is polluted is not safe for swimming.  
☐ a) whose      ☐ b) that      ☐ c) when      ☐ d) where
14. I met my schoolmates in town yesterday, ..... was a nice surprise.  
☐ a) which      ☐ b) when      ☐ c) that      ☐ d) who
15. We bought a chainsaw, ..... we cut up all the wood.  
☐ a) which      ☐ b) that      ☐ c) with which      ☐ d) when
16. In hospitals, they wake patients at 6 a.m., ..... is much too early.  
☐ a) when      ☐ b) what      ☐ c) where      ☐ d) which



17. The man ..... son I shouted was extremely furious.

- ☐ a) at whose      b) whose      c) at whom      d) who's

18. Hong Kong is a place ..... a lot of tall buildings.

- ☐ a) where      b) in which has      c) which has      d) which there are

19. Which sentence of the following shows that I have only one sister?

- ☐ a) My sister who spent her holiday in France is 25 years old.  
☐ b) My sister that is 25 years old spent her holiday in France  
☐ c) My sister whose age is 25 spent her holiday in France  
☐ d) My sister, who is 25 years old, spent her holiday in France.

20. Which one of the following sentences is correctly structured?

- ☐ a) My friend whose car we travel lives in a flat overlooking the Nile.  
☐ b) My friend in whose car we travel lives in a flat overlooking the Nile.  
☐ c) My friend in which car we travel lives in a flat overlooking the Nile.  
☐ d) My friend who's car we travel lives in a flat overlooking the Nile.

### Longman and Previous Exams

21. The earthquake ..... had hit Syria and Turkey was highly destructive.

- ☐ a) when      b) what      c) where      d) that

22. Do you know that lady ..... driving the car madly?

- ☐ a) who has      b) who's      c) whose      d) that

23. Huda, ..... mobile phone was lost, is terribly sad.

- ☐ a) who      b) who's      c) whose      d) that

24. Finland is a country, ..... covers an area of 338,455 square kilometres.

- ☐ a) which      b) whose      c) where      d) what

25. Do you remember the day ..... you first met your new neighbour?

- ☐ a) where      b) in which      c) when      d) which

26. My brother ..... I am proud, works as a civil engineer in Cairo.

- ☐ a) of whom      b) whom      c) who      d) that

27. I went to the butcher's ..... I bought some meat.

- ☐ a) who      b) which      c) whose      d) where

28. The novel, ..... author won the Nobel Prize, is widely published.

- ☐ a) that      b) whose      c) which      d) who

29. Ten o'clock is the time ..... I go to bed at.

- ☐ a) when      b) where      c) which      d) whom

30. I don't know the man ..... has offered to help you.

- ☐ a) who      b) whom      c) who's      d) whose





## Take a test

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### Vocabulary

1. The money which we collected is intended to be used for a ..... purpose which is helping the new cancer hospital.  
☐ a) silly                      b) hilarious                      c) timing                      d) specific
2. The weather didn't ..... a difference in our plans. We were determined to visit the oasis.  
☐ a) make                      b) do                      c) tell                      d) give
3. By the second year, luckily the restaurant began to make a good .....  
☐ a) profit                      b) loss                      c) charity                      d) list
4. Experts advise everyone to ..... realistic goals that they can achieve.  
☐ a) cut                      b) set                      c) prevent                      d) destroy
5. We usually ..... our old clothes to a home for homeless children.  
☐ a) renew                      b) consume                      c) apply                      d) donate
6. We need to clarify the ..... of the present project before starting it.  
☐ a) reasons                      b) losses                      c) goals                      d) diaries
7. Samy was disappointed to be ..... from the school handball team.  
☐ a) hired                      b) dropped                      c) included                      d) appointed
8. When I visited Italy, I was amazed by the ..... of Old Venice; the buildings are nearly surrounded by water canals.  
☐ a) fracture                      b) architecture                      c) texture                      d) lecture
9. To finish the project, we need to perform as a team rather than a group of .....  
☐ a) individuals                      b) parts                      c) hikers                      d) fighters
10. A high proportion <sup>نسبة</sup> of people in the nursing ..... are women.  
☐ a) work                      b) profession                      c) mission                      d) works
11. The doctor had to ..... ten appointments in one morning as he won't work in the evening.  
☐ a) fit                      b) give                      c) make                      d) assign
12. The student's comments were not relevant ..... the discussion we had.  
☐ a) in                      b) at                      c) to                      d) into
13. We spent an hour trying to buy the movie tickets, but eventually ..... up and went home.  
☐ a) took                      b) gave                      c) looked                      d) got
14. My elder brothers have always been passionate ..... football, but I prefer basketball.  
☐ a) of                      b) about                      c) for                      d) in
15. The six-year old student is not smart enough to understand some computer software. The opposite of the word "smart" is ".....".  
☐ a) intelligent                      b) brilliant                      c) active                      d) stupid



## Language

16. The man ..... robbed the bank has gone to prison.  
☐ a) whose      b) who      c) whom      d) which
17. Ahmed, ..... I go to school with, is ill in hospital.  
☐ a) whose      b) when      c) that      d) whom
18. The man ..... car was stolen phoned the police.  
☐ a) who's      b) which      c) whose      d) that
19. One should quit smoking, ..... is very harmful to health.  
☐ a) which      b) what      c) who      d) that
20. This is the bus ..... I have been waiting for.  
☐ a) who's      b) where      c) what      d) that
21. My local tennis club, ..... I learned to play tennis, was on television yesterday.  
☐ a) where      b) that      c) which      d) when
22. The President met the man ..... son came first in the competition.  
☐ a) whom      b) whose      c) that      d) who's
23. The problem, ..... arose because of building the new factory near our town, is very serious.  
☐ a) what      b) whom      c) which      d) where
24. Look at that building ..... windows are all broken.  
☐ a) who's      b) where      c) which      d) whose
25. Mr Emad is the person from ..... I got the information.  
☐ a) whom      b) that      c) who      d) whose
26. We called a doctor ..... works at a hospital in Aswan.  
☐ a) who's      b) whose      c) who      d) whom
27. The accountant ..... for my father's company was promoted to a higher position.  
☐ a) that works      b) who work      c) works      d) whose works
28. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically correct?  
☐ a) The village which I grew up is very small.  
☐ b) The village where I grew up is very small.  
☐ c) The village when I grew up is very small.  
☐ d) The village in where I grew up is very small.
29. It was a day ..... everything seemed to go wrong.  
☐ a) that of      b) which      c) why      d) when
30. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect?  
☐ a) I know the candidate whom I am going to support in the next elections.  
☐ b) I know the candidate that I am going to support in the next elections.  
☐ c) I know the candidate to whom I am going to support in the next elections.  
☐ d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections.



Watch a video

## A

## Vocabulary

## Vocabulary on Reading &amp; Listening Texts

## مفردات لصوص القراءة والاستماع

access (n)	مدخل / سبيل	display (n) (v) (ed)	عرض / يعرض	operation (n)	عملية جراحية
accessible (adj)	سهل المنال	dried (adj)	مجفف	organiser (n)	منظم
afford (v) (ed)	يتحمل نفقات	ensure (v) (d)	يضمن / يؤكد	outline (v) (d)	يوجز / يحدد الخطوط العريضة
arrangement (n)	ترتيب	entry (n)	دخول	overall (adj) (adv)	كلى / فى لمجمل
attend (v) (ed)	يحضر	expand (v) (ed)	يمد / يوسع	pedal-powered (adj)	يعمل ببدال (دراجة)
available (adj)	متاح / متوفر	experiment (n)	تجربة	percentage (n)	نسبة مئوية
benefit (n) (v) (ed)	فائدة / يستفيد	filter (n) (v) (ed)	مرشح / يرشح	pharmaceutical (adj)	دوائي
bleeding (n)	نزيف	finalist (n)	متسابق نهائي	present (v) (ed)	يقدم
blood (n)	دم	improve (v) (d)	يحسن	prize (n)	جائزة
boil (v) (ed)	يغلي	innovation (n)	إبداع	purpose (n)	غرض
breakthrough (n)	إنجاز / اختراق (علمي)	invention (n)	اختراع	recycle (v) (d)	يعيد تدوير
cent (n)	سنت (عملة أمريكية)	inventor (n)	مخترع	remove (v) (d)	يزيل
competition (n)	منافسة	laboratory (n)	معمل	repair (v) (ed)	يصلح
context (n)	سياق	life-changing (adj)	مغير للحياة	sort out (v) (ed)	يفرز / يقوم به / يحل
corn cob (n)	كوز الذرة	liquid (n)	سائل	surgeon (n)	جراح
create (v) (d)	يبتدع / يبدع	major (adj)	رئيسي	variety (n)	تنوع
deaths (n)	وفيات	motivated (adj)	متحفز / مندفع	venue (n)	مكان إقامة حدث
device (n)	جهاز	nationality (n)	جنسية	vote (v) (d)	يصوت / يدلي بصوته



## Workbook Vocabulary

## مفردات كتاب التدريبات

accessories (n) مستلزمات / إكسسوارات	everyday (adj) يومي	option (n) اختيار
amongst (prep) بين	fast (n) (v) (ed) صوم / يصوم	outfit (n) ملابس / زي
collection (n) مجموعة	fruity (adj) يطعم / برائحة الفاكهة	promote (v) (d) يطور / يرقى
come across (v) يصادف	global (adj) عالمي	practical (adj) عملي
community (n) مجتمع	joint (adj) مشترك	produce (v) (d) ينتج
complex (adj) معقد	matching (adj) ملائم / متجانس	reduce (v) (d) يقلل / يخفض
crawl (v) (ed) يزحف	minor (adj) فرعي / غير أساسي	secondary (adj) ثانوي / غير أساسي
dairy (n) منتجات ألبان	neighbourhood (n) لجيرة / لحي	unique (adj) متميز
effort (n) مجهود	non-governmental (adj) غير حكومي	

## Vocabulary 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I share a flat with some friends as I can't ..... the rent on my own.  
☐ a) produce      ☐ b) afford      ☐ c) attend      ☐ d) apply
- Thousands of people ..... the concerts in New Alamein City last year.  
☐ a) refined      ☐ b) filtered      ☐ c) expanded      ☐ d) attended
- The Egyptian athlete couldn't get an Olympic medal as he only won fourth place in the wrestling .....  
☐ a) compilation      ☐ b) accommodation  
☐ c) competition      ☐ d) consolation
- The children were silenced by the sudden ..... of the serious headmaster, Mr Kamel.  
☐ a) entry      ☐ b) exit      ☐ c) display      ☐ d) show
- As he lived there for many years, Zein ..... his grandfather's house in perfect detail.  
☐ a) prescribed      ☐ b) described  
☐ c) ascribed      ☐ d) preserved

6. Our national team will face three of last year's beaten ..... in the championship.  
☐ a) minors      b) losers      c) finalists      d) locals
7. I've agreed to help with my friend's ..... for his wedding party.  
☐ a) agreements      b) replacements  
☐ c) managements      d) arrangements
8. There are some plans to ..... the local airport in Hurgada to make it fit for bigger flights.  
☐ a) describe      b) reduce      c) expand      d) balance
9. Doctors say that healthy kidneys usually ..... out any waste in the body.  
☐ a) charge      b) filter      c) share      d) store
10. The computer provides ..... to all the information.  
☐ a) access      b) road      c) rail      d) excel

### Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

### التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

(be) a great success	يُنجح كثيراً	keep you fit	يحافظ على لياقتك	make recommendations	يقدم ترشيحات
by accident	بالصدفة	make life easier	يجعل الحياة أسهل	stay healthy	يظل بصحة جيدة
aim at	يهدف إلى	experience with	خبرة بـ	solution to/for	حل لـ
available to	متوفر لـ	plenty of	وفرة / كثرة من	vote for	يصوت لصالح
crawl around	يزحف حول	successful in/at	ناجح في		

### Derivatives

### المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
arrange	يرتب	arrangement	ترتيب	arranged	مرتّب
attend	يحضر	attendance/attendee	حضور / حاضر	-----	-----
collect	يجمع	collection collector	مجموعة محصل / مجمع	collective	جماعي / جمعي
describe	يصف	description	وصف	descriptive	وصفي
expand	يُمد / يُوسع	expansion	مد / توسيع	expandable	قابل للتوسع
motivate	يحفّز	motivation motivator	حافز / دافع محفّز	motivated	متحفّز / مندفع





promote	يطور/ يترقى	promotion	تطور/ ترقية	promotional	مطور/ مترقى
recycle	يعيد تدوير	recycling	إعادة تدوير	recycled recyclable	معاد تدويره قابل للتدوير
reduce	يقلل/ يخفض	reduction	خفض/ تقليل	reduced	مخفض
remove	يزيل	removal remover	إزالة مزيل	removable	قابل للإزالة
train	يدرب	training trainer trainee	تدريب مدرب متدرب	trained	متدرب

### Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

The man was **described** as tall and dark, and aged about 20. (v)

The catalogue gives a full **description** of each product. (n)

The writer gives a highly **descriptive** account of his/her journey through Africa. (adj)

### Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادفات	Antonym	المتضادات
collection	مجموعة	selection		separation	فصل
complex	معقد	complicated		simple	بسيط
display	عرض/ يعرض	demonstrate/present		hide/cover	ينخفي
filter	مرشح/ يرشح	clean/refine		pollute	يلوث
global	عالمي	worldwide		local	محلي
outline	يوجز	summarise		expand	يعد
practical	عملي	useful/factual		theoretical	نظري
recycle	يعيد تدوير	reuse		waste	يهدر
unique	متميز	extraordinary/uncommon		common	شائع
variety	تنوع	range/diversity		similarity	تشابه

## Vocabulary 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Experts say mild exercises, such as running and walking can ..... you fit as much as training hard.  
☐ a) stay                      b) keep                      c) give                      d) do
2. Each person's genetic code is unique except for identical twins. The word "unique" is the opposite of the word ".....".  
☐ a) common                      b) fasc'nating                      c) dull                      d) agreed
3. The small company was successful ..... winning the contract for the new mall.  
☐ a) by                      b) to                      c) for                      d) in
4. My mother preferred to buy a sofa with ..... cloth covers which can be washed regularly.  
☐ a) remove                      b) removal                      c) removable                      d) removed
5. Our office head was promoted to manager last week. The noun of the verb "promote" is ".....".  
☐ a) promote                      b) promotion                      c) promotional                      d) promoted
6. Karma proudly displayed her certificate to her parents. The antonym of the word "display" is ".....".  
☐ a) hide                      b) show                      c) uncover                      d) invent
7. The coffee shop may expand into a full restaurant. The noun of the verb "expand" is .....  
☐ a) expands                      b) expandable                      c) expansion                      d) expendably
8. The researchers will ..... their recommendations to the Ministry of Health about the disease spread.  
☐ a) follow                      b) take                      c) do                      d) make

### Reading Text (1)



#### Pedal-powered washing machine

A 14-year girl from India has created her first own invention<sup>(1)</sup>. When her mother became ill, Remya had to wash the clothes for the family. She thought that washing everything by hand took too much time, so she recycled some bicycle parts and built a pedal-powered washing machine which saves time and keeps you fit! Her invention will help families whose homes don't have electricity.

Her next goal is to make a simple device that can create electricity to use at home.



#### Notes on some sentences:

ملاحظات على بعض الجمل

١- لاحظ استخدام صيغة المفرد (year) في مثل هذه التعبيرات.

## Reading Text (2)



## Corn cob water filter

11-year-old Lalita knew that many families in her village in Odisha, India couldn't get clean water and they couldn't afford to buy expensive filters. In Odisha, farmers grow a lot of corn, but they only sell part of the plant. The rest of the corn cob isn't used.

When she saw all the dried corn cobs on the side of the road, she wondered if they could help filter water. Her corn-cob filter removes 80% of all pollution in the water. The water can then be boiled to make it safe to drink.

Her goal is to sell the cheap device to farmers so they can stay healthy.

## Reading Text (3)



## Report on the Young Inventor's Competition

## Introduction

The purpose of this report is to describe my experience at the Young Inventor's Competition and recommend any changes that could improve how it worked.

## The organisation

I live in Montreal in Canada, and the competition finalists were invited to go to Toronto to present their inventions. The competition organisers were very good at sending me information and helping me to sort out travel arrangements<sup>(1)</sup>. They also organised for my invention to be sent to the competition venue<sup>(2)</sup>.

## The competition

The competition was very well organised and there was plenty of time for the finalists to display and talk about their inventions. Lots of companies were invited to attend, so I was lucky to get lots of interest in my invention.

## Suggested improvements

Although it was great to meet so many other young inventors from my country, I think that the competition should be expanded to include teenagers from other countries too.

## Conclusion

Overall, I had a really positive experience and I would really recommend entering the competition.



## Notes on some sentences:

## ملاحظات على بعض الجمل

١- لاحظ استخدام (verb + ing) بعد حرف الجر (at).

٢- لاحظ استخدام صيغة المبني للمجهول (to be sent) بعد الفعل (organised).

## Reading Text (4) (Workbook)



We all know the importance of new inventions to make life easier. However, not all inventors have been successful in finding good solutions to everyday problems. Some of the craziest ideas include mini umbrellas to attach to your shoes or even a sleepsuit made for babies to clean the floor as they crawl around the house!<sup>(1)</sup> However, luckily enough there are also young people today who are creating and selling real solutions for problems their local community experiences.

Several teenagers from Aswan have been trained to produce and sell their ideas in order to help those that live in their area. The inventions include a range of useful solutions. One of the tastiest options by Azhar is a fruity dessert for those who are breaking fast and don't want to eat dairy products.

Eman has created a collection of clothes with a complete range of matching accessories so those in her neighbourhood do not have to go to several different shops to get the perfect outfit. The unique selling point of these ideas is that they are offering practical solutions to real problems, and also help to reduce pollution, as their customers do not need to use cars or buses to travel outside their neighbourhoods.

The training project, which is a joint effort between governmental and non-governmental organisations, has been a great success amongst both boys and girls. The hope is that it will produce more entrepreneurs who will create real solutions for those common problems we come across every day.



### Notes on some sentences:

ملاحظات على بعض الجمل

هذه الجملة أصلها

..... a sleepsuit which is made for babies to clean the floor as they crawl around the house!

- اختصار الجملة حذف ضمير الوصل (which) وصيغة (verb to be).

## Listening Text (Workbook)



Scan & listen



Welcome to New World, the programme that brings you detailed information about the latest inventions which aim at improving lives. Today we hear the story of an invention which is set to save millions of people around the world.

At the age of 15, when she heard that losing blood was the second most common cause of **deaths** in hospitals, Deena Mousa decided to work on finding a solution to this life and death problem.



It all started at the age of 5 when Deena, whose parents are Egyptian, carried out her first experiment on plants. Since that moment she has not stopped her search for solutions to real problems. Her objective has always been to find answers to the everyday issues we all face. At the age of fifteen, and with the help of her father, who works in a lab, Deena gained access to the necessary equipment to start her research. Twelve years later she had invented Hemostat V-Seal **liquid** drops.

Before she had made the **breakthrough** the usual time it took for medicines to stop **bleeding** in patients was up to 12 minutes. This, Deena says, shocked her into finding a better solution. Her chemical invention can stop bleeding in as little as 10 seconds. This **major innovation** means the difference between a patient losing millilitres or litres of blood.

Knowing that 35% of people who suffer a serious injury die from uncontrolled loss of blood before they get to hospital means that Deena's invention can save a huge number of lives in a wide range of **contexts**. While this is clearly good news for **soldiers** in the army, **surgeons** in hospitals are also looking forward to being able to use the liquid in the case of unexpected problems during **operations** and save more lives.

Deena is now working on the business plan to **ensure** her solution reaches as many people as possible at an affordable price, which is why she is in discussions with **pharmaceutical** companies. She hopes it will only cost a few cents to make sure it is widely **accessible**.

In a recent interview Deena said she was very happy to be able to provide a solution for others which has always been her goal in life and that she hopes her discovery will inspire others to follow their dreams no matter how young or old they are.

### Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

position

the place where someone or something is, especially in relation to other objects and places

موقع محدد

- She showed me the **position** of the village on the map.

venue

a place where something such as a meeting, concert, game, etc. takes place

مكان (إقامة حدث)

- The meeting will be held at a **venue** in the south of the city.



**display**

عرض الأشياء للبيع أو المعاينة

an arrangement of things for people to look at or buy

- There was a special **display** of local photographs.

**show**

عرض فني

a performance for the public, especially one that includes singing, dancing, or jokes

- Tonight's **show** is live from Cairo Stadium.

**global**

عالمي

affecting or including the whole world

- Only the UN can tackle **global** problems like pollution of the atmosphere.

**international**

دولي

relating to or involving more than one nation

- This is CNN, bringing you all the latest **international** news.

**expand**

يتمدد / يتوسع (يصبح أكبر حجمًا أو نشاطًا)

The business has **expanded** at a rate of 15% per year.

**grow**

ينمو (غالبًا بشكل تدريجي)

The number of people working from home has **grown** substantially.

### Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Paris was the ..... for the last Olympic Games in 2024.

- a) venue      b) position      c) road      d) placement

2. The economy is expected to ..... by roughly 2 percent this year.

- a) triple      b) expand      c) grow      d) deny

3. The young actress is presenting a new television quiz ..... these days.

- a) display      b) show      c) presentation      d) fair

4. The New Administrative Capital will surely have a/an ..... airport.

- a) interna.      b) global      c) international      d) outside

5. Radars are the devices which are used to determine the aircraft's .....

- a) venue      b) scenery      c) placement      d) position



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



**Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook**

1. The manager briefly ..... what we are trying to achieve this year.  
☐ a) lined      ☐ b) inclined      ☐ c) outlined      ☐ d) underlined
2. This creative project shows the ..... effort exerted by a group of good students.  
☐ a) single      ☐ b) joint      ☐ c) pointed      ☐ d) individual
3. My uncle's shop sells bathroom ..... such as mirrors and towel-rails.  
☐ a) accessories      ☐ b) accesses      ☐ c) tools      ☐ d) jewellery
4. Experts are studying various ways to ..... garbage القمامة into fuel.  
☐ a) rewind      ☐ b) cycle      ☐ c) rewrite      ☐ d) recycle
5. The book suggests some ..... ways to save money. You should read it.  
☐ a) minor      ☐ b) unimportant      ☐ c) practical      ☐ d) excited
6. The store sells TVs, laptops and other electronic .....  
☐ a) devices      ☐ b) mails      ☐ c) books      ☐ d) designers
7. The list of ..... in most squash championships usually includes Egyptian players.  
☐ a) finders      ☐ b) bounders      ☐ c) finalists      ☐ d) journalists
8. There is an extensive competition between ..... companies to produce new effective medicines for diseases.  
☐ a) consuming      ☐ b) agricultura      ☐ c) industrial      ☐ d) pharmaceutical
9. The museum has a magnificent ..... of ancient silver and leather objects.  
☐ a) figure      ☐ b) display      ☐ c) present      ☐ d) shape
10. The communication industry has ..... greatly over the last decade.  
☐ a) expanded      ☐ b) expired      ☐ c) expelled      ☐ d) exnaied
11. The Ministry of Transport took steps to ..... the safety of the train passengers.  
☐ a) damage      ☐ b) ensure      ☐ c) complete      ☐ d) approach
12. The peace treaty was a historic ..... in political history of the area.  
☐ a) expans on      ☐ b) access      ☐ c) argument      ☐ d) breakthrough
13. We need to encourage ..... in industry in order to be able to compete with foreign products.  
☐ a) failure      ☐ b) reduction      ☐ c) innovation      ☐ d) solution
14. The information about the new disease should be ..... to all people of the world.  
☐ a) accessible      ☐ b) avoidable      ☐ c) stressful      ☐ d) recyc able

## Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

15. Town residents are required to recycle cans and bottles. The verb "recycle" is the opposite of ".....".  
☐ a) reuse      b) consume      c) waste      d) divide
16. I found an important letter ..... accident as I was looking through my files.  
☐ a) by      b) of      c) at      d) on
17. I don't think that tourism will provide a long-term solution ..... employment problems in the area.  
☐ a) of      b) at      c) in      d) for
18. The service offers young people practical advice on finding a job. The synonym of "practical" is ".....".  
☐ a) theoretical      b) useful      c) useless      d) evident
19. It is vital that food is made available ..... the flood areas to avoid starvation.  
☐ a) out      b) of      c) up      d) to
20. The writer expanded the main idea of his research in his new book. The verb "expand" is similar in meaning to ".....".  
☐ a) reduce      b) grow      c) summarise      d) develop
21. The lawyers will review the case and ..... recommendations to the client.  
☐ a) make      b) do      c) follow      d) think
22. To clean the new office, I've sorted ..... the papers that can be thrown away.  
☐ a) at      b) of      c) in      d) out
23. The art gallery has an impressive ..... of modern art works.  
☐ a) collect      b) collection      c) collective      d) collected
24. The concert's still on Saturday, but its ..... has been changed.  
☐ a) venue      b) position      c) scenery      d) avenue

## Longman and Previous Exams

25. Have you ever designed a life-..... invention?  
☐ a) changing      b) charger      c) changes      d) challenger
26. Do you think planting more trees could ..... pollution completely?  
☐ a) add      b) mix      c) remove      d) move
27. The young man couldn't ..... to buy that expensive mobile; it was too expensive for him.  
☐ a) prevent      b) afford      c) refuse      d) hesitate
28. The factory ..... old plastic objects to make toys for young children.  
☐ a) circles      b) removes      c) does      d) recycles
29. The police have announced a/an ..... in the murder case.  
☐ a) bleeding      b) breakthrough      c) accurate      d) cut

**B**

**Language**
**Relative pronouns**

ضمائر الوصل

1 تستخدم **what** كرابط بمعنى (ما) وهي تساوي **the thing(s) that**

فعل أو ضمير أو اسم  
لا تعود هي عليه

**what**

فعل / فاعل

I didn't understand **what** he had said. (what had been said).

I can't give him (Ahmed) **what** he needs.

- يمكن أن تكون **what** أول الكلام.

**What** makes me angry is that Ahmed always comes late.

2 تستخدم (**which**) لتشير إلى جملة كاملة قبلها.

My brother won a valuable prize, **which** made me happy.

3 تستخدم **whose** بدلاً من أشكال الملكية كلها مثل:

The girl **with** blue eyes is my sister.

The girl **whose** eyes are blue is my sister.

The man is rich. **He has** a red car.

The man **whose** car is red is rich.

The car won the race. **Its** colour is red.

The car **whose** colour is red won the race.

4 لاحظ الفرق بين **whose/who's**

**who's + v-ing/noun = who is ... who's + P.P. = who has ...**

The boy **who's** running there is my cousin.

The boy **whose** phone was stolen was furious.

5 هناك بعض الكلمات تستخدم كاسم وفعل فرداً استخدمت كاسم فإنها تسبق بـ **whose** (ومن الممكن أن نعرف أن هذه الكلمات اسم إذا جاء بعدها فعل) مثل:

wish, aim, show, mistake, stay, dream, work, play, like, dislike, end, hope, offer, demand, income, etc.

The boy **whose** dream has come true is happy.

I like ~~the~~ stories **whose** ends are happy.

6 نستخدم **that** بعد صيغة التفضيل وبعد الكلمات الآتية:

all – any (thing) – every (thing) – few – little – many – much – no (thing) – none – some (thing)

Is this all **that** you want me to do?

There isn't anything **that** we can eat in this house.

This is the best book **that** I have ever read.

7 يمكن استخدام **why (for which)** كضمير واصل كالآتي:

I'd like to know the reason **why (for which)** he decided not to come.

#### حالات حذف ضمير الوصل

1 إذا كان في محل مفعول به.

The **meat** was delicious. We ate **it** yesterday.

The **meat (which/that)** we ate yesterday was delicious.

The **man** is my neighbour. I meet **him** every day.

The **man (who/whom/that)** I meet every day is my neighbour.

2 إذا كان بعده مبنى للمجهول نحذف **which + v. to be** ونضع P.P.

I still remember the encouragement **given to me by my parents. (which was)**

3 إذا كان بعده مبنى للمعلوم نحذف **which/who** ونضع **v-ing**:

The boy **sitting** beside me is naughty. (**who sits/who is sitting**)

4 إذا كان بعده اسم أو سم موصوف نحذف **who/which + v. to be** ولا نضع شيئاً:

**Hossam Hassan, a famous footballer, won many prizes. (who was)**

#### Language 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The ship ..... in the canal now is carrying weapons.

- ☐ a) passes      ☐ b) which pass      ☐ c) passing      ☐ d) passed

2. A lot of students do ..... their teachers want, but a few are naughty.

- ☐ a) which      ☐ b) that      ☐ c) why      ☐ d) what

3. The tourist .... a blue sweater comes from Japan.

- ☐ a) with      ☐ b) whose      ☐ c) who      ☐ d) that

4. The boss wants to know the reason ..... several workers are absent.

- ☐ a) which      ☐ b) why      ☐ c) when      ☐ d) where

5. I will never forget the reward ..... to me by my teacher of English.

- ☐ a) which given      ☐ b) was given      ☐ c) given      ☐ d) giving





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The winner, ..... name I have forgotten, is Italian.  
☐ a) whose      ☐ b) his      ☐ c) who      ☐ d) that
2. She showed me ..... she had bought from the shopping mall yesterday.  
☐ a) which      ☐ b) where      ☐ c) that      ☐ d) what
3. The man ..... that furniture is a skilful carpenter.  
☐ a) mends      ☐ b) mending      ☐ c) who mending      ☐ d) mended
4. The lesson ..... by the teacher now seems extremely important.  
☐ a) which explained      ☐ b) which is explained  
☐ c) explained      ☐ d) is being explained
5. The decision ..... concerning selling the flat wasn't a good one.  
☐ a) my brother made      ☐ b) which made  
☐ c) was making      ☐ d) makes
6. Children usually prefer films ..... a happy ending.  
☐ a) with      ☐ b) whose      ☐ c) which      ☐ d) that
7. Here's the barber's ..... I have my hair cut.  
☐ a) that      ☐ b) where      ☐ c) whom      ☐ d) who
8. No one knew exactly ..... happened to cause that terrible accident.  
☐ a) which      ☐ b) who      ☐ c) that      ☐ d) what
9. Judy, ..... father works for a multi-national company, often travels abroad with her family.  
☐ a) who      ☐ b) whose      ☐ c) who's      ☐ d) that
10. They treated the poor man rudely, ..... made me angry.  
☐ a) which      ☐ b) whom      ☐ c) who      ☐ d) in which
11. The furniture ..... by this company is tasteful and lasts for a long time.  
☐ a) which made      ☐ b) made      ☐ c) is made      ☐ d) which making
12. Ten people, ..... three children, were injured in the plane crash.  
☐ a) included      ☐ b) which included  
☐ c) including      ☐ d) who were included
13. Heba lost the book ..... her last month.  
☐ a) which lent it      ☐ b) which lent      ☐ c) who lent      ☐ d) lent
14. The reason ..... I don't like Ramy is because he is selfish.  
☐ a) where      ☐ b) which      ☐ c) why      ☐ d) whose
15. I didn't buy anything because I didn't find ..... I wanted.  
☐ a) which      ☐ b) what      ☐ c) that      ☐ d) when
16. The man ..... this luxurious house is very modest.  
☐ a) owned      ☐ b) owns      ☐ c) who is owned      ☐ d) owning

17. My teacher is a person .....

- a) who everybody likes him      b) everybody likes him  
c) everybody likes      d) that everybody likes him

18. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect?

- a) Look! That's the boy the teacher punished.  
b) Look! That's the boy who the teacher punished.  
c) Look. That's the boy punishing by the teacher.  
d) Look! That's the boy punished by the teacher

19. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect?

- a) Mr Ahmed in whose car we go to work is very generous.  
b) Mr Ahmed whose car we go to work is very generous.  
c) Mr Ahmed whose car is new is very generous.  
d) Mr Ahmed who has a new car is very generous.

### Longman and Previous Exams

20. "*Lion of the Desert*"; ..... is about a brilliant Bedouin leader, Omar al-Mukhtar, is an epic 1980 historical war film. [Longman]

- a) whose      b) which      c) who      d) whom

21. I highly appreciate the sales manager ..... yesterday; he is very sensible and flexible. [Longman]

- a) who I met him      b) that met him  
c) I met him      d) I met

22. .... he says is really logical; you should trust him.

- a) What      b) Which      c) What's      d) Whose

23. The mobile phones ..... in China are sold in a lot of countries all over the world. [Longman]

- a) producing      b) are produced      c) produced      d) which produced

24. The factory, ..... I work in, produces high quality cotton clothes.

- a) which      b) that      c) where      d) what

25. Most of the books ..... by Naguib Mahfouz were translated into many languages. [قديس]

- a) which written      b) were written      c) written      d) that were writing

26. Ahmed made a suggestion ..... we all objected.

- a) which      b) on which      c) that      d) to which

27. Miami is a city ..... has a lot of tourists. [المدينة / المدينة]

- a) which      b) where      c) when      d) what

28. Fashion decides ..... we should appear.

- a) where      b) when      c) what      d) now

29. People ..... work is difficult must get enough sleep.

- a) who      b) whose      c) whom      d) which



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### Vocabulary

- The ..... was carried out by a team of surgeons at Kasr Al Aini Hospital.  
☐ a) operation    ☐ b) process    ☐ c) argument    ☐ d) quarrel
- The new book puts the events of the 1919 Revolution in their proper historical and social .....  
☐ a) chapters    ☐ b) divisions    ☐ c) novels    ☐ d) contexts
- This water park isn't really a suitable ..... for a children's show as it may be dangerous.  
☐ a) scenery    ☐ b) position    ☐ c) venue    ☐ d) situation
- The young couple were very excited when their baby first ..... across the floor.  
☐ a) dug    ☐ b) flew    ☐ c) cried    ☐ d) crawled
- You can ..... healthy by eating well and exercising regularly.  
☐ a) stay    ☐ b) pass    ☐ c) save    ☐ d) rescue
- Few people understand the complex issues of environmental science.  
 The adjective "complex" is similar in meaning to ".....".  
☐ a) simple    ☐ b) complicated    ☐ c) clear    ☐ d) expensive
- The exhibition gives local artists an opportunity to ..... their works.  
☐ a) prove    ☐ b) improve    ☐ c) buy    ☐ d) display
- Some computer programmes software make it easy to ..... colourful graphs and animated pictures.  
☐ a) create    ☐ b) consume    ☐ c) affect    ☐ d) realise
- The medical company uses animals in ..... tests for some of its drugs.  
☐ a) crime    ☐ b) history    ☐ c) laboratory    ☐ d) print
- The government has made a great ..... to tackle the problem of poverty.  
☐ a) effort    ☐ b) attack    ☐ c) fight    ☐ d) right
- My little daughter always prefers yoghurt with a ..... flavour especially strawberry.  
☐ a) leafy    ☐ b) fruity    ☐ c) spicy    ☐ d) meaty
- Natural vitamins in the shampoo will help ..... damaged hair.  
☐ a) repair    ☐ b) destroy    ☐ c) pair    ☐ d) display
- All new staff will be ..... in customer service skills.  
☐ a) requested    ☐ b) applied    ☐ c) trained    ☐ d) offered
- Some employees were given the ..... of retiring early.  
☐ a) violence    ☐ b) obligation    ☐ c) necessity    ☐ d) option
- The students in our school are all highly ..... to get the first prize in the competition.  
☐ a) moved    ☐ b) motivated    ☐ c) removed    ☐ d) described

## Language

16. Why do you blame me for everything ..... goes wrong?  
☐ a) whose      b) who      c) that      d) what
17. My cousin, ..... thirty this weekend, has bought a house in Port Said.  
☐ a) that      b) who's      c) whom      d) whose
18. Sir Arthur Conan Doyle, ..... was a doctor by profession, invented Sherlock Holmes.  
☐ a) whose      b) that      c) whom      d) who
19. Khalid, ..... father is a mechanic, has just repaired our car.  
☐ a) whose his      b) who      c) who's      d) whose
20. Show me ..... you've got in your hand.  
☐ a) which      b) what      c) who's      d) that
21. In the summer holidays, ..... most people take their holidays, seaside towns are usually very busy.  
☐ a) when      b) which      c) that      d) where
22. The flat ..... is overlooking the Nile.  
☐ a) which he bought it      b) he bought  
☐ c) he bought it      d) he buying
23. The road ..... the two villages is very narrow.  
☐ a) joined      b) joining      c) which s joined      d) who is joining
24. A racket is something ..... to hit a ball when you play tennis or badminton.  
☐ a) which you use      b) which you use 't      c) you use it      d) b and c
25. I went to buy a new bag, but I couldn't find ..... I wanted.  
☐ a) which      b) whose      c) that      d) what
26. The meat ..... yesterday was delicious.  
☐ a) eating      b) which ate      c) eaten      d) which eaten
27. This is the hotel ..... rooms have a view of the sea.  
☐ a) which      b) whose      c) who's      d) where
28. The boy ..... over there has a degree in biology.  
☐ a) who standing      b) standing      c) stands      d) is stand ng
29. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically correct?  
☐ a) The Pyramids, which we vis'ted yesterday, are very old.  
☐ b) The Pyramids which we visited them yesterday are very old.  
☐ c) The Pyramids to which are very old were v sited yesterday.  
☐ d) The Pyramids, that we vis ted yesterday are very old.
30. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect?  
☐ a) Th's is the dress my mother has made for me.  
☐ b) This is the dress which my mother has made for me.  
☐ c) This is the dress who my mother has made for me.  
☐ d) This 's the dress that my mother has made for me



## Writing Skill

المريد من الشرح و لتدريبات  
يرجى الرجوع لمطابق المهارات.



## Writing

## tips

### A report about an experience تقرير عن خبرة حياتية

Imagine that you attended a three-day course about how to become a young entrepreneur. The organisers have asked you to write a report on your experience.

**Plan your report. Your report should:**

- outline what the course involved and how it was organised.
- explain what was good for you.
- make recommendations for how the course could be improved.
- say if you would recommend the course or not.

### Report on the Young Inventor's Competition

**Introduction:** The purpose of this report is to describe my experience with the three-day course about how to become a young entrepreneur at the Centre for Leader Preparation in Helwan.

**The organisation:** I live in Alexandria. I took part in a competition for young people with ideas or inventions that could be used as the basis for a business. I was chosen for the course with some other young people. The organisers arranged our accommodation at a youth hostel near the centre and there were good lectures with practical ideas about the course.

**Suggested improvements:** Although it was great to be part of this course, one thing was missing. In my opinion, the course organisers should have invited some businessmen who can support and help the best young people to start a new business.

**Conclusion:** Overall, I had a really positive experience and I would really recommend taking part in such courses. In my view, this may lead to good results for the participants and our country.





## (A) Reading Comprehension

## 1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

London is the capital of Great Britain. It is situated in the southeast of England on the River Thames and there are lots of bridges across the Thames. The most famous of these bridges is Tower Bridge. The machinery which draws up the bridge when a ship passes under it is hidden in the two towers. Near Tower Bridge, on the north bank of the Thames, there is the Tower of London. It is a big castle, its oldest part, White Tower, dates back to the times of William, the Conqueror. Back in history, The Tower served as a prison - now it is one of London's main tourist attractions. Tourists are guided by "Beefeaters" in historic uniforms and the Crown Jewels are on display there.

The London home of the Queen is Buckingham Palace where you can see the "Changing of the Guards". The coronation of the Kings and Queens takes place in Westminster Abbey. Near this enormous church there are the Houses of Parliament, the seat of the British government. They consist of a group of buildings, among them St. Stephen's Tower, the famous clock tower housing Big Ben, one of the world's biggest bells.

Not far from the Houses of Parliament there is Trafalgar Square with Lord Nelson's Column, erected in the memory of Admiral Nelson, who won against the Spanish in the Battle of Trafalgar.

London is also famous for its parks. There is Hyde Park, there is St. James's Park, which is the oldest and there is Regent's Park, which houses the London Zoo. In former times, all the parks were royal gardens.

Apart from sightseeing, tourists also love shopping in London. You will find the big stores in Oxford Street and the smaller shops in the little side streets.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## 1. What is Big Ben?

- ☐ a) A bell. ☐ b) A church. ☐ c) A clock. ☐ d) A clock tower.

## 2. London is situated .....

- ☐ a) in the centre of England ☐ b) in the southwest of England  
☐ c) in the north of England ☐ d) in the southeast of England

## 3. What is the river through London called?

- ☐ a) The Danube. ☐ b) The Thames. ☐ c) The Seine ☐ d) The Nile.

## 4. How many towers has Tower Bridge got?

- ☐ a) One. ☐ b) Four. ☐ c) Two. ☐ d) Three.

► 5. What is the oldest part of the Tower of London?

- ☐ a) White Tower.    b) Black Tower.    c) Bloody Tower.    d) Hyde Park.

6. What is the greatest attraction at the Tower of London?

- ☐ a) Wax figures.    b) The Crown Jewels.  
c) Paintings of the Kings and Queens.    d) Hyde Park.

7. Where does the Queen live?

- ☐ a) In Westminster Abbey.    b) In Buckingham Palace.  
c) In the Houses of Parliament.    d) In the White Tower.

8. Where is the London Zoo?

- ☐ a) In St. James's Park.    b) In Hyde Park.  
c) In Regent's Park.    d) In the White Tower.

**(B) Translation**

**2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

- 1. Scientific research proved that there are different kinds of food which have a great effect on preventing the elderly from having cancer, such as garlic and cabbage.

- (a) أثبتت الأبحاث العلمية أن هناك أنواعا متنوعة من الأغذية لها تأثير كبير على منع كبار السن من الإصابة بالسرطان مثل الثوم والكرفس.  
(b) أثبت البحث العلمي أن هناك أنواعا عديدة من الغذاء لها تأثير كبير على حماية كبار السن من السرطان مثل الثوم والكرفس.  
(c) لقد تم إثبات أن بالبحث العلمي هناك أنواع عديدة من الأطعمة لها اثر كبير على حماية كبار السن من السرطان مثل الثوم والكرفس.  
(d) أثبت البحث العلمي أن هناك أنواعا مختلفة من الطعام ليس لها تأثير كبير على تجنب كبار السن من الوقاية من السرطان مثل الثوم والكرفس.

2. Encouraging young inventors can provide us with suitable technological solutions for our problems. These inventors can be the hope for a better society in Egypt.

- (a) يمكننا تشجيع المخترعين الصغار بالحلول التكنولوجية المناسبة مع شكوكنا وقد لا يكون من هؤلاء المخترعين الأمل الأفضل للمجتمع في مصر.  
(b) يمكن أن يزودنا تشجيع المخترعين ،لصغار بالحلول التكنولوجية المتطابقة لشكوانا وقد يكون من هؤلاء المخترعين الأمل لمجتمع أفضل في مصر.  
(c) تشجيع المخترعين الصغار يستطيع أن يوفر الحلول التكنولوجية الأنسب لمشكلاتنا وقد يكون هؤلاء المخترعون الأمل الأفضل للمجتمع في العالم.  
(d) إن تشجيع المخترعين الصغار يمكن أن يزودنا بالحلول التكنولوجية المناسبة لمشكلاتنا وقد يكون هؤلاء المخترعون الأمل لمجتمع أفضل في مصر.

3. Some experts believe that the coming decades will witness a shortage of food as a result of overpopulation. Genetic engineering is one of the solutions to this problem.

- (a) يعتقد بعض الخبراء أن العقود القادمة ستشهد نقصاً في الغذاء نتيجة للزيادة السكانية وتعتبر الهندسة الوراثية أحد حلول هذه المشكلة.
- (b) يؤمن بعض الخبراء بأن العقود القادمة ستشهد زيادة في الغذاء نتيجة لعدد السكان وتعد الهندسة المعمارية أحد حلول هذه المشكلة.
- (c) قد يعتقد بعض الخبراء أن العقود القادمة ستشهد نقصاً في الأغذية نتيجة للسكان والهندسة الوراثية من أحد حلول هذه المشكلة.
- (d) يظن بعض الخبراء أن العقود القادمة ستشهد انتقاصاً في الغذاء بسبب الزيادة السكانية وتعد الهندسة المعمارية أحد حلول هذه المشكلة.

**(B) Choose the correct English translation:**

4. يشكل الوالدان شخصية أبنائهم ويناتهم منذ بداية طفولتهم، فهما يعلمانهم القيم والعادات وأيضاً يشاركانهم الاهتمامات والألعاب ويطوران الروابط العاطفية معهم.

- a) Parents form their sons and daughters' character from the beginning of their childhood. They provide them the values and hobbies as well, take part with them interests and plays and develop the sensitive ties with them.
- b) Parents form their sons and daughters' character from the beginning of their childhood. They teach them the values and habits as well, participate them importance and games and develop the emotional contacts with them.
- c) Parents form their sons and daughters' character from the beginning of their childhood. They teach them the values and habits as well, share their interests and games and develop the emotional ties with them.
- d) Parents frame their sons and daughters' character from the start of their childhood. They acquire them the values and habits as well, share their interests and plays and develop the sensible connections with them.

5. يؤكد الأطباء أن الحياة الصحية وممارسة التمرينات بانتظام من أهم وسائل الوقاية من الأمراض، لأن ذلك يدعم جهاز المناعة الذي يستطيع مقاومة الأمراض.

- (a) Doctors assert that a health life and doing exercises regularly are one of the most important ways of protecting diseases. That's why this helps the immune system which can prevent diseases.
- b) Doctors reassure that a healthy life and practising exercises regularly are among the most important ways of avoiding diseases. That's because this supports the immune system which can fight illnesses.
- c) Doctors assure that a health life and practising exercises regularly are one of the most important ways of preventing diseases. That's why this supports the immune system which can avoid illnesses.
- d) Doctors assert that a healthy life and practising exercises regularly are among the most important ways of preventing diseases. That's because this supports the immune system which can resist diseases.



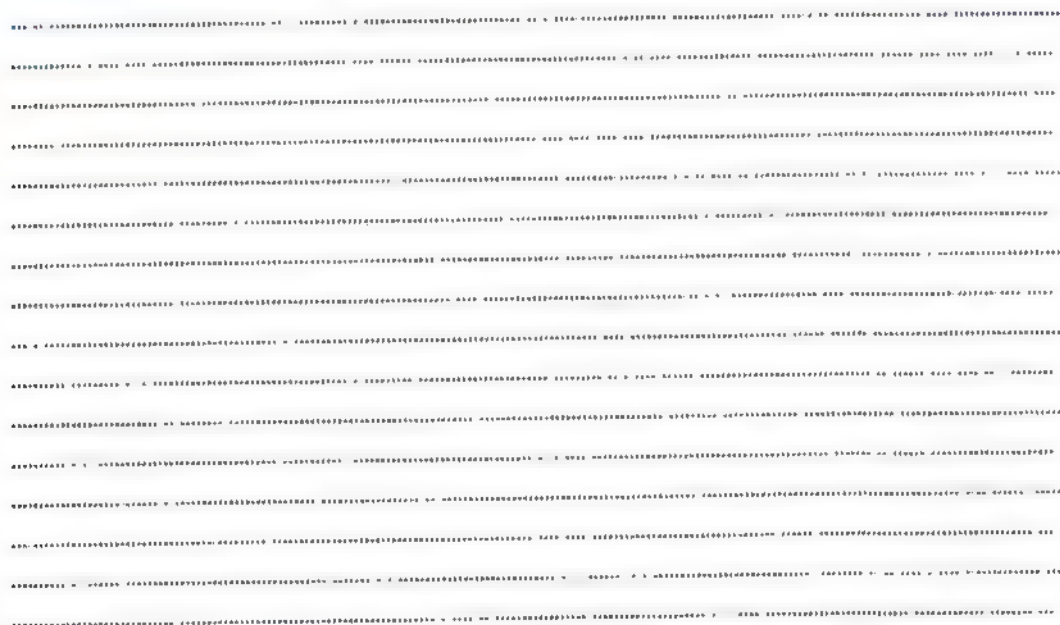
6. نيهت الأزمات المختلفة التي مربها العالم إلى أهمية الاكتفاء الذاتي وخاصة في مجال الغذاء؛ لأنها أدت إلى تعطل النقل وزيادة الأسعار بشكل كبير.

- a) The various disasters the world has experienced, have alarmed out the importance of self-efficiency, especially in the field of food. That's as they led to transport disruptions and a significant decrease in prices.
- b) The various crises the world has experienced, have alerted to the importance of self-sufficiency, especially in the field of food. That's because it led to transport disruptions and greatly increased prices.
- c) The various crises the world has passed through, have pointed out the importance of self-sufficiency, particularly in the department food. That's because they led to transport disruptions and a significant rise in prices.
- d) The various disasters the world has experimented, have pointed out the importance of self-efficiency, especially in the field of food. That's because they led to transportation disruptions and a decrease in prices.

### (c) Writing

3 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"How can we encourage young inventors to achieve more success?"



I used more than 4 new vocabulary.

I used the right structure.

I used a top c. sentence.

I wrote the conclusion.

I used the right punctuation.



### 1 Finish the following dialogue:

Ahmed is going to buy a piece of land in Matrouh and his cousin, Magdi, who lives there, is going to help him.

**Ahmed :** Hi, Magdi. Have you found the piece of land I asked you to buy for me?

**Magdi :** (1) .....

**Ahmed :** (2) .....

**Magdi :** It's not by the sea, but it has a good position.

**Ahmed :** (3) .....

**Magdi :** It's about 350 square metres.

**Ahmed :** OK, (4) .....

**Magdi :** You're welcome.

### A Glimpse of Revelation II

#### 2 (A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why did Al-Layth ibn Sa'd decide to travel to Hijaz?
2. What role did Nusayba play during the rule of Abū Bakr al-siddiq (APWH)?

#### (B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. The Caliph asked Al-Layth to be the ..... of Egypt, but he refused.  
☐ a) Judge      ☐ b) Ruler      ☐ c) Faq'h      ☐ d) Minister
4. Nusayba took part in the Battle of .....  
☐ a) Uhud      ☐ b) Badr      ☐ c) Yarmouk      ☐ d) the Trench

### King Lear

#### 3 (A) Answer the following questions:

1. What did Edmund do after he was badly hurt?
2. What was Albany's plan after the death of Cordelia, Regan and Goneril?

#### (B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. A ..... is a type of bed used for carrying someone who is too injured or ill to walk.  
☐ a) ventilator      ☐ b) device      ☐ c) throne      ☐ d) stretcher
4. Why did Regan feel ill?  
☐ a) Because she was hurt in the battle.  
☐ b) Because Edgar hurt her.  
☐ c) Because Goneril gives her poison.  
☐ d) Because Albany wanted to punish her.

#### 4 (A) Translate into Arabic:

- When reading any news or article, you must be able to distinguish between facts and opinions.

#### (B) Translate into English:

- قدمت نسيبة بنت كعب مثلاً مشرفاً لدور المرأة المسلمة في الدفاع عن الإسلام.



(13M)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The businessman is a ..... supporter of sports and he is the sponsor of some young athletes.  
☐ a) secret      b) passionate      c) specific      d) desperate
2. There should be more laws to enhance environmental and wildlife ..... in Egypt.  
☐ a) imagination      b) convention      c) conservation      d) condensation
3. My friend won the first prize in the art ..... at the university.  
☐ a) compilation      b) accommodation      c) consolidation      d) competition
4. The young man is wanted by the police as a/an ..... to the murder.  
☐ a) accessory      b) device      c) equipment      d) outfit
5. Students must be taught to do their best to ..... their goals in life.  
☐ a) do      b) achieve      c) set      d) arrive
6. Much of the crime in this area is related to drug abuse. The synonym of the word "related" is ".....".  
☐ a) separate      b) defective      c) associated      d) delayed
7. Despite his hard work, the project ended in ..... due to lack of funding.  
☐ a) success      b) celebration      c) failure      d) achievement
8. They have three sons, ..... are living abroad.  
☐ a) who      b) that      c) which      d) whose
9. This is the restaurant ..... I usually go for my meals.  
☐ a) to which      b) which      c) at which      d) in which
10. The boys ..... lives were rescued by the policemen are fine now.  
☐ a) who      b) whose      c) which      d) whose
11. Confusing topics ..... are well-expressed can be understood.  
☐ a) who      b) that      c) where      d) when
12. The questions ..... in the exam were specially chosen.  
☐ a) asking      b) which asked      c) asked      d) that ask
13. We stayed in a hotel .....  
☐ a) where every room had a broadband connection  
☐ b) which every room had a broadband connection  
☐ c) that every room had a broadband connection  
☐ d) every room had a broadband connection

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

**(8M)**

Karl Benz invented the modern car in 1888 in Germany. Emile Roger worked for Benz in France. He made cars in France. By 1900, many people were building cars in France and in the U.S. The first company to build only cars was Panhard et Levassor in France. Panhard started in 1889. The Peugeot car company started in 1891 in France. In the US, Frank and Charles Duryea started the Duryea Motor Wagon Company in 1893. It was the first US car company. By 1902, Ransom E. Olds had started the Olds Motor Vehicle Company. A year later, Henry Ford started the Ford Motor Company. It produced the Cadillac. All these early modern cars burned gasoline or diesel fuel. Ford opened factories in France and Britain in 1911. Then, they opened a factory in Denmark in 1923. Later, they opened a factory in Germany in 1925. Ford was one of the first manufacturers to use an assembly line. With an assembly line, factory workers could produce cars faster and safer than other production systems.

Most modern cars still burn gasoline or diesel fuel. These cars cause air pollution. They get the air dirty.

Now many people are looking for cleaner cars.

And many car companies are looking for cleaner fuels.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**14. Which company first built only cars?**

☐ a) Benz.

☐ b) Ford.

☐ c) Panhard.

☐ d) D. Duryea.

**15. Fuel is .....**

☐ a) what makes cars move

☐ b) a car production system

☐ c) the price of a car

☐ d) no correct answer

**16. What is an assembly line?**

☐ a) A way of making products.

☐ b) A safe way of making products.

☐ c) A quick way of making products.

☐ d) All of the previous.

**17. The Ford Motor Company opened a .....**

☐ a) factory in Denmark in 1911

☐ b) factory in Germany in 1925

☐ c) factory in Britain in 1929

☐ d) factory in France in 1931

**18. The Peugeot car company started in .....**

☐ a) 1911

☐ b) 1923

☐ c) 1891

☐ d) 1925



► **24. Answer the following questions: (The play)**

**(1.5M)**

1. If you were Edgar, would you fight and kill your own brother? Why?
2. Who do you think the most hateful female character in the play is?
3. What do you think of the end of the play?

► **25. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:**

**(3.5M)**

**"How can universities play a role in providing us with technological solutions for our problems?"**

Blank area for writing the essay.

مبارك من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين  
نرجو لك الهبة الكتاب ص 348



**Assess your progress**



< 50%



50 : 64%

Practise more

65 : 84%



85 : 100%

Well done!

# Play King Lear

By: William Shakespeare



Play

Introduction

Texts

Exercises





## Introduction



## Characters in the Play

## شخصيات المسرحية

### King Lear's Family

عائلة الملك لير

#### Goneril

the eldest daughter

#### Albany

Goneril's husband

#### Cornwall

Regan's husband

#### Cordelia

the youngest daughter

#### Regan

the second daughter

### King Lear's Friends

أصدقاء الملك لير

Duke Of Kent

Duke Of Gloucester

Fool

### Gloucester's Family

عائلة جلوسטר

#### Edgar

the eldest son

#### Edmund

the youngest son

### Noble Characters

شخصيات نبيلة

#### King Of France

He wants to marry Cordelia.

#### Duke Of Burgundy

He wants to marry Cordelia.

### Minor Characters

شخصيات ثانوية

**Oswald**

Regan's servant

**Old Man**

A man who helps  
Gloucester

**Gentleman**

A friend of Kent

**Captain**

One of Edmund's  
soldiers



### Summary of Part (1)

### ملخص أحداث الترم الأول

- The play begins as the Duke of Gloucester introduces his son, Edmund, to the Duke of Kent. Lear, King of Britain, enters with his three daughters, Regan, Goneril and Cordelia with Goneril and Regan's husbands: Duke of Albany and Duke of Cornwall. Lear has decided to divide his kingdom between his three daughters. The division will depend on the quality of each princess's declaration إعلان of love for her father. Goneril and Regan both speak enthusiastically بحماس and earn their father's praise مدح. But Cordelia, the youngest, says nothing because she cannot express her deep love for Lear. Misunderstanding his daughter, Lear gets angry and banishes her from the kingdom. He also banishes the Duke of Kent, who had taken Cordelia's side against the King.
- The King of France values Cordelia's honesty and takes her as his wife. Lear's kingdom is shared between Goneril and Regan and their husbands. Lear plans to alternate living with each of them.
- Meanwhile, Edmund is determined to be recognised as a rightful son of Gloucester. By a trick, he persuades his father that his elder brother, Edgar, is plotting against Gloucester's life. Warned by Edmund that his life is in danger, Edgar flees and takes the disguise of a beggar, calling himself Poor Tom.
- Kent has returned from exile in disguise and wins a place as a servant to Lear. Goneril grows increasingly furious by the behaviour of Lear's hundred companions who are upsetting her life at Albany's castle, and she criticises تنقده her father.
- Kent accompanies Lear when, in a rage against her criticisms, he curses Goneril and leaves. Lear goes to live with Regan and Cornwall has gone out to visit Gloucester. When Lear arrives at Gloucester's house, he finds Regan. He has been badly treated by her and leaves with his companions, Kent and the Fool.

## Act III

## Scenes v-vii

## Vocabulary

## المفردات

arrest	يقبض على	guilty	مذنب	revenge	انتقام / ثأر / يثأر / ينتقم
authority	تفويض / سلطة / نموذج	interrupt	يقطع	spy	جاسوس
betray	يخون / يفضح / يفشي سراً	kneel	يركع / يجثو على ركبتيه	stupid	أحمق / غبي
carriage	عربة تجرها الخيول	loyalty	إخلاص / ولاء	thief	لص
cruel	قاسي القلب	madness	جنون / حماقة	traitor	خائن
cure	يعالج / يشفي / يداوي	prove	يثبت	trust	ثقة / يثق
deceive	يخدع / يضل	punish	يعاقب	truth	حقيقة
enemy	عدو	rest	استراحة / راحة	wound	جرح / يجرح

## Expressions, Phrases &amp; Prepositions

## التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

stand for	ينوب عن / يدافع عن	take revenge for	ينتقم لـ
get rid of	يتخلص من	pick ... up	يقتطع

## Scene Text

[In Gloucester's Castle. Cornwall enters with Edmund.]

**CORNWALL:** Listen, Edmund. I'll have my **revenge**<sup>(1)</sup> before I leave Gloucester's house.

**EDMUND:** I'm sorry, Cornwall, because the truth is so sad. This is the letter that my father Gloucester told me about. It **proves**<sup>(2)</sup> that he's a spy, and that he's writing to the King of France. Oh, I wish he weren't guilty! It's very difficult for me to discover this terrible truth.

**CORNWALL:** We'll go and see Regan.

**EDMUND:** If the letter is true, you have work to do to stop him.

**CORNWALL:** If it is true or false, it has made you the next Duke of Gloucester. Find your father and then we can arrest him.

**EDMUND:** [To himself.] If I find him helping the King, Cornwall will think he is even more guilty.

[To Cornwall.] I'll continue to show you my **loyalty**<sup>(3)</sup>, although it hurts me to do this to my father.

**CORNWALL:** I trust you, Edmund, and you'll find me to be a better father than he is.

[They exit.]



(3) إخلاص / ولاء

(1) انتقام / ثأر

(2) يثبت

### Act III, Scene vi

[Gloucester enters.]

**GLOUCESTER:** My friend, where's the King?

**KENT:** He's here, sir; but be quiet, he's sleeping.

**GLOUCESTER:** Good friend, I've heard that there's a plan to **get rid of**<sup>(1)</sup> him. There's a **carriage**<sup>(2)</sup> waiting for you; help the King into it and drive to Dover, where you'll find people to help you. Go now. If you wait half an hour, you may both be killed. Follow me.

**KENT:** [To Lear.] You're sleeping now. This rest might help you, although it will be difficult to **cure**<sup>(3)</sup> your **madness**<sup>(4)</sup>.

[To the Fool.] Come, help me to carry the King.

**GLOUCESTER:** Hurry up! We must leave now.

[They all exit except for Edgar.]

**EDGAR:** The poor King! His children have done to him what my father has done to me!  
[He exits.]

### Act III, Scene vii

[In Gloucester's Castle. Cornwall, Regan, Goneril, Edmund and Servants enter.]

**CORNWALL:** Goneril, send a message to your husband Albany and show him this letter. The French army has arrived in England.

[To the Servants.] Find the **traitor**<sup>(5)</sup>, Gloucester.

**REGAN:** Arrest him now!

[Some of the Servants exit.]

**CORNWALL:** Leave him to me. Edmund, stay with Goneril. You shouldn't see what we'll do to your father, the traitor. Goodbye, my dear Goneril. Goodbye, Edmund, the new Duke of Gloucester.

[Oswald enters.] Where's the King?

**OSWALD:** The Duke of Gloucester has taken him away, sir. About thirty-five of his soldiers have gone with him. They're going to Dover, where they say they have some powerful friends.

**CORNWALL:** Get horses for Regan. Goodbye Edmund.

[Goneril exits with Edmund, and Oswald.]

Go and find that traitor, Gloucester. Bring him to us like a thief.

[The other Servants exit.]



(5) خائن

(3) يخلص من

(4) حمولة/حمالة

(1) يتخلص من  
(2) حربة تجرها الخيول

I can't kill Gloucester because I don't have the **authority**<sup>(1)</sup>, but I can punish him. And although people won't like this, they can't stop us.

*[Gloucester enters, brought in by two or three men.]*

Who's there? Is that the traitor, Gloucester?

**REGAN:** It's him.

**CORNWALL:** Make him **kneel**<sup>(2)</sup> in front of me.

**GLOUCESTER:** What are you doing? Good friends, you're in my house. Don't do this.

**CORNWALL:** Make him kneel, I said!

*[The Servants make him kneel.]*

**REGAN:** You cruel man. You've **deceived**<sup>(3)</sup> your son Edmund.

**GLOUCESTER:** You, my lady, are the **one** who's cruel, not me.

**REGAN:** You are a traitor!

**GLOUCESTER:** Cruel lady, what are you saying?

**CORNWALL:** What letters have you recently received from France?

**REGAN:** Give us your answer. We know the truth.

**CORNWALL:** And what have you planned with the traitors who have recently arrived in the kingdom?

**REGAN:** Who have you sent the mad King to? Tell us everything.

**GLOUCESTER:** Listen, I got a letter that explained what is happening. It came from someone who is neither a friend nor an **enemy**<sup>(4)</sup>.

**CORNWALL:** That's clever.

**REGAN:** And untrue.

**CORNWALL:** Where have you sent the King?

**GLOUCESTER:** To Dover.

**REGAN:** Why have you sent him to Dover? I told you not to help him ...

**CORNWALL:** *[He interrupts<sup>(5)</sup> Regan.]* Why Dover? Let him answer that first.

**GLOUCESTER:** Because I didn't want to see his daughters continue to be so cruel to him.

**CORNWALL:** You will never see that! *[Picks up a sword.]* Come! Fight me!

*[Gloucester tries to fight, but Cornwall hits his face with his sword.]*

**GLOUCESTER:** Oh, help me! My eyes!



(5) يقطع

(3) خدع / شغل  
(4) عدو

(1) سلطة / نفوذ  
(2) يركع / يجنوح على ركبتيه



**SERVANT 1:** Very well, come on.

*[They fight and the servant badly wounds Cornwall.]*

**SERVANT 1:** Stop, my lord! Stop now.

**CORNWALL:** Stop? Never! You can fight me too.

**REGAN:** *[To a soldier.]* Give me your sword. A servant will not fight my husband like this! I won't stand for it!<sup>(1)</sup>

*[She takes a sword and kills the servant.]*

**SERVANT 1:** Oh, I'm going to die! *[He dies.]*

**GLOUCESTER:** Everything is black now and I can't see! Where's my son Edmund? You must take revenge for<sup>(2)</sup> this terrible thing.

**REGAN:** Don't call for your son Edmund. He hates you. Edmund told us that you betrayed<sup>(3)</sup> us. He will not help you.

**GLOUCESTER:** Oh, I've been so stupid! Edgar is the one I should trust, not Edmund!

**REGAN:** Throw him out of the palace, and let him find his way to Dover.

*[Two Servants help the now blind Gloucester from the stage.]*

*[To Cornwall.]* What's the matter, my lord?

**CORNWALL:** I've been hurt. Regan! Look at all this blood! Give me your arm.

*[Regan helps Cornwall off the stage. They exit.]*

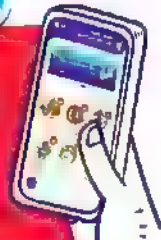
## تطبيق الأصواء

محتويات الرقعة مغلقة من الكتب

لمسح الكود السريع بالهاتف الذكي في  
نهاية الكتاب، واحصل على محتوى المادة  
الرقمي من تطبيق الأصواء

تطبيق الأصواء - كود QR

[www.kinglear.com](http://www.kinglear.com)



(1) لن أسمح به / لا أتحمل  
(2) ينتقم لـ

(3) خان / خدع



## Questions & Answers



### Critical Thinking Questions

1. If you were Edmund, would you try to prove that your father is a spy? Why?

لو كنت مكان إدmond، هل كنت ستحاول إثبات أن والدك جاسوس؟ لماذا؟

- No, I wouldn't. Any son should protect and care for his father even if he did anything wrong.

2. Is it right that Cornwall and Regan trust Edmund after betraying his father? Why?

هل من الصحيح أن كورنوال وريجان يثقان بإدموند بعد خيانة والده؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't think so. He could betray them just as he did with his father.

3. What do you think of Cornwall's punishment of Gloucester?

ما رأيك في عقوبة كورنوال لجلوستر؟

- I think it was a violent and hard punishment to make a man blind and throw him in the street with no one to care for him.

4. Why do you think the servant defended Gloucester?

في رأيك لماذا دافع الخادم عن جلوستر؟

- I think he sympathised with him and thought that he received violent treatment.

5. Regan took a sword and killed the servant herself. What does this show about her?

أخذت ريجان سيفاً وقتلت الخادم بنفسها. ماذا يظهر هذا عنها؟

- I think it shows that she is a cruel woman that can do anything for her interest.

6. Do you think that Gloucester deserved the punishment he received? Why?

هل تعتقد أن جلوستر يستحق العقوبة التي تلقاها؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't think so. He only tried to help the legal King whom he loved and served for many years.

7. If you were Gloucester, would you try to escape instead of confronting Cornwall and Regan? Why?

لو كنت مكان جلوستر، هل كنت ستحاول الهرب بدلاً من مواجهة كورنوال وريجان؟ لماذا؟

- I would at least try to have some guards or servants to defend me against such an attack.

8. If you were Cornwall, would you punish Gloucester so cruelly? Why?

لو كنت كورنوال، هل كنت ستعاقب جلوستر بهذه القسوة؟ لماذا؟

- No, I wouldn't. He is an old man and did nothing bad to be punished so cruelly.

9. In your opinion, how else could Gloucester try to help the King?

في رأيك، كيف كان يمكن لجلوستر أن يحاول مساعدة الملك؟

- He could cooperate with the soldiers who wanted to help the King.

**10. Do you think that Cornwall would make a good king if he ruled over the country? Why?**

هل تعتقد أن كورنوال سيكون ملكًا جيدًا إذا حكم البلاد؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't think so. He is a cruel man who would show no mercy for his people.

**11. Edmund left before his father was punished. What does this show about him?**

غادر إدموند قبل معاقبة والده. ماذا يظهر هذا عنه؟

- It shows that he is a bad and ungrateful son not to defend his father against an enemy



## Longman Exercises & Previous Exams

**12. If you were in Gloucester's place, would you be appalled at the daughters' treatment towards their father, King Lear? Why?**

لو كنت مكان جليوستر، فهل كنت ستشعر بالفرح من معاملة البنات لأبيهن الملك لير؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, would. They should have been thankful to their father who gave them everything he had.

**13. Edmund resents being treated differently to his older brother Edgar and secretly plots against both his father and his brother. Do you agree with this opinion? Why?**

يكره إدموند أن يعامل بطريقة مختلفة من أخيه الأكبر إدجار، ويخطط سراً ضد والده وأخيه. هل تتفق مع هذا الرأي؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't agree with that. He shouldn't be so bad to his father and brother even if he was angry about that.

**14. Do you think that there is a similarity between the characters of King Lear and Gloucester? Why?**

هل تعتقد أن هناك تشابهًا بين شخصيتي لير وجليوستر؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, think so. They were both deceived by their bad children. Besides, they were both angry with their good ones.

**15. "Edmund told us that you betrayed us. He will not help you." Who said this quotation? When and why?**

(القاهرة/ إدارة الشروق)

أخبرنا إدموند أنك خنتنا، ولن يساعدك. «من قال هذه المقولة؟ ومتى؟ ولماذا؟»

- Regan said this to Gloucester after Cornwall made him blind. She said that because Gloucester called for his son Edmund to help him.

**16. Do you think Gloucester was really a traitor? Why/Why not?**

(سوهاج/ إدارة طبا)

هل تعتقد أن جليوستر كان خائنًا حقًا؟ لماذا/لماذا لا؟

- No, I don't think so. He wanted to help his King and move him to safety.

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The tests ..... the new vaccine to be effective against the virus.  
☐ a) improved      ☐ b) provided      ☐ c) proved      ☐ d) conducted
2. I was glad to ..... rid of my old car when I finally sold it.  
☐ a) get      ☐ b) give      ☐ c) take      ☐ d) do
3. The king has a special ..... with beautiful decoration which he rides in special ceremonies and occasions.  
☐ a) plane      ☐ b) monument      ☐ c) carriage      ☐ d) statue
4. A team of doctors ..... the child of a rare blood disease.  
☐ a) planned      ☐ b) damaged      ☐ c) healed      ☐ d) cured
5. I complained to the hospital ..... about the bad behaviour of the nurse.  
☐ a) care      ☐ b) treatment      ☐ c) authority      ☐ d) laboratory

## 2 Answer the following questions:

1. What do you think King Lear's weakness is?
2. Do you agree that being blind to reality can cause a person much trouble? Why?  
[Lear]
3. If you were the servant who defended Gloucester, would you do the same? Why?
4. Cornwall was punished for what he did to Gloucester. Do you agree? Why?
5. In your opinion, was Gloucester right to arrange to move the King to Dover where the French army was? Why?
6. The hard time which King Lear faced made him realise who really loved and "served him well. Do you agree? Why?
7. Both King Lear and Gloucester treated the people who really loved them badly. Do you agree? Why?
8. Do you think that King Lear deserved Gloucester's sacrifice? Why?
9. "This rest might help you, although it will be difficult to cure your madness." What do you think Kent meant by his speech to the king?  
[Kent]
10. What do you think might have happened if Gloucester had discovered the plot against him?  
[Learman]

## Act IV

## Scenes iii

### Vocabulary

### المفردات

beggar	متسول / شحاذ	hide	يخفي / يختبئ	pretend	يتظاهر
bleed	ينزف	hold	يمسك / يثبت	remind	يذكر
bring	يحضّر	kingdom	مملكة	rule	يحكم
camp	مخيم / يخيم	lead	يقود	storm	عاصفة
cliff	منحدر صخري	lose	يخسر	sword	سيف
evil	شر / شرير	nearby	قريب	thoughts	أفكار

### Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

### التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

fall apart	يتداعى / يصبح مهترئاً	make ... mad	يجعل ... مجنوناً
call out	يصرخ	good to	جيد مع - بار بـ
hungry for power	راغب في السلطة	angry with	غاضب من
take revenge of	ينتقم من		

## Scene Text

[In the countryside. Edgar enters.]

**EDGAR:** When you have nothing, there's nothing left to lose.

[Gloucester enters led by an Old Man.]

But what's happened? Are my father's eyes bleeding?

**GLOUCESTER:** Go away, good friend. You can't help me now.

**OLD MAN:** But I want to help you, sir. You can't see. You can't find your way.

**GLOUCESTER:** I don't need any eyes. When I had eyes, I couldn't see what I most needed to see. Oh, my dear son Edgar. I wish I could hold you, then I would say that I needed eyes again!

**OLD MAN:** Who's there?

**EDGAR:** [To himself.] Oh, now I feel worse than I ever did before.

**OLD MAN:** Look, it's poor, mad Tom. Where are you going, Tom?

**GLOUCESTER:** Is it a beggar in front of us?

**OLD MAN:** Yes, he's a mad man and a beggar.

**GLOUCESTER:** I saw a beggar<sup>(1)</sup> in last night's storm.



(1) متسول / شحاذ



He reminded me of my son, but I had no good thoughts about my son then. Now, however, I know the **truth**<sup>(1)</sup>.

**EDGAR:** *[To himself.]* My father is so sad, he has **fallen apart**<sup>(2)</sup>. I wish I didn't have to pretend to be a beggar.

*[To Gloucester, his father.]* Hello, sir!

**GLOUCESTER:** Is that the mad beggar?

**OLD MAN:** Yes, it is, my lord.

**GLOUCESTER:** If you really want to help me, bring some clothes for this poor beggar. I'll ask him to take me to Dover.

**OLD MAN:** He can't help you, sir. He's mad!

**GLOUCESTER:** Please help him.

**OLD MAN:** OK, I'll bring him the best clothes that I can find, sir.

*[He exits.]*

**GLOUCESTER:** Come here, my friend.

**EDGAR:** Are your eyes OK? They're **bleeding**<sup>(3)</sup>.

**GLOUCESTER:** Do you know the way to Dover?

**EDGAR:** Yes, sir.

**GLOUCESTER:** Here, take this money. All men should help each other. The rich especially should help the poor. There is a very high **cliff**<sup>(4)</sup> in Dover. Take me to the top of it. You don't need to take me anywhere else.

**EDGAR:** Of course. Poor Tom will take you there.

*[They exit.]*

## Act IV, Scene ii

*[In front of the Duke of Albany's Palace. Goneril enters with Edmund.]*

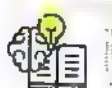
**GONERIL:** Welcome, Edmund.

*[Oswald enters.]*

Where's my husband, Oswald? I haven't seen him.

**OSWALD:** Madam, he's inside, but he's changed. I told him that the French army had arrived. He smiled. Then I told him you were coming. His answer was, "That is not good."

**GONERIL:** I told him that Gloucester had deceived us and that Edmund had been good to us. Then he told me that I had got everything wrong.



(3) بالزرق  
(4) منحدر مشرق

(1) الحقيقة  
(2) يتفكك

[To Edmund.] You shouldn't come in. My husband is angry with you. Go back to Cornwall. Get his army together and help him.

[Edmund exits.]

**GONERIL:** [To herself.] Edmund, Duke of Gloucester, is **hungry for power**<sup>(1)</sup>. Perhaps I should use him to help me.

**OSWALD:** Madam, here comes your husband.

[The Duke of Albany enters.]

**ALBANY:** Oh Goneril, I'm starting to feel frightened of you. You are **evil**!<sup>(2)</sup>

**GONERIL:** Be quiet! Don't say anything more.

**ALBANY:** What have you done? You and Regan are tigers, not daughters. You've been cruel to your father, a kind old man. How could Cornwall allow you to do this? He has had so much from your father!

**GONERIL:** Soldiers are here from France, but all you do is sit here and cry, "Oh, why is he doing this?" Where is your sword?

**ALBANY:** Look at yourself, Goneril! Evil hides inside you.

[A messenger enters.]

**ALBANY:** What is the news?

**MESSANGER:** Oh, my lord, the Duke of Cornwall was killed by his servant after he fought Gloucester, and now Gloucester can't see.

**ALBANY:** Gloucester can't see! Poor Gloucester!

**MESSANGER:** Regan wants a quick answer to this letter.

**GONERIL:** [To herself.] In one way, this is good news. Without Cornwall, it's more likely that I can **rule**<sup>(3)</sup> over all the **kingdom**<sup>(4)</sup>. But now Edmund has gone to my sister's.

I don't want him to help her soldiers. I'll read the letter and send her an answer.

[Goneril exits.]

**ALBANY:** Where was Gloucester's son Edmund when he fought with Cornwall?

**MESSANGER:** He was travelling here with my lady.

**ALBANY:** But he's not here.

**MESSANGER:** No, my lord. I met him travelling back again.

**ALBANY:** Does he know what has happened?



(3) يحكم

(4) مملكة

(1) راغب في السلطة

(2) شر/شديد

**MESSENGER:** Yes, my lord. Edmund told us about his father. Edmund left the house so that the Duke of Cornwall could **punish**<sup>(1)</sup> Gloucester.

**ALBANY:** *[To himself.]* Gloucester, I thank you for the love you have shown the King, and I'll take revenge for what has happened to you.

*[To the Messenger.]* Come here, friend. Tell me what else you know.

*[They exit together.]*

### Act IV, Scene iii

*[The French camp*<sup>(2)</sup> *near Dover. Kent enters with a Gentleman.]*

**KENT:** Tell me sir, why has the King of France returned so suddenly to his country?

**GENTLEMAN:** He had something important to do there.

**KENT:** Did the letters make Queen Cordelia very sad?

**GENTLEMAN:** Yes, sir. She read them while I was there, and I saw that she was crying. But she was not angry.

**KENT:** Did she say anything?

**GENTLEMAN:** Yes, once or twice she called out her father's name. She said, "Sisters, sisters! You left your father outside in the **storm**!"<sup>(3)</sup> In the night! What have you done?" And after that, she left the room because she wanted to be alone.

**KENT:** Have you spoken to her since then?

**GENTLEMAN:** No.

**KENT:** Well, sir, the poor unhappy King is here, but he does not want to see his daughter.

**GENTLEMAN:** Why, sir?

**KENT:** Because he was so unkind to her before. He sent Cordelia to France and gave everything to her cruel sisters. This has made him mad.

**GENTLEMAN:** The poor man!

**KENT:** Do you have any news of Albany and Cornwall's **armies**?"<sup>(4)</sup>

**GENTLEMAN:** They are nearby.

**KENT:** Well, sir, I will take you to King Lear.

*[They exit.]*



سازمان (3)

سازمان (4)

یگان (1)

سازمان (2)

## Questions & Answers

(A)

### Critical Thinking Questions

1. If you were Edgar, would you feel sorry for seeing Gloucester blind? Why?

لو كنت مكان إدجار، هل كنت ستشعر بالأسى لرؤية جلوستر أعمى؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I would. A good son must be sad if anything happens to his father even if he is angry with him.

2. "Oh, my dear son Edgar. I wish I could hold you, then I would say that I needed eyes again!" What does this show about Gloucester's feelings?

«أوه، ابني العزيز إدجار. أتمنى أن أضمك، ثم سأقول إنني بحاجة إلى عيون مرة أخرى!» ماذا تظهر هذه العبارة من مشاعر جلوستر؟

- I think it clearly shows that he is resentful مستاء. He realised that he should have trusted Edgar not Edmund.

3. Why, do you think, Edgar wished he didn't have to pretend to be a beggar?

في رأيك لماذا تمنى إدجار لو لم يضطر إلى التظاهر بأنه متسول؟

- I think he pitied his father very much and he wanted to make him get rid of his bad feelings.

4. Why, do you think, Gloucester asked Edgar, disguised as Poor Tom, to take him to Dover?

في رأيك لماذا طلب جلوستر من إدجار، متتكرأ بزي توم المسكين، أن يأخذه إلى دوفر؟

- Maybe, he wanted to be near his King. Maybe, he wanted to get away from Goneril and Regan's anger and punishment.

5. "Edmund, Duke of Gloucester, is hungry for power. Perhaps I should use him to help me." What does this show about Goneril's character?

«إدموند، دوق جلوستر، متعطش للسلطة. ربما يجب أن أستخذه لمساعدتي». ماذا يظهر هذا من شخصية جونييريل؟

- This shows that she is a greedy person who used people to get what she wanted, whoever they are.

6. Why do you think Albany began to feel frightened of his wife, Goneril?

لماذا تعتقد أن ألباني بدأ يشعر بالخوف من زوجته جونييريل؟

- I think he did so because of her cruel treatment of her father who gave her everything.

7. Albany didn't feel sad at Cornwall's death. Do you agree with him? Why?

لم يشعر ألباني بالحزن لوفاة كورنوال. هل توافق؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, agree with him. Cornwall was a cruel and ungrateful person.

8. How do you think Albany can take revenge for what has happened to Gloucester?

في رأيك كيف يستطيع ألباني الانتقام لما حدث لجلوستر؟

- He may try to regain power to the King who can punish his daughters who were bad to him.

9. In your opinion, why did Albany ask the messenger about Edmund?

في رأيك لماذا سأل ألباني الرسول عن إدموند؟

- I think that he expected Edmund to defend and protect his own father.

10. If you were Cordelia, would you feel sad for what happened to the King? Why?

لو كنت مكان كورديليا، هل كنت ستشعر بالحزن لما حدث للملك؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I would. A daughter who loves her father should feel sad for anything bad that might happen to her father.

11. In your opinion, was the King right not to desire to see Cordelia? Why?

في رأيك، هل كان الملك على حق في عدم رغبته في رؤية كورديليا؟ لماذا؟

- No, he wasn't right. He should at least meet her to ask her to forgive him for his bad treatment.

12. What do you think of Kent's continuous efforts to help the King?

ما رأيك في جهود كينت المستمرة لمساعدة الملك؟

- I think these efforts prove that he is loyal to his King although he had ordered that Kent should be sent away.



### Longman Exercises & Previous Exams

13. "I don't need my eyes. When I had eyes, I couldn't see what I most needed to see." Do you think Gloucester should have been more cautious? Why?

"لا أحتاج إلى عيني. عندما كانت لدي عيون، لم أتمكن من رؤية ما كنت في أشد الحاجة إلى رؤيته". هل تعتقد أن غلوستر كان ينبغي أن يكون أكثر حذراً؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I think so. He was easily deceived by his bad son, Edmund.

14. How do you think Edger could have tried to help his father?

كيف تعتقد أن إدجار كان بإمكانه أن يحاول مساعدة والده؟

- I think he could have told him his real identity and tried to help him take revenge from the people who hurt him.

15. Do you sympathise with the character of Gloucester? Why?

هل تتعاطف مع شخصية جلوستر؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I sympathise with him completely. He was a good and loyal man. He was punished for something he hadn't done.

16. "Oh dear son, Edger! I wish I could hold you, then I would say I needed my eyes again" What does this show about Gloucester's feelings?

(شرقية/ إدارة العاشر من رمضان)

"يا بني العزيز إدجار! أتمنى لو أستطيع أن أحضنك، حينها سأقول إنني أحتاج إلى عيني مرة أخرى" ماذا يظهر هذا عن مشاعر جلوستر؟

- This shows that he began to regret his mistakes and wanted to make up for his son Edgar.

17. How was Albany loyal to King Lear?

(أسوان/ إدارة كوم أمبو)

كيف كان ألباني مخلصاً للملك لير؟

- He refused his wife's bad treatment of him. He was even ready to punish his wife for that.



**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. A ..... is a large wild animal of the cat family that has orange fur with black stripes which mainly lives in Asia.

- ☐ a) tiger                      b) lion                      c) wolf                      d) crocodile

2. The prince who killed his brother to be king was really hungry ..... power.

- ☐ a) with                      b) at                      c) 'n                      d) for

3. The hikers will ..... by the river for the night, and move on tomorrow.

- ☐ a) derive                      b) camp                      c) leave                      d) distract

4. Greed الجشع is probably the greatest social ..... of all times.

- ☐ a) demand                      b) act                      c) evil                      d) moral

5. The poor worker had to get some rest or he/she was going to ..... apart.

- ☐ a) feel                      b) fool                      c) fil                      d) fall

**2 Answer the following questions:**

1. Why do you think Gloucester didn't recognise his son?
2. If you were Gloucester, would you feel sorry for what you had done to Edgar? Why?
3. In your opinion, why would Albany intend to take revenge for what happened to Gloucester?
4. If you were Albany, would you feel angry with Edmund? Why?
5. Cornwall was punished for his violence with Gloucester. Do you agree? Why?
6. If you were Edgar, would you tell Gloucester your real identity? Why?
7. If you were Goneril, would you trust Edmund to help you rule over the country?
8. "The greed for money is the root of all evil." Do you agree with this opinion? Why?
9. Do you think that the word 'tigers' really describes Goneril and Regan? Why?
10. "Look at yourself, Goneril! Evil hides inside you," said Albany. Do you agree that Albany was responsible for Goneril's being so wicked? Why?

## Act IV

## Scenes i-vi

### Vocabulary

المفردات					
مكافأة	reward	حافة	edge	على قيد الحياة	alive
خائف	scared	يسقط	fall	يتسلق	climb
شديد الانحدار	steep	حقل	field	الريف	the countryside
غريب	strange	مسطح / منبسطة	flat	علاج / يعالج	cure
مرعوب	terrified	أحمق	foolish	ميت	dead
جوهرة ثمينة	valuable jewel	فئران	mice	يلبس	dress
		حافضة نقود	purse	واجب	duty

### Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

### التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

يُنظر لأعلى	look up	يحارب من أجل	fight for
يخاف	blood runs cold	يصل إلى	get to
يستولى على السلطة	take power	ينظر إلى أسفل	look down
يستيقظ	wake up	يترك / يطلق سراح	let go

## Scene Text

[In the French camp. Cordelia, a Doctor and Soldiers enter.]

**CORDELIA:** I've heard that my father is now mad. Look for him in every field and bring him to me.

[An Officer exits.]

Can anyone **cure**<sup>(1)</sup> him? I wish I could make him feel better again.

**DOCTOR:** There is a cure, madam. He needs lots of rest.

**CORDELIA:** Find him quickly! I don't want him to hurt himself first.

[A Messenger<sup>(2)</sup> enters.]

**MESSENGER:** I have some news, madam. The British army is coming here.

**CORDELIA:** Our French army is ready for **war**<sup>(3)</sup>. Oh dear father, I haven't returned to England to **take power**<sup>(4)</sup> for myself. I only fight for love, and as a **duty**<sup>(5)</sup> to my father.

[They exit.]



(5) واجب

(3) حربية

(4) يستولى على السلطة

(1) علاج / يعالج

(2) مبعوث / رسول

## Act IV, Scene v

*[In Gloucester's Castle. Regan enters with Oswald. Oswald has a letter.]*

**REGAN:** Oswald, what do you think is in my sister's letter to Edmund?

**OSWALD:** I don't know, madam.

**REGAN:** *[To herself.]* It was foolish to let Gloucester live, although he's **blind**<sup>(1)</sup>. Wherever he goes, people feel sorry for him and angry with us.

**OSWALD:** I must give this letter to Edmund.

**REGAN:** Our army is going tomorrow. Stay with us.

**OSWALD:** I can't stay, madam. My lady Goneril has told me to return to her.

**REGAN:** Why would Goneril write to Edmund? Let me open the letter.

**OSWALD:** Madam, you can't ...

**REGAN:** Listen! My husband is dead and I'm worried that Goneril wants to rule over all of the kingdom. Without a husband, I need the help of a clever man like Edmund. When you see him, give him this.

*[She gives him a letter.]*

If you see the blind traitor, remember this: There will be a **reward**<sup>(2)</sup> for the man who kills him.

**OSWALD:** If I meet old Gloucester, madam, I'll show you which lady I follow.

*[They exit.]*

## Act IV, Scene vi

*[In the countryside near Dover. Gloucester enters with Edgar. Edgar is dressed as a beggar but speaks as himself, not as Poor Tom.]*

**GLOUCESTER:** When will I get to the top of this hill?

**EDGAR:** You're climbing up the hill now.

**GLOUCESTER:** But I'm sure the ground is **flat**<sup>(3)</sup> here.

**EDGAR:** No, it's very **steep**<sup>(4)</sup>. Listen, can you hear the sea?

**GLOUCESTER:** No, I can't. But I think your voice has changed. You don't speak like a poor beggar now.

**EDGAR:** You're wrong. Nothing has changed.

**GLOUCESTER:** I think that you speak like an important person.



(3) مسطح / منبسطة

(4) شديد الانحدار

(1) أعمى

(2) مكافأة

**EDGAR:** Come on, sir; here's the place. Be careful. It's very high here. The fishermen that walk along the beach look like **mice**<sup>(1)</sup> from up here; I can't look down any more, because my **blood runs cold**<sup>(2)</sup>, I'm scared that I might fall.

**GLOUCESTER:** Is it very high? Then put me where you are standing now.

**EDGAR:** Give me your hand. You are now very close to the **edge**<sup>(3)</sup> of the cliff.

*[They are on flat ground.]*

**GLOUCESTER:** Let go of my hand<sup>(4)</sup>. Here's a **purse**<sup>(5)</sup> for you, my friend. Inside the purse is a **valuable jewel**<sup>(6)</sup>. Leave me here; say goodbye to me and let me hear you walk away.

**EDGAR:** Goodbye, sir. *[To himself.]* I hope this will help to cure him of his madness.

**GLOUCESTER:** I say goodbye to this world, and I only hope that Edgar is **alive**<sup>(7)</sup>.

So, goodbye, my friend.

*[He falls forward onto the ground.]*

**EDGAR:** Goodbye, sir.

*[To himself.]* If he had been where he thought he was, he would be dead now.

*[To Gloucester in a different voice.]* Hello, sir, are you alive or dead? Can you hear me, sir?

*[To himself.]* He may be dead. No, he's waking up. Who are you, sir?

**GLOUCESTER:** Go away and let me die.

**EDGAR:** You aren't bleeding and you can talk. But you've fallen from the top of a high cliff. It's amazing that you are alive. Say something.

**GLOUCESTER:** But have I fallen or not?

**EDGAR:** Yes, you fell from the top of this white cliff. Look how high it is. Look up.

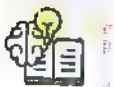
**GLOUCESTER:** Sadly, I can't. I'm blind.

**EDGAR:** Give me your arm. Stand up. Can you feel your legs?

**GLOUCESTER:** I can.

**EDGAR:** This is very strange. Who was that man that left you on the top of the cliff?

**GLOUCESTER:** He was a poor beggar.



(7) على قود الحياة

(5) حافظة نقود

(3) حافة

(1) فئران

(6) جوهرة ثمينة

(4) أفلتني / أتركني

(2) دمي يبرد / دودي

## Questions & Answers



### Critical Thinking Questions

1. Cordelia proved that she really loved her father. Do you agree? Why?

أثبتت كورديليا أنها تحب والدها حقًا. هل توافق؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I agree. She felt so sad when she heard about the bad treatment of her sisters to their father. She came with the French army to help the King.

2. In your opinion, why didn't Oswald agree to let Regan open Goneril's letter to Edmund?

في رأيك، لماذا لم يوافق أوزوالد على السماح لريجان بفتح رسالة جونيبريل إلى إدموند؟

- I think he wanted to appear loyal to his lady, Goneril.

3. Why, do you think, both Regan and Goneril ask for Edmund's support?

في رأيك، لماذا تطلب كل من ريجان وجونيبريل دعم إدموند؟

- After Cornwall's death, he seemed to be the only man who could lead the army and so he would become so powerful if the British army won the war.

4. "If I meet old Gloucester, madam, I'll show you which lady I follow." What did Oswald mean when he said this?

«إذا قابلت جلوستر العجوز، يا سيدتي، فسوف أظهر لك السيدة التي أتبعها». ماذا كان يقصد أوزوالد عندما قال هذا؟

- I think he meant that he was determined to kill Gloucester and get the reward

5. If you were Oswald, would you really desire to kill Gloucester? Why?

لو كنت مكان أوزوالد، هل كنت ستريغب حقًا في قتل جلوستر؟ لماذا؟

- No, I wouldn't. This would be a big mistake, as he would be an enemy to his two sons if he did so.

6. Why, do you think, Edgar deceived his father into making him believe that he really jumped off the cliff?

في رأيك، لماذا خدع إدجار والده ليُجعلهُ يعتقد أنه قفز بالفعل من الهاوية؟

- I think this would stop his father from trying to kill himself again.

7. Do you agree with Edgar when he deceived his father? Why?

هل تتفق مع إدجار عندما خدع والده؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't agree with him. He could tell his father the truth and try to prevent him from trying to kill himself.



8. "I say goodbye to this world, and I only hope that Edgar is alive." What does this sentence show about Gloucester's feelings?

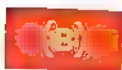
«أقول وداعاً لهذا العالم، وأتمنى فقط أن يكون إدجار على قيد الحياة». ماذا تظهر هذه الجملة عن مشاعر جلوستر؟

- It shows that he was sorry for what he did to Edgar and he remembered him and wished him well.

9. Why, do you think, Edgar didn't reveal his real identity to his father?

في رأيك، لماذا لم يكشف إدجار عن هويته الحقيقية لوالده؟

- I think he wanted to remain disguised to try to revenge himself and his father



### Longman Exercises & Previous Exams

10. "There is a cure, madam. He needs lots of rest," said the doctor. Do you think that rest could cure the King's madness? Why?

«هناك علاج يا سيدتي، إنه يحتاج إلى الكثير من الراحة». قال الطبيب. هل تعتقد أن الراحة يمكن أن تشفي جنون الملك؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't think so. King Lear suffered much which led to losing his mind completely

11. "Without a husband, I need the help of a clever man like Edmund," said Regan.

Do you think that Edmund was a good choice? Why?

قالت ريغان: «بدون زوج، أحتاج إلى مساعدة رجل ذكي مثل دموند». هل تعتقد أن إدموند كان اختيارًا جيدًا؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't think so. He can't be trusted as he betrayed his own father and brother to get what he wanted. So, he can easily betray her.

12. What do you think might have happened if Gloucester hadn't been blind?

ما الذي تعتقد أنه كان من الممكن أن يحدث لو لم يكن جلوستر أعمى؟

- I think he might have played a part in saving the King and fighting those evil daughters. He might have also been able to punish Edmund himself.

13. If you were Cordelia, would you feel sad for what happened to the King? Why?

(سوهاج/إدارة ملها)

لو كنت كورديليا، هل كنت ستحزن على ما حدث للملك؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I would. Although he treated her badly, she really loved him and couldn't let him down.

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. It would be ..... to ignore your elders' advice.  
☐ a) wise                      b) foolish                      c) intelligent                      d) fabulous
2. Most people are ..... of snakes, although some of them are harmless.  
☐ a) pleased                      b) content                      c) scared                      d) delighted
3. Winning the match was just a ..... for the effort the team had made.  
☐ a) conference                      b) punishment                      c) trophy                      d) reward
4. Our neighbour ..... the children in their best clothes for the party.  
☐ a) took off                      b) wore                      c) dressed                      d) put on
5. The children were found ..... and well after being missing for several hours in the forest.  
☐ a) retired                      b) straight                      c) dead                      d) alive

**2 Answer the following questions:**

1. If you were Edmund, who would you support to rule over the country, Regan or Goneril? Why?
2. Do you think that Oswald should have let Regan open Goneril's letter to Edmund? Why?
3. Should Edgar have told Gloucester his real identity after the trick he played on him? Why?
4. Why do you think Gloucester only remembered Edgar before he tried to kill himself?
5. If you were Gloucester, would you be easily tricked by Edgar? Why?
6. Do you think that Gloucester would have tried to kill himself if Edgar had told him about his real identity? Why?
7. "Oh, dear father, I haven't returned to England to take power for myself. I only fight for love and as a duty to my father," said Cordelia. What does this reflect about Cordelia's character?
8. If you were in Cordelia's place, would you behave the same way? Why?
9. Action speaks louder than words. Do you agree with this opinion? Why?
10. Do you think that King Lear deserved to be treated like this? Why?

## Act IV

## Scene VI, continued & Scene VII

### Vocabulary

					المفردات
battle	معركة	majesty	فخامة	recognise	يتعرف على
believe	يعتقد / يؤمن	nonsense	كلام فارغ / هراء	riches	مال / ثروة
creep	يزحف / يتسلل	patient	مريض	right	سوى / عادي
crime	جريمة	pocket	جيب	sense	كلام عاقل
drum	طبل	prisoner	سجين	stage	خشبة المسرح
judge	قاض	prize	جائزة	theatre	مسرح

### Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

### التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

feel one's way	يتحسس طريقه	(be) tempted to	يتم إغواؤه
take out	يسحب / يخرج	let go of	يفلت
creep up on	يرتفع على / يزحف	punished for	يُعاقب من أجل

### Scene Text

[In the countryside near Dover. Edgar is with Gloucester and King Lear.]

**KING LEAR:** Did you say that you know my voice, oh man without eyes! Yes, I am the King! But look at you, what have you done?

**GLOUCESTER:** Your *majesty*<sup>(1)</sup>, let me kiss your hand!

**KING LEAR:** I must clean it first.

**GLOUCESTER:** Do you not know me, sir?

**KING LEAR:** I don't know your eyes. Read this letter for me, please.

**GLOUCESTER:** But I can't see it.

**EDGAR:** [To himself.] If I read about this in a story, I wouldn't believe it was true. It is so sad.

**KING LEAR:** Read it!

**GLOUCESTER:** But look at my eyes!

**KING LEAR:** Oh, I understand. You want some money first. You have no eyes in your head and no money in your purse. But you understand how things work in this world.

**GLOUCESTER:** I feel my way.



(1) فخامة

**KING LEAR:** But you can see with your ears. We now know that a **judge**<sup>(1)</sup> will punish a poor man's **crime**<sup>(2)</sup> before a rich man's crime.

**GLOUCESTER:** Yes, sir.

**KING LEAR:** Rich men are not punished for the same crimes as a poor man is punished for. Why don't you get some glass eyes and pretend to see things that others do not, like a bad judge!

**EDGAR:** The King is talking both **sense**<sup>(3)</sup> and **nonsense**<sup>(4)</sup>!

*[Gloucester cries.]*

**KING LEAR:** Wait. I know you: your name is Gloucester. You must be patient.

**GLOUCESTER:** Oh, what a sad day this is!

**KING LEAR:** *[He stands on a rock.]* This rock is like a **stage**<sup>(5)</sup> in a theatre. I'll pretend to creep up on<sup>(6)</sup> my daughters' husbands and kill them!

*[A Gentleman enters with Attendants.]*

**GENTLEMAN:** Ah, there he is! Quick, get him!

*[To King Lear.]*

Sorry, sir, your dear daughter ...

**KING LEAR:** What? Am I a **prisoner**<sup>(7)</sup> now? Be good to me and I'll reward you.

But I need a doctor. My head is not right.

**GENTLEMAN:** You shall have anything you want, your majesty. You are the King and we'll do what you say.

**KING LEAR:** I may still live, then. But you'll need to run to get the reward.

*[He exits running. The Attendants run after him. The Gentleman exits.]*

**GLOUCESTER:** Oh, someone kill me before I am **tempted to**<sup>(8)</sup> kill myself!

**EDGAR:** Give me your hand, sir. I'll take you to a place where you'll be safe.

**GLOUCESTER:** Thank you.

*[Oswald enters.]*

**OSWALD:** Look, here's the prize! This man without eyes will make me rich!

*[He takes out<sup>(9)</sup> his sword.]* Get ready to die, you old traitor!

**GLOUCESTER:** I want to die. I hope you're strong enough to do it.

*[Edgar stands between them.]*

**OSWALD:** Who are you? Why are you helping a traitor? Let go of his arm.

**EDGAR:** I will not let go.

**OSWALD:** Let go of this man or you'll die too!

**EDGAR:** Don't come near the old man.

**OSWALD:** Then take out your sword!

*[They fight. Oswald falls.]*



(9) يستخرج / يخرج

(7) سجين  
(8) أنا أميل / أميل إلى

(5) حشيد المسرح  
(6) يرتفع على

(3) كلام عاقل  
(4) كلام هائل / هراء

(1) قاض  
(2) جريمة

**OSWALD:** Oh, I'm dying! Before you take my purse, give the letters that I'm carrying to Edmund, the Duke of Gloucester. You'll find him with the British army. Oh, goodbye world!  
[He dies.]

**GLOUCESTER:** Is he dead?

**EDGAR:** Yes. Sit down, sir, and rest. Let's look in his pockets; these letters may be useful. Let's read them.

[He finds a letter and reads it.]

'Remember, Edmund. Do not let Albany win the **battle**<sup>(1)</sup>. If you help me, I will give you more power and **riches**<sup>(2)</sup>.

Yours

Goneril.'

That evil woman! She wants Edmund to kill her good husband. I will show this letter to the Duke of Albany. It's **lucky**<sup>(3)</sup> that I can tell him of their plan to kill him.

[The sound of a drum<sup>(4)</sup>.]

**EDGAR:** [To Gloucester, his father.] Come, give me your hand. I'll take you to a friend's house.

[They exit together.]

### Act IV, Scene vii

[A tent<sup>(5)</sup> in the French camp. Cordelia enters with Kent, a Doctor and a Gentleman.]

**CORDELIA:** Please put on some better clothes, Kent.

**KENT:** I'm sorry, madam, but I must stay in this disguise. You must pretend that you don't know me until I tell you.

**CORDELIA:** I understand, my lord. [To the Doctor.] How's the King?

**DOCTOR:** Madam, he's still sleeping.

**CORDELIA:** My father has become like a child. Please, doctor, try to cure my father, whose children have made him mad.

**DOCTOR:** If you like, we can wake up the King. He's slept for a long time.

**CORDELIA:** You know what's best for him.

[Cordelia and the doctor are standing together in a tent in the French camp. Two servants carry King Lear in on a chair. He's wearing a clean shirt and trousers. He is sleeping.]

**DOCTOR:** Please, play some music.

**CORDELIA:** Oh, my dear father, let my kisses help to make you feel better. My sisters have done you so much damage!

**KENT:** Kind and dear princess!

**CORDELIA:** How could they send your kind face out into a storm? I would even keep an animal inside on a night like that, but you, poor father, had to stay with beggars in old straw. I can't believe you are still alive after all that.

[To the Doctor.] He's waking up. How are you, father? Do you **recognise**<sup>(6)</sup> me?



(5) خيمة  
(6) يتعرف على

(3) محظوظ  
(4) طبلة

(1) معركة  
(2) مال / ثروة



## Questions & Answers



### Critical Thinking Questions

1. "If I read about this in a story, I wouldn't believe it was true. It is so sad." What does Edgar mean by these words?

إذا قرأت عن هذا في إحدى القصص، فلن أصدق أنه صحيح. «إنه أمر محزن». ماذا يعني إدجار بهذه الكلمات؟

- I think that he expresses his shock at the King's mental health.

2. Why do you think the King said that Gloucester needed money to read the letter?

في رأيك لماذا قال الملك إن جلوستر بحاجة إلى المال لقراءة الرسالة؟

- I think that he meant that nobody did anything good unless he was given a reward just as his two daughters.

3. Why do you think Edgar says that King Lear is talking both 'sense and nonsense'? [SR]

في رأيك لماذا يقول إدجار إن الملك لير يتحدث بمزيج من «المنطق والهرء»؟

- The King talked about many things. Some of them were logical whereas others were not.

4. In your opinion, what made Gloucester wish that someone would kill him before he kills himself?

في رأيك، ما الذي جعل جلوستر يمتنى أن يقتله أحد قبل أن يقتل نفسه؟

- I think that he was shocked at seeing the King in such a bad condition.

5. Do you think that the King went completely mad? Why?

هل تعتقد أن الملك أصيب بالجنون التام؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't think so. I think he was shocked because of his daughters' bad treatment.

6. Edgar proved that he is such a good son that he is ready to sacrifice his life for his father. Do you agree? Why?

أثبت إدجار أنه، بن صائح لدرجة أنه مستعد للتضحية بحياته من أجل والده. هل توافق؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I agree. He was ready to fight Oswald to protect his father.

7. Why do you think Oswald asked Edgar to give the letters to Edmund?

في رأيك لماذا طلب أوزوالد من إدجار أن يعطي الرسائل إلى إدموند؟

- In my opinion, he thought that these letters are very important for Edmund and the army.

8. How do you feel about the death of Oswald? Why do you feel like this? [SR]

ما هو شعورك بشأن وفاة أوزوالد؟ لماذا تشعر بهذا؟

- I feel pleased. He was an evil man who wanted to kill a helpless man only for a reward.

9. Why do you think Kent wanted to remain in disguise?

في رأيك لماذا أراد كينت أن يبقى متنكرًا؟

- I think he thought it was better to help the King if he was in disguise.

10. "My father has become like a child." Do you agree with Cordelia when she said this? Why?

«لقد أصبح والدي مثل طفل». هل تتفق مع كورديليا عندما قالت هذا؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I agree with her. He became weak and wanted to be treated so kindly.

11. "I want to die. I hope you're strong enough to do it." What do these words show about Gloucester's feelings?

«أريد أن أموت. أتمنى أن تكون قويًا بما يكفي للقيام بذلك». ماذا تُظهر هذه الكلمات عن مشاعر جلوستر؟

- They show that he has become desperate and hopeless after his suffering and seeing the King's suffering.



### Longman Exercises & Previous Exams

12. "Rich men are not punished for the same crimes as a poor man is punished for," said King Lear. Do you agree with this opinion? Why?

قال الملك لير: «لا يعاقب الأغنياء على نفس الجرائم التي يعاقب عليها الفقراء». هل تتفق مع هذا الرأي؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I agree. In Lear's life, his daughters committed many crimes that they aren't punished for such as treating the King badly and making Gloucester blind.

13. If you were King Lear, would you blame your daughters' husbands for the cruelty of Regan and Goneril? Why?

Longman

لو كنت مكان الملك لير، هل كنت ستلوم أزواج بناتك على قسوة ريغان وجونريل؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I would. They should have been stricter with their wives who were ungrateful to their father.

14. Why do you think Regan wanted to kill Gloucester?

(سيوطة/إدارة منقوطة)

في رأيك لماذا أردت ريغان قتل جلوستر؟

- Maybe, she was afraid that he might have some power left to help the King regain his kingdom.

15. If you were Cordelia, would you return to England to save your father? Why? Why not?

(النقيلية/إدارة للعزلة)

لو كنت مكان كورديليا هل كنت ستعود إلى إنجلترا لإنقاذ والدك؟ لماذا؟ لماذا لا؟

- No, I wouldn't. Although this might help the King, it can affect the country's political state

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The ..... sentenced the thief to five years in prison.  
☐ a) officer                      b) judge                      c) assistant                      d) inspector
2. I can't make ..... of these modern art paintings.  
☐ a) test                      b) chance                      c) sense                      d) space
3. We all must work hard in a unity to win the ..... against terrorism.  
☐ a) battle                      b) talk                      c) duty                      d) force
4. About 1,000 people marched, beating ..... and carrying flags in the parade.  
☐ a) kids                      b) cellos                      c) drums                      d) phones
5. Fame and ..... are two of the most important things that young men dream of.  
☐ a) riches                      b) poverty                      c) morals                      d) sorrow

**2 Answer the following questions:**

1. Do you think that the King didn't really know Gloucester? Why?
2. Gloucester seemed to love the King very much. Was he right to do so? Why?
3. "I'll pretend to creep up on my daughters' husbands and kill them!" Do you think that the King really wanted to do what he said? Why?
4. "Look, here's the prize! This man without eyes will make me rich!" What does these words show about Oswald's character?
5. Edgar has bravely saved his father and his country as well. Do you agree? Why?
6. If you were Kent, would you refuse Cordelia's request to put on better clothes? Why?
7. Which do you prefer in your life: money or power? Why?

## Act IV

## Scene vii, continued & Act V, Scenes i-iii

### Vocabulary

### المفردات

apart	بعيداً	equal	مثل / ند	poison	سم
birth	ميلاد	forget	ينسى	ruler	حاكم
blow	ينفخ	forgive	يسامح / يفر	starve	يتضور / يموت جوع
brave	شجاع	guard	يحرس	suffer	يعاني
cage	قفص	honestly	بشرف / بأمانة	support	يدعم
death	موت	invade	يغزو	trumpet	بوق
disguise	يتخفى	join	يتحد / يضم	trust	ثقة / يثق في
dry	يجف	officers	ضباط	wheel	عجلة

### Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

### التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

a bitter pill to swallow	حقيقة صادمة	get home	يعود إلى وطنه
take control of	يستولي على	put chains	يقيد بالسلاسل

### Scene Text

[A tent in the French camp. Cordelia talks with Kent, a Doctor and a Gentleman.]

**KING LEAR:** What are you doing? You shouldn't help me to live. You may be happy, but I feel like I'm on a wheel of fire<sup>(1)</sup>.

**CORDELIA:** Sir, do you know who I am?

**KING LEAR:** Where am I? Is it day or night?

**CORDELIA:** Look at me, please. No, you don't have to kneel before me.

**KING LEAR:** Lady, I'm a very foolish<sup>(2)</sup> old man, more than eighty years old, and I think I'm a little bit mad. I think I should know you, and also this man ... [He points to Kent.]

... but I'm not sure. I can't remember putting on these clothes and I don't know where I stayed last night. Don't laugh at<sup>(3)</sup> me, but is it possible that you're my daughter, Cordelia?

**CORDELIA:** It's true! Yes, I am! I am!



(3) يستهزئ

(1) أدنى عجلة من النار

(2) أحمق

**KING LEAR:** Are you crying? Yes, you are. Please don't cry. If you have some **poison**<sup>(1)</sup> for me, I'll drink it. Your sisters have been cruel to me. You have a good reason to be cruel to me, but they do not.

**CORDELIA:** I'll never be cruel to you, father.

**KING LEAR:** Am I in France?

**KENT:** No, your majesty. You're in your own kingdom.

**KING LEAR:** This can't be true.

**DOCTOR:** I think it's better to leave now. He needs to sleep.

**KING LEAR:** *[To Cordelia.]* Please, can you **forgive**<sup>(2)</sup> me? I'm old and foolish. It's better to forget me now.

### Act V, Scene I

*[In the British camp near Dover. Edmund enters with Regan.]*

**REGAN:** Now, Edmund. Tell me honestly, are you working for my sister, Goneril?

**EDMUND:** I am not, madam.

**REGAN:** So, you're not helping her to take my lands from me?

**EDMUND:** No, you mustn't think these things.

**REGAN:** I don't **trust**<sup>(3)</sup> my sister. Edmund, please don't work with her.

**EDMUND:** Don't worry. She and her husband the Duke of Albany ...

*[The Duke of Albany enters with Goneril and some soldiers.]*

**GONERIL:** *[To herself.]* I must not let Edmund work for my sister.

**ALBANY:** Regan, have you heard the news? The King is with his daughter, Cordelia, and others who are helping him. We must be ready to fight now because the French army has **invaded**<sup>(4)</sup>. But the French are not here to help Lear. I think we have been too cruel to the King.

**REGAN:** Why are you telling me this now?

**GONERIL:** We must join together against the enemy.

**ALBANY:** Let's plan what to do with the **officers**<sup>(5)</sup>. Then we can go into **battle**<sup>(6)</sup>.

**EDMUND:** I can help you. I'll join you in your tent soon.

**REGAN:** Are you coming with us, Goneril?

**GONERIL:** No.

**REGAN:** Please, come with us.

**GONERIL:** *[To herself.]* Oh, I know why you want me to go. You don't want me to stay here with Edmund.



(5) ضباط

(6) معركة

(3) يثق بـ

(4) غزى

(1) سم

(2) يغفر/يسامح



[To Regan.] I'll come soon.

[As they exit, Edgar enters. He is still *disguised*<sup>(1)</sup> as Poor Tom.]

**EDGAR:** [To Albany.] I'm a poor man, but please listen to me. Before you fight the battle with the French, read this letter. If you win the battle, blow your *trumpet*<sup>(2)</sup> so I know what has happened. I can prove what is written there. Good luck!

[Edgar exits. Albany reads the letter and then exits. Then Edmund enters.]

**EDMUND:** I've told both the sisters that I'll help them to win more power. Now they do not trust each other. So, who should I help the most? Regan? Goneril? Both of them? Or perhaps neither of them. I can't take power if both sisters are living. Let me think ... Goneril still has a husband. I'll use his help to win the battle. But I know that her husband feels sorry for King Lear and Cordelia, so when the battle is over, he must die. Then King Lear and Cordelia will be my prisoners! Now it is time for me to start to *take control of*<sup>(3)</sup> the kingdom!

[He exits.]

### Act V, Scene ii

[In a field between the British and the French. There are sounds of a battle. Edgar and Gloucester enter.]

**EDGAR:** King Lear has lost the battle, and he's now a prisoner with his daughter Cordelia. *This is a bitter pill to swallow*<sup>(4)</sup>. Quick, we must leave.

**GLOUCESTER:** I can't go on. Leave me. I can die here.

**EDGAR:** No. Remember that we can't choose the time of our death, just as we can't choose the time of our birth.

**GLOUCESTER:** You're right.

**EDGAR:** Let's go.

[They exit.]

### Act V, Scene iii

[In the British camp, near Dover. Edmund enters with King Lear and Cordelia, some soldiers and a Captain. Lear and Cordelia are prisoners.]

**EDMUND:** Guard them carefully until we know what Goneril and Regan want to do with them.

**CORDELIA:** I'm not worried about myself. I only feel sad for the King because he has *suffered*<sup>(5)</sup> so much. Father, do you want to see my sisters?

**KING LEAR:** No, I do not! I'd prefer to go to prison. There we can be together. We'll sing like birds in a *cage*<sup>(6)</sup>!



(5) مائى  
(6) القفس

(3) يتحكم فى / يستعبد على  
(4) هدد - حبة مريرة تبتلعها

(1) متخفى  
(2) بوق

**EDMUND:** Take them away from me.

**KING LEAR:** I'm so happy that you're with me, Cordelia. We won't be apart again. Dry your eyes, daughter. Our enemies will **starve**<sup>(1)</sup> before they make us cry! Let us go.

*[King Lear and Cordelia exit with the guards.]*

**EDMUND:** Come here, Captain. Follow the prisoners to the prison. Read this message and do as it says. If you do this, I'll reward you.

*[Edmund gives the Captain a note.]*

**CAPTAIN:** I'll do what the message says, my lord.

*[The Captain and the soldiers exit. Albany enters with Goneril, Regan and some soldiers.]*

**ALBANY:** Edmund, you were very brave in battle today and we did well to win. Do you have the prisoners? Bring them to me so I can decide what is best for the future of our kingdom.

**EDMUND:** Albany, I have sent the old King to a prison with a guard. We can't let people see him. He's old, and his age will make the soldiers who see him feel sorry for him. They might want to **support**<sup>(2)</sup> him. I've sent Queen Cordelia to prison with him. You can see them tomorrow.

**ALBANY:** Listen, Edmund. You're a good soldier, but you aren't my **equal**<sup>(3)</sup>. You shouldn't make these decisions.

**REGAN:** I see kind Edmund as an equal. He led our soldiers well today in battle. I think he can call himself equal to you.

**GONERIL:** Wait, sister. I understand what you're planning. You want Edmund to help you to take power from me and my husband. But this won't happen, because first, Edmund will help me to take power from you!

**REGAN:** *[To Edmund.]* Edmund, help me to take power from my evil sister. If you say yes, you won't be the equal of Albany and Goneril, but you'll be their **lord**<sup>(4)</sup> and **ruler**<sup>(5)</sup>!



(5) حاكم

(3) متساوي  
(4) سيد

(1) جوع  
(2) يدعم

## Questions & Answers

### Critical Thinking Questions

1. Why do you think that Lear kneels before Cordelia?

في رأيك لماذا يركع لير أمام كورديليا؟

- He wants her to forgive him because he knew he was wrong to send her away.

2. "Your sisters have been cruel to me. You have a good reason to be cruel to me, but they do not." Why does Lear say this to Cordelia?

«لقد كانت أخواتك قاسيات معي، لديك سبب وجيه لتكوني قاسية معي، لكنهم ليس لديهم ذلك». لماذا يقول لير هذا لكورديليا؟

- He sent Cordelia away, so he knows she could be angry with him. He cannot understand why his other daughters have been cruel to him.

3. "The French are not here to help Lear. I think we have been too cruel to the King." What does this tell us about Albany?

«الفرنسيون ليسوا هنا لمساعدة لير، أعتقد أننا كنا قاسيين جدًا مع الملك». ماذا يخبرنا هذا عن ألباني؟

- We learn that he is a good man and wants to help Lear. He is starting to see that his wife is not a good person.

4. "I've told both sisters that I'll help them to win more power. Now they do not trust each other." What does this tell us about Edmund?

«لقد أخبرت الأختين أنني سأساعدهما على الفوز بمزيد من القوة، والآن لا تثقان ببعضهما البعض». ماذا يخبرنا هذا عن إدموند؟

- It tells us that he will do anything to try to take control. He is not a man to be trusted.

5. Why do you think Gloucester asked Edgar to let him die where he was?

لماذا تعتقد أن جلوستر طلب من إدجار أن يتركه يموت حيث كان؟

- I think he was desperate and very sad after hearing what had happened to the King.

6. "Remember that we can't choose the time of our death, just as we can't choose the time of our birth." What do these sentences show about Edgar?

«تذكر أننا لا نستطيع اختيار وقت وفاتنا، كما لا يمكننا اختيار وقت ميلادنا». ماذا تظهر هذه الجمل عن إدجار؟

- I think they show that he is a wise and persuasive person.

7. In your opinion, what did Edmund write in the message he gave the captain?

في رأيك ماذا كتب إدموند في الرسالة التي سلمها للقائد؟

- I think he asked the captain to kill Lear and Cordelia so as to have a chance to rule over the country after getting rid of the others.

8. Why do you think Albany asked Edmund to bring the prisoners?

لماذا تعتقد أن ألباني طلب من إدموند إحضار السجناء؟

- In my opinion, he wanted to release King Lear and Cordelia because he was sure they are good and innocent.

### 9. Do you think Albany trusts Edmund? Why?

[SB]

هل تعتقد أن ألباني يثق بإدموند؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't think so. He knew that he betrayed his father, so he is only using him in the fight.

### 10. "I see kind Edmund as an equal. He led our soldiers well today in battle. I think he can call himself equal to you." What does this tell us about Regan?

[WB]

«أرى إدموند اللطيف على قدم المساواة. لقد قاد جنودنا بشكل جيد اليوم في المعركة. أعتقد أنه يمكن أن يقول عن نفسه إنه

مساوي لك». ماذا يخبرنا هذا عن ريغان؟

- It tells us that she is ready to use Edmund to try to take power from Goneril and Albany.



## Longman Exercises & Previous Exams

### 11. In your opinion, what might have happened if King Lear hadn't lost the battle?

[Longman]

في رأيك، ماذا كان سيحدث لو لم يخسر الملك لير المعركة؟

- I think he might have been able to punish his ungrateful daughters and correct his mistake.

### 12. What lesson do you learn from Cordelia's situation with the king?

[Longman]

ما الدرس الذي تعلمته من موقف كورديليا مع الملك؟

- I think we learn that we should be grateful and loyal to our parents, even if they treated us badly sometimes.

### 13. "The greed for power is more dangerous than the greed for money." Do you agree with this opinion? Why?

[Longman]

«إن الطمع في السلطة أخطر من الطمع في المال» هل تتفق مع هذا الرأي؟ ولماذا؟

- Yes, I agree. The greed for power leads to crimes and violence towards people just as the case with Regan, Goneril and Edmund.

### 14. If you were the Duke of Albany, would you fight the French soldiers? Why/why not?

(الشرقية/إدارة الحسنية)

لو كنت دوقاً ألبانياً، هل كنت ستقاتل الجنود الفرنسيين؟ لماذا/لماذا لا؟

- Yes, I would. The French army invaded his own country which he must defend.

### 15. How do you think King Lear felt when he met Cordelia?

(القلمرة/إدارة لشراعية)

ما رأيك في شعور الملك لير عندما التقى بكورديليا؟

- I think he felt ashamed for his bad treatment of her and her gratitude towards him.

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Thousands of people will ..... if food doesn't reach the city.  
☐ a) eat                      b) feed                      c) starve                      d) plead
2. My brother will never ..... me for losing his camera.  
☐ a) assist                      b) forgive                      c) forget                      d) fight
3. The officer told the soldier to ..... the entrance of the police station.  
☐ a) guard                      b) attend                      c) repent                      d) rebuild
4. .... is a substance that causes death or harm if it gets into the body.  
☐ a) Medicine                      b) Sugar                      c) Vaccine                      d) Poison
5. The election defeat was a bitter ..... for the politician to swallow.  
☐ a) bel.                      b) bill                      c) ball                      d) pill

**2 Answer the following questions:**

1. In your opinion, why does King Lear say that if Cordelia has poison, he will drink it?
2. If you were Cordelia, would you forgive your father so easily? Why?
3. If you were Edmund, would you agree to help Regan against her sister? Why?
4. Do you think that Goneril doesn't really want Regan to stay with Edmund? Why?
5. Why do you think Edgar asked Albany to read the letter he gave him before the battle?
6. "I only feel sad for the King because he has suffered so much." What does this show about Cordelia?
7. Do you think that Edmund gave a good reason for sending King Lear and Cordelia away to prison? Why?
8. Do you agree with Albany when he says that Edmund isn't his equal? Why?
9. How do you think Albany and Regan react to what Regan said about making Edmund ruler?
10. "You have a good reason to be cruel to me, but they do not," said King Lear. If you were Cordelia, would you really be cruel to your father because of that reason? Why?



## Vocabulary

## المفردات

crown	تاج	murderer	قاتل	stretcher	نقالة
equally	بصورة متعادلة / بالتساوي	offstage	خارج المسرح	title	لقب
guide	مرشد	rat	فار	treason	خيانة
laws	قوانين	resign	يستقيل	trick	يخدع
liar	كاذب	soldier	جندي		

## Expressions, Phrases &amp; Prepositions

## التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

come full circle	يعود للنقطة البداية	tear up	يدمر / يمزق
heavy heart	حزين	work for	يعمل لصالح

Summary

## Scene Text

[In the British camp, near Dover.]

**GONERIL:** My sister Regan, do you really want Edmund to help you to take my lands?

**ALBANY:** You can't do this, Edmund.

**EDMUND:** You can't tell me what to do, Albany.

**ALBANY:** Yes I can!

**REGAN:** [To Edmund.] Prove that you want to help me, Edmund, by fighting Albany!

**ALBANY:** Listen to me. Edmund, I **arrest**<sup>(1)</sup> you for **treason**<sup>(2)</sup>.

[He points to Goneril.] And you, my wife. Were you planning to take Regan's land from her? With Edmund's help? It's not your land to take. It was given equally to you and Regan by your father!

**GONERIL:** But we could have more power, husband!

**REGAN:** I feel ill. My **stomach**<sup>(3)</sup> hurts!

**GONERIL:** [To herself.] Good. If you aren't ill, I will never trust poison again.

**ALBANY:** You have a sword, Edmund. I'm ready to fight you, unless anyone else wants to fight you first!

**EDMUND:** I'm happy to fight anyone who calls me a traitor or a **liar**<sup>(4)</sup>. Come then, who wants to fight me?



(3) معدة

(4) كاذب

(1) يقبض على

(2) خيانة

**REGAN:** Help me. I feel worse.

**ALBANY:** Regan isn't well. Take her to my tent.

*[Regan is helped offstage.]*

Now, if any man here will fight Edmund the traitor, come now, or I'll fight him myself.

*[Edgar enters.]*

Who are you?

**EDGAR:** I have lost my name and title to a traitor; but I'm a brave soldier. Where's Edmund, who calls himself the Duke of Gloucester?

**EDMUND:** I'm here.

**EDGAR:** Then take out your sword. You're a traitor to your brother and your father. I'm ready to fight you to prove you are a liar to everyone you work for.

*[They fight. Edmund falls.]*

**ALBANY:** Edmund is hurt, can you **save**<sup>(1)</sup> him? I want to find out what he knows!

**GONERIL:** They **tricked**<sup>(2)</sup> you into fighting, Edmund.

**ALBANY:** Be quiet, madam, or I will make you be quiet by reading this letter that you wrote to Edmund.

*[He gives Goneril the letter she wrote to Edmund.]*

*[To Goneril.]* No, don't try to **tear up**<sup>(3)</sup> the letter! You know what you wrote.

**GONERIL:** Husband, it's true that I wanted Edmund to help me take Regan's land. The **laws**<sup>(4)</sup> of the kingdom are mine, not yours. Who can punish me for it?

**ALBANY:** You're an evil woman!

*[Goneril exits.]*

**EDMUND:** Albany, I'm guilty of wanting to help both Goneril and Regan, and more, much more. This is the end for me now. *[To Edgar.]* But who are you? If you're a good man, I forgive you.

**EDGAR:** Let us forgive each other. My name's Edgar and I am your brother. Our father has lost his eyes because of you!

**EDMUND:** I was wrong. I thought that I could be the best man in the kingdom, but now I'm the worst. **The wheel has come full circle**<sup>(5)</sup>.

**ALBANY:** *[To Edgar.]* I thought that you were an important man. I **promise**<sup>(6)</sup> you, I never hated you, or your father!

**EDGAR:** I know that, Albany.



(5) أصبحت العجلة دائرة كاملة  
(6) وعد

(3) يمزق  
(4) قوانين

(1) ينقذ  
(2) خدع

**ALBANY:** Where have you been hiding? How did you know what happened to your father?

**EDGAR:** I've been helping him, my lord. I disguised myself as a beggar, then I met my father, who's now blind. I became his guide, and stopped him from killing himself. I never told him who I was. That was a big mistake. Just an hour ago, I told him everything, but his heart was too weak. He died smiling.

*[An officer enters with a knife covered in blood<sup>(1)</sup>.]*

**OFFICER:** Help! Oh, help me!

**EDGAR:** What is it? Why is there blood on that knife?

**OFFICER:** It came from the heart of ... Oh, she's dead!

**ALBANY:** Who's dead? Tell us.

**OFFICER:** Goneril, your wife, sir! And her sister Regan. Goneril has killed herself, and she poisoned Regan before she died.

*[Kent enters.]*

**EDGAR:** Here is Kent.

**KENT:** I have come to see the King. Is he here?

**ALBANY:** Tell us, Edmund, where is the King? And where is Cordelia?

*[The bodies of Goneril and Regan are carried in on stretchers<sup>(2)</sup> by soldiers.]*

**KENT:** Oh, no! What's happened?

**ALBANY:** Cover their faces.

**EDMUND:** I must do one good thing before I die.

Quickly, go to the castle; I wrote a message asking for the deaths of King Lear and Cordelia.

**EDGAR:** Who did you write this message to? We must stop it!

**EDMUND:** *[To the Officer.]* Take my sword. Give it the Captain and he'll know that I have changed the order.

**ALBANY:** Run! Quickly!

*[The Officer exits.]*

**EDMUND:** The message tells the Captain to kill Cordelia in the prison<sup>(3)</sup>. We wanted people to think that she killed herself.

**ALBANY:** Please let her be safe! Take him away.



دور (3)

دور (1)  
دور (2)

**KING LEAR:** Oh, this is terrible. She is gone forever!

**KENT:** Oh, your majesty!

*[Edmund is carried off. King Lear enters with Cordelia dead in his arms. Edgar and the Captain follow.]*

**KING LEAR:** You're all murderers<sup>(1)</sup> and traitors! We should have saved her; now she's gone forever<sup>(2)</sup>! Her voice was always soft and gentle.

*[He sees Kent.]* Aren't you Kent?

**KENT:** Yes, I am. And I've followed you since your madness began.

**KING LEAR:** You're welcome here.

**KENT:** My heart is heavy<sup>(3)</sup>. Your eldest daughters have died too.

*[The Captain enters.]*

**CAPTAIN:** Edmund is dead, my lord.

**ALBANY:** He isn't important now. My friends, these are my plans. We'll do everything to help King Lear feel better. I will resign<sup>(4)</sup> and give my power back to the old King. Edgar and Kent, return to your homes and I'll make sure that my friends are rewarded and my enemies punished.

**KING LEAR:** *[To Cordelia.]* Why should a rat have life, and you have no life at all? I'll never see you again.

*[King Lear dies.]*

**KENT:** Oh, my heart will break!

**EDGAR:** He's gone.

**KENT:** He was very ill. I'm surprised that he lived for so long.

**ALBANY:** Carry him out carefully.

*[To Kent and Edgar.]* My friends, without the King, you two will rule this kingdom.

**EDGAR:** We must remember this sad day.

*[He puts on the crown.]*

The oldest man has suffered the most; we young people will never see as much as Lear, nor live as long as this good King.

*[They exit.]*

THE END



(3) قلبي حزين  
(4) يستقيل / يتخلى عن منصبه

(1) قتل  
(2) لا تدب

## Questions & Answers



### Critical Thinking Questions

1. "You can't tell me what to do, Albany." What does this sentence show about Edmund?

«لا يمكنك أن تخبرني ماذا أفعل يا ألباني». ماذا تظهر هذه الجملة عن إدموند؟

- I think it shows that he became very proud, thinking that he was too powerful to be given orders by Albany.

2. "The laws of the kingdom are mine, not yours. Who can punish me for it?" Do you agree with Goneril when she said this? Why?

«قوانين المملكة لي، وليست لك. من يستطيع أن يعاقبني على ذلك؟». هل تتفق مع جونيبريل عندما قالت هذا؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't agree with her. Everyone should be punished for their evil actions, even if they belonged to a royal family.

3. If you were Edgar, would you forgive Edmund for his evil actions? Why?

لو كنت مكان إدجار، هل كنت ستغفر لإدموند أفعاله لشريرة؟ لماذا؟

- No, I wouldn't. He hurt Edgar badly and destroyed the family. He even betrayed his own father and thus he became blind.

4. Why do you think Edmund wanted to save Cordelia and King Lear's lives before he died?

لماذا تعتقد أن إدموند أراد إنقاذ حياة كورديليا والملك لير قبل وفاته؟

- Maybe, he began to regret his 'ill deeds and he wanted to be remembered for one good thing.

5. What's your opinion of Albany's decision to resign and give power back to King Lear?

ما رأيك بقرار ألباني الاستقالة وإعادة السلطة للملك لير؟

- I think it is an honourable decision to give power away to honour the King.

6. Do you think that Edgar deserves to rule the kingdom? Why?

هل تعتقد أن إدجار يستحق أن يحكم المملكة؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I think so. He is a noble and clever man. He also became wise and experienced through his sufferings in life.

7. Did you expect Regan and Goneril to die? Why?

[98]

هل توقعت موت ريغان وجونيبريل؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I did. They should have been punished for all their evil actions.

8. How did you feel at the end of the play? Why?

[99]

كيف كان شعورك في نهاية المسرحية؟ لماذا؟

- I felt sad for the death of King Lear and Cordelia after their suffering in prison.



9. Who is your favourite character in the play? Give reasons.

من هي شخصيتك المفضلة في المسرحية؟ أعط أسباباً.

- My favourite character is Cordelia. She was an innocent character who loved her father and sacrificed her life for him although he didn't treat her well.

10. What is the moral lesson in King Lear in your opinion?

ما هو الدرس الأخلاقي في رواية الملك لير من وجهة نظرك؟

- The moral of King Lear is the idea that a person's actions speak louder than words alone. It is very easy to say one thing and do another.



### Longman Exercises & Previous Exams

11. Who do you blame more: the foolishness of the father—King Lear—or the greed of daughters? Why?

من تلوم أكثر: حماقة الأب - الملك لير - أم جشع البنات؟ لماذا؟

- I blame the foolishness of the father because it gave the chance to the greedy daughters to misbehave and treat their father badly.

12. What might have happened if Edmund hadn't died?

ماذا كان من الممكن أن يحدث لو لم يموت إدموند؟

- He might have had the power to defeat Albany and rule the country himself.

13. "The wheel has come full circle." To what extent was this applied to the end of King Lear?

(Longman)

«لقد اكتملت دورة العجلة». إلى أي مدى تم تطبيق هذا القول على نهاية مسرحية الملك لير؟

- It was applied greatly to the play. The bad characters were punished for their evil deeds and many of the good characters were rewarded.

14. Cordelia was killed at the end. What do you think of that ending?

(العيوم/إدارة أبشواي)

لقد قُتلت كورديليا في النهاية، ما رأيك في هذه النهاية؟

- I think it is a sad and unfair ending. Cordelia was an innocent woman who only loved her father and wanted to help him.

15. "I'd prefer to go to prison. There we can be together." What do these words show about the King?

(المقهية/إمارة العزلة)

«أفضل أن أذهب إلى السجن، فهناك يمكننا أن نكون معاً». ماذا تظهر هذه الكلمات عن الملك؟

- They show that he was desperate. He also regretted his mistake when he sent her away.

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The manager was puzzled as the two candidates were ..... qualified for the job.

- ☐ a) vaguely                      b) equally                      c) helplessly                      d) believably

2. My new classmate is the biggest ..... I've ever known. He never tells the truth.

- ☐ a) liar                      b) beggar                      c) trigger                      d) truthful

3. With a heavy ....., she turned to wave goodbye and went to visit her friend in hospital.

- ☐ a) brain                      b) arm                      c) head                      d) heart

4. The tourist group was accompanied by a museum ..... during their visit.

- ☐ a) planner                      b) guide                      c) servant                      d) driver

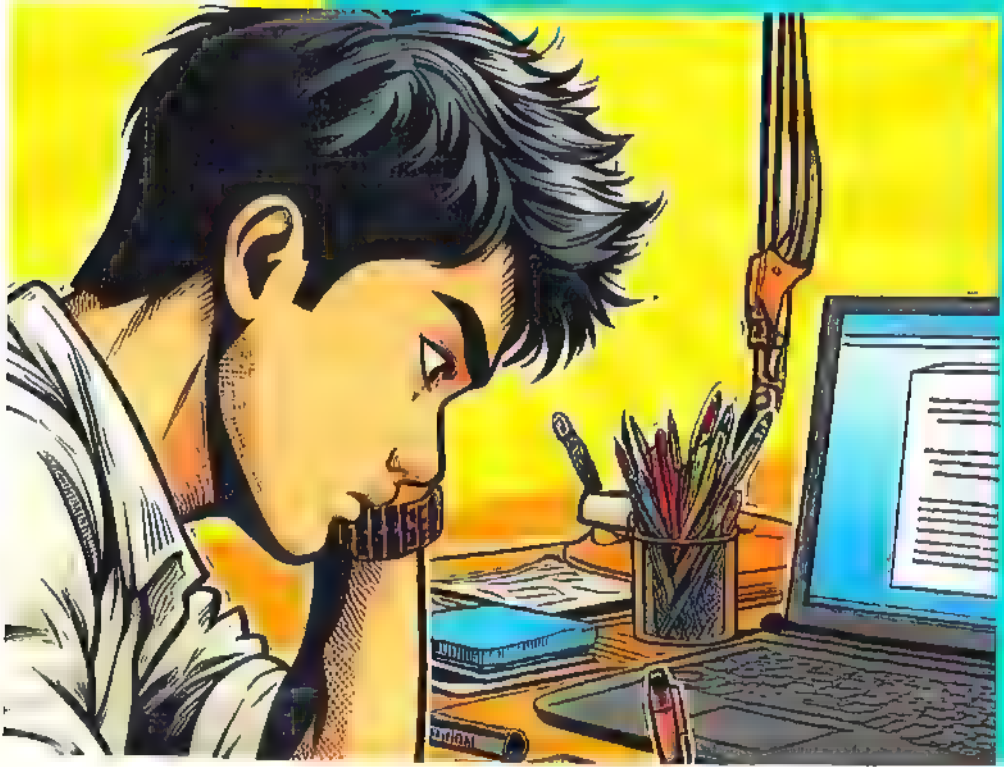
5. They had to use a ..... to carry the injured footballer off the pitch.

- ☐ a) stretcher                      b) ladder                      c) carriage                      d) ledge

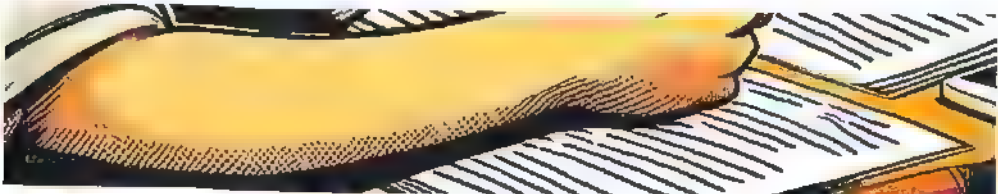
**2 Answer the following questions:**

- Do you think King Lear deserves the suffering he had in life? Why?
- Greed for power can lead people to betray even their relatives. Illustrate this giving examples from the play.
- Although taking Regan's land would make him more powerful, Albany refused it. What does this show about him?
- In your opinion, would Albany have ordered Goneril to be killed if she hadn't killed herself? Why?
- Do you think that Edmund deserves the punishment he received? Why?
- Do you think that Edgar will make a good king? Why?
- Who was the character in the play that you hated the most? Give reasons.
- Should Edgar have fought against Edmund? Why?
- In your opinion, is greed the only reason for human evil in life? Why?
- Do you agree that King Lear should have been wiser? Why?

# Advanced General Exercises



- Advanced General Exercises
- Advanced General Exercises Answers



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Dentists use ..... anaesthetic to drill into a tooth or even take it out.  
a) local                      b) national                      c) 'international                      d) body
2. Three ..... studies all arrived at the same conclusion about the virus.  
a) dependent                      b) independent                      c) intuitive                      d) imaginary
3. The small boat ..... against the waves and it could arrive safely.  
a) worked                      b) respired                      c) struggled                      d) expanded
4. The young man was ..... up by police and taken to the station for questioning.  
a) assigned                      b) released                      c) arrested                      d) picked
5. Cooking oils are ..... from plants, such as corn and sunflower.  
a) consumed                      b) intended                      c) extracted                      d) expired
6. The team is desperate to end a ten-game goal ..... and they are ranked last.  
a) draught                      b) drought                      c) current                      d) tide
7. In the field of drug development, the ..... of secrecy is deep and strong.  
a) culture                      b) habit                      c) study                      d) costume
8. Government plans for hospital closures provoked a ..... of protest.  
a) tide                      b) shore                      c) storm                      d) downpour
9. The woman who ..... this house died 30 years ago.  
a) is owning                      b) was owning                      c) owned                      d) owns
10. Yasser ..... very naughty these days. I need to ask a doctor about this behaviour.  
a) is being                      b) is                      c) will be                      d) was
11. My husband ..... the food while I'm cooking! It's very annoying.  
a) always taste                      b) used to taste  
c) was always tasting                      d) is always tasting
12. A: What's that terrible noise? B: The neighbours ..... a party.  
a) have                      b) are having                      c) having                      d) had
13. We are discussing the new project and ..... a good time as well.  
a) having                      b) had                      c) have                      d) being having
14. I can hear someone ..... outside. What is happening?  
a) is shouting                      b) shouts                      c) was snouting                      d) shouting
15. He is ..... to help his father with his work in the garden.  
a) supposing                      b) supposed                      c) suppose                      d) supposition
16. My father is always ..... in English literature and reading about the famous English writers.  
a) interesting                      b) interest  
c) interested                      d) being interesting

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The writer's new novel is a/an ..... of a short story he wrote about ten years ago.  
a) expansion      b) repetition      c) publication      d) publicity
2. The squash player finished the tournament in ..... by winning his last match very quickly and easily.  
a) fashion      b) style      c) affection      d) skill
3. Drawing, like writing, can be a ..... for expressing your feelings.  
a) system      b) form      c) vehicle      d) shape
4. Maha's husband was always nice to her in ..... , but treated her badly at home.  
a) general      b) private      c) special      d) public
5. My little sister has a ..... for languages. She learns them quite easily.  
a) reward      b) present      c) facility      d) disability
6. You should take another medicine as colds do not ..... to antibiotics.  
a) reply      b) respond      c) answer      d) respect
7. The film we watched at the cinema could ..... us to 18<sup>th</sup> century England.  
a) transport      b) transmit      c) transplant      d) transfuse
8. My uncle is the chairman of a ..... of TV sports stations.  
a) team      b) lab      c) network      d) speciality
9. This time next week, everyone ..... the final match.  
a) will have watched      b) will watch  
c) will be watching      d) shall watch
10. By the time he saves money, he ..... a new car.  
a) will buy      b) will have bought  
c) will be bought      d) will be buying
11. After he reads "Great Expectations", he ..... all Charles Dickens' novels.  
a) will read      b) will have read  
c) read      d) will have been read
12. By 2050, all people ..... organic food.  
a) will have been eaten      b) will be eaten  
c) will have eaten      d) will eat
13. I expect the price of petrol ..... by next week.  
a) will have been risen      b) will be risen  
c) will have risen      d) to have been risen
14. I have promised my father ..... high marks and join the Faculty of Medicine.  
a) to get      b) will get  
c) would get      d) to have got
15. Line 4 ..... the east and west of Cairo and make it easier for people to travel around the city.  
a) will be connected      b) is connected  
c) will connect      d) will have been connected



- 16.** I ..... 3 languages by the time I have finished this course.  
 a) will learn                      b) 'm going to have learnt  
 c) am learning                  d) will be learning

## Unit 9

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The area is protected as a wildlife ..... to protect the rare animals in it.  
☒ a) park                      ☐ b) preserve                      ☐ c) accessory                      ☐ d) garden
2. The sports centre is organising a fishing ..... to the lake for next week.  
☐ a) prize                      ☐ b) award                      ☐ c) expedition                      ☐ d) resort
3. The new chemistry book is a work of serious ..... of some Egyptian scientists.  
☐ a) scholarship                      ☐ b) championship  
☐ c) qualification                      ☐ d) implication
4. The school encourages a sense of ..... in its students through some volunteering activities.  
☐ a) society                      ☐ b) right                      ☐ c) democracy                      ☐ d) community
5. My sister cleans her contact lens with an ordinary saline .....  
☐ a) solution                      ☐ b) syrup                      ☐ c) tube                      ☐ d) research
6. She is a young woman who ..... trust in everyone she meets.  
☐ a) involves                      ☐ b) inspires                      ☐ c) aspires                      ☐ d) respires
7. I have typed out some lecture notes for the ..... of those people who were absent last week.  
☐ a) consummation                      ☐ b) sale                      ☐ c) benefit                      ☐ d) cure
8. In many countries, eighteen is considered the age of .....  
☐ a) majority                      ☐ b) minority                      ☐ c) acceptance                      ☐ d) qualification
9. When we were children, our parents ..... us to the children's theatres and buy us sweets.  
☐ a) are used to take                      ☐ b) use to often take  
☐ c) will often take                      ☐ d) often took
10. Trains ..... at our town's station. We find travelling easy.  
☐ a) usually stop                      ☐ b) are used to stop  
☐ c) used to stop                      ☐ d) were used to stopping
11. My father always ..... me with my homework and encouraged me a lot.  
☐ a) used to help                      ☐ b) helped                      ☐ c) would help                      ☐ d) all are possible
12. She ..... an amazing suntan by the time summer ended.  
☐ a) is used to having                      ☐ b) has had  
☐ c) had                      ☐ d) would have
13. In the past, all our food ..... in organic forms, but now we have both organic and non-organic forms.  
☐ a) didn't use to come                      ☐ b) used to come  
☐ c) didn't come                      ☐ d) would never come
14. She ..... the most popular girl when she sang.  
☐ a) would be                      ☐ b) used to be                      ☐ c) was                      ☐ d) all are possible

▶ 15. That coat is ..... for you to wear.

a) too small

c) too much small

b) slightly smaller

d) much small

16. Jane's dress is ..... yours.

a) almost as

c) similar to

b) slightly the same as

d) the same to

## Unit 10

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Although they live in the ocean, the salmon fish return to the river as ..... in order to breed.

a) teenagers

b) meals

c) adults

d) young

2. The local newspapers ..... a fierce attack on the Ministry of Health after the accident in the hospital.

a) involved

b) launched

c) shot

d) fired

3. Some dogs have a/an ..... sense of smell, so they are used by the police to detect things, such as drugs.

a) interested

b) eager

c) weak

d) keen

4. You can earn ..... money working as a professional footballer nowadays.

a) serious

b) dangerous

c) scarce

d) tiny

5. It is believed that hard work is the ..... to success in life.

a) syllabus

b) street

c) method

d) route

6. Don't ..... the fact that your brother lost his job, as he is very sensitive about his job.

a) publish

b) broadcast

c) spoil

d) speak

7. The evolution of smartphones and fast internet connections led to a great increase in the ..... marketing industry.

a) download

b) software

c) digital

d) colourful

8. House prices have ..... up this year because the prices of building materials have increased.

a) zoomed

b) spoiled

c) decreased

d) picked

9. After ....., the food was served on the table.

a) cooking

b) had cooked

c) been cooked

d) being cooked

10. Having ..... the bad news, she fainted and was carried to hospital.

a) told

c) been told

b) telling

d) to tell

11. After she ..... to school, she realised that she ..... the wrong homework.

a) got/had done

c) had got/had done

b) had got/d'd

d) got/did

12. I'd rather Ahmed ..... me yesterday.

a) visited

b) had visited

c) didn't visit

d) was visiting

13. I wish you ..... that bad car last week.

a) didn't buy

c) bought

b) had bought

d) hadn't bought

- ▶ 14. He is upset because he ..... his job.  
 a) had lost      b) lost      c) has lost      d) had been lost
15. The pharaohs believed in life after .....  
 a) death      b) had died      c) they had died      d) they die
16. The pharaohs ..... the Pyramids and other monuments.  
 a) have built      b) built      c) build      d) has built

## Unit 11

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We couldn't help laughing out loud at the ..... of the situation in the muddy playground. The players kept slipping down.  
 a) romance      b) comedy      c) tragedy      d) shortage
2. An essential piece of mountain climbing equipment is a climbing ..... to help you up and down.  
 a) windmill      b) slide      c) swing      d) harness
3. Mary talked about her new job with great ..... She seemed very excited.  
 a) collocation      b) collection      c) animation      d) respiration
4. A talented young artist designed the ..... for the new play.  
 a) scenery      b) site      c) sight      d) delight
5. Hundreds of students ..... against the war outside the American Congress.  
 a) showed      b) demonstrated      c) denounced      d) advocated
6. The actress agreed to give her ..... of the accident to journalists.  
 a) vision      b) sight      c) version      d) serial
7. The young priest is appointed to work at a Catholic ..... in Africa.  
 a) duty      b) task      c) fiction      d) mission
8. There was widespread ..... support for the new governmental policy.  
 a) fascinated      b) private      c) popular      d) hilarious
9. A: The car isn't moving, is it?  
 B: ..... It's coming towards us.  
 a) No, it isn't      b) No, it is      c) Yes, it is      d) Yes, it isn't
10. I don't suppose there is much damage, .....?  
 a) isn't it      b) do I      c) isn't there      d) is there
11. Boring, .....?  
 a) doesn't he      b) isn't it      c) hasn't he      d) was it
12. A ..... soldier is most likely to get shot in war.  
 a) cowardly      b) coward      c) cowardliness      d) cowardlier
13. Although he is my neighbour, I ..... know him.  
 a) nearly      b) hard      c) hardly      d) harder
14. How ..... your determination and will is!  
 a) strength      b) strong      c) strongly      d) stronger
15. He was wrong when he took it ..... and returned to work before recuperation.  
 a) easier      b) easily      c) easiest      d) easy
16. I think he wants to travel as ..... as .....  
 a) quickly/possible      b) quickly / possibly  
 c) quick/possible      d) quick/possibly

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Learning from experience is a good ..... for continuous improvement.  
a) analysis      b) prescription      c) recipe      d) guidebook
2. The ..... of the match will be shown later this evening.  
a) excerpts      b) highlights      c) wings      d) losses
3. Local newspapers took ..... at the famous actor for his indecent remarks.  
a) aim      b) goal      c) target      d) objective
4. We need someone outside the company to give us a/an ..... analysis.  
a) target      b) goal      c) aim      d) objective
5. The team ..... their first win of the season at the Premier League.  
a) recorded      b) reported      c) gave      d) took
6. If you are fed up with spams and unwanted ads, you can install a spam .....  
a) cleaner      b) caller      c) filter      d) advisor
7. Two men were arrested as the police officer proved that they were ..... to the terrorist action.  
a) outfits      b) accessories      c) accesses      d) appliances
8. The number of people claiming unemployment ..... rose as a result of the coronavirus crisis.  
a) crisis      b) loss      c) profit      d) benefit
9. I couldn't give my son ..... he needed.  
a) that      b) whose      c) what      d) who
10. All wanted to know the reason ..... I was late for the meeting.  
a) what      b) why      c) that      d) when
11. Look! That's the man .....  
a) we gave the money      b) we gave the money to  
c) who we gave the money      d) all are possible
12. Which one of the following sentences is correctly structured?  
a) The dog, she bought last week, barks a lot.  
b) The dog which she bought last week barks a lot.  
c) The dog, which she bought it last week, barks a lot.  
d) The dog, she bought it last week, barks a lot.
13. His father, ..... said he didn't like to work.  
a) he gave a series of interviews      b) that had retired a few weeks ago  
c) who was already over sixty-five      d) is an electrical engineer
14. Hassan ordered an enormous steak, .....  
a) was very delicious      b) which cost him a lot  
c) he ate all by himself      d) it wasn't well-done
15. People ..... stealing are imprisoned.  
a) caught      b) who caught  
c) who catch      d) who are catching
16. The students ..... wishes have come true are very happy.  
a) who      b) whose      c) that      d) whom



### Unit 7

1. a) local
2. b) independent
3. c) struggled
4. d) picked
5. c) extracted
6. b) drought
7. a) culture
8. c) storm
9. c) owned
10. a) is being
11. d) is always tasting
12. b) are having

- تستخدم العبارة **local anaesthetic** بمعنى (مخدر/بنج موضعي).  
 - تستخدم **Independent** هنا بمعنى (مستقل في أداء العمل).  
 - تستخدم **struggle** هنا بمعنى (يعمل في ظروف صعبة).  
 - يستخدم **pick up** هنا بمعنى (يقبض على).  
 - يستخدم **extract** هنا بمعنى (يستخلص مادة من شيء كنبات).  
 - يستخدم **drought** هنا بمعنى (انقطاع عن عمل شيء كتسجيل أهداف).  
 - تستخدم **culture** هنا بمعنى (انطباع / فكر سائد).  
 - تستخدم **storm of protest** بمعنى (عاصفة / قدر كبير من الاحتجاج).  
 13. a) having  
 14. d) shouting  
 15. b) supposed  
 16. c) interested

### Unit 8

1. a) expansion
2. b) style
3. c) vehicle
4. d) public
5. c) facility
6. b) respond
7. a) transport
8. c) network
9. c) will be watching
10. a) will buy
11. b) will have read
12. d) will eat

- تستخدم **expansion** هنا بمعنى (تطوير/توسيع فكرة).  
 يستخدم التعبير **in style** بمعنى (بطريقة مبهرة / مثيرة للإعجاب).  
 تستخدم **vehicle** هنا بمعنى (وسيلة / طريقة للتعبير).  
 يستخدم التعبير **in public** بمعنى (علنا / أمام الجمهور).  
 يستخدم **facility** هنا بمعنى (موهبة في تعلم اللغة).  
 يستخدم **respond** هنا بمعنى (يستجيب للعلاج).  
 تستخدم **transport** هنا بمعنى (ينقل / يعيد لفترة زمنية).  
 تستخدم **network** هنا بمعنى (شبكة / مجموعة متصلة من قنوات التلفزيون أو محطات الإذاعة).  
 13. c) will have risen  
 14. a) to get  
 15. c) will connect  
 16. b) 'm going to have learnt

### Unit 9

1. b) preserve
2. c) expedition
3. a) scholarship
4. d) community
5. a) solution
6. b) inspires
7. c) benefit
8. a) majority
9. d) often took
10. a) usually stop
11. b) helped
12. d) would have

- تستخدم العبارة **wildlife preserve** بمعنى (محمية طبيعية).  
 تستخدم العبارة **fishing expedition** بمعنى (رحلة صيد).  
 تستخدم **scholarship** هنا بمعنى (عمل / طريقة علمية).  
 يستخدم التعبير **a sense of community** بمعنى (الإحساس بالانتماء للمجتمع).  
 يستخدم **solution** هنا بمعنى (محلل).  
 يستخدم التعبير **inspire trust** بمعنى (يبعث الثقة في شخص).  
 يستخدم التعبير **for the benefit** بمعنى (لمصلحة).  
 يستخدم التعبير **the age of majority** بمعنى (سن البلوغ).  
 13. b) used to come  
 14. d) all are possible  
 15. a) too small  
 16. c) similar to



## Unit 10

1. c) adults
2. b) launched
3. d) keen
4. a) serious
5. d) route
6. b) broadcast
7. c) digital
8. a) zoomed
9. d) being cooked
10. c) been told
11. a) got/had done
12. b) had visited

تستخدم **adults** هنا بمعنى (كبار الحيوانات).  
 يستخدم التعبير **launch an attack** بمعنى (يشن هجوماً).  
 تستخدم **keen** هنا بمعنى (حاد / شديد).  
 تستخدم العبارة **serious money** بمعنى (قدر كبير من المال).  
 يستخدم التعبير **the route to success** بمعنى (طريق النجاح).  
 يستخدم **broadcast** هنا بمعنى (يشعشع / يذيع معلومة أو سر).  
 تستخدم العبارة **digital marketing** بمعنى (التسويق الرقمي عبر الإنترنت للمنتجات).  
 تستخدم **zoom up** بمعنى (يزداد بشكل كبير وسريع).

13. d) hadn't bought
14. c) has lost
15. a) death
16. b) built

## Unit 11

1. b) comedy
2. d) harness
3. c) animation
4. a) scenery
5. b) demonstrated
6. c) version
7. d) mission
8. c) popular
9. c) Yes, it is
10. d) is there
11. b) isn't it
12. a) cowardly

يستخدم التعبير **comedy of the situation** بمعنى (موقف ساخر).  
 تستخدم العبارة **climbing harness** بمعنى (حزام / أداة تستخدم في رياضة التسلق).  
 تستخدم **an'imation** هنا بمعنى (حيوية).  
 تستخدم **scenery** هنا بمعنى (ديكور في مسرحية).  
 يستخدم **demonstrate** هنا بمعنى (يتظاهر).  
 يستخدم **version** هنا بمعنى (روية لحدث من وجهة نظر).  
 يستخدم **mission** هنا بمعنى (إرسالية / مدرسة تبشيرية).  
 تستخدم العبارة **popular support** بمعنى (تأييد عام).

13. c) hardly
14. b) strong
15. d) easy
16. a) quickly / possible

## Unit 12

1. c) recipe
2. b) highlights
3. a) aim
4. d) objective
5. a) recorded
6. c) filter
7. b) accessories
8. d) benefit
9. c) what
10. b) why
11. d) all are possible
12. b) The dog which she bought last week barks a lot.
13. c) who was already over sixty-five
14. b) which cost him a lot
15. a) caught
16. b) whose

تستخدم **recipe** هنا بمعنى (طريقة إجراء / طريقة عمل).  
 تستخدم **h ghlights** هنا بمعنى (اللقطات البارزة من مباراة).  
 يستخدم التعبير **take aim at** هنا بمعنى (يضع في مرمى النقد).  
 يستخدم **objective** هنا بمعنى (موضوعي).  
 يستخدم التعبير **record its first win** بمعنى (يحجز الفوز الأول).  
 تستخدم العبارة **spam filter** بمعنى (فتر البريد المزيج على الإنترنت).  
 تستخدم **accessory** هنا بمعنى (مشارك في جريمة).  
 تستخدم العبارة **unemployment benefit** بمعنى (إعانة بطالة).

# Dictionary

الكلمات الواردة بقطع الفهم وأسئلة الترجمة

advancement	التقدم	insurance	تأمين
architecture	هندسة معمارية	integrity	استقامة
aspect	جانب	interact	يتفاعل
barriers	الحواجز	lard	شحم
beliefs	المعتقدات	millennium	الألفية
bowing	الانحناء	negotiate	يتفاوض
bulk	تراكم	outstanding	رائع
characteristic	خاصية مميزة	overpopulation	الزيادة السكانية
contributory	مساهم	pace	سرعة
cornerstone	حجر الزاوية	parliament	البرلمان
credibility	مصداقية	phenomenon	ظاهرة
curricula	المناهج الدراسية	portion	جزء
decay	فساد	priority	أولوية
disputes	النزاعات	rates	المعدلات
economy	اقتصاد	reform	إصلاح
emphasise	يؤكد	rumours	الشائعات
enhance	يعزز	saturated	مشبع
enrich	يثرى	sincere	مخلص
establish	يؤسس	socialisation	التنشئة الاجتماعية
extremism	التطرف	solar power	الطاقة الشمسية
facial expressions	تعابير الوجه	stability	استقرار
fatal	مميت	systematic	منهجي
for instance	على سبيل المثال	terrorism	الإرهاب
fulfil	ينجز	timely	في الوقت المناسب
function	وظيفة	unemployment	البطالة
generations	الاجيال	witness	يشهد
gestures	الإيماءات	workout	تدريب
inserted	مندمج		

رقم الإيداع: ٢٠٢٤/٢١٥٤٢  
ترخيص وزارة التربية والتعليم رقم:  
٣٦٢/٢/١٢/١٠٤  
خدمة العملاء: 16766



جميع الحقوق محفوظة © لدار نهضة مصر للنشر  
يحظر طبع أو نشر أو تصوير أو تخزين  
أي جزء من هذا الكتاب بأية وسيلة إلكترونية أو ميكانيكية  
أو بالتصوير أو خلاف ذلك إلا بإذن كتابي صريح من الناشر.

2

nd

**SEC**

SECOND TERM

ONGOING ASSESSMENT,  
SKILLS & FINAL  
REVISION

**NEW!** 20  
25  
**HELLO!**

# Contents

## Part 1

### Ongoing Assessment 3

## Part 2

### Skills

- 1 Reading Comprehension 17
- 2 Translation 23
- 3 Writing 28

## Part 3

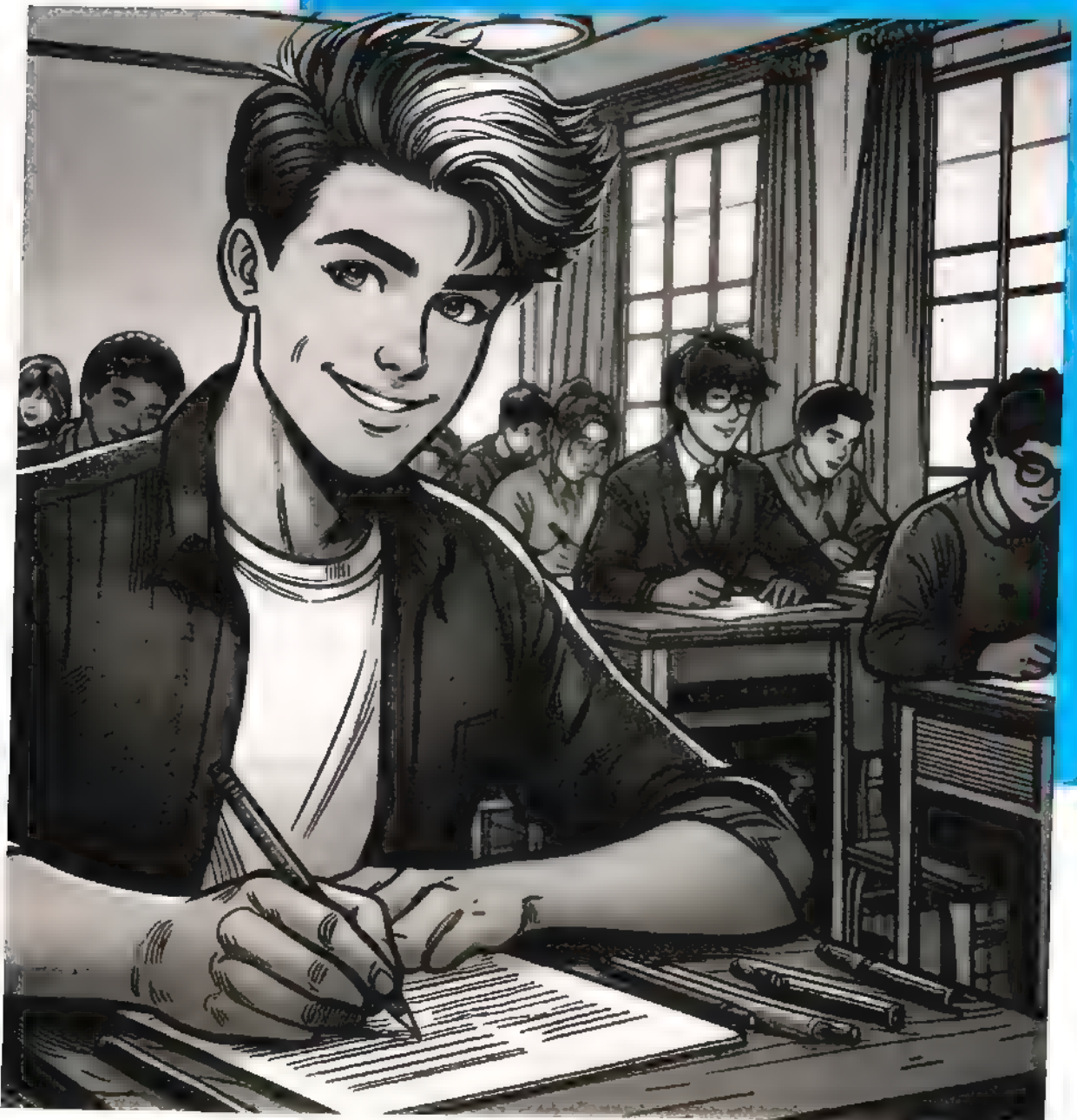
### General Revision

- 1 Revision on Module (4) (Units 7 & 8) 30
- 2 Revision on Module (5) (Units 9 & 10) 49
- 3 Revision on Module (6) (Units 11 & 12) 68
- 4 The Play: King Lear 92

## Part 4

### - Final Tests 100

# Part 1 Ongoing Assessment





## Unit 7

## Unit 7

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Many of the poor families ..... to survive during wartime.  
☐ a) delighted      ☐ b) relaxed      ☐ c) refused      ☐ d) struggled
- When I studied in Germany, I stayed with a ..... family for three months before moving to my own flat.  
☐ a) guest      ☐ b) party      ☐ c) host      ☐ d) main
- The school summer camp offers hiking, swimming and other recreational .....  
☐ a) rules      ☐ b) activities      ☐ c) rails      ☐ d) courses
- Pictures of the terrorist suspect were ..... in all the daily papers.  
☐ a) spread      ☐ b) come out      ☐ c) published      ☐ d) accepted
- Rana sees Ahmed putting on his coat and says, "Where ....., Ahmed?"  
☐ a) do you go      ☐ b) you go      ☐ c) you are going      ☐ d) are you going
- ..... an evening paper, dad?  
☐ a) Do you want      ☐ b) Will you want  
☐ c) Are you wanting      ☐ d) Were you wanting
- Why is that man ..... in the middle of the road?  
☐ a) stand      ☐ b) standing      ☐ c) stands      ☐ d) stood
- Tonight, they ..... a very modern comedy with their friends.  
☐ a) watch      ☐ b) watching      ☐ c) are watching      ☐ d) watched

### 2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Living abroad is a profitable experience because it forces you to adapt to things that are unfamiliar to you.

- (a) العيش في الخارج تجربة مريحة لأنها تجبرك على تبني أشياء غير مألوفة لك.  
 (b) العيش في الخارج تجربة مريحة لأنها تحريك على التكيف مع أشياء غير مألوفة لك.  
 (c) العيش في الخارج تجربة مريحة لأنها تجبرك على تبني أشياء غير مألوفة لك.  
 (d) العيش في الخارج تجربة مريحة لأنها تجبرك على التكيف مع أشياء غير مألوفة لك

### (B) Choose the correct English translation:

- للعيش في الخارج العديد من المميزات، فهو يمكننا من تكوين صداقات جديدة وتعلم لغات أخرى مفيدة.

- (a) Living aboard has many reasons, as it enables us to make new friends and learn other useful languages.  
 (b) Living aboard has many terms, as it enables us to make new friends and learn another useful language.  
 (c) Living abroad has many advantages, as it enables us to make new friends and learn other useful languages.  
 (d) Living abroad has many merits, as it enables us to make new friends and learn another useful language.

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- There is no ..... in the old man's diary for that day as he was ill in hospital.  
☐ a) entry                      b) exit                      c) article                      d) text
- At the end of his speech, the minister took some minutes to ..... the facts that he presented.  
☐ a) visualise                      b) socialise                      c) summarise                      d) recognise
- The lecturer made the lecture more exciting through his PowerPoint ..... with pictures and videos.  
☐ a) situation                      b) affection                      c) imagination                      d) presentation
- The sky got dark and it looked like a ..... was coming.  
☐ a) storm                      b) climate                      c) race                      d) stream
- You ..... a new coat, aren't you?  
☐ a) are wearing                      b) wear                      c) will wear                      d) wore
- As arranged, I ..... my solicitor ..... tomorrow to change my will.  
☐ a) see                      b) am seeing                      c) saw                      d) was seeing
- I hear from my son every day. He ..... to like writing emails.  
☐ a) is seeming                      b) seemed                      c) seems                      d) seeming
- These apples ..... 40 pounds a bag. Do you think that is expensive?  
☐ a) costing                      b) costs                      c) are costing                      d) cost

## 2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- It is not wrong for young people to travel and live abroad. However, they shouldn't resort to illegal Immigration which can put their lives in danger.

- (a) ليس من الخطأ أن يسافر الشباب للخارج ويعيشوا بالخارج ومع ذلك لا يجب عليهم أن يلجئوا للهجرة غير الشرعية التي تعرض حياتهم للخطر.  
 (b) ليس من خطأ أن يسافر الشباب للخارج ويعيشوا بالخارج ومع ذلك يجب عليهم أن يلجئوا للهجرة الشرعية التي لا تعرض حياتهم للخطر.  
 (c) ليس من خطأ أن يسافر الشباب للخارج ويعيشوا بالخارج ومع ذلك لا يجب عليهم أن يلجئوا للهجرة الشرعية التي تعرض حياتهم للخطر.  
 (d) ليس من الصواب أن يسافر الشباب للخارج ويعيشوا بالخارج ومع ذلك لا يجب عليهم أن يلجئوا للهجرة غير الشرعية التي تعرض حياتهم للخطر.

## (B) Choose the correct English translation:

- من أهم مساوئ الحياة بالخارج الشعور بالحنين للوطن؛ لأنك ستبتعد عن أهللك وجميع أقاربك وستفتقد الأجواء العائلية والأسرية خاصة في الأعياد والمناسبات المختلفة.

- ☐ a) One of the advantages of living abroad is feeling homesick because you will be away from your family and all your relatives and you will miss the family atmosphere, especially in feasts and different accidents.  
 b) One of the disadvantages of living aboard is feeling homesick because you will be away from your family and all your relations and you will miss the family atmosphere, especially in feasts and different occasions.  
 c) One of the disadvantages of living abroad is feeling homesick because you will be away from your family and all your relatives and you will miss the family atmosphere, especially in feasts and different accidents.  
 d) One of the disadvantages of living abroad is feeling homesick because you will be away from your family and all your relatives and you will miss the family atmosphere, especially in feasts and different occasions.

 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The resort in Marina offers a wide range of ..... for young and old people.  
a) introductions      b) facilities      c) disabilities      d) avail abilities
- We reported the bad treatment of the nurse to the hospital .....  
a) authority      b) ministry      c) section      d) college
- The power supply should be ..... by a qualified electrician.  
a) contacted      b) communicated      c) connected      d) tied
- The teacher ..... a lot of notes when he read the students' reports about the book.  
a) did      b) appeared      c) expelled      d) made
- Before I finish this course, I ..... ten tests.  
a) am taking      b) will be taken      c) will have taken      d) wi l be taking
- In six months, I ..... married for twenty-five years. I'd like to celebrate.  
a) will      b) will have been      c) will be      d) am
- Before my friends arrive, I ..... my homework.  
a) will be done      b) am doing      c) am going to be done      d) will have done
- You arrived two days ago. You are going to leave next Sunday. By the time you leave, you ..... nine days here.  
a) will have spent      b) have spent      c) are spending      d) spend

 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- There are different means of transport, which are important to the economy and for various purposes. Some are cheap and others are costly, but are needed in today's world.

- (a) هناك وسائل اتصال جديدة مهمة للاقتصاد ولأغراض مختلفة. بعضها رخيص والبعض الآخر مكلف، ولكن هناك حاجة إليها في عالم اليوم.  
(b) هناك وسائل نقل جديدة مهمة للاقتصاد ولأغراض مختلفة. بعضها رخيص والبعض الآخر مكلف، ولكن هناك حاجة إليها في عالم اليوم.  
(c) هناك وسائل اتصال مختلفة مهمة للاقتصاد ولأغراض مختلفة. بعضها رخيص والبعض الآخر مكلف، ولكن هناك حاجة إليها في عالم اليوم.  
(d) هناك وسائل نقل مختلفة مهمة للاقتصاد ولأغراض مختلفة. بعضها رخيص والبعض الآخر مكلف، ولكن هناك حاجة إليها في عالم اليوم.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- على الرغم من أن وسائل المواصلات ذات التقنيات العالية مهمة جدًا لتطور أي بلد فإنها قد تستخدم لأغراض سلبية، فمثلًا الطائرات النفاثة وسفن الفضاء قد تستخدم لأغراض التجسس والأنشطة تدميرية.

- a) Although high-tech means of transport are very important for the development of any country, they may be used for positive purposes, for example, jets and spaceships may be used for spying and destructive activities.  
b) Although high-tech means of transport are very important for the development of any country, they may be used for negative purposes, for example, jets and spaceships may be used for spying and destructive activities.  
c) Although high tech means of transport are very important for the deve opment of any country, they may be used for negative purposes, for example, jets and spaceships may be used for spraying and destructive activities.  
d) Although high-tech means of transport are very important for the development of any country, they may be used for new purposes, for example, jets and spaceships may be used for spraying and destructive activities.



**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Doctors say that surgery is sometimes the only ..... for some patients.  
☐ a) reflection      ☐ b) alternative      ☐ c) attention      ☐ d) affection
2. The coach's work has shown a ..... improvement. The team won the last three matches.  
☐ a) valueless      ☐ b) limited      ☐ c) significant      ☐ d) excited
3. The minister was able to see both sides of the ..... of the new law after meeting some citizens.  
☐ a) argument      ☐ b) essay      ☐ c) chat      ☐ d) agreement
4. The actress ..... angrily to the criticisms about her new film.  
☐ a) adopted      ☐ b) referred      ☐ c) applied      ☐ d) responded
5. By this time tomorrow night, we ..... in Australia.  
☐ a) will arrive      ☐ b) will be arriving      ☐ c) will have arrived      ☐ d) will be arrived
6. We ..... all of this television series before the end of the weekend.  
☐ a) will be watching      ☐ b) watch  
☐ c) are watching      ☐ d) won't have watched
7. I will tell her what you say, but she ..... it.  
☐ a) won't believe      ☐ b) will have believed  
☐ c) will be believing      ☐ d) believes
8. Will you ..... the list of people to be invited before I get back?  
☐ a) be completed      ☐ b) be completing  
☐ c) have completed      ☐ d) have been completed

**2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

- The high-tech forms of transport won't only help passengers to travel more comfortably, but they will also help the environment by using environmentally-friendly sources of fuels.

- (a) لن تساعد وسائل النقل عالية التكنولوجيا فقط الركاب على السفر براحة أكثر ولكنها سوف تساعد البيئة أيضًا باستخدام مصادر الوقود صديقة البيئة.
- (b) لن تساعد وسائل النقل عالية التكنولوجيا فقط الركاب على السفر براحة أكثر ولكنها سوف تساعد البيئة أيضًا باستخدام محطات الوقود صديقة البيئة.
- (c) لن تساعد وسائل النقل عالية التكنولوجيا فقط الركاب على السفر براحة أكثر ولكنها سوف تساعد البيئة أيضًا باستخدام مصادر الوقود صديقة البيئة.
- (d) لن تساعد وسائل النقل عالية التكنولوجيا فقط الركاب على السفر براحة أكثر ولكنها سوف تساعد البيئة أيضًا باستخدام محطات الوقود صديقة البيئة.

**(B) Choose the correct English translation:**

- تُعقد سنويًا معارض السيارات ووسائل المواصلات الحديثة في أشهر مدن العالم، وغالبًا ما تشهد هذه المعارض تطورًا جديدًا كل مرة.

- ☐ a) Every year, the exceptions of cars and modern means of transport are held in the most famous cities of the world. These exceptions often witness great development every time.
- ☐ b) Every year, the exhibitions of cars and modern means of transport are held in the most famous cities of the world. These exhibitions often witness great development every time.
- ☐ c) Every year, the expectations of cars and modern means of transport are held in the most famous cities of the world. These expectations often witness great development every time.
- ☐ d) Each year, the galleries of cars and modern means of transport are held in the most famous cities of the world. These exhibitions often witness great development every time.

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- Three members of the Everest ..... were killed while climbing it.  
a) voyage                      b) task                      c) expedition                      d) picnic
- The church still has its ..... stone floors which were built hundreds of years ago.  
a) fake                      b) original                      c) stolen                      d) normal
- Many charities in Egypt ..... needy families especially in poor villages.  
a) report                      b) import                      c) export                      d) support
- Pollution problems are not ..... to our city; they happen everywhere.  
a) common                      b) unique                      c) simple                      d) ordinary
- Sarah hasn't changed. She still looks ..... as she was ten years ago.  
a) slightly the same                      b) for the same                      c) exactly the same                      d) a bit same
- The door is ..... as the window.  
a) almost as wide                      b) wider                      c) wide                      d) so wide
- I thought she was ..... than me, but she's older.  
a) slightly young                      b) slightly younger                      c) as young                      d) almost as young
- We ..... a lot of trees near to the sea, but now they're gone.  
a) didn't use to have                      b) would have                      c) used to be                      d) used to have

**2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

- Animals around the world are suffering a lot due to man's irresponsible activities. The destruction of big forests leads to the death of many species of animals and plants.
- (a) تعاني الحيوانات في جميع أنحاء العالم كثيرًا بسبب الأنشطة غير الضرورية للإنسان، حيث يؤدي تدمير الغابات المطيرة إلى موت العديد من أنواع الحيوانات والنباتات.
- (b) تعاني الحيوانات في جميع أنحاء العالم كثيرًا بسبب الأنشطة غير المسؤولة للإنسان، حيث يؤدي تدمير الغابات الكبيرة إلى موت العديد من أنواع الحيوانات والنباتات.
- (c) تعاني الحيوانات في جميع أنحاء العالم كثيرًا بسبب الأنشطة غير المسؤولة للإنسان، حيث يؤدي تدمير الغابات الكبيرة إلى موت القليل من أنواع الحيوانات والنباتات.
- (d) تعاني الحيوانات في جميع أنحاء العالم كثيرًا بسبب الأنشطة غير المسؤولة للإنسان، حيث يؤدي تدمير الغابات الكثيفة إلى موت العديد من أنواع الحيوانات والنباتات.

**(B) Choose the correct English translation:**

- إنها مسئوليتنا جميعًا أفرادًا وحكومات وخاصة الأجيال الشابة أن نفعل أقصى جهدنا لحماية التنوع البيولوجي على كوكبنا، فموت الحيوانات والنباتات يعني موتنا نحن أيضًا.

- (a) It is the responsibility of all of us, individuals and governments, especially the younger generations, to do our utmost to protect the biodiversity on our planet. The death of animals and plants means our death as well.
- (b) It is the irresponsibility of all of us, individuals and governments, especially the younger generations, to do our utmost to protect the biodiversity on our planet. The death of animals and plants means our death as well.
- (c) It is the responsibility of all of us, individuals and teams, especially the younger generations, to do our utmost to protect the biodiversity on our planet. The death of animals and plants means our death as well.
- (d) It is the responsibility of all of us, individuals and governments, especially the ancient generations, to do our utmost to protect the biodiversity on our planet. The death of animals and plants means our death as well.



**1** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The software department expects to ..... its sales targets this year.  
☐ a) achieve      ☐ b) purchase      ☐ c) regain      ☐ d) believe
- Applicants shouldn't forget to put their ..... information on the application.  
☐ a) tie      ☐ b) contact      ☐ c) communication      ☐ d) enemies
- Dr Zewail's achievements will surely ..... generations of future scientists.  
☐ a) inspire      ☐ b) respire      ☐ c) detest      ☐ d) explain
- Some old technology such as a cassette player doesn't ..... in our present world.  
☐ a) resist      ☐ b) persist      ☐ c) exist      ☐ d) vanish
- Mo'men is exactly the same ..... as Galal.  
☐ a) length      ☐ b) tall      ☐ c) long      ☐ d) height
- Ali is almost ..... of dogs as Youssif.  
☐ a) frightened      ☐ b) as frightened  
☐ c) more frightened      ☐ d) much frightened
- Today is ..... than yesterday.  
☐ a) far hotter      ☐ b) many hotter      ☐ c) much hot      ☐ d) as hot
- I didn't use to wear suits, but now I ..... them.  
☐ a) wears      ☐ b) would wear      ☐ c) used to      ☐ d) am used to

**2** (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Biodiversity is the key indicator of the health of an ecosystem. That's because each species in an ecosystem has a specific role to play.

- (a) إن التنوع البيئي هو مؤشر ثانوي على صحة أي نظام بيئي وذلك لأن كل فصيلة في النظام البيئي لها دور محدد تلعبه.  
 (b) إن التنوع البيئي هو مفتاح رئيسي على صحة أي نظام بيئي وذلك لأن كل فصيلة في النظام البيئي لها دور محدد تلعبه.  
 (c) إن التنوع البيئي هو مؤشر رئيسي على صحة أي نظام بيئي وذلك لأن كل فصيلة في النظام البيئي لها دور محدد تلعبه.  
 (d) إن التنوع البيئي هو مؤشر رئيسي على تدهور أي نظام بيئي وذلك لأن كل فصيلة في النظام البيئي لها دور محدد تلعبه.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- انتشرت في مدن عدة، خلال الفترة الأخيرة، مراكز كثيرة لإنقاذ الحيوانات المشردة وحمايتها من الشارع، وعلى رأسها القطط والكلاب، كما تحاول تلك المراكز جمع التبرعات لتغطية النفقات على حيواناتها.

- a) During the last period of time, many centres which rescue homeless animals and protect them from the street, especially cats and dogs, have spread in many countries. These centres try to collect donations to cover the costs for their animals.  
 b) During the last period of time, many centres which rescue homeless animals and protect them from the street, especially cats and dogs, have published in many cities. These centres try to collect donations to cover the costs for their animals.  
 c) During the last period of time, many centres which rescue homeless animals and protect them from the street, especially cats and dogs, have spread in many cities. These centres try to collect donations to cover the costs for their animals.  
 d) During the last period of time, many centres which rescue homeless animals and protect them from the street, especially cats and dogs, have spread in many cities. These centres try to collect donations to cover the costs for their animals.

#### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Most famous people are usually followed by newspapers ..... who look for good shots.  
☐ a) newsreaders      ☐ b) editors      ☐ c) photographers      ☐ d) writers
- The naughty student refused to ..... that breaking the window was his fault.  
☐ a) deny      ☐ b) defy      ☐ c) admit      ☐ d) reply
- The college will only ..... 12 foreign applicants for the chemistry department.  
☐ a) select      ☐ b) apply      ☐ c) dismiss      ☐ d) detest
- The young Japanese bride wore a/an ..... Japanese kimono at her wedding.  
☐ a) modern      ☐ b) dated      ☐ c) traditional      ☐ d) up-to-date
- What is the correct past perfect form of "We visit Paris"?  
☐ a) We're visiting Paris.      ☐ b) We've visited Paris.  
☐ c) We'd visited Paris.      ☐ d) We'd visiting Paris.
- If you ..... my advice, the accident wouldn't have happened.  
☐ a) took      ☐ b) had taken      ☐ c) have taken      ☐ d) take
- When he arrived, Amal wasn't there. She ..... about five minutes before.  
☐ a) has left      ☐ b) was leaving      ☐ c) leaving      ☐ d) had left
- When I got back, nobody ..... the washing up. I was furious.  
☐ a) had done      ☐ b) hasn't done      ☐ c) hadn't done      ☐ d) did

#### 2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Using emojis, abbreviations and acronyms has become essential for messaging and chats. Young people say that this is a part of the fast life we live.

- a) أصبح استخدام الرموز المضحكة والاختصارات والمختصرات ضروريًا للمراسلة ويقول الشباب إن هذا جزء من الحياة التكنولوجية التي نعيشها.
- b) أصبح استخدام الرموز التعبيرية والاختصارات والمختصرات ضروريًا للمراسلة ويقول الأولاد إن هذا جزء من الحياة السريعة التي نعيشها.
- c) أصبح استخدام الرموز التعبيرية والاختصارات والمختصرات ضروريًا للمراسلة ويقول الشباب إن هذا جزء من الحياة السريعة التي نعيشها.
- d) أصبح استخدام الرموز المضحكة والاختصارات والمختصرات ضروريًا للمراسلة ويقول الأولاد إن هذا جزء من الحياة السريعة التي نعيشها.

#### (B) Choose the correct English translation:

- الهواتف الذكية من أهم الاختراعات التي أثرت كثيرًا في حياة الناس وخاصة الشباب الذين يعتبرون استخدامها جزءًا مهمًا في حياتهم، لكنها تبعدهم عن ممارسة الهوايات ومقابلة الأصدقاء والأقارب.

- a) Smartphones are one of the most important inventions that have greatly affected the lives of people, especially young people, who consider their use an important part of their lives, but they keep them from practising hobbies and meeting friends and relatives.
- b) Smart watches are one of the most interesting inventions that have greatly affected the lives of people, especially young people, who consider their use an important part of their lives, but they keep them from practising hobbies and meeting friends and relatives.
- c) Smartphones are one of the most interesting inventions that have greatly affected the lives of people, especially young people, who consider their use an important part of their lives, but they keep them from practising hobbies and meeting friends and relatives.
- d) Smartphones are one of the most important inventions that have greatly affected the lives of people, especially young people, who consider their use an important part of their lives, but they keep them from practising habits and meeting friends and relatives.

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The cosmetics مستحضرات تجميل company is going to ..... its new perfume next week.  
☐ a) eject                      b) evade                      c) attach                      d) launch
- The Ministry of Health offered a special number to call in case of a/an .....  
☐ a) evaluation                      b) emergency                      c) accuracy                      d) presentation
- My cousin made a big mistake when he got ..... in a fight with some students at school and he was badly injured.  
☐ a) intended                      b) permitted                      c) involved                      d) pretended
- Ancient Egyptian ..... are the most admired tourist attractions all over the world.  
☐ a) regulations                      b) mountains                      c) monuments                      d) points
- After putting the letters into the mailbox, Hala remembered that the stamps ..... on them.  
☐ a) didn't put                      b) hadn't put                      c) hadn't been put                      d) were putting
- When I ....., Khalid had already gone home.  
☐ a) arrived                      b) had arrived                      c) have arrived                      d) arrive
- ..... had they eaten dinner than the ceiling crashed onto the dining table.  
☐ a) After                      b) No sooner                      c) When                      d) Hardly
- Hardly had I finished my studies ..... I got a good job.  
☐ a) then                      b) than                      c) till                      d) when

## 2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- According to a recent report, Facebook and messaging apps, such as Messenger and WhatsApp are seen to be the biggest channel through which misinformation and fake news is spread.

- (a) وفقًا لتقرير قديم، يُنظر إلى «فيسبوك» وتطبيقات المراسلة مثل «ماسنجر» و«واتساب» على أنها أكبر قناة تنتشر من خلالها المعلومات المضللة والأخبار المعبركة.
- (b) وفقًا لتقرير حديث، يُنظر إلى «فيسبوك» وتطبيقات المراسلة مثل «ماسنجر» و«واتساب» على أنها أكبر قناة تنتشر من خلالها المعلومات المضللة والأخبار المعبركة.
- (c) وفقًا لتقرير حديث، يُنظر إلى «فيسبوك» وتطبيقات المراسلة مثل «ماسنجر» و«واتساب» على أنها أكبر قناة تُطبع من خلالها المعلومات المضللة والأخبار المعبركة.
- (d) وفقًا لتقرير حديث، يُنظر إلى «فيسبوك» وتطبيقات المراسلة مثل «ماسنجر» و«واتساب» على أنها أكبر قناة تنتشر من خلالها المعلومات الموثقة والأخبار المعبركة.

## (B) Choose the correct English translation:

- الإعلام الناجح والمسئول يعكس حال المجتمع؛ فهو معبر عن الواقع. ودور الإعلام لا يقتصر على مجرد المكسب المادي، بل يكون مراعيًا لنشر ثقافة السلم المجتمعي وخلق روح الثقة.

- a) A successful and irresponsible media reflects the state of the society as it expresses the reality. The role of the media isn't limited to financial gains, but it should also consider spreading the culture of social peace and creating a spirit of trust.
- b) A successful and irresponsible media reflects the state of the society as it expresses the reality. The role of the media isn't limited to financial gains, but it should also consider spreading the culture of social peace and creating a spirit of trust.
- c) A successful and responsible media reflects the statue of the society as it expresses the reality. The role of the media isn't limited to financial gains, but it should also consider spreading the culture of social peace and creating a spirit of trust.
- d) A successful and responsible media reflects the state of the society as it expresses the reality. The role of the media isn't limited to financial gains, but it should also consider spreading the culture of social peace and creating a spirit of trust.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Spielberg is an American director and producer who made many science ..... films, such as *E.T.* and *Jurassic Park*.  
☐ a) fiction                      b) fission                      c) fraction                      d) horror
2. A trainer came in to ..... how the new computer system worked.  
☐ a) hide                      b) conceal                      c) deploy                      d) demonstrate
3. My little son ..... confidence and needs a lot of encouragement.  
☐ a) leaks                      b) lacks                      c) locks                      d) licks
4. I am sure you have made the right ..... to study at this university.  
☐ a) obligation                      b) necessity                      c) difference                      d) choice
5. We will be successful if we try hard, ..... we?  
☐ a) don't                      b) won't                      c) do                      d) will
6. She used to like it here, .....?  
☐ a) used she                      b) wasn't she                      c) didn't she                      d) wasn't it
7. There is some coffee for me, .....?  
☐ a) 'sn't there                      b) isn't it                      c) aren't they                      d) is there
8. You should stop working so ..... and have a rest.  
☐ a) hardness                      b) hardly                      c) harden                      d) hard

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- When you make a review of the story, you can read it all, and write a review about it in a simple way. You should take care of the main points in the story.
- (a) عندما تقوم بنقد القصة، يمكنك قراءة بعضها، وكتابة تجميع عنها بطريقة بسيطة. يجب أن تهتم بالنقاط الفرعية في القصة.  
 (b) عندما تقوم بنقد القصة، يمكنك قراءتها كلها، وكتابة تنقيح عنها بطريقة بسيطة. يجب أن تهتم بالنقاط الرئيسية في القصة.  
 (c) عندما تقوم بنقض القصة، يمكنك قراءتها كلها، وكتابة تنقيح عنها بطريقة بسيطة. يجب أن تهتم بالنقاط الرئيسية في القصة.  
 (d) عندما تقوم بنقد القصة، يمكنك قراءتها كلها، وكتابة تجميع عنها بطريقة بسيطة. يجب أن تهتم بالنقاط الفرعية في القصة.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- إن مشاهدة الأفلام الهادفة وقراءة الكتب المفيدة لهما تأثير إيجابي في بناء شخصية الفرد ورفق تفكيره وأن يكون مواطنًا صالحًا نافعا.
- a) Watching ordinary films and reading useful books have a positive effect on building the personality of the individual, evolving their thinking, and being a good and useful citizen.  
 b) Watching meaningful films and reading a lot of books have a positive effect on building the personality of the individual, evolving their thinking, and being a good and useful citizen.  
 c) Watching meaningful films and reading useful books have a known effect on building the personality of the individual, evolving their thinking, and being a good and useful citizen.  
 d) Watching meaningful films and reading useful books have a positive effect on building the personality of the individual, involving their thinking, and being a good and useful citizen.

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The sale of the firm could make each of the ..... into millionaires.  
☐ a) partners      ☐ b) servants      ☐ c) heroes      ☐ d) champions
- There is a large selection of ..... cartoons produced for children on the internet.  
☐ a) allied      ☐ b) historical      ☐ c) apparent      ☐ d) animated
- Man could ..... most of the powers of nature for his service.  
☐ a) discover      ☐ b) harness      ☐ c) invent      ☐ d) chase
- On our way to the hotel in Hurghada, we admired the ..... of the Red Sea.  
☐ a) site      ☐ b) treasury      ☐ c) audience      ☐ d) scenery
- You have a lot in your mind, ..... you?  
☐ a) don't      ☐ b) do      ☐ c) aren't      ☐ d) didn't
- A: You won't forget to call me, will you? B: ..... . Don't worry.  
☐ a) Yes, I will      ☐ b) No, I won't      ☐ c) Yes, I won't      ☐ d) No, I will
- It was very hard for the mountaineer to climb the mountain as it is ..... height.  
☐ a) extremely      ☐ b) extreme      ☐ c) an extreme      ☐ d) an extremely
- After the first exam, which was easy, all students looked ..... and were ready for the next.  
☐ a) happiest      ☐ b) happily      ☐ c) happiness      ☐ d) happy

## 2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- The movie industry, as we know it today, originated in the early 19<sup>th</sup> century through a series of technological developments. The creation of photography paved the way for this huge industry.

- (a) بدأت صناعة السينما كما نعرفها اليوم في نهاية القرن التاسع عشر من خلال سلسلة من التطورات التكنولوجية كما أن اختراع التصوير مهد الطريق لهذه الصناعة الضخمة.
- (b) بدأت صناعة السينما كما نعرفها اليوم في أوائل القرن التاسع عشر من خلال سلسلة من التطورات التكنولوجية كما أن اختراع التصوير مهد الطريق لهذه الصناعة الضخمة.
- (c) بدأت صناعة السينما كما نعرفها اليوم في أوائل القرن التاسع عشر من خلال سلسلة من التطورات التكنولوجية كما أن اختراع التصوير قصر الطريق لهذه الصناعة الضخمة.
- (d) بدأت صناعة السينما كما نعرفها اليوم في أوائل القرن التاسع عشر من خلال سلسلة من التطورات التكنولوجية كما أن اختراع التصوير مهد الطريق لهذه الصناعة الجديدة.

## (B) Choose the correct English translation:

- يختلف الناس في رؤيتهم للأفلام؛ فمنهم من يرى أنها وسيلة للترفيه والاستمتاع، ومنهم من يرى أنها يجب أن تحمل رسالة تساهم في تغيير المجتمع.

- (a) People differ in their view of movies. Some of them see them as a means of entertainment and enjoyment; others see that they should convey a message which contributes to changing society.
- (b) People different in their view of movies. Some of them see them as a means of entertainment and enjoyment; others see that they should convey a message which contributes to changing society.
- (c) People differ in their review of movies. Some of them see them as a means of entertainment and enjoyment; others see that they should receive a message which contributes to changing society.
- (d) People differ in their revision of movies. Some of them see them as a means of entertainment and enjoyment; others see that they should deliver a message which contributes to changing society.



## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Many people believe that Kentucky has a secret ..... for cooking their food.  
☐ a) prescription      b) recipe      c) direction      d) receipt
- Some comments were deleted as they are not directly ..... to this post.  
☐ a) donated      b) affecting      c) relevant      d) achievable
- I've ..... the important passages in the chapters in yellow.  
☐ a) highlighted      b) exported      c) aimed      d) shared
- Our neighbours lost most of their ..... in the fire.  
☐ a) experiences      b) charities      c) passions      d) possessions
- She wrote to her friend ..... in London.  
☐ a) whom lives      b) lives      c) that lives      d) whose lives
- There we met a man ..... told us that he had seen Messi.  
☐ a) who      b) whose      c) whom      d) which
- Siwa, ..... is an oasis, is full of olives and dates.  
☐ a) what      b) which      c) where      d) that
- The man in ..... house we live is one of our relatives.  
☐ a) which      b) who's      c) where      d) whose

## 2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Having goals and staying committed to them will keep your focus on the things that you have identified as essential to reaching your desired outcomes.

- (a) إن وجود أهداف والبقاء ملتزمًا بها سيبقى تركيزك على الأشياء التي حددتها على أنها محتملة للوصول إلى النتائج المرجوة.  
 (b) إن وجود أهداف والبقاء ملتزمًا بها سيشغف تركيزك عن الأشياء التي حددتها على أنها ضرورية للوصول إلى النتائج المرجوة.  
 (c) إن وجود أهداف والبقاء ملتزمًا بها سيبقى تركيزك على الأشياء التي حددتها على أنها ضرورية للوصول إلى النتائج المرجوة.  
 (d) إن وجود أهداف والبقاء مفرّج فيها سيبقى تركيزك على الأشياء التي حددتها على أنها ضرورية للوصول إلى النتائج المرجوة.

## (B) Choose the correct English translation:

- الحياة بدون هدف لا معنى ولا قيمة لها، ووجود الأهداف في حياتنا يؤكد أننا ما زلنا أحياء، فهي تساعدنا على تحقيق كل ما نتمناه في الحياة لتوصلنا في النهاية إلى النجاح.

- a) Life without a goal is meaningless and valueless. The presence of goals in our life ensures that we are still alive as they help us achieve all that we wish in life to lead us to success in the end.  
 b) Life without a goal is meaningless and unavailable. The presence of goals in our life ensures that we are still alive as they help us achieve all that we wish in life to lead us to success in the end.  
 c) Life without a goal is powerless and valueless. The presence of goals in our life ensures that we are still alive as they help us achieve all that we wish in life to lead us to success in the end.  
 d) Life without money is meaningless and valueless. The presence of goals in our life ensures that we are still alive as they help us achieve all that we wish in life to lead us to success in the end.

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The writer won't be able to ..... the press conference as he is ill.  
☐ a) afford      ☐ b) reject      ☐ c) pretend      ☐ d) attend
- Most students agreed to help with ..... for the school party.  
☐ a) agreements      ☐ b) accommodations      ☐ c) disputes      ☐ d) arrangements
- The hotel wants to ..... its leisure facilities by adding a swimming pool.  
☐ a) devalue      ☐ b) reduce      ☐ c) expand      ☐ d) balance
- The baby ..... across the floor towards her mother.  
☐ a) dug      ☐ b) flew      ☐ c) deployed      ☐ d) crawled
- The police arrested the man ..... steal a handbag.  
☐ a) I saw      ☐ b) I saw him      ☐ c) who I saw him      ☐ d) whom I saw him
- The hotel ..... we spent 4 days and nights had fantastic views from the bedrooms.  
☐ a) that      ☐ b) where      ☐ c) which      ☐ d) when
- I visited a part of England ..... is known as the Lake District.  
☐ a) whose      ☐ b) where      ☐ c) which      ☐ d) when
- Aswan is the city ..... my family always enjoys visiting.  
☐ a) whom      ☐ b) when      ☐ c) where      ☐ d) which

## 2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Success is considered a basic goal that all people seek. Some of them reach it thanks to their determination and strong will, and some fail because they lack pursuit of what they want.

- (a) يعتبر النجاح هدفًا صعبًا يسعى إليه كل الناس. فبعضهم يصل إليه بفضل إصرارهم وإرادتهم القوية، والبعض الآخر يفشل لعدم السعي وراء ما يريدون.  
 (b) يعتبر النجاح هدفًا أساسيًا يسعى إليه كل الناس. فبعضهم يصل إليه بفضل إصرارهم وإرادتهم القوية، والبعض الآخر يفشل لعدم السعي وراء ما يريدون.  
 (c) يعتبر النجاح هدفًا عاديًا يسعى إليه كل الناس. فبعضهم يصل إليه بفضل إصرارهم وإرادتهم القوية، والبعض الآخر يفشل لعدم السعي وراء ما يريدون.  
 (d) يعتبر النجاح هدفًا معنويًا يسعى إليه كل الناس. فبعضهم يصل إليه بفضل إصرارهم وإرادتهم القوية، والبعض الآخر يفشل لعدم السعي وراء ما يريدون.

## (B) Choose the correct English translation:

- يلعب التفكير الإيجابي دورًا أساسيًا في نجاح الإنسان وتفوقه في الحياة؛ وذلك لأن الأفكار الإيجابية تساعد على بث التفاؤل، مما يدفع الإنسان للعمل وتحقيق ما يصبو إليه.

- ☐ a) Ordinary thinking plays a fundamental role in a person's success and excellence in life. This is because positive thoughts help to spread optimism, which drives a person to work and achieve what he/she aspires to.  
☐ b) Positive thinking plays a fundamental rule in a person's success and excellence in life. This is because positive thoughts help to spread optimism, which drives a person to work and achieve what he/she aspires to.  
☐ c) Positive thinking plays a fundamental role in a person's success and excellent in life. This is because positive thoughts help to spread optimism, which drives a person to work and achieve what he/she aspires to.  
☐ d) Positive thinking plays a fundamental role in a person's success and excellence in life. This is because positive thoughts help to spread optimism, which drives a person to work and achieve what he/she aspires to.

# Part 2 SKILLS



(1) Reading Comprehension

(2) Translation

(3) Writing



## Comprehension

## Passage No. 1

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

What is an ideal holiday for one person may be a very unpleasant one for another. The sportsman likes a kind of holiday which his lazy friend would find worse than his daily work; while the lazy man's ideal holiday would leave the sportsman quite unsatisfied.

If I were allowed to choose my own holiday, I would go on a voyage in a modern passenger ship with a swimming pool.

Even if the sportsman and his lazy friend came with me, they would both be happy; one would have plenty of games and swimming; the other could sit in a comfortable chair all day, looking at the sea and drinking lemonade. On a ship, one can do as one likes, when one likes. If one day I find an interesting book in the ship's library, I can spend the whole day reading it, and nobody will stop me.

Perhaps the next day I shall want some exercise. Well, then I can play games with passengers until I am hot and sweating and ready for a bath. I can go and sleep in my cabin at any time of the day or night, I can get cheap drinks during most of the day, and I can eat as I like, choosing among a variety of foods.

But perhaps the greatest pleasure of a sea holiday is coming to new ports in strange lands, and going ashore for a few hours to see strange places, eat strange foods and hear a strange language spoken around us. Whenever I think of my ideal holiday, it is the picture of a mysterious foreign city that comes to mind.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A sportsman is fond of .....  
☐ a) playing games      ☐ b) reading books      ☐ c) eating much food      ☐ d) sleeping early
2. The utmost pleasure of a sea holiday is .....  
☐ a) coming to new states      ☐ b) coming to new harbours  
☐ c) meeting people      ☐ d) going shopping
3. The underlined word "one" refers to .....  
☐ a) the lazy man      ☐ b) the passenger      ☐ c) a holiday      ☐ d) the sportsman
4. The best title for this text is ".....".  
☐ a) Sportsmen      ☐ b) Lazy people      ☐ c) A passenger ship      ☐ d) An ideal holiday
5. Which one of the following isn't mentioned in the passage?  
☐ a) Coming to new ports in strange lands is an enjoyable moment.  
☐ b) A voyage in a modern passenger ship with a swimming pool would suit the sportsman and his lazy friend.  
☐ c) The writer seems to like the sea.  
☐ d) A voyage in a modern passenger ship would be noisy.
6. The writer seems to be ..... concerning trying foods.  
☐ a) adventurous      ☐ b) timid      ☐ c) selfish      ☐ d) worried
7. The antonym of the word "unsatisfied" is ".....".  
☐ a) unhappy      ☐ b) disappointed      ☐ c) contented      ☐ d) unconvinced
8. The writer likes to be ..... on a ship to enjoy his voyage.  
☐ a) alone      ☐ b) in company      ☐ c) lonely      ☐ d) single

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Dear Amal,

In your last email, you told me about your aunt. I am very impressed that she is going to get a degree in law now that her children have left home. You asked me if I knew anyone else who had studied when they were older. I don't know anyone, but I heard about an amazing woman in a report on the radio. The report said that a woman had started primary school at the age of 90! The woman, whose name is Priscilla Sitienei, lives in a rural village in Kenya. When she was younger, she was not able to go to school. She worked for 65 years as a nurse. Although she was good at her job, she never learned to read or write. In 2003, the government of Kenya said that primary school would be free for everyone for the first time. Priscilla wanted to learn to read and write and decided to go to primary school with six of her great-great-grandchildren. She said that it was never too late to learn new skills and she wanted to inspire other adults to do the same. Now she is learning maths, English and PE. She wears the same blue and green uniform as her fellow pupils. The head teacher of the school said that Priscilla was loved by every pupil and that they all wanted to learn and play with her. At break, she tells the other pupils about the customs that she grew up with.

At the end of the report, Priscilla said that she wanted to tell the world's children that with education, they could be whatever they wanted. She is certainly a remarkable woman!

Best wishes,

Azza

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Why is Azza impressed by Amal's aunt?
  - She is studying for a degree.
  - Her children have left home.
  - She is learning to read.
  - She didn't have a degree.
- What does Priscilla hope to achieve, as well as learning at school?
  - She wants a new job.
  - She wants pupils to inspire her.
  - She wants to inspire children to learn.
  - She wants to write a book.
- Why do you think that Priscilla did not go to primary school when she was a child?
  - There weren't any primary schools.
  - Her family could not pay for her education.
  - She did not want to learn.
  - She started working as a nurse.
- What is the main idea of the text?
  - It is never too late to learn.
  - Old people must go to school.
  - Old people should go to school.
  - Nurses can get different jobs.
- What do the underlined words "anyone else" refer to?
  - Any other people.
  - Any aunts.
  - Any friends.
  - Any relatives.
- Why did Azza tell Amal about Priscilla Sitienei?
  - Priscilla was one of her relatives.
  - She wanted to give her a prize.
  - Amal asked her if she knew anyone who is like her aunt.
  - She wanted to write a report about Priscilla.
- What do you think the word remarkable means?
  - Very old.
  - Very clever.
  - Very kind.
  - Unusual in a way that is surprising.
- What encouraged Priscilla to go back to education?
  - The government's decision to make primary school free for everyone.
  - She wanted to accompany her grandchildren at school.
  - She wanted to have a better job.
  - She wanted to be famous.



## Passage No. 3

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A Yugoslavian nun, Mother Theresa, first came to India to teach young girls from wealthy Indian families. However, in her travels around the country, she saw how the poor Indian people lived. There were homeless people living in the streets. Some were too poor to feed themselves and died of starvation.

No one in the country who could help them did anything for these poor people. She felt determined to do something to help.

She realised that this was the job that God wanted her to do, so she left her highly paid job to help the poor in India. At first, it was hard for her. She did not have much support. Whatever little food and money she had, she gave them to those who came to her for help. No one was ever turned away from her doorstep.

She went around the city looking for the homeless and starving and took them off the streets. When the people in the area saw how hard she was trying to help their own people, they felt ashamed. They wanted to follow her example.

They donated food and money to help the poor. With more support from the community, she set up many homes all over India. Soon, she was known all over the world as the saviour of the poor.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Where was Mother Theresa from?  
☐ a) Europe.      ☐ b) Africa.      ☐ c) Asia.      ☐ d) South America.
- It seemed that the people in India had ..... hearts before Theresa's arrival.  
☐ a) kind      ☐ b) gentle      ☐ c) caring      ☐ d) cruel
- "No one was ever turned away from her doorstep" means .....  
☐ a) no one came to her house for help      ☐ b) she didn't let anyone leave without help  
☐ c) she didn't help all those who came for help      ☐ d) no one came to support her
- The phrase "have nothing to eat" is the synonym of ".....".  
☐ a) ashamed      ☐ b) bored      ☐ c) starving      ☐ d) homeless
- Mother Theresa's original job was .....  
☐ a) helping homeless people living in the streets  
☐ b) fighting starvations and poverty  
☐ c) teaching young girls from wealthy Indian families  
☐ d) donating food and money to help the poor
- Mother Theresa determined to help the poor because .....  
☐ a) she had a lot of money  
☐ b) she realised that this was the job God wanted her to do  
☐ c) they were in India  
☐ d) they loved her
- The work of helping the poor didn't start off well because .....  
☐ a) there were no more poor people      ☐ b) she travelled and left them  
☐ c) most of them became rich      ☐ d) she didn't have much support
- Mother Theresa was known .....  
☐ a) all over the world      ☐ b) only in India      ☐ c) in Europe      ☐ d) all over Asia

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

"No smoking" this is what we read in public closed places and public means of transport. Scientists have found links between smoking and numerous health conditions, including cancer, heart disease, stroke and lung disease. On average, smokers die 10 years sooner than non-smokers, according to the Centres for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC).

Despite the risks, almost many adults smoke. The main reasons for this are that nicotine is addictive and eliminating the habit is difficult. However, there is much support and help available.

If you do not smoke, do not start. This is a valuable piece of advice we often receive from the majority of doctors. Cigarette smoking and pollution represent fearful enemies to man as they destroy health and bring about suffering a death.

Doctors have proved that the smoker's lungs, throat and respiratory system are often attacked by cancer. Male cigarette smokers have a higher death rate from heart diseases than non-smoking males. Female smokers are less affected because they do not breathe in the smoke so deeply. So, smoking is banned in cinemas, theatres and all closed places. In some places, there are special rooms for smoking, just to protect the non-smokers from its danger. They are helpless victims since they inhale poisonous gas and nicotine, they receive much more than the smokers themselves. The majority of smokers who want help to stop smoking prefer to seek it from a medical practitioner or another qualified health professional, rather than using self-help approaches. Patients should accept advice on changing their smoking habits from an acknowledged expert on health problems.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Doctors have recently proved that smokers are exposed to .....  
 a) punishment                      b) good health  
 c) cancer and heart disease                      d) non-smokers' attack
- Non-smokers have..... death rate from heart diseases than male cigarette smokers.  
 a) higher                      b) greater                      c) as much as                      d) lower
- What does the underlined word "they" refer to?  
 a) Male smokers.                      b) Female smokers.                      c) Non smokers.                      d) Diseases.
- The underlined verb "inhale" is similar in meaning to the verb ".....".  
 a) breathe in                      b) breathe out                      c) consume                      d) produce
- It is hard for smokers to give up smoking because .....  
 a) they are addicted to smoke of cigarettes                      b) they are addicted to the nicotine  
 c) smoking makes them feel happy                      d) they don't find any help from others
- Most of smokers who want to stop smoking .....  
 a) prefer to talk to a close friend                      b) like to use self-help approaches  
 c) prefer to ask a medical specialist's help                      d) seek their relatives' support
- The best title for the passage is ".....".  
 a) Pros and cons of smoking                      b) How to avoid smoking  
 c) How to be addicted to smoking                      d) The dangers of smoking
- Smoking affects the ..... system most.  
 a) respiratory                      b) digestive                      c) cardiovascular                      d) muscular

## Passage No. 5

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Life was not always a bed of roses for Hanan. She was born into a life of poverty and suffering. Her parents were lowly-paid farmers who barely made ends meet. They did not have the means to send Hanan to school.

When Hanan was nine, her parents passed away due to exhaustion and ill health. She was then sent to the local orphanage. There, she was finally given a chance to learn. She was a very bright student who was hungry for knowledge and learnt very quickly. Two years later, Hanan was finally adopted by a rich businessman and his wife.

Hanan lived happily with her new adoptive parents. They sent her to a proper school and enrolled her in many classes to help her catch up with her peers. She devoted much time to her studies and got good grades in school. Her adoptive parents were very proud of her.

Hanan continued to thrive under the loving care of her new attentive and supportive parents. Hanan continued to excel in her studies. This was because she came from a poor background and treasured the chance to be given a proper education. She eventually did well enough to go to university.

There, Hanan studied psychology. She was interested in specialising in child psychology. She wanted to be able to make a difference in their lives. She started volunteering her time and services at an orphanage during her free time. She often told the children in the orphanage her own life experiences. She was a motivation to many of them there. It made her appreciate her life more and strengthened her determination to help other children like herself.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**1. The best title for the passage is "\_\_\_\_\_".**

- a) Hanan's determination to excel
- b) Hanan's miserable life
- c) Hanan's supportive parents
- d) Life with poor children

**2. The expression "her parents passed away" means \_\_\_\_\_.**

- a) her parents were very ill
- b) her parents immigrated
- c) her parents dismissed her
- d) her parents died

**3. According to paragraph one, why did Hanan not attend school?**

- a) She was suffering from ill health.
- b) She wanted to lie in a bed of roses.
- c) Her parents could not afford to send her to school.
- d) She wanted to play with other children.

**4. Which one of the following pieces of information is not true?**

- a) Hanan spent two years in the orphanage.
- b) Hanan was deprived of food at the orphanage.
- c) Hanan's parents passed away when she was nine.
- d) Hanan was given an education at the orphanage.

5. How did Hanan find her adoptive parents?

- ☐ a) She was devoted to them.
- ☐ b) He was supportive of them.
- ☐ c) She was very proud of them.
- ☐ d) She slowly grew to have an affection for them.

6. What does "This" refer to?

- ☐ a) Hanan's doing well in her studies.
- ☐ b) Hanan's loving to her adoptive parents.
- ☐ c) Hanan's coming from a poor background.
- ☐ d) Hanan's treasuring the chance to receive a proper education.

7. Why did Hanan choose to study child psychology?

- ☐ a) She wanted to volunteer at the orphanage.
- ☐ b) She wanted to be different from her parents.
- ☐ c) She wanted to help other children who had a similar background to hers.
- ☐ d) She wanted to find out why children like herself turned out that way.

8. The underlined word "There" refers to the .....

- ☐ a) orphanage
- ☐ b) university
- ☐ c) village
- ☐ d) school



## General

## Exercises

Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. Social media are one of the most important ways to communicate with people everywhere. However, they have become one of the most annoying ways of spreading rumours and bad news.

- (a) تُعد وسائل الإعلام الاجتماعية من أهم وسائل التواصل مع الناس في أي مكان. إلا أنها أصبحت من أكثر الطرق المزعجة لنشر الشائعات والأخبار السيئة.
- (b) تُعد وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي من أهم وسائل المواصلات مع الناس في كل مكان. إلا أنها أصبحت من أكثر الطرق المزعجة لنشر الأخبار والأخبار السيئة.
- (c) تُعد وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي من أهم وسائل التواصل مع الناس في كل مكان. إلا أنها أصبحت من أكثر الطرق المزعجة لنشر الشائعات والأخبار السيئة.
- (d) تُعد وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي من أخطر وسائل التواصل مع الناس في أي مكان. إلا أنها أصبحت من أكثر الطرق المزعجة لنشر الحوادث والأخبار السيئة.

2. During the last few years, the Egyptian woman had a lot of rights. She is represented in parliament, and some ministers of the government are women.

- (a) خلال السنوات القليلة الماضية، كان للمرأة المصرية الكثير من الأشياء الصحيحة. وهي ممثلة في البرلمان، وبعض وزراء الحكومة من النساء.
- (b) خلال السنوات القليلة الماضية، حصلت المرأة المصرية على الكثير من الحقوق. فهي ممثلة في البرلمان، وبعض وزراء الحكومة من النساء.
- (c) خلال السنوات القليلة الماضية، كان للمرأة المصرية الكثير من الحقوق. وهي حاضرة في البرلمان، وبعض وزراء الدولة من النساء.
- (d) خلال السنوات القليلة الماضية، كان للسيدات المصريات الكثير من الحق. فهن متواجدات في الحكومة، وبعض وزراء البرلمان من النساء.

3. With the precautionary measures taken in many countries because of new viruses, online learning has become more and more important for students to complete their education.

- (a) مع الإجراءات الاحترازية المتخذة في العديد من البلدان بسبب الفيروسات الجديدة، أصبح التعلم عبر الإنترنت أكثر أهمية للطلاب لإكمال تعليمهم.
- (b) مع الإجراءات الأولية المتخذة في العديد من البلدان بسبب الفيروسات الجديدة، أصبح التعلم عبر الإنترنت أكثر أهمية للطلاب لإكمال تعليمهم.
- (c) مع المعايير الحذرة المتخذة في العديد من البلدان بسبب الفيروسات الجديدة، أصبح التعلم عبر الإنترنت أكثر أهمية للطلاب لإكمال تعليمهم.
- (d) مع المعايير الاحترازية المتخذة في العديد من البلدان بسبب الفيروسات الجديدة، أصبحت الدراسة عبر الإنترنت أكثر أهمية للطلاب لإكمال تعليمهم.

4. Hospitals must be provided with modern medical equipment which makes the doctor's work accurate and fruitful.

- (a) يجب إمداد المستشفيات بالتجهيزات التكنولوجية الحديثة التي تجعل عمل الطبيب صحيحًا ومثمرًا.
- (b) يجب إحضار المستشفيات بالمعدات الطبية الحديثة التي تجعل عمل الطبيب دقيقًا وغزيرًا.
- (c) يجب ملء المستشفيات بالأجهزة الصحية الحديثة التي تجعل عمل الطبيب دقيقًا ومثمرًا.
- (d) يجب تزويد المستشفيات بالمعدات الطبية الحديثة التي تجعل عمل الطبيب دقيقًا ومثمرًا.

5. Learning foreign languages helps us to read the best books on science, medicine, engineering and literature. It can also open new horizons for entertainment.

- (a) يساعدنا تعلم اللغات الأجنبية على قراءة أفضل الكتب في العلم والأدوية والهندسة والأدب. ويمكنه أيضًا فتح أفق جديد للترفيه.
- (b) يساعدنا تعلم اللغات الأجنبية على قراءة أفضل الكتب في العلوم والأدوية والهندسة والثقافة. ويمكنه أيضًا فتح آفاق جديدة للترفيه.
- (c) يساعدنا تعلم اللغات الأجنبية على قراءة أفضل الكتب في العلوم والطب والهندسة والأدب. ويمكنه أيضًا فتح آفاق جديدة للترفيه.
- (d) يساعدنا تعلم اللغات الأخرى على قراءة أفضل الكتب في العلوم والطب والهندسة والثقافة. ويمكنه أيضًا فتح أفق جديد للترفيه.



6. Practising sports teaches us discipline and keeps us fit both physically and mentally. Therefore, they should be a part of any school curriculum.

- (a) ممارسة الرياضة تعلمنا النظام وتبقينا لائقين جسديًا وعقليًا. ولذلك، ينبغي أن تكون جزءًا من كل صف مدرسي.
- (b) ممارسة الرياضة تعلمنا الانضباط وتبقينا لائقين جسديًا وعقليًا. ولذلك، ينبغي أن تكون جزءًا من أي منهج مدرسي.
- (c) ممارسة الرياضة تدرس لنا الانضباط وتجعلنا لائقين جسديًا وعقليًا. ولذلك، ينبغي أن تكون جزءًا من أي صف دراسي.
- (d) ممارسة الرياضيات تدرس الانضباط وتبقينا لائقين بدنيًا وروحيًا. ولذلك، ينبغي أن تكون جزءًا من أي منهج مدرسي.

7. Man has poisoned the atmosphere and wasted foolishly the earth's natural resources with no regard for the future.

- (a) لقد سمم الإنسان الغلاف الجوي وأهدر مبالغ كبيرة من الموارد الأرض الطبيعية دون أي اعتبار للمستقبل.
- (b) لقد سمم الرجل الغلاف الجوي وأهدر مبالغ كبيرة من الموارد الأرض الطبيعية دون أي اعتبار للمستقبل.
- (c) لقد دمر الإنسان الغلاف الجوي وأهدر بمحاقة أموال الأرض الطبيعية دون أي اعتبار للمستقبل.
- (d) لقد دمر الإنسان الظواهر الطبيعية وأهدر مبالغ كبيرة من الموارد الأرض الطبيعية دون أي اعتبار للمستقبل.

8. Good words have a good effect on both man and society as they spread hope and optimism. On the other hand, rumours and spreading bad news may do the opposite.

- (a) إن الكلمة الطيبة لها أثرها الجيد على الإنسان والمجتمع، فهي تنشر الأمل والعزيمة. ومن ناحية أخرى، فإن الشائعات ونشر الأخبار السيئة قد تفعل العكس.
- (b) إن الكلمة الطيبة لها أثرها الطيب على الرجل والمجتمع، فهي تنشر الأمل والتفاؤل. ومن ناحية أخرى، فإن الشائعات ونشر الأخبار السيئة قد تفعل العكس.
- (c) إن الكلمة الطيبة لها أثرها الحسن على الرجل الاجتماعي، فهي تنشر الأمل والتفاؤل. ومن ناحية أخرى، فإن الشائعات ونشر الأخبار السيئة قد تفعل العكس.
- (d) إن الكلمة الطيبة لها أثرها الطيب على الإنسان والمجتمع، فهي تنشر الأمل والتفاؤل. ومن ناحية أخرى، فإن الشائعات ونشر الأخبار السيئة قد تفعل العكس.

9. Boys and girls at schools and universities will not achieve success unless they do their best in their studies. Hard work and patience are the true keys to success.

- (a) لن يحقق الفتيان والفتيات في المدارس والجامعات النجاح إلا إذا بذلوا قصارى جهدهم في دراستهم. العمل الجاد والصبر هما المفتاحان الحقيقيان للنجاح.
- (b) لن يحقق الفتيان والفتيات في المدارس والجامعات النجاح إلا إذا كانوا الأفضل في دراستهم. العمل الجاد والصحة الجيدة هما المفتاحان الحقيقيان للنجاح.
- (c) لن يحقق الفتيان والفتيات في المدارس والجامعات النجاح إلا إذا بذلوا قصارى جهدهم في دراستهم. العمل الجاد والصبر هما المفتاحان الحقيقيان للنجاح.
- (d) لن يبدأ الفتيان والفتيات في المدارس والجامعات النجاح إلا إذا كانوا الأفضل في دراستهم. العمل الجاد والصبر هما المفتاحان الحقيقيان للنجاح.

10. Rationalising water is one of the most important ways to face the problem of water shortage. It has become a necessity to face one of the serious future challenges.

- (a) يُعتبر تبذير المياه من أهم أسباب مشكلة نقص المياه. لقد أصبح من الضروري مواجهة أحد التحديات المستقبلية الخطيرة.
- (b) يُعتبر ترشيد المياه من أهم السبل لمواجهة مشكلة نقص المياه. لقد أصبح من الضروري مواجهة أحد التحديات المستقبلية الخطيرة.
- (c) يُعتبر ترشيد المياه من أهم السبل لمواجهة مشكلة تلوث المياه. لقد أصبح من الضروري مواجهة أحد التحديات المستقبلية الخطيرة.
- (d) يُعتبر نقص المياه من أهم مخاطر مشكلة نقص المياه. لقد أصبح من الضروري مواجهة أحد التحديات المستقبلية الخطيرة.

### Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

1. لقد حقق المنتخب الأولمبي إنجازًا غير مسبوق بفوزه على منتخبات عالمية قوية وصعد للأدوار النهائية وذلك بالتخطيط الجيد والتدريب الجاد والانضباط.
  - ☐ a) The Olympic team achieved an unprecedented achievement by defeating strong international teams and advancing to the final rounds, with good planning, hard training, and discipline.
  - ☐ b) The Olympic team achieved an unprecedented achievement by winning strong international teams and reaching to the final floors, with good planning, hard training, and discipline.
  - ☐ c) The Olympics team have made an unprecedented achievement by defeating strong national teams and advancing to the final rounds, with good planning, hard training, and discipline.
  - ☐ d) The Olympic team achieved an unprecedented achievement by defeating strong national teams and advancing to the final rounds, with good planning, hard training, and discipline.
2. للحروب آثارها المدمرة فهي تقتل الأبرياء وتضعف الاقتصاد وتشرد الملايين وتنتشر الفقر والجهل والمرض ولا يمكن ترميم ما أفسدته إلا بعد سنين طويلة.
  - ☐ a) Wars have devastating effects. They kill civil people, weaken the economy, displace millions, and spread illiteracy, ignorance and disease. What they have damaged cannot be restored until after many years.
  - ☐ b) Wars have devastating affect. They kill loyal people, weaken the economy, displace millions, and spread poverty, ignorance and disease. What they have damaged cannot be restored until after many years.
  - ☐ c) Wars have devastating effects. They kill loyal people, weaken the economics, displace millions, and spread poverty, ignorance and disease. What they have damaged cannot be restored until after many years.
  - ☐ d) Wars have devastating effects. They kill innocent people, weaken the economy, displace millions, and spread poverty, ignorance and disease. What they have damaged cannot be restored until after many years.
3. اتخذت وزارة التربية والتعليم خطوات كبيرة لتطوير التعليم. وقد أمدت المدارس بأحدث التقنيات للمساعدة في سياستها.
  - ☐ a) The Ministry of Education has taken great steps to develop education. It has provided schools with the latest technology to help with its policy.
  - ☐ b) The Ministry of Education has taken great steps to develop education. It has provided schools with the latest technology to help with its politics.
  - ☐ c) The Ministry of Education has taken great feet to develop education. It has saved schools with the latest technology to help with its policy.
  - ☐ d) The Ministry of Education has taken great stairs to develop education. It has provided schools with the latest technology to help with its politics.
4. إن زراعة الأشجار تساعد البيئة. توفر الأشجار الظل في الصيف وتساعد في مقاومة التغيرات المناخية عن طريق امتصاص غازات الاحتباس الحراري.
  - ☐ a) Panting trees helps the environment. Trees save shade in summer and help in fighting back the climatic changes by giving off greenhouse gases.
  - ☐ b) Plant trees helps the environment. Trees provide light in summer and help in fighting back the climate changes by absorbing greenhouse gases.
  - ☐ c) Planting trees helps the environment. Trees save shadow in summer and help in fighting back the climate changes by taking greenhouse gases.
  - ☐ d) Planting trees helps the environment. Trees provide shade in summer and help in fighting back the climatic changes by absorbing greenhouse gases.

٥. تلعب الجمعيات الخيرية دورًا مهمًا في دعم الفقراء في أوقات الحاجة. إنهم يقدمون الطعام والملابس. ولهذا السبب يجب علينا التبرع بالمال لمساعدتهم.

- a) Charities play an important role in support poor people in times of need. They provide food and clothes. That's why we should donate money to help them.
- b) Charities give an important apart in supporting poor people in time of needs. They save food and clothes. That's why we should donate money to help it.
- c) Charities play an important part in supporting poor people in times of need. They provide food and clothes. That's why we should donate money to help them.
- d) Charities play an important part to supporting poor people in times of needs. They provide food and clothes. That's why we should take money to help them.

٦. تهدف الحكومة المصرية إلى زيادة الاستثمارات في مشروعات الطاقة النظيفة مثل طاقة الرياح والطاقة الشمسية كما بدأت في دخول مجال الهيدروجين الأخضر.

- a) The Egyptian government aimed to increase investments in clean energy projects such as wind and solar energy, and has begun to enter the field of green hydrogen.
- b) The Egyptian government aims to discuss investments in clean energy projects such as wind and solar energy, and has begun to enter the field of green hydrogen.
- c) The Egyptian government aims to double investments in clear energy projects such as wind and solar energy, and has begun to enter the field of green hydrogen.
- d) The Egyptian government aims to increase investments in clean energy projects such as wind and solar energy and has begun to enter the field of green hydrogen.

٧. لقد لعبت التكنولوجيا الحديثة دورًا فعالًا في تسهيل حياة الأفراد اليومية وتطوير ثقافتهم، ولكن كلما كان المجتمع أكثر جهلًا زادت صعوبة التعامل معه.

- a) Modern technology has played an ordinary role in facilitating the daily lives of individuals and developing their culture, but the more idle a society is, the more difficult it is to deal with it.
- b) Modern technology has played an effective role in facilitating the daily lives of individuals and developing their culture, but the more ignorant a society is, the more difficult it is to deal with it.
- c) Modern technology has played an effective role in facilitating the daily lives of individuals and develop their behaviour, but the more ignorant a society is, the more difficult it is to deal with it.
- d) Modern technology has played an effective role in facilitate the daily lives of individuals and developing their culture, but the most ignorance a society is, the most difficult it is to deal with it.

٨. هناك العديد من المشروعات القومية الكبرى في مصر وهذه المشروعات توفر فرص العمل للشباب وتدفع الاقتصاد، ومن أهم هذه المشروعات العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة.

- a) There are many major national projects in Egypt, and these projects provide job opportunities for old people and boast the economy, and the most important of these projects is the New Administrative Capital.
- b) There are many major national projects in Egypt, and these projects provide job opportunities for young people and boost the economy, and the most enormous of these projects is the New Administrative Capital.
- c) There are few major national projects in Egypt, and these projects provide job opportunities for young people and boost the economy, and the most important of these projects is the New Administrative Capital.
- d) There were many major national projects in Egypt, and these projects provide job opportunities for young people and boost the economy, and the most important of these projects is the New Administrative Capital.

9. لقد أصبح التعلم مدى الحياة ضرورة للاستمرار في العمل وهو مهم لأن تكون صالحاً لأي وظيفة وذلك بسبب التطور المستمر في مجال الأعمال.

- a) Lifelong learning has become a necessity to stay in business and it is important to be fit for any job due to the continuous development in the field of business.
- b) Lifelong learning has become a necessity to stay in business and it is important to be fit for any job due to the continuous developing in the field of business.
- c) Lifelong learning has become a necessity to stay in business and it is suitable to be fit for any job due to the continuous development in the field of business.
- d) Lifelong learning has become a necessity to stay in business and it is important to be fit for any job due to the continuous development in the field of business.

10. يعتقد بعض الناس أن الكتب والصحف الإلكترونية ستؤدي إلى اختفاء الكتب والصحف الورقية التقليدية وذلك لإقبال الناس الشديد على استخدام الإنترنت.

- a) Some people believe that electronic books and newspapers will lead to the lack of traditional paper books and newspapers, due to the strong demand of people to use the Internet.
- b) Some people believe that electronic books and newspapers will lead to the disappearance of traditional paper books and newspapers, due to the continuous demand of people to use the Internet.
- c) Some people believe that electronic books and newspapers will lead to the disappearance of traditional paper books and newspapers, due to the strong demand of people to use the Internet.
- d) Some people believe that electric books and newspapers will lead to the disappearance of traditional paper books and newspapers, due to the strong demand of people to use the Internet.



## General

**Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic:**

1. Should factories be responsible for the effects of the chemicals used in the creation of their products?
2. Many people depend on social media for their trusted source of news. Do you agree? State your opinion.
3. A review of a film you watched and liked much.
4. Describe a special time that you and your family had together.
5. Hosting international sports competitions and conferences is a good way to encourage tourists to visit Egypt.
6. What do you think is the most important scientific discovery or invention of the last 50 years?
7. Which subjects are essential for our education? Why?
8. How can education help improve our country?
9. How we make use of our deserts.
10. The advantages of travelling abroad.
11. Should students evaluate their teachers? Why?
12. Solving the problems on earth is more important than exploring space. Do you agree? Why/Why not?
13. The importance of tourism for Egypt.
14. My dream job.
15. A building in your town or city you think tourists would enjoy visiting.
16. The importance of healthy food.
17. How do you think people could protect the environment in your town or city?
18. The importance of science.
19. Can a class size influence students' performance? Why?
20. The pros and cons of allowing mobile phones in schools.
21. Is it necessary to explore space? Why?
22. Having a lot of money does not always bring happiness.
23. Ways to help the people with a disability or people with special needs to be useful citizens.
24. How can we get ready for the problem of water shortage?
25. The role of the Egyptian people in encouraging tourism.

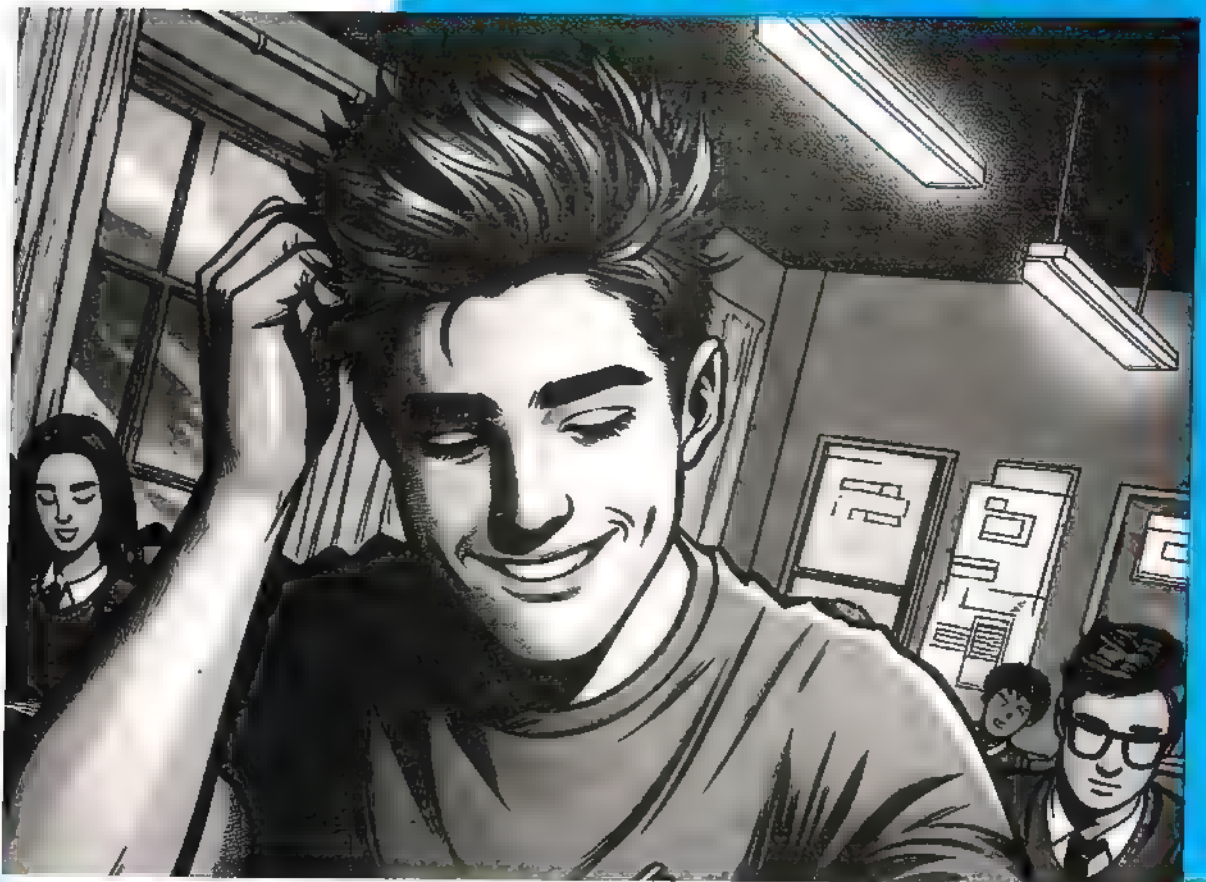
**Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words:**

1. To your Saudi Arabian friend telling him about an important transport project taking place in Egypt nowadays. Your name is Mostafa and your email address is mostafa005@yahoo.com. Your friend is Fahd and his email address is fahd300@gmail.com
2. To your friend telling her about the new development of laws concerning women's rights in Egypt. Your name is Kenzy and your email address is kenzy008@yahoo.com. Your friend is Jessy and her email address is jessy007@gmail.com.
3. You read a job advert in Al-Ahram for the job of a customer service call centre clerk in Banque Misr. Write to the bank applying for the job. Your name is Reda Sayed and your email address is redasayed@gmail.com. Write to: jobs@banquemisr.com.
4. Your friend travelled to Saudi Arabia to work there. Write to him telling him your news and asking him about his new job. Your name is Solyman and your email address is solyman@yahoo.com. Your friend is Yasser and his email address is yasser300@gmail.com



# Part 3

## General Revision



Revision on Module (4) (Units 7 & 8)

Revision on Module (5) (Units 9 & 10)

Revision on Module (6) (Units 11 & 12)

King Lear



## A

## Vocabulary

## Key Vocabulary

## المفردات الرئيسية

determination (n)	تصميم / عزيمة	high-tech (adj)	عالي التكنولوجيا	public (adj)	عام
encouragement (n)	تشجيع	host family (n)	أسرة مضيفة	struggle (v) (d)	يكافح / يناضل / يعاني
expansion (n)	توسيع	independent (adj)	مستقل	transport (n) (v) (ed)	نقل / مواصلات / ينقل
facilities (n)	إمكانيات / تسهيلات / مرافق	network (n)	شبكة		
get used to	يعتاد على	pick ... up (v)	يُحضر (شخصًا) من مكان		

## Helpful Vocabulary

## مفردات مساعدة

abroad (adv)	بالخارج	construction (n)	إنشاء / تشييد	expect (v) (ed)	يتوقع
accent (n)	لهجة	convenient (adj)	مناسب	explore (v) (d)	يستكشف
activity (n)	نشاط	conversation (n)	محادثة	extract (n)	مقتطف / جزء مقتبس
add (v) (ed)	يضيف	create (v) (d)	يخلق / ينتج	firefighter (n)	رجل إطفاء
advantage (n)	ميزة	creature (n)	مخلوق	flight (n)	رحلة جوية
affordable (adj)	يمكن تحمل نفقاته	culture (n)	ثقافة	governorate (n)	محافظة
alternative (n) (adj)	بديل	current (adj)	حالي / جاري	grateful (adj)	شاكر / ممتن
annoy (v) (ed)	يزعج / يضايق	decrease (v) (d)	ينخفض / يقل	harbour (n)	ميناء
appropriate (adj)	مناسب / ملائم	diary (n)	يوميات	imagine (v) (d)	يتخيل
area (n)	منطقة / مساحة	disability (n)	إعاقة	importance (n)	أهمية
argument (n)	جدال	disadvantage (n)	عيب	improve (v) (d)	يُحسن / يتحسن
authority (n)	سلطة / هيئة	disagreement (n)	عدم اتفاق / اعتراض	include (v) (d)	يشمل
challenge (n) (v) (d)	تحدي / يتحدى	distract (v) (ed)	يشغل الذهن	increase (v) (d) (n)	يزيد / زيادة
coast (n)	ساحل	doubt (n) (v) (ed)	شك / يشك	interrupt (v) (ed)	يقاطع / يعترض
complete (adj) (v) (d)	كامل / يكمل	drought (n)	جفاف	involve (v) (d)	يتضمن
concentrate (v) (d)	يركز	electric (adj)	كهربى	issue (n)	قضية
conclusion (n)	خاتمة	emphasise (v) (d)	يؤكد على	lead (v)	يقود / يؤدي
conditions (n)	ظروف / أحوال	entry (n)	مدخل / تدوين	level (n)	مستوى
confident (adj)	واثق	environmentally (adv)	بيئيًا	lonely (adj)	وحيد
confused (adj)	مربك	equipment (n)	معدات	miss (v) (ed)	يفتقد
connect (v) (ed)	يربط / يصل	especially (adv)	بخاصة	monorail (n)	خط حديدي أحادي

notice (n)	ملاحظة / إشعار	respond (v) (ed)	يرد / يستجيب	suburb (n)	ضاحية
organise (v) (d)	ينظم	satisfactory (adj)	مُرْتِضٍ	summarise (v) (d)	يلخص
point (n)	نقطة / رأي	schedule (n)	جدول	system (n)	نظام
precise (adj)	دقيق / محدد	secret (n) (adj)	سر / سري	take place (v)	يحدث / يتم
present (adj)	حالي	series (n)	سلسلة / مسلسل تلفزيوني	temporary (adj)	مؤقت
presentation (n)	عرض تقديمي	servant (n)	خادم	text message (n)	رسالة نصية
price (n)	سعر	significant (adj)	هام / ذو مغزى	total (adj)	كلى / إجمالى
protect (v) (ed)	يحمى / يقي من	solution (n)	حل	tunnel (n)	نفق
provide (v) (d)	يزود / يوفر	specific (adj)	محدد	vehicle (n)	مركبة
publish (v) (ed)	ينشر	storm (n)	عاصفة	volunteer (n) (v) (ed)	متطوع / يتطوع
railway (n)	سكة حديدية	stress (v) (ed)	ضغط / يضغط / يؤكد على	weather (n)	الطقس
region (n)	إقليم	stressed (adj)	مضغوط	weigh (v) (ed)	يزن

## Expressions &amp; Idioms

## تعابير ومصطلحات

all in all	على العموم	get better at	يتحسن في	make sure	يتأكد
along the coast	عبر الساحل	get distracted	يصبح مشتت الذهن	on behalf of	بالنيابة عن
around the world	حول العالم	have a break	لديه راحة / فسحة	on his own	بمفرده
at least	على الأقل	have a great time	يتمتع بوقت رائع	over the next ten years	خلال السنوات العشر القادمة
do some research	يقوم ببعض الأبحاث	have experience	لديه خبرة	point of view	وجهة نظر
do/perform activity	يقوم بنشاط	keep in mind	يتذكر / يبقى في ذهنه	take a test	يتمتحان
find it hard to	يجد من الصعب أن	keep in touch by	يكون على اتصال بـ	the pros and cons of	مزايا وعيوب
forms of transport	وسائل المواصلات	make ... better	يجعله ... أفضل	until tomorrow	حتى الغد (عبارة لختام أو وداع)
from the beginning	من البداية	make notes	يدون ملاحظات		

## Phrasal Verbs

## عبارات وحروف جر

agree with	يتفق مع	come across	يعبر / يقابل (بالصدفة)	different to/from	مختلف عن
alternative to	بديل لـ	come into	يأتي / يدخل إلى	famous for	مشهور بـ
arrive at	يصل إلى	decrease in	تقليل في	give up	يقطع عن
bad for	سئ لـ	difference between	اختلاف بين	go down	ينخفض

importance of	أهمية لـ	look out of	ينظر من خلال	similar to	مشابه لـ
increase in	زيادة في	move to	ينقل إلى	stay with	يقيم مع
lead to	يؤدي إلى	part of	جزء من	travel across	يسافر عبر
learn about	يعرف / يتعلم عن	possible for	ممکن لـ	travel around	يتنقل
look around	ينظر حول / يتجول	respond to	يرد على / يستجيب لـ	work for	يعمل لدى

## Derivatives

## المشتقات

annoy	يزعج / يضايق	annoyance	إزعاج	annoying annoyed	مزعج مزعج
concentrate	يركز	concentration	تركيز	concentrated	مركز
conclude	يختم / يستنتج	conclusion	خاتمة / استنتاج	concluding	خاتم / مستنتج
confuse	يربك	confusion	إرباك / ارتباك	confused	مرتبك
construct	يفشي / يشيد	construction	إنشاء / تشييد	constructive	بناء
create	يخلق / ينتج	creation creator	إبداع / خلق خالق / مبدع	creative	مبدع / إبداعي
determine	يصمم	determination	تصميم	determined	مصمم / عاقد العزم
distract	يشغى الذهن	distraction	تشتت الذهن	distracted	مشتت الذهن
encourage	يشجع	encouragement	تشجيع	encouraging	مشجع
expand	يعد / يوسع	expansion	توسيع	expandable	يمكن توسيعه
explore	يستكشف	exploration explorer	استكشاف مستكشف	exploratory	استكشافي
imagine	يتخيل	imagination	خيال	imaginative imaginary	خيالي (مبدع) خيالي (بعيد عن الواقع)
increase	يزيد	increase	زيادة	increasing	متزايد
interrupt	يقاطع / يعترض	interruption	مقاطعة / اعتراض	interrupted	مقاطع
introduce	يقدم	introduction	مقدمة	introductory	تقديمي
persuade	يقنع	persuasion	إقناع	persuasive	مقنع / إقناعي
produce	ينتج	production product	إنتاج منتج	productive	منتج
protect	يحمي / يقي من	protection	حماية / وقاية	protective	واقي
publish	ينشر	publication	نشر / منشور	published	منشور
respond	يرد / يستجيب	response	رد / استجابة	responsive	متجاوب



satisfy	يرضى / يقنع	satisfaction	رضا / قناعة	satisfactory	مريض
solve	يحل	solution	حل	solvable	يمكن حله
specify	يحدد	specification	تحديد / تخصيص	specific	محدد
stress	يضغط	stress	ضغط	stressed stressful	مضغوط مجهّد
struggle	يكافح	struggle	كفاح / معاناة	struggling	مكافح

### Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	مرادف	Antonym	مضاد
alternative	بديل	option/substitute		obligation	إلزام
amazing	مذهل	astonishing/awesome		ordinary/insignificant	عادي / غير ذي مغزى
central	مركزي / متوسط	main/basic		additional/extra	إضافي
concentrate	يركّز	focus		ignore	يتجاهل
confused	مرتبك	distracted/perplexed		clear-minded	صافي لذهن
connect	يربط / يصل	link/join		disconnect/divide	يفصل / يقسم
convenient	مناسب	appropriate/suitable		improper/unsuitable	غير مناسب
current	حالي / جارٍ	contemporary/ongoing		past/old	ماضٍ / قديم
determination	تصميم / عزيمة	persistence/dedication		indifference/hesitation	عدم اهتمام / تردد
distract	يشتت الذهن	confuse/disturb		calm/clarify	يهدئ / يوضح
drought	الجفاف	dryness		abundance	غزارة
emphasise	يؤكد على	stress/assert		deny/ignore	ينكر / يتجاهل
encouragement	تشجيع	support/backing		discouragement	عدم تشجيع
expansion	توسيع	growth/enlargement		decrease/reduction	تقليل / خفض
grateful	شاكر / ممتن	appreciative/thankful		ungrateful/rude	غير ممتن / وقح
independent	مستقل	self-reliant		dependent	معتمد
interrupt	يقاطع / يعترض	bother/disturb		assist	يساعد
organise	ينظم	arrange/regulate		ruin/disturb	يدمر / يزعج
precise	دقيق / محدد	exact/accurate		imprecise/indefinite	غير دقيق / غير محدد
present	حالي	current/existing		distant/previous	بعيد / سابق
provide	يزود / يوفر	supply/present		conceal	يخفي



respond	يرد / يستجيب	answer/reply	question/request	يستجوب / يطلب
satisfactory	مُرَضٍ	sufficient/adequate	inappropriate	غير مناسب
significant	هام / ذو مغزى	important	minor/unimportant	غير هام
specific	محدد	peculiar/particular	common/ordinary	عادي / شائع
total	كلى / إجمالى	complete	partial	جزئى

### Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

explore	يستكشف	The plans to <b>explore</b> space started in the 1960s.
invent	يخترع	Thomas Edison <b>invented</b> many electric devices.
discover	يكشف	Gold in Egypt was <b>discovered</b> by the ancient Egyptians.
drought	جفاف	Farmers complain that the <b>drought</b> will have a bad effect on their crops.
draught	تيار هواء يدخل إلى غرفة	I can feel a <b>draught</b> coming in. Lock the windows well, please.
diary	يوميات / مذكرات	I only write important events in my <b>diary</b> .
dairy	اللبان / منتجات الألبان	My son is allergic to <b>dairy</b> products such as cheese and yoghurt.
notice	١- ملاحظة / انتباه / اهتمام ٢- إشعار (بيان مطبوع لإعطاء معلومة أو تحذير) ٣- تحذير من شيء مستقبلي ٤- نقد أو رأى عن فيلم / قصة مطبوع في جريدة	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The problem of homeless children received the <b>notice</b> of the government.</li> <li>- The <b>notice</b> in front of the pavement said, 'No Parking'.</li> <li>- The Ministry of the Environment gave the factory only a week's <b>notice</b> to stop polluting the river.</li> <li>- The new film got favourable <b>notices</b> in the art magazine.</li> </ul>
weather	الطقس (حالة الجو في وقت حالى أو محدد)	The match has been cancelled due to bad <b>weather</b> conditions.
climate	المناخ (حالة الجو بشكل عام)	The country's <b>climate</b> is ideal for growing grapes.
the outlook	الأفق (توقع حالة الطقس في خلال الأيام القليلة القادمة)	The <b>outlook</b> for the weekend is for sunny weather.

**electric**

كهربى (يعمل بالكهرباء)

- The flat has the most modern **electric** devices.**electrical**

كهربائى (يستخدم الكهرباء - يعمل بإنتاج أو توصيل الكهرباء)

- A team of **electrical** engineers are responsible for providing the blocks of flats with electricity.**electronic**

إلكترونى (خاص بالكمبيوتر والإنترنت)

- Emails are forms of **electronic** text messages that are sent online.**pause**

صمت / توقف شخص عن الكلام أو فعل شيء (لفترة قصيرة قبل العودة)

The voice note I received had some **pauses** in the middle of the speech.**silence**

صمت / سكوت (لفترة طويلة)

The night was very cold and the street was in complete **silence**.**hesitation**

تردد (التوقف عن الحديث / فعل شيء لعدم الاطمئنان أو التأكد)

The young man entered the empty house after some minutes of **hesitation**.**abroad**

خارج البلاد (في بلد أخرى) (لا تستخدم كصفة قبل اسم)

He hopes to study **abroad** next year.**foreign**

أجنبي (صفة تأتي قبل اسم)

Have you studied any **foreign** languages?**exterior (outside)**

خارجى

The car had a certain amount of **exterior** damage.**certificate**

الشهادة (هي وثيقة رسمية لشيء مثل الميلاد أو الزواج أو الوفاة)

The police are waiting for the doctor to issue a death **certificate**.**qualifications**

المؤهلات (هي دليل مهارة الشخص أو معرفته لموضوع ما بعد النجاح في منهج أو امتحان)

She has the proper **qualifications** to teach.**degree**

درجة جامعية عند إتمام منهج دراسى بنجاح

She has a **degree** in engineering.**share**

يشارك أو يتقاسم شيئاً يمكن تقاسمه بين اثنين أو أكثر

We **shared** the money equally.**divide**

يقسم الناس أو الأشياء إلى أجزاء

The equator **divides** the Earth into two hemispheres.**part**

يُنْقَسَم / يُنْفَرَق

The puppies were **parted** from their mother at birth.**public**

عام (يمكن للجميع استخدامه)

- Improving **public** transport is a trend in many countries.**general**

عام (غير محدد)

- The lecturer gave us a **general** idea about the subject of his lecture.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### Group 1

- The key to Mohamed Salah's success was his ..... to overcome problems.  
☐ a) appearance      ☐ b) determination      ☐ c) avoidance      ☐ d) facilitation
- Experts always remind us that children need lots of ..... when they're learning new things.  
☐ a) discouragement      ☐ b) invention      ☐ c) collision      ☐ d) encouragement
- Although she is over 60 years old, grandma's very ..... and does all her own shopping and cooking.  
☐ a) dependent      ☐ b) nosy      ☐ c) independent      ☐ d) facilitated
- Noise can distract me so easily that I stop my work. The synonym of the word "distract" is .....  
☐ a) confuse      ☐ b) support      ☐ c) increase      ☐ d) refuse
- The rescuers ..... in touch by radio devices on a special wave.  
☐ a) tried      ☐ b) lost      ☐ c) kept      ☐ d) received
- Because of the spread of ..... books and newspapers, printing industry is declining.  
☐ a) electricity      ☐ b) electric      ☐ c) electrical      ☐ d) electronic
- It is important for a tourist to respect the traditions and ..... of the country he/she visits.  
☐ a) industry      ☐ b) agriculture      ☐ c) commerce      ☐ d) culture

### Group 2

- One of the challenges of travelling abroad is that you must ..... used to a different culture.  
☐ a) grow      ☐ b) get      ☐ c) fall      ☐ d) turn
- Given the necessary investment, the New Capital is perfect for economic .....  
☐ a) damage      ☐ b) application      ☐ c) expansion      ☐ d) pressure
- Father bought a new car which has a/an ..... steering system and modern sensors.  
☐ a) outdated      ☐ b) degraded      ☐ c) old-fashioned      ☐ d) high-tech
- The experiment results are so precise that no one can doubt them. The word "precise" is similar in meaning to .....  
☐ a) helpful      ☐ b) valueless      ☐ c) priceless      ☐ d) accurate
- I had to buy a lot of different numbers of magazines to ..... research.  
☐ a) do      ☐ b) give      ☐ c) take      ☐ d) make
- Some areas of the world suffered a long ..... with little or no rain because of climate change.  
☐ a) draught      ☐ b) current      ☐ c) drought      ☐ d) flood
- Father always tells us not to ..... him while he's working.  
☐ a) admit      ☐ b) interrupt      ☐ c) neglect      ☐ d) corrupt

### Group 3

- There are four mobile phone ..... competing in Egypt at the present time.  
☐ a) lines      ☐ b) networks      ☐ c) disciplines      ☐ d) societies
- Improving ..... systems is one of the main motives for economic investments in any country.  
☐ a) security      ☐ b) computer      ☐ c) transport      ☐ d) education

3. The charity is looking for ..... families for children who have to travel abroad for heart operations.  
☐ a) guest                      b) host                      c) strange                      d) homeless
4. There are plans for the expansion of the supermarket chains in new cities. The antonym of the word "expansion" is ".....".  
☐ a) development                      b) enlargement                      c) increase                      d) decrease
5. All ..... all, I think it has been a very successful conference.  
☐ a) at                      b) in                      c) for                      d) off
6. Mother is used to writing her thoughts down in her personal ..... every night.  
☐ a) essay                      b) article                      c) diary                      d) dairy
7. The bank administration hasn't ..... to the job applications, yet.  
☐ a) applied                      b) detected                      c) responded                      d) signalled

#### Group 4

1. The hotels in Sharm El-Sheikh have many ..... including a large indoor pool, Jacuzzi and sauna.  
☐ a) fabrics                      b) accessories                      c) abilities                      d) facilities
2. It is sad that disabled people may need to ..... hard to have a good place at work.  
☐ a) struggle                      b) relax                      c) relieve                      d) dispense
3. There's been some ..... development in the economic situation in Egypt.  
☐ a) valueless                      b) harmful                      c) significant                      d) devastated
4. To get success, you must organise your work very well. The word "organise" is opposite of .....  
☐ a) benefit                      b) ruin                      c) plan                      d) profit
5. You must ..... in mind that the new product should be on sale in two days.  
☐ a) take                      b) keep                      c) give                      d) miss
6. The girls gave a ..... description of the man who grabbed their bags and the police couldn't arrest him.  
☐ a) general                      b) public                      c) private                      d) careless
7. All that noise makes it hard to concentrate on the book I'm reading. The synonym of the verb "concentrate" is ".....".  
☐ a) derive                      b) relay                      c) ignore                      d) focus

#### Group 5

1. The article about the new book contained some ..... from different chapters in it.  
☐ a) shapes                      b) extracts                      c) formulas                      d) recipes
2. Because of damage to their homes, many people had to stay in ..... accommodation for a few months.  
☐ a) permanent                      b) constant                      c) temporary                      d) luxury
3. It isn't easy to ..... on your work if you have some family problems to deal with.  
☐ a) duplicate                      b) persist                      c) investigate                      d) concentrate
4. They produce cheap goods for export to the United States. The noun of the verb "produce" is .....  
☐ a) produces                      b) productive                      c) production                      d) productively
5. The team leaders agreed ..... all our suggestions about the camp site.  
☐ a) up                      b) for                      c) at                      d) with



6. Speaking two ..... languages, especially English and German, is one of the most important qualifications of the job of a secretary in our company.

- ☐ a) abroad      ☐ b) foreign      ☐ c) local      ☒ d) private

7. The fight between the two countries led ..... more and more refugees.

- ☐ a) to      ☐ b) at      ☐ c) in      ☒ d) for

### Group 6

1. The criminal put on an American ..... to deceive people, claiming that he is a foreigner.

- ☐ a) nationality      ☐ b) degree      ☐ c) accent      ☒ d) currency

2. After renewing the public garden and providing it with some facilities, it was decided that ..... to the garden would cost 50 pounds.

- ☐ a) exit      ☐ b) entry      ☐ c) place      ☒ d) trip

3. Producing only ..... cars is one of the most important suggestions to solve the problem of pollution in cities.

- ☒ a) recycled      ☐ b) waste      ☐ c) electric      ☐ d) petroleum

4. I can't imagine anyone wearing clothes that colour. The adjective of the verb "imagine" is .....

- ☒ a) imagines      ☐ b) imagination  
☐ c) imaginative      ☐ d) imaginatively

5. The company sent a driver to pick me ..... from the airport at my arrival.

- ☒ a) up      ☐ b) on      ☐ c) away      ☐ d) for

6. The girl's ..... on the subject has been interpreted as a sign of guilt.

- ☒ a) decision      ☐ b) pause      ☐ c) silence      ☐ d) hesitation

7. The atmosphere of the film we watched at the cinema could really ..... us to 18<sup>th</sup> century England.

- ☒ a) transport      ☐ b) transmit      ☐ c) transplant      ☐ d) transfuse

### Group 7

1. Naguib Mahfouz was concerned with a variety of social ..... on which he writes his novels.

- ☒ a) trials      ☐ b) causes      ☐ c) tissues      ☐ d) issues

2. These kinds of plants grow only in tropical ..... as they need much rain.

- ☒ a) districts      ☐ b) suburbs      ☐ c) regions      ☐ d) deserts

3. Many people believe that ..... libraries will soon become part of history.

- ☒ a) public      ☐ b) special      ☐ c) general      ☐ d) digital

4. The Internet has brought about significant changes in people's lives. The antonym of "significant" is ".....".

- ☒ a) intended      ☐ b) great      ☐ c) essential      ☐ d) minor

5. Have you ever come ..... such a horrible person in all your life?

- ☒ a) for      ☐ b) up      ☐ c) across      ☐ d) about

6. The professional footballer was the centre of a ..... of criticism after wasting the easiest opportunities to score a goal.

- ☒ a) tide      ☐ b) storm      ☐ c) shore      ☐ d) downpour

7. She felt ..... about the upcoming exam and couldn't sleep properly.

- ☒ a) relaxed      ☐ b) confident      ☐ c) stressed      ☐ d) joyful



## B

## Language

## Unit 7

## Present continuous

## المضارع المستمر

## Form

I am - He/ She/ It/ اسم مفرد + is + v.ing  
I'm/ He is watching TV now.

They/ We/ You/ اسم جمع + are + v.ing  
They're watching TV now.

## Negative

am/ is/ are + not + v.ing  
Ahmed isn't sleeping now.

Noha is washing the dishes.

Ali is looking for a job these days.

We're travelling tomorrow.

1 للأحداث التي تحدث لحظة الكلام.

2 للأحداث التي تحدث حول لحظة الكلام.

3 للأحداث التي تم ترتيبها في المستقبل.

4 يستخدم مع التعبيرات الزمنية التي تعبر عن حدوث الفعل وقت الكلام.

now, at the moment, these days, at present, still, nowadays, Look!, Listen!, etc.

Look! A car is coming towards us.

I'm trying to improve my English these days.

5 يمكن استخدام always مع المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المضايقة أو أن الفعل يتكرر كثيرًا.

My brother is always coming late and my father is always shouting at him.

## Stative verbs

## أفعال الحالة

الأفعال الآتية لا تأتي مع صيغة المضارع المستمر لأنها أفعال غير حركية stative verbs.

believe يعتقد, belong يخص, like يحب, own يملك, want يريد, seem يبدو, mean يقصد, hate يكره, know يعرف, etc. يفاجئ, surprise يفهم, understand يفضل, prefer يحتاج, need يحب, love

He believes that English is interesting.

Ahmed owns two flats and has two cars.

## Unit 8

## will + Inf.

I hope I will get the job.

## (be) going to + Inf.

Look at those clouds. It's going to rain.

## shall + Inf.

Shall we walk to school?

## Future forms

## Future perfect

By 9 pm tomorrow, I'll have arrived in Cairo.

## Future continuous

This time tomorrow, I'll be working in my office.

## Present simple

The train arrives at 10 pm tonight.

## Present continuous

I'm meeting my boss at 3 pm.

## will + inf.

### Future simple

#### Form

Subj. + **will + inf.**

It **will rain** tomorrow.

Tomorrow **will be** 12 Jan.

I'll **take** my umbrella.

You seem busy. I'll **make** tea for you.

Without work, you **will suffer** a lot.

#### Negative

Subj. + **won't + inf.**

1 التنبؤ بدون دليل.

2 حقائق المستقبل.

3 للقرارات السريعة.

4 للعرض والطلب.

5 للتحذير والتهديد.

6 يستخدم مع تعبيرات زمنية وأفعال معينة.

sure, hope, think, expect, predict, promise, perhaps, probably, etc.

I'm sure Ali **will win** the race.

I expect that she **will visit** us tomorrow.

## (be) going to + inf..

### Future intention

#### Form

I'm + **going to + inf.**

He/ She/ It + **is going to + inf.**

They/ We/ You + **are going to + inf.**

Look! He **is going to fall**.

He **is going to join** university.

We're **going to buy** a new car.

I'm **going to be** a doctor.

#### Negative

I'm + **not going to + inf.**

He/ She/ It + **is not going to + inf.**

They/ We/ You + **are not going to + inf.**

1 التنبؤ بدليل.

2 القرارات المتخذة مسبقاً.

3 للسوايا والخطط.

4 لظموحات الشخصية.

## Future continuous

### المستقبل المستمر

### Future continuous

#### Form

Subj. + **will be + v.ing**

This time tomorrow, I'll **be travelling**.

I'll **be meeting** Ahmed as usual.

This time tomorrow/ next .....

At + time + tomorrow/ next ....

#### Negative

Subj. + **won't be + v.ing**

1 حدث سوف يستمر لفترة في المستقبل.

2 أحداث ستكون في استمرار نتيجة للروتين.

3 مع التعبيرات الزمنية الآتية:

In two hours' time ....

## Present simple

المضارع البسيط

### Present simple

#### Form

He/ She/ It/ اسم مفرد + v + (s - es - ies)

I/ We/ You/ They/ اسم جمع + inf. مصدر الفعل

#### Negative

He/ She/ It/ اسم مفرد + doesn't + inf.

I/ We/ You/ They/ اسم جمع + don't + inf.

للجداول المحددة مسبقًا مثل الطائرات والقطارات والبرامج والمباريات والأشياء التي يعرفها الجميع.

The train **leaves** at 5 pm tomorrow.

## Present continuous

المضارع المستمر

### Present continuous

#### Form

I'm + v.ing

He/ She/ It/ اسم مفرد + is + v.ing

I/ We/ You/ They/ اسم جمع + are + v.ing

#### Negative

I'm not + v.ing

He/ She/ It/ اسم مفرد + isn't + v.ing

I/ We/ You/ They/ اسم جمع + aren't + v.ing

للأشياء التي تم ترتيبها مسبقًا.

I'm **having** dinner with Ahmed next weekend.

## Future perfect

المستقبل التام

### Future perfect

#### Form

Subj. + **will have** + P.P. (Active)Subj. + **will have been** + P.P. (Passive)He **will have written** the reports by next Friday.

1 حدث سوف (سوف لا) يكون قد اكتمل قبل وقت محدد في المستقبل.

I **will (won't) have finished** this revision before I travel to Assuit.

2 حدث سوف (سوف لا) يكون قد اكتمل قبل حدث آخر في المستقبل.

3 مع التعبيرات الزمنية الآتية:

By this time tomorrow/ next ...

In two hours' time ...

by the time, till/ until

لاحظ استخدام الروابط الزمنية مع المستقبل التام.

Present simple

Present perfect

before, till/until, by the time, by

(will have + P.P.)

1 نستخدم **by/ by the time/ before** لنقصد أن الحدث سوف يتم قبل وقت محدد في المستقبل.

We will have taken the test **by/before** June.

I won't have done all of my homework **by the time/before** you get home.

2 ونستخدم **in (a year's/ week's/ 2 weeks') time** لنقصد أن الحدث سوف يتم في نهاية هذا الوقت في المستقبل.

In five years I **will have started** work.

How much **will you have done** on your project **in two months' time**?



هناك أفعال تعبر عن المستقبل تلقائيًا عند استخدامها في صيغة المضارع مثل:

want, expect, hope, predict, wish, need, etc.

و عند استخدام **to** بعدها تحذف **will** وعند استخدام المستقبل القام نستخدم بعدهم **to have + P.P.** وفي المجهول **to have been + P.P.**

By 2023, we expect to **have built** the express train to the New Administrative Capital.

The car is expected to **have been repaired** by 6 pm tomorrow.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## Group 1

1. A: Have you found a house yet?

B: No, I ..... with my uncle at the moment.

- ☐ a) will stay      ☐ b) stayed      ☐ c) stay      ☐ d) 'm staying

2. Asmaa ..... very happy at the moment.

- ☐ a) isn't seeming      ☐ b) is seeming      ☐ c) doesn't seem      ☐ d) seemed

3. Ramy ..... his music very loud. I can't sleep.

- ☐ a) plays      ☐ b) played      ☐ c) has played      ☐ d) is playing

4. You look very thoughtful. What ..... about?

- ☐ a) do you think      ☐ b) are you thinking      ☐ c) are you think      ☐ d) you think

5. I ..... my blue jeans today because they have a hole in them.

- ☐ a) hadn't worn      ☐ b) don't wear      ☐ c) am not wearing      ☐ d) wear

6. Don't go out. It ..... It has been raining since morning.

- ☐ a) rains      ☐ b) has rained      ☐ c) will rain      ☐ d) is raining

## Group 2

1. .... what he's saying? He's not speaking Arabic, and it's not English.

- ☐ a) Had you understood      ☐ b) Do you understand  
☐ c) Are you understanding      ☐ d) Were you understanding

2. Why .....? Isn't it a funny joke?

- ☐ a) don't you laugh      ☐ b) you laugh      ☐ c) aren't you laughing      ☐ d) are you laughing

3. My brother ..... glasses, but he doesn't wear them when he plays soccer.

- ☐ a) has      ☐ b) is having      ☐ c) was having      ☐ d) doesn't have

4. I ..... to the club tomorrow. I have too much homework to do.

- ☐ a) had to go      ☐ b) don't go      ☐ c) wasn't going      ☐ d) am not going

5. Youssif ..... to come to your party. He says he is too tired.

- ☐ a) didn't want      ☐ b) isn't wanting      ☐ c) doesn't want      ☐ d) won't want

6. My next-door neighbour ..... on my door and asking me to lend her my necklace.

- ☐ a) always knocks      ☐ b) is always knocking      ☐ c) always knocked      ☐ d) knocking

## Group 3

1. .... people should work in their 70s or 80s?

- ☐ a) Do you think      ☐ b) You are thinking      ☐ c) Are you thinking      ☐ d) You think

2. A: What does this word here .....?

B: I don't know. You can ask our teacher.

- ☐ a) means      ☐ b) is meaning      ☐ c) meant      ☐ d) mean

3. Can you hear those people? What ..... about?

- ☐ a) do they talk      ☐ b) did they talk      ☐ c) are they talking      ☐ d) they are talking



4. I am living in Luxor now. This sentence means that .....

- ☐ a) I will visit Luxor one day
- ☒ b) I am in Luxor only for a limited period of time
- ☐ c) I have moved to Luxor to stay there forever
- ☐ d) I am going to move to Luxor soon

5. He is playing football. Which one of the following doesn't give the same meaning?

- ☐ a) The match is going on right now.
- ☒ b) He is playing for a limited period of time.
- ☐ c) He is busy playing and can't do anything else.
- ☐ d) He plays football regularly.

6. Which sentence of the following isn't in the present continuous?

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <input type="radio"/> a) We are painting the room.     | <input checked="" type="radio"/> b) Are you listening to the radio? |
| <input type="radio"/> c) She isn't helping her mother. | <input type="radio"/> d) The journey is boring and tiring.          |

#### Group 4

1. I ..... what the problem is by tomorrow.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <input type="radio"/> a) will be discovering  | <input checked="" type="radio"/> b) have discovered |
| <input type="radio"/> c) will have discovered | <input type="radio"/> d) will be discovered         |

2. How many cities will you have visited by the time you .....

- |                                       |   |                                      |                                 |
|---------------------------------------|---|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <input type="radio"/> a) are retiring | <input checked="" type="radio"/> b) will have retired | <input type="radio"/> c) will retire | <input type="radio"/> d) retire |
|---------------------------------------|---|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------|

3. By 5:30 this afternoon, my brother ..... at work for eight hours.

- |  |  |                                   |                                   |
|--|--|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <input type="radio"/> a) would have been | <input checked="" type="radio"/> b) will have been | <input type="radio"/> c) had been | <input type="radio"/> d) has been |
|--|--|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|

4. I will have been in Tokyo for three months before you ..... us.

- |                                      |  |   |                                    |
|--------------------------------------|--|---|------------------------------------|
| <input type="radio"/> a) have joined | <input checked="" type="radio"/> b) joined | <input type="radio"/> c) will have joined | <input type="radio"/> d) will join |
|--------------------------------------|--|---|------------------------------------|

5. .... you get here, I will have finished watching the film.

- |                                |   |                                |                                |
|--------------------------------|---|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <input type="radio"/> a) After | <input checked="" type="radio"/> b) By the time | <input type="radio"/> c) Where | <input type="radio"/> d) While |
|--------------------------------|---|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|

6. He hopes the conference ..... before he arrives because he'd like to hear the final speech.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <input type="radio"/> a) will have ended  | <input checked="" type="radio"/> b) will end |
| <input type="radio"/> c) won't have ended | <input type="radio"/> d) hadn't ended        |

#### Group 5

1. He is eating too much; he ..... 150 kg by next month.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <input type="radio"/> a) reaches           | <input checked="" type="radio"/> b) will be reaching |
| <input type="radio"/> c) will have reached | <input type="radio"/> d) will be reached             |

2. Come round at 8 o'clock. I ..... my homework by then.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <input type="radio"/> a) will have finished | <input checked="" type="radio"/> b) will be finishing |
| <input type="radio"/> c) am finishing       | <input type="radio"/> d) finish                       |

3. Call him now. He ..... his house yet.

- |                                      |  |  |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|--|--|
| <input type="radio"/> a) won't leave | <input checked="" type="radio"/> b) won't be leaving | <input type="radio"/> c) won't have left | <input type="radio"/> d) doesn't leave |
|--------------------------------------|--|--|--|

4. Hurry up! The conference ..... in 20 minutes.

- |                                 |   |                                    |                                |
|---------------------------------|---|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <input type="radio"/> a) begins | <input checked="" type="radio"/> b) will be beginning | <input type="radio"/> c) beginning | <input type="radio"/> d) begin |
|---------------------------------|---|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|

5. In twenty years' time, most people ..... the internet.

- ☐ a) will have been used                      b) will be used  
c) are used                                      d) will be using

6. Will you ..... my car by the time I finish work at 6:30?

- a) be fixed                      b) have fixed                      c) have been fixed                      d) be fixing

### Group 6

1. The station ..... until next November.

- ☐ a) won't have built                      b) will have built  
c) will build                                      d) won't have been built

2. My new PC ..... by the end of this week.

- ☐ a) will have delivered                      b) will be delivering  
c) will have been delivered                      d) is delivered

3. In fifty years' time, thousands of species ..... disappeared from this planet.

- ☐ a) will have been                      b) are                      c) were                      d) will have

4. "Shall I carry your bag for you?" The right situation to the sentence is a/an .....

- ☐ a) request                      b) promise                      c) offer                      d) on-the-spot decision

5. I will be looking for a new job while you ..... abroad.

- ☐ a) were                      b) are                      c) will be                      d) have been

6. Which one of the following sentences isn't grammatically correct?

- ☐ a) Before June, I'll finish my new course.  
b) Before June, I will have finished my new course.  
c) Before June, I had finished my new course.  
d) Before June, I finish my new course.

## Practice...

## Unit 10 Question 10

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

### Group 1

I have lived here since I retired last year. My house has a good, clear view of a lake. It's only about a hundred metres from the lake. The road is between my house and the lake. Now, I've never been interested in the lake monster; until last Tuesday, I thought it was just a good story to attract tourists. But I've had to change my mind after last Tuesday's experience.

I got up as usual at about 7 and went into my garden. Something attracted my attention to the lake. There was almost no mist that morning, and I could see there was something moving quite fast, going north, in the middle of the lake. It looked like a giant snake, with its head and part of its body above water. It was about thirty metres long. I rushed into the house to get my camera, but when I was back, it had gone. I waited, and it appeared again, this time nearer the road and my house. I could see it clearly.

I managed to take several photographs of it. They haven't come out very well, but one or two of them show the creature quite clearly. At one point, it swam straight towards me, but then a lorry passed on the road, and perhaps it heard the noise of the engine because it disappeared again. I **reckon** the whole incident lasted for about fifteen minutes, because it was a quarter past seven the last time I looked at my watch. I've never seen anything so strange in my life.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. How long has the writer been retired?

- a) A week.                      b) A month.                      c) A year.                      d) Two years.

2. What is there between the house and the lake?

- a) Another lake.                      b) A lorry.                      c) A monster.                      d) A road.

3. The writer first thought that the monster was a/an .....

- a) reality                      b) imaginary story                      c) non-fiction                      d) truth

4. The writer could see the monster because .....

- ☐ a) there was no mist  
b) he got up early  
c) the monster moves fast in front of him  
d) he was waiting to see it eagerly

5. The monster disappeared the second time because it .....

- a) heard a lorry passing                      b) saw the writer  
c) saw the camera                      d) saw a snake

6. The synonym of the word "reckon" is .....

- a) know                      b) suppose                      c) realise                      d) grasp

7. If you saw a monster one day, you would be .....

- a) impressive                      b) amazing                      c) frightened                      d) surprising

8. The writer could take ..... clear photos of the monster.

- ☐ a) a lot of                      b) several                      c) many                      d) few

**Group 2**

Tigers are one of the most powerful and graceful animals in the world. The different species that still exist today, namely the Bengal, Indochina, Siberian, South China and Sumatra tigers are in danger of becoming extinct. Due to irresponsible hunting, the Bali, Caspian and Java tigers have already become extinct. This could soon happen to the other species too. Tigers do not shy away from water and enjoy bathing in streams and lakes to escape the heat in hot climates.

In the past, tigers were considered pests. With a smaller area to hunt, as man had taken up more of the land to build upon, the tigers found fewer areas for themselves to hunt.

They thus turned to farms to get their food. Farmers' livestock were attacked by these tigers. People were then encouraged to hunt and kill these animals with the promise of rewards. Even after the threat of tigers on livestock was over, man continued to hunt tigers, this time for recreation.

Poachers too hunt tigers for their body parts, knowing that the skin of tigers is much sought after. Bones and other organs are also used as ingredients in traditional Chinese medicine.

Although killing tigers is illegal, it is still being carried out, and unless it is stopped, the remaining species of tigers will soon become extinct too.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- How many species of tigers were there originally?  
☐ a) Three.      ☐ b) Four.      ☐ c) Five.      ☐ d) Eight.
- There were less hunting grounds for tigers because .....  
☐ a) the tiger population was becoming bigger  
☐ b) man had occupied the land  
☐ c) farmers put their livestock there  
☐ d) they liked hunting livestock
- Poachers are people who .....  
☐ a) catch tigers  
☐ b) make Chinese medicine  
☐ c) hunt tigers illegally  
☐ d) hunt tigers' body parts
- Illegal poaching will .....  
☐ a) cause the extinction of tigers  
☐ b) increase the population of tigers  
☐ c) increase the amount of Chinese medicine  
☐ d) increase the price of body parts
- Hunting tigers is considered a kind of .....  
☐ a) business      ☐ b) mercy      ☐ c) recreation      ☐ d) both a and c
- The other noun that means "livestock" is .....  
☐ a) poachers      ☐ b) cattle      ☐ c) pests      ☐ d) tigers
- Tigers' bones can be used in .....  
☐ a) traditional medicine  
☐ b) food  
☐ c) recreation  
☐ d) feeding livestock
- According to the passage, tigers .....  
☐ a) don't fear hot climates  
☐ b) are in danger of extinction  
☐ c) don't like water  
☐ d) don't eat livestock

**2 Translation:**

**(A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

**Group 1**

- Biodiversity is the key indicator of the health of an ecosystem. That's because each species in an ecosystem has a specific role to play.

- (a) إن التنوع البيئي هو مؤشر ثانوي على صحة أي نظام موفرو ذلك لأن كل فصيلة في النظام البيئي لها دور محدد تلعبه.
- (b) إن الأحياء البيئية هو مؤشر رئيسي على صحة أي نظام بيئي وذلك لأن كل الفصائل في النظام البيئي لها دور محدد تلعبه.
- (c) إن التنوع البيئي هو مؤشر رئيسي على صحة أي نظام بيئي وذلك لأن كل فصيلة في النظام البيئي لها دور محدد تلعبه.
- (d) إن التنوع البيئي هو مؤشر رئيسي على تدهور أي نظام بيئي وذلك لأن كل الفصائل في النظام البيئي لها دور محدد تلعبه.



## (B) Choose the correct English translation:

- إن الأطفال هم شباب الغد وأمل البلاد في المستقبل؛ لذا يجب أن توفر الدولة الرعاية الصحية والتعليمية لهم بالمجان. فكل دولة تريد أن تتقدم يجب أن تهتم بأطفالها.

- a) Children are the youth of tomorrow and the hope of the country in the future. That's why the state must provide them with educational and health care free of charge. Every country that wants to develop must take care of its children.
- b) Young children are the country's hope for the future. You need the state to provide care, education and sports for them free of charge. Every country wants to advance to take care of its children.
- c) Children are the youth of tomorrow and the country's hope for the future. Therefore, the state needn't provide health care and education for them free of charge. Any country wanting progress must take care of its young.
- d) Children are the young of tomorrow and the country's hope for the future. Therefore, the state must provide health care and education for them free of charge. Any country that wants to progress must take care of its children.

## Group 2

### (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Traditional education is unable to cope with the huge leaps of science. The aim of education isn't to help students memorise but to acquire knowledge and skills.

- a) التعليم التقليدي قادر على التعامل مع القفزات الكبيرة للعلم. فالهدف من التعليم ليس مساعدة الطلاب على المذاكرة ولكن اكتساب المعرفة والمهارات
- b) التعليم التقليدي غير قادر على التعامل مع القفزات الهائلة للعلم. فأساس التعليم ليس مساعدة الطلاب على الحفظ ولكن اكتساب المعارف والمهارات.
- c) لا يستطيع التعليم التقليدي أن يواكب القفزات الكبيرة للعلم. فهدف التعليم ليس مساعدة الطلاب على الحفظ ولكن اكتساب المعرفة والمهارات.
- d) يستطيع التعليم التقليدي التعامل مع القفزات الهائلة للعلم. فأساس التعليم مساعدة الطلاب على الحفظ ولكن اكتساب المعرفة والمهارات.

### (B) Choose the correct English translation:

- تساعد المؤسسات الخيرية المقراء والمحتاجين وخاصة الذين يعيشون في المناطق العشوائية. لذا من الجيد أن تبرع جميعاً للمساهمة في هذه المهمة النبيلة.

- a) Helping charitable organisations and the needy especially those living in slums. Good to contribute to the noble mission.
- b) Charities help the poor and needy people especially those lived in slums. Hence, it is good that we all donate to share in this noble expedition.
- c) Charities help the poor and needy people especially those that live in slums. Therefore, it is a good thought that we all donate to participate in this noble campaign.
- d) Charities help poor and needy people especially those who live in slums. Therefore, it is a good idea that we all donate to take part in this noble mission.

## 3 Writing:

### 1. Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words:

To your friend Amr, telling him about a past experience that you will never forget. Your name is Ahmed. Your email address is ahmed\_2000@yahoo.com. Amr's email address is amrking@gmail.com.

### 2. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic: "We owe a lot to our parents, teachers and country. How you can repay the debt."



### A Vocabulary

#### المفردات الرئيسية

biodiversity (n)	التنوع البيئي	interview (n) (v) (ed)	مقابلة / يجري مقابلة	scholarship (n)	منحة دراسية
broadcast (n) (v) (ed)	نشر / إذاعة / ينشر / يذيع	native inhabitants (n)	السكان الأصليون	search engine (n)	محرك بحث
challenging (adj)	متحد / صعب التحقيق	newsreader (n)	قارئ الأخبار	source (n)	مصدر
editor (n)	محرر / رئيس تحرير	photographer (n)	مصور فوتوغرافي	species (n)	نوع / جنس
expedition (n)	بعثة	preserve (v) (d)	يحافظ على / يحفظ		
fact checker (n)	مراجع حقائق	reporter (n)	مراسل صحفي		

#### Helpful Vocabulary

#### مفردات مساعدة

accurate (adj)	دقيق	competition (n)	مسابقة	emergency (n)	طوارئ
achieve (v) (d)	يحقق / ينجح	complain (v) (ed)	يشكو	endangered (adj)	معرض للخطر
admit (v) (ted)	يعترف	confirm (v) (ed)	يؤكد	ensure (v) (d)	يضمن / يؤكد
adults (n)	كبار / بالغون	consequences (n)	نتائج / عواقب	environment (n)	البيئة
arise (v)	ينشأ	conservation (n)	حفاظ / وقاية	erect (v) (ed)	يبني / يشيد
art (n)	فن	contacts (n)	اتصالات / معارف	eventually (adv)	أخيراً / في النهاية
artist (n)	فنان	contain (v) (ed)	يحتوي على	exist (v) (ed)	يوجد
astronaut (n)	رائد فضاء	contrast (n)	تناقض	expert (n)	خبير
behaviour (n)	سلوك	coral reefs (n)	الشعاب المرجانية	facilities (n)	مرافق / مكنائات / تسهيلات
benefit (n) (v) (ed)	فائدة / يستفيد	correspondent (n)	مراسل صحفي / أوتليغرافي	fact (n)	حقيقة
brilliant (adj)	متميز / رائع	council (n)	مجلس / هيئة / معهد	form (n) (v) (ed)	شكل / يشكل
bury (v) (y-ied)	يدفن	crash (v) (ed)	تحطم / يرتطم / يتحطم	formal (adj)	رسمي
career (n)	حياة مهنية	creation (n)	خلق / إنتاج	gain (v) (ed)	يحصل على / يكتسب
channel (n)	قناة	crime (n)	جريمة	generation (n)	جيل
checker (n)	مراجع	definition (n)	تعريف	goal (n)	هدف
coast (n)	ساحل	digital (adj)	رقمي	headlines (n)	عناوين الأخبار
collect (v) (ed)	يجمع	disaster (n)	كارثة	historian (n)	مؤرخ
compare (v) (d)	يقارن	discussion (n)	مناقشة	identify (v) (y-ied)	يحدد

incident (n)	حادث	press conference (n)	مؤتمر صحفي	sign (n) (v) (ed)	علامة / لافتة / يشير / يوقع
income (n)	دخل	print (v) (ed)	يطبع	solution (n)	حل
industry (n)	صناعة	professional (adj)	محترف	spacewalk (n)	السير في الفضاء
injury (n)	إصابة	progress (n)	تقدم	spokesperson (n)	متحدث رسمي
inspire (v) (d)	يلهم / يحث / يوحى بـ	project (n)	مشروع	state (n)	حالة
investigator (n)	محقق / مفتش	proud (adj)	فخور	suffer (v) (ed)	يعانى
island (n)	جزيرة	psychological (adj)	نفسى	suitable (adj)	مناسب
launch (v) (ed)	يطلق	purpose (n)	غرض	survival (n)	النجاة / البقاء حيًا
leader (n)	قائد	rainforests (n)	غابات استوائية	talent (n)	موهبة
location (n)	موقع	range (n)	مجال / معدل	task (n)	مهمة
majority (n)	أغلبية	realise (v) (d)	يدرك	threat (n)	تهديد
mental (adj)	عقلي	recent (adj)	حديث	title (n)	عنوان / لقب
meteorite (n)	نيزك	recognise (v) (d)	يتعرف على	trust (n) (v) (ed)	ثقة / يثق في
monitor (v) (ed)	يراقب	record (n) (v) (ed)	تقرير / رقم قياسي / يسجل	truth (n)	حقيقة
monument (n)	أثر	recycling (n)	إعادة التدوير	typical (adj)	أصلي / نموذجي
necropolis (n)	مقبرة	related (adj)	مرتبط	unique (adj)	متميز / متفرد
neighbour (n)	جار	remains (n)	بقايا / آثار	unreliable (adj)	غير موثوق فيه
objects (n)	أشياء	reward (n) (v) (ed)	مكافأة / يكافئ	valuable (adj)	قيم
origin (n)	أصل / مصدر	rewarding (adj)	مجز / مريض	variety (n)	تنوع
original (adj)	أصلي / أساسي	route (n)	طريق	visible (adj)	مرئي
permission (n)	إذن / تصريح	scene (n)	مشهد / موقع حدث	waste (n) (v) (d)	نفاية / يسرف / يضيع
pollution (n)	التلوث	sculpture (n)	تمثال / نحت	well-known (adj)	معروف
positive (adj)	إيجابي	select (v) (ed)	يفتقى / يختار	zoom in (v) (ed)	يقرب الصورة

### تعبيرات ومصطلحات

around big cities	حول المدن الكبيرة	give ... the opportunity	يعطى ... الفرصة	keep ... clean	يحافظ على النظافة
as a result	نتيجة لذلك	give permission	يمنح إذنًا / تصريحًا	make contacts	يكون صداقات / معارف
at the same time	في نفس الوقت	go diving	يمارس القوس	make sure	يتأكد
call for help	يطلب / يتصل للمساعدة	go on a trip/journey	يذهب في رحلة	take photographs	يلتقط صورًا
cause serious problems	يسبب مشكلات خطيرة	have a bath	يأخذ حمامًا		
come true	يصبح حقيقة / يتحقق	in charge of	مسئول عن	take turns	يتبادل الأدوار
cover the important information	يعطى / يتناول المعلومات الهامة	in the hope of	على أمل أن		

**Phrases & Prepositions****عبارات وحروف جر**

able to	قادران	download from	يُحمّل من	result of	نتيجة لـ
aim of	هدف لـ	example of	مقال لـ	send out	يُبعث
apply for	يتقدم بطلب	fight for	يحارب / يفاضل من أجل	send to	يرسل إلى
arise from	ينشأ من	happen to	يحدث لـ	share ... with	يشارك ... مع
benefit for	فائدة لـ	happy about	سعيد بـ	spokesperson for	متحدث لـ
care for/about	يهتم بـ	hear about/of	يسمع عن	turn to	يتحول إلى
contact with	يتصل بـ	interested in	مهتم بـ	upload to	يحمّل إلى
contrast between	تناقض بين	keen on	حريص على		
crash into	يصطدم بـ	look into	يفحص	worried about	قلِق عن
difference between	اختلاف بين	range of	سلسلة من		

**Derivatives****المشتقات**

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
achieve	يحقّق / ينجز	achievement	إنجاز	achieved	محقق
				achievable	يمكن تحقيقه
argue	يجادل	argument	جدل	argumentative	جدلي
bury	يدفن	burial	دفن	buried	مدفون
challenge	يتحدى	challenge	تحّد	challenging	متحدّ / صعب التحقيق
compare	يقارن	comparison	مقارنة	comparative	مقارن
compete	يتنافس	competition	مسابقة	competitive	تنافسي
conserve	يحفظ	conservation	حفاظ / وقاية	conservative	واقٍ / محافظ
educate	يعلم	education	التعليم	educational	تعليمي
exist	يوجد	existence	وجود	existing	موجود
express	يعبر عن	expression	تعبير	expressive	معبّر
identify	يحدد	identity	هوية / شخصية	identifiable	يمكن تحديده
inspire	يلهم / يحث	inspiration	إلهام / إحياء	inspiring	ملهم / موحى بـ
				inspirational	ملهم
investigate	محقّق / مفتّش	investigation	تحقيق	investigatory	تفتيشي / تحقيقي
		investigator	محقّق / مفتّش		
permit	يسمح	permission	إذن / تصريح	permitted	مسموح
preserve	يحفظ	preservation	حفاظ / وقاية	preservative	واقٍ / محافظ

recognise	يعترف على	recognition	تعرف / تمييز	recognisable	يمكن تمييزه
recycle	يعيد تدوير	recycling	إعادة تدوير	recyclable recycled	يمكن تدويره معاد تدويره
select	يختار / ينفق	selection	اختيار	selective	انتقائي
succeed	ينجح	success	نجاح	successful	ناجح
survive	ينجو	survival	النجاة	surviving	ناج / على قيد الحياة
vary	يتنوع	variety	تنوع	various	متنوع

### Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

accurate	دقيق	precise/exact	inaccurate/false	غير دقيق / مزيف
argue	يجادل	dispute/quarrel	agree/give in	يوافق / يستسلم
arise	ينشأ	emerge/appear	disappear/end	يختفي / ينتهي
brilliant	متميز / رائع	outstanding/distinguished	ordinary/common	عادي / شائع
broadcast	ينشر / يذيع	announce/transmit	hide/conceal	يخفي
collect	يجمع	gather/accumulate	scatter/separate	يبهرق / يفصل
compare	يقارن	contrast/measure	discard	يستبعد
complain	يشكو	protest/disapprove	approve/agree	يستحسن
consequences	نتائج / عواقب	results	causes/reasons	أسباب
conservation	حفاظ	preservation/protection	destruction/negligence	تدمير / إهمال
contrast	تناقض	contradiction/difference	agreement/harmony	اتفاق / تناغم
erect	يبنى / يشيد	build/construct	destroy/damage	يدمر
fear	يخشى	worry/avoid	face	يواجه
identify	يحدد	recognise/determine	confuse	يربك
inspire	يلهم / يحث / يوحى به	motivate/stimulate	discourage/depress	يثبط / يحبط
keen	حريص / متحمس	eager/enthusiastic	unconcerned	غير مهتم
launch	يطلق	initiate/introduce	end/stop	ينهي / يوقف
monitor	يراقب	observe/supervise	ignore/neglect	يتجاهل
permission	إذن / تصريح	agreement/license	denial/refusal	إنكار / رفض
preserve	يحفظ	keep/care for	abandon/harm	يتروك / يهجر / يضر
properly	بشكل صحيح	correctly/accurately	wrongly	بشكل خاطئ
remarkable	رائع	extraordinary	familiar	مألوف



rewarding	مجزٍ / مريض	profitable/valuable	worthless/valueless	بلا قيمة
select	ينتقى / يختار	pick out/choose	refuse/reject	يرفض / ينيذ
source	مصدر	origin	outcome/conclusion	نتائج
traditional	تقليدي	conventional/old	modern/abnormal	حديث
trust	ثقة	confidence	doubt/uncertainty	شك / عدم تأكيد
unique	متميز	extraordinary/exceptional	common/familiar	عادي / مألوف
unreliable	غير موثوق فيه	inaccurate	dependable/reliable	موثوق فيه

### Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

#### journey

رحلة طويلة أو معتادة

We enjoyed our **journey** on the train as the scenery was fabulous.

#### trip

رحلة قصيرة (لفرض معين - لمكان محدد)

The manager can't meet you as he is on a business **trip** to France.

#### expedition

بعثة (رحلة منظمة خاصة إلى مكان خطر أو غير معتاد)

The scientific **expedition** to the North Pole faced a lot of difficulties.

#### realise

- ١- يدرك (يعرف أو يفهم شيئاً)
- ٢- يحقق (شيئاً كان يتمناه)

- I **realised** my mistake when I saw the broken glass on the floor.
- My son **realised** his ambition to become a famous artist.

#### recognise

- ١- يتعرف على (يعرف شخصاً أو شيئاً لرؤيته أو سماعه أو المرور به من قبل)
- ٢- يقبل ويعترف بأهمية شيء

- I couldn't **recognise** my friend as he got very fat.
- The scientist's research is **recognised** as the best one about the new virus.

#### location

موقع / مكان (للتصوير مثلاً)

The shop sent us a map of its **location**.

#### position

موضع (مثل الوقوف أو الجلوس مثلاً) مكانة / وظيفة / مركز في الملعب

Essam El-Hadry was one of the best footballers who held the goalkeeper **position** in Egypt.

#### coast

ساحل (مساحة من اليابسة قريبة من البحر)

The North **Coast** area in Egypt is now full of tourist villages.

#### shore

شاطئ (جزء من اليابسة محاذ لحافة البحر)

The **shores** of the Mediterranean Sea are visited by millions of tourists in summer.

#### beach

بلاج (شاطئ مهاد)

We spent a nice day on the **beach** in Miami.

#### bank

ضفة (نهر أو بحيرة)

Most Egyptian villages are near the **banks** of the Nile.



<b>present</b>	هدية	I received this watch as a <b>present</b> for getting the best marks in the test.
<b>prize</b>	جائزة	My daughter won the first <b>prize</b> in the art competition.
<b>reward</b>	مكافأة	The clerk got a pay rise as a <b>reward</b> for his good work.
<b>award</b>	وسام / جائزة رسمية	Mohamed Salah is the first Egyptian footballer to get the best player <b>award</b> in England.
<b>work</b>	عمل / مكان العمل (اسم لا يعد)	My father starts <b>work</b> at 9 o'clock every day.
<b>works</b>	أعمال فنية أو أدبية (اسم يعد)	The <b>works</b> of Naguib Mahfouz were translated in many languages.
<b>job</b>	وظيفة (اسم يعد)	The new business created hundreds of <b>jobs</b> for young people.
<b>career</b>	مهنة (الحياة العملية للفرد)	Adel Imam received a lot of honours from Arab countries during his <b>career</b> .
<b>profession</b>	مهنة (تحتاج إلى مؤهلات وتدريب)	Nurses are an important part of the medical <b>profession</b> .
<b>rise</b>	يرتفع من تلقاء نفسه / تشرق (لا يأتي بعده مفعول)	- Prices of some medical objects have <b>risen</b> recently. - When we were at the camp, we used to get up when the sun <b>rose</b> .
<b>arise</b>	يحدث (لا يأتي بعده مفعول) / يظهر / ينشأ	A lot of psychological problems can <b>arise</b> for children from divorce.
<b>raise</b>	يزيد (يأتي بعده مفعول) / يرفع / يجمع / يثير	The company agreed to <b>raise</b> the wages of the mine workers.
<b>arouse</b>	يثير (يسبب رد فعل معين / عاطفة لدى الناس) يأتي بعده مفعول	The old man's behaviour <b>aroused</b> a lot of suspicions.
<b>recent</b>	حديث (مصنوع / تام منذ فترة قصيرة)	I sent a <b>recent</b> photo with my application form.
<b>modern</b>	حديث / متطور (نتيجة لاستخدام طرق أو وسائل حديثة)	<b>Modern</b> technology has affected our life greatly.
<b>investigator</b>	محقق / مفتش (شخص وظيفته اكتشاف الحقائق في الأحداث وخاصة الجرائم والحوادث)	A clever <b>investigator</b> could solve the crime and arrest the murderer.
<b>inspector</b>	مفتش / مراقب (شخص وظيفته التأكد من أن الناس يؤدون أعمالهم بطريقة صحيحة)	The <b>inspector</b> of English is visiting our school this week.
<b>conductor</b>	مفتش القطارات أو التوبييس (كمسارى)	The <b>conductor</b> asked us to move places as our tickets are second class.

**fact**

حقيقة / معلومة حقيقية

It is a universal **fact** that pollution is a great threat.**truth**

حقيقة / صدق

Father always advises me to tell the **truth**.**scene**١- منظر / مشهد (في فيلم / مسرحية)  
٢- موقع / مكان (أحداث)

- The first **scene** of the play opens in a king's palace.  
- The ambulance arrived at the accident **scene** at once.

**scenery**

مناظر طبيعية جميلة

A picnic can help you admire the **scenery** of the river bank.**view**

منظر طبيعي ثابت

I had a spectacular **view** of the sea from my hotel room.**permission (uncountable)**

تصريح (موافقة / رضا)

I had my mother's **permission** to go to my friend's party.**permit (countable)**

تصريح رسمي مكتوب

You need a **permit** to hold a gun in public.**record**

سجل (معلومات عن شيء ما في صورة مكتوبة)

I try to keep a **record** of everything I spend.**file**

ملف (مجموعة من السجلات مجمعة معًا)

It is important to update customer **files**.**ledger**

دفتر الحسابات (لشركة / مؤسسة)

The loan appears not to have been entered in the bank **ledger**.**monitor**

يراقب (الاستمرار في فحص شخص أو شيء لمعرفة ما يحدث على مدار فترة زمنية).

Teachers should have many ways to **monitor** the progress of their students.**inspect**

يفتش (ينظر إلى شيء ما بعناية ودقة للتأكد من أنه صحيح وآمن ويعمل بشكل صحيح، خاصة عندما تكون وظيفتك هي القيام بذلك).

The local health authority **inspects** restaurants regularly.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### Group 1

- The government has special rules in the National Park as it contains many rare ..... of plants.  
☐ a) devices      ☐ b) species      ☐ c) spices      ☐ d) genders
- Three members of the Everest ..... were killed last year.  
☐ a) duty      ☐ b) task      ☐ c) expedition      ☐ d) picnic
- The native ..... of America, the Red Indians, are only 1.5% of Americans.  
☐ a) pioneers      ☐ b) discoverers      ☐ c) inhabitants      ☐ d) players
- Scientists have identified a number of problem areas. The verb "identify" is similar in meaning to .....  
☐ a) refuse      ☐ b) recognise      ☐ c) confuse      ☐ d) distract
- The new coach said he was happy ..... the arrangements for starting the new season.  
☐ a) of      ☐ b) about      ☐ c) for      ☐ d) in
- These documents reveal the ..... about the period which the writer spent abroad.  
☐ a) lie      ☐ b) fact      ☐ c) face      ☐ d) truce
- Doctors always warn us that smoking can ..... many respiratory diseases.  
☐ a) do      ☐ b) give      ☐ c) cause      ☐ d) sort

### Group 2

- My cousin attended the American University of Cairo on a ..... as he is an athletic champion in High Jump.  
☐ a) race      ☐ b) apprenticeship      ☐ c) tournament      ☐ d) scholarship
- It will be a ..... target to meet.  
☐ a) changing      ☐ b) reflecting      ☐ c) challenging      ☐ d) associating
- The islands near the Caribbean are characterised by high ..... and so they attract tourists.  
☐ a) activity      ☐ b) climate      ☐ c) biodiversity      ☐ d) similarity
- Your muscles may relax after a nice hot shower. The adjective from the verb "relax" is .....  
☐ a) relaxes      ☐ b) relaxation      ☐ c) relaxingly      ☐ d) relaxed
- In all countries, there is an emergency phone number which people can ..... for help.  
☐ a) answer      ☐ b) reply      ☐ c) call      ☐ d) deploy
- Someone in the politician's ..... can't afford to take that kind of risk.  
☐ a) site      ☐ b) location      ☐ c) position      ☐ d) sight
- I feel that we have ..... greatly from our grandfather's wisdom and good views.  
☐ a) cured      ☐ b) injured      ☐ c) healed      ☐ d) benefited

### Group 3

- The manager will be ..... two candidates today and three others tomorrow.  
☐ a) offering      ☐ b) tasting      ☐ c) searching      ☐ d) interviewing
- The sun is perhaps the least expensive energy ..... we have.  
☐ a) source      ☐ b) result      ☐ c) effect      ☐ d) doubt

3. The tennis championship is ..... live to several different countries.  
☐ a) investigated      ☐ b) arranged      ☐ c) broadcast      ☐ d) accepted
4. Many of the beaches near the Red Sea were polluted by the oil spill. The noun of the verb "pollute" is .....  
☐ a) pollutes      ☐ b) polluted      ☐ c) pollutantly      ☐ d) pollution
5. The young woman was ..... a bath when the fire started in the kitchen.  
☐ a) having      ☐ b) building      ☐ c) giving      ☐ d) doing
6. We should replace the equipment with a more ..... kind that helps increase production.  
☐ a) old      ☐ b) recent      ☐ c) modern      ☐ d) cheap
7. Unfortunately, the plane crashed ..... a mountain and all the passengers lost their lives.  
☐ a) of      ☐ b) into      ☐ c) up      ☐ d) for

**Group 4**

1. A/An ..... is a person who is in charge of a newspaper, magazine, etc., or part of one, and who decides what should be included.  
☐ a) editor      ☐ b) reader      ☐ c) investigator      ☐ d) inventor
2. The new teacher ..... his/her students to do the best they could.  
☐ a) aspired      ☐ b) inspired      ☐ c) respired      ☐ d) expired
3. Doctors say that childhood violence can lead to both ..... and emotional problems in later stages of life.  
☐ a) logical      ☐ b) psychological      ☐ c) archaeological      ☐ d) geological
4. The museum is of unique historical importance. The antonym of the word "unique" is ".....".  
☐ a) common      ☐ b) extraordinary      ☐ c) brilliant      ☐ d) natural
5. The factory workers were ..... the opportunities to state their position about the expansion.  
☐ a) taken      ☐ b) turned      ☐ c) denied      ☐ d) given
6. The paramedics will be at the accident ..... within a few minutes.  
☐ a) view      ☐ b) scenery      ☐ c) landscape      ☐ d) scene
7. Many car factory workers are worried that they'll lose their ..... as a result of using robots.  
☐ a) jobs      ☐ b) works      ☐ c) careers      ☐ d) professions

**Group 5**

1. The military attack on terrorists took place under the ..... of the UN Security Council.  
☐ a) irresponsibility      ☐ b) authority      ☐ c) validity      ☐ d) expiry
2. You can use Italics or capitals to ..... a word in a piece of writing.  
☐ a) emphasise      ☐ b) improvise      ☐ c) eject      ☐ d) disrupt
3. There has been much ..... on the medical field during the last few years which makes people's lives more comfortable.  
☐ a) decrease      ☐ b) failure      ☐ c) effect      ☐ d) progress
4. Your work is so rewarding, even though it's unpleasant at times. The synonym of the adjective "rewarding" is ".....".  
☐ a) inexpensive      ☐ b) valueless      ☐ c) profitable      ☐ d) devalued



5. My parents' prediction about my clever brother seems to be ..... true. He's now a newly graduate engineer.  
☐ a) coming      ☐ b) going      ☐ c) falling      ☐ d) growing
6. The ..... who were at the crime scene didn't reach a final decision about the murderer.  
☐ a) investigators      ☐ b) conductors      ☐ c) employers      ☐ d) leaders
7. Mr. Essam has managed to ..... his young good looks through a healthy lifestyle.  
☐ a) damage      ☐ b) pollute      ☐ c) comply      ☐ d) preserve

### Group 6

1. Women have ..... full equality with men in many fields in Egypt.  
☐ a) achieved      ☐ b) applied      ☐ c) failed      ☐ d) thought
2. All businessmen must know that it takes time to build up ..... in their fields.  
☐ a) ties      ☐ b) contacts      ☐ c) facts      ☐ d) enemies
3. A good educational system allows people to develop their ..... to the full.  
☐ a) complaints      ☐ b) frights      ☐ c) detests      ☐ d) talents
4. The nurse in ..... of the children ward explained what the treatment would be like.  
☐ a) change      ☐ b) account      ☐ c) charge      ☐ d) balance
5. If you tell Susan anything about your personal life, she'll ..... it to everyone in the office!  
☐ a) publish      ☐ b) speck      ☐ c) spoil      ☐ d) broadcast
6. He had hopes of being selected for the national team. The noun of the verb "select" is .....  
☐ a) selected      ☐ b) selective      ☐ c) selection      ☐ d) selectively
7. You shouldn't put your trust in a man who is always lying. The antonym of the noun "trust" is .....  
☐ a) doubt      ☐ b) thought      ☐ c) confidence      ☐ d) importance

### Group 7

1. The young archaeologist specialises in the ..... of Islamic ancient furniture.  
☐ a) conversation      ☐ b) convention      ☐ c) conservation      ☐ d) condensation
2. The Egyptian Navy has managed to ..... many new warships and submarines in the last few years.  
☐ a) attack      ☐ b) compete      ☐ c) consume      ☐ d) launch
3. The new motorway should help the ..... of new business in the area.  
☐ a) creation      ☐ b) loss      ☐ c) exploration      ☐ d) discovery
4. The clerk really deserves a day off as a/an ..... for working so hard.  
☐ a) present      ☐ b) reward      ☐ c) award      ☐ d) prize
5. It is said that the first high-..... television was on sale in late 1998.  
☐ a) quantity      ☐ b) amount      ☐ c) definition      ☐ d) design
6. The children's temperature and heartbeat are regularly monitored. The synonym of the verb "monitor" is ".....".  
☐ a) innovate      ☐ b) depict      ☐ c) ignore      ☐ d) observe
7. She saved some of her ..... every month to invest in the future.  
☐ a) wealth      ☐ b) income      ☐ c) expenses      ☐ d) amount



## B

## Language

## Unit

## Comparative phrases

## تعبيرات المقارنة

عند المقارنة بين الأشخاص والأشياء نستخدم مجموعة من التعبيرات التي تبين ما إذا كان الشئان أو الشخصان متساويين أم هناك فرق كبير أو صغير في الصفة المشتركة بينهما:

1 exactly the same (noun) as .....

وجه المقارنة الثاني + exactly the same (noun) as + وجه المقارنة الأول

يستخدم هذا الشكل لبيان أنه لا فرق بين شخصين أو شئين:

▶ Your bag is **exactly the same** as my bag.

▶ Your bag is **exactly the same colour** as my bag.

slightly

a bit

a little

صفة مقارنة

+

than

almost

as + adj. صفة

+

as

يستخدم هذا الشكل لبيان أن الفارق ليس كبيراً بين شخصين أو شئين:

▶ I'm **almost as tall** as my brother.

▶ Yesterday's film was **slightly more interesting than** today's film.

far

a lot

much

صفة مقارنة

+

than

يستخدم هذا الشكل لبيان أن الفارق كبير بين شخصين أو شئين:

▶ Studying history is **far more difficult than** studying English.

تنبيه هام (يجب مراجعة درس الصفات والمقارنة والتفضيل من الوحدة الثانية)

## Past habits

## عادات الماضي

للتعبير عن عادات الماضي يمكن استخدام:

1) Past simple

2) used to + inf.

3) would + inf.

1 Past simple

نستخدم الماضي البسيط مع أحداث الماضي المفردة وعادات الماضي المتكررة ونستخدم معها عادة ظروف التكرار مثل:

always, often, every day, etc.

▶ When I was young, I **always walked** to school.

## 2 used to + Inf.

### الماضي المعتاد

#### Negative

didn't + use to + Inf.

I didn't use to be fat.

#### Question

Did + subj. + use to + inf. ...?

Did you use to play football?

تعبّر عن عادات الماضي ولا تستخدم عند تحديد الوقت أو ذكر المدة أو عدد مرات حدوث الفعل.

People **used to travel** on camels in the past.

Osama **no longer smokes**. = Osama **used to smoke**.

## 3 would + inf.

يستخدم **would + inf.** للتعبير عن العادات والسلوك التعملي المتكرر في الماضي وليس عن الشيء الدائم وثوابت الأشياء.

► At weekends, my father **would go** and buy fruit, and also he **would buy** me sweets.

هذه الجملة تعبّر عن سلوك متكرر لشخص وليس عن مواقف وأشياء حقيقية مثل امتلاك شخص لشيء أو وظيفة لديه.

► I **used to have** a bike when I was ten years old. (Not: I **would have** a bike ....)

لحوظة: **state verbs** لا تستخدم مع **would**

► I **used to know** much about football. (Not: I **would know** much about football.)

### الماضي التام

#### Past perfect

#### الماضي التام

### الماضي التام

#### Form

Subj. + **had** + P.P.

I **had finished** by 3 pm.

By 8 yesterday, I'd **finished** my work.

Ali was ill as he'd **eaten** bad food.

#### Negative

Subj. + **hadn't** + P.P.

I **hadn't finished** by 3 pm.

حدث تم قبل حدث آخر في الماضي.

حدث انتهى وأثره كان واضحاً في الماضي.

تستخدم مع التعبيرات الزمنية الآتية:

before, after, till/until, when, by, by the time, as soon as, etc.



- ▶ After I **had saved** enough money, I **bought** the car.
- ▶ Before I **bought** the car, I **had saved** enough money.

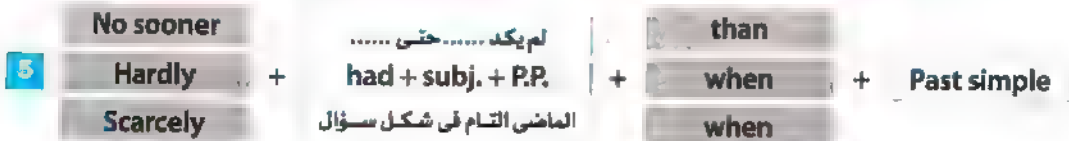


- ▶ My son **didn't cross** the street **until** he **had looked** both ways.
- ▶ I **wasn't happy** **until** I **had passed** my exams.
- ▶ He **wasn't given** the job **until** the boss **had signed** his application form.



إذا لم يوجد فاعل بعد After أو Before نستخدم v.ing

- ▶ After **finishing** his work, he **helped** me. = After he **had finished** .....
- ▶ Before **helping** me, he **had finished** his work. = Before he **helped** .....



- ▶ No sooner **had** Marwa **found** the money **than** she **reported** the police.

إذا جاءت هذه الكلمات في أول الكلام تكون القاعدة السابقة، وإذا لم تأت في أول الكلام يكون الآتي:



- ▶ Marwa **had hardly** found the money **when** she **reported** the police.

#### 6 On + (v. ing) = When + clause

- ▶ On **seeing** the police, the thief **ran** away. = **When** the thief **saw** the police, he .....

#### 7 By + ماضي تام + فترة في الماضي

- ▶ By **yesterday** **he had reached** Paris.

#### 8 Having + P.P. = After + Past perfect

- ▶ **Having booked** the tickets, I **took** the train to Assiut.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## Group 1

- For me, science is ..... difficult than history.  
☐ a) slightly more      ☐ b) slightly much      ☐ c) slightly as      ☐ d) almost as
- Ahmed's salary is ..... as mine.  
☐ a) much      ☐ b) exactly the same      ☐ c) much more      ☐ d) slightly the same
- Kareem ran ..... faster than Ramy during the race.  
☐ a) more      ☐ b) as      ☐ c) much      ☐ d) so
- The exam was slightly ..... than I expected.  
☐ a) easier      ☐ b) as easy      ☐ c) much easier      ☐ d) easy
- My house is exactly ..... as my neighbour's.  
☐ a) wide      ☐ b) wider      ☐ c) the same width      ☐ d) much wider
- Toyota is ..... fast as Peugeot.  
☐ a) almost      ☐ b) almost as      ☐ c) exactly      ☐ d) slightly as

## Group 2

- Having water in the desert is far ..... having money, although they are both useful.  
☐ a) as important as      ☐ b) more important than  
☐ c) important than      ☐ d) important as
- My father and my uncle are ..... the same age. They are twins.  
☐ a) exactly      ☐ b) a lot      ☐ c) slightly      ☐ d) almost
- My son is exactly the same ..... as my daughter. They are 160 cm each.  
☐ a) width      ☐ b) distance      ☐ c) height      ☐ d) length
- Fatma is ..... as tall as her sister.  
☐ a) almost      ☐ b) exactly      ☐ c) slightly      ☐ d) the same
- My father is tall, but my uncle is ..... taller than him.  
☐ a) exactly      ☐ b) almost      ☐ c) more      ☐ d) a bit
- Amal's baby is ..... more beautiful than anyone in the family.  
☐ a) far      ☐ b) little      ☐ c) bit      ☐ d) sight

## Group 3

- The apple is exactly the same weight and ..... as the orange.  
☐ a) size      ☐ b) big      ☐ c) distance      ☐ d) height
- When I was a child, we ..... in a small house by the river.  
☐ a) would live      ☐ b) used to live  
☐ c) are used to living      ☐ d) are living

3. This poem is ..... moving than any other poem I've read.

- ☐ a) more much      ☒ b) a bit much      ☐ c) much more      ☐ d) exactly more

4. We ..... to the same little café for lunch every day when I was a student.

- ☐ a) would go      ☒ b) use to go      ☐ c) go      ☐ d) were going

5. He used to have a bike, but now he .....

- ☐ a) hasn't      ☒ b) doesn't      ☐ c) isn't      ☐ d) does

6. I think French is ..... than English.

- ☐ a) difficult      ☒ b) much difficult      ☐ c) as difficult      ☐ d) much more difficult

#### Group 4

1. As soon as she ..... out of bed, she got dressed.

- ☐ a) would get      ☒ b) gets      ☐ c) had got      ☐ d) has got

2. She ..... until she had done her homework.

- ☐ a) slept      ☒ b) didn't sleep      ☐ c) had slept      ☐ d) won't sleep

3. The boy ..... photos after the police had left the scene.

- ☐ a) was taking      ☒ b) had taken      ☐ c) took      ☐ d) was taken

4. I couldn't call anyone because I ..... my phone.

- ☐ a) have lost      ☒ b) had lost      ☐ c) was losing      ☐ d) am losing

5. The scientist ..... the press after he had discovered a new plant species.

- ☐ a) has informed      ☒ b) had informed      ☐ c) was informing      ☐ d) informed

6. They couldn't go swimming because they ..... their swimsuits.

- ☐ a) forget      ☒ b) have forgotten      ☐ c) had forgotten      ☐ d) were forgetting

#### Group 5

1. The people in the city felt a lot safer after the wild animal ..... by the police.

- ☐ a) had been caught      ☒ b) had caught      ☐ c) was catching      ☐ d) has been caught

2. After the farmer ..... his field, he went home.

- ☐ a) has watered      ☒ b) was watering      ☐ c) will water      ☐ d) had watered

3. When I got home, I found that my wife ..... all my clothes.

- ☐ a) was ironing      ☒ b) ironed      ☐ c) had ironed      ☐ d) irons

4. They didn't announce the exam results ..... they had marked all the papers.

- ☐ a) while      ☒ b) by the time      ☐ c) when      ☐ d) till

5. Before ..... to Assiut, I had checked the car.

- ☐ a) travelled      ☒ b) travelling      ☐ c) travel      ☐ d) travels

6. On ..... the question, the student began to answer.

- ☐ a) understanding      ☒ b) understand      ☐ c) having understood      ☐ d) understood



## Group 6

1. Hardly had the staff arrived ..... the shop opened.

- a) that                      b) when                      c) then                      d) where

2. Having ..... a quick wash, he ironed his shirt.

- a) have                      b) has                      c) had had                      d) had

3. No sooner ..... the cheque than he left the office.

- a) he signed                      b) had he signed                      c) he had signed                      d) has he signed

4. I didn't know that Gamal ..... in Aswan before he moved here.

- a) living                      b) has lived                      c) had lived                      d) lives

5. Which one of the following is grammatically incorrect?

- a) On paying the bill, we left the restaurant.  
b) When we paid the bill, we left the restaurant.  
c) Before leaving the restaurant, we paid the bill.  
d) After had paid the bill, we left the restaurant.

6. As soon as I arrived at the station, the train came. This means that .....

- a) the train came first, then I reached the station  
b) the train came at the same time of my arrival  
c) the train came and left before my arrival  
d) both b and c are possible

### Group 1

Rainforests have been called the womb of life because they are home to 50 – 90 % of the species on earth, although tropical forests cover only 12% of the land area of the Earth. It has been estimated that, as a result of cutting down rainforest, at least 40 species are disappearing every day.

Rainforests are a vital source of medicine and at least 25% of all modern drugs came originally from rainforests. Rainforests offer a veritable bounty of foods. The Earth's climate is affected by rainforests. When trees are cut down and burnt or left to decompose, they release carbon dioxide into the air which is the main gas that causes global warming. Cutting down rainforests also changes the amount of rain that falls in an area. When rain falls on forests, the water is slowed down and absorbed by trees and plants. When they are taken away, the water flows quickly over the ground and this causes floods and erosion.

1. Many animals are disappearing from Earth because of \_\_\_\_\_.

- ☐ a) global warming  
☐ b) high rainfall and flood  
☐ c) cutting down rainforests  
☐ d) global ecosystems

☒ a) plants and animals  
☐ b) medicine and food  
☐ c) plants  
☐ d) animals

a) floods and erosion  
c) absorbed water

☐ a) real      ☐ b) false      ☐ c) genuine      ☐ d) true

a) are rarely found around the world  
b) are useful to humans  
c) don't offer any kind of food  
d) grow everywhere

a) carbon dioxide      b) global warming      c) oxygen      d) erosion

a) we would suffer from global warming  
b) life would be impossible  
c) some species of animals would disappear  
d) all of the previous answers

a) The importance of rainforests to man  
b) The effect of rainforests on the earth  
c) The importance of rainforests to animals  
d) The importance of rainforests to medicine

## Group 2

While airplanes and helicopters are similar in some ways, they're very different in many ways. The basic principle and purpose of both aircraft are the same; they both take you into the air and get you places. Some of the same operating techniques and laws regarding the two types are the same as well, but beyond that, there are many, many differences between the two aircraft.

Helicopters are very different from airplanes. They can do three things that airplanes cannot do. First, when airplanes move upwards, they must also move forwards, but helicopters can move straight up without moving ahead. Second, helicopters can fly backward, which airplanes cannot do. Third, helicopters can use their rotors to hover in the air (stay in one place) which is impossible for planes.

Because helicopters can **perform** actions that airplanes cannot, they are used for different tasks. Since helicopters can take off without moving forwards, **they** do not need a runway for takeoff. They are used in congested areas where there is no room for airplanes or in isolated areas which do not have airports. Because they can hover, they are used on firefighting missions to drop water on fires. They are used in logging operations to lift trees out of forests. Helicopters are used as air ambulances to airlift patients out of situations which are difficult to reach by conventional ambulances. The police use helicopters to follow suspects on the ground or to search for cars on the ground. Of course, helicopters have military uses because of their design and capabilities.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- Helicopters are able to .....  
☐ a) move straight up    ☐ b) fly backwards    ☐ c) hover    ☐ d) al. of these
- The best synonym for "**perform**" is "....."  
☐ a) do    ☐ b) fly    ☐ c) lift    ☐ d) can
- If an area is isolated, it is .....  
☐ a) crowded    ☐ b) popular    ☐ c) cut off    ☐ d) in the city
- How are helicopters used as ambulances?  
☐ a) They chase suspects on the ground.    ☐ b) They airlift people out of accidents.  
☐ c) They can drop water on fires.    ☐ d) They lift trees out of forests.
- Airplanes can't go upwards without going .....  
☐ a) forwards    ☐ b) backwards    ☐ c) down    ☐ d) around
- Helicopters do not need airports because they .....  
☐ a) are small    ☐ b) have rotors  
☐ c) don't have to go forwards to take off    ☐ d) are used in firefighting
- The underlined word "**they**" refers to .....  
☐ a) airplanes    ☐ b) helicopters    ☐ c) tasks    ☐ d) rotors
- According to the passage, the police use helicopters for ..... purpose/s.  
☐ a) one    ☐ b) four    ☐ c) three    ☐ d) two

## 2 Translation:

### Group 1

**(A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

- Literature, poetry and art educate a person on noble values and good principles, so they elevate him to the highest ranks of humanity, raise a person's sense of beauty and give him the ability to coexist with the world around him.

- يعلم الأدب والشعر والرسم الشخص على القيم النبيلة والأساسيات الحميدة، فيرتقى به إلى أعلى مراتب الإنسانية، ويرفع من إحساس الإنسان بالجمال ويمتحنه القدرة على الخروج مع العالم من حوله.
- يشقف الأدب والشعر والفن الإنسان على القيم النبيلة والمبادئ الحميدة، فيرتقى به إلى أعلى مراتب الإنسانية، ويزيد من إحساس الإنسان بالجمال ويمنحه القدرة على التعايش مع العالم من حوله.
- يذهب الأدب والشعر والمهارة الشخص على القيم النبيلة والمبادئ الحميدة، فيرتقى به إلى أعلى مراتب الإنسانية، ويرفع من إحساس الإنسان بالجمال ويمنحه القدرة على التعايش مع العالم من حوله.
- ينقش الأدب والشعر والفن الإنسان على القيم النبيلة والأساسيات الحميدة، فيرتقى به إلى أعلى مراتب الإنسانية، ويرفع من إحساس الإنسان بالجمال ويمنحه القدرة على الخروج من العالم من حوله.

**(B) Choose the correct English translation:**

- العالم مليء بالأشخاص البارزين الذين يواجهون الكثير من المواقف الصعبة ويقومون بمهام لا تصدق على الرغم من ظروفهم الطبية وإعاقتهم.
- ☐ a) The world is full of amazing people who face a lot of changing situations and do unbelievable tasks despite their medical conditions and disabilities.
- b) The world is full of courageous people who face a lot of challenging situations and do unreliable tasks despite their medical conditions and disabilities.
- c) The world is full of outstanding people who face a lot of challenging situations and do unbelievable tasks despite their medical conditions and disabilities.
- d) The world is full of outstanding people who face a lot of changing situations and do unbelievable tasks despite their medical conditions and disabilities.

**Group 2****(A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

- Travelling abroad enhances human independence; it gives him an opportunity to rely on himself, make his own decisions, and solve his problems. It also increases a person's ability to deal with the challenges that stand in his way.

- a) يعزز السفر للخارج من استقلالية الإنسان؛ حيث يمنحه فرصة ليعتمد على نفسه ويتخذ قراراته ويحل مشاكله، كما يزيد من قدرة الإنسان على التعامل مع التحديات التي تعترض طريقه.
- b) يقلل السفر للخارج من استقلالية الإنسان؛ حيث يمنحه فرصة ليعتمد على نفسه ويتخذ قراراته ويحل مشاكله، كما يزيد من قدرة الإنسان على التعامل مع التحديات التي تعترض طريقه.
- c) يعزز السفر للخارج من اتكالية الإنسان؛ حيث يمنحه فرصة ليعتمد على نفسه ويتخذ قراراته ويحل مشاكله، كما يزيد من قدرة الإنسان على التعامل مع التحديات التي تعترض طريقه.
- d) يعزز السفر للخارج من استقلالية الإنسان؛ حيث يمنحه فرصة ليعيد حسابات نفسه ويتخذ قراراته ويحل مشاكله، كما يزيد من قدرة الإنسان على التعامل مع التغييرات التي تعترض طريقه.

**(B) Choose the correct English translation:**

- يُعتبر تطوير التعليم أحد أهم الدعامات التي يركز عليها تقدم أي أمة لذا تنفذ وزارة التربية والتعليم خطة طموحة لتطوير التعليم في المراحل المختلفة.

- ☐ a) The development of education is considered one of the most common pillars on which the progress of any nation is based. Therefore, the Ministry of Education is implementing an ambitious plan to develop education in the various stages.
- b) The development of education is considered one of the most important pillars on which the progress of any nation is based. Therefore, the Ministry of Education is implementing an ambitious plan to develop science in the various stages.
- c) The development of education is considered one of the most important pillars on which the progress of any nation is based. Therefore, the Ministry of Education is investing an ambitious plan to develop education in the various stages.
- d) The development of education is considered one of the most important pillars on which the progress of any nation is based. Therefore, the Ministry of Education is implementing an ambitious plan to develop education in the various stages.

**3 Writing:****1. Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words:**

"To your friend Murad telling him about your plans for the future and about the college you plan to join. Your name is Omar." Your email address is omar100@yahoo.com. Murad's email address is muradking@gmail.com

**2. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic:**

"Thinking of others is a missing moral that we need to restore."



## المفردات الرئيسية

achievable (adj)	قابل لتحقيق	honeybee (n)	نحلة عمل	romantic (adj)	رومانسي
action (n)	حركة	horror (n)	رعب	science fiction (n)	خيال علمي
animation (n)	الرسوم المتحركة	measurable (adj)	قابل للقياس	set (v)	يحدد
comedy (n)	كوميديا / فيلم كوميدي	musical (n)	فيلم غنائي / مسرحية غنائية	specific (adj)	محدد
entrepreneur (n)	رائد عمل	profit (n) (v) (ed)	ربح / يربح	time-bound (adj)	مقيد زمنيًا
goal (n)	هدف	recipe (n)	وصفة طعام		
historical (adj)	تاريخي	relevant (adj)	ذو صلة		

## المفردات المساعدة

## مفردات مساعدة

access (n)	مدخل / سبيل	coach (n)	مدرب	device (n)	جهاز
accessories (n)	مستلزمات / إكسسوارات	colleague (n)	زميل	director (n)	مدير / مخرج
adapted (adj)	مقتبس / مأخوذ	collection (n)	مجموعة	display (n) (v) (ed)	عرض / يعرض
afford (v) (ed)	يتحمل نفقات	company (n)	شركة	documentary (n)	فيلم وثائقي
aim (n) (v) (ed)	هدف	competition (n)	منافسة	donate (v) (d)	يتبرع بـ
animated (adj)	معرض رسوم متحركة	complex (adj)	معقد	effort (n)	مجهود
architecture (n)	العمارة	conservation (n)	حفاظ	essential (adj)	ضروري
arrangement (n)	ترتيب	constantly (adv)	بشكل دائم / باستمرار	filter (n) (v) (ed)	مرشح / يرشح
attend (v) (ed)	يحضر (اجتماعًا مثلاً)	corn cob (n)	كوز الذرة	finalist (n)	متسابق نهائي
available (adj)	متاح / متوفر	crawl (v) (ed)	يزحف	fit ... in (v)	يجد وقتًا لـ
bestselling (adj)	ذو أفضل مبيعات	create (v) (d)	يبتدع / يبدع	forever (adv)	للأبد
burning (adj)	محترق	crew (n)	طاقم العمل	genuine (adj)	أصلي
business (n)	عمل تجاري	customer (n)	زبون / عميل	give up (v)	يتوقف عن / يستسلم
cartoon (n)	رسوم متحركة (كارتون)	demonstrate (v) (d)	يثبت / يبرهن	global (adj)	عالمي
cheerful (adj)	مرح / مبتهج	describe (v) (d)	يصف	harness (v) (ed)	يسخر / يستخدم



highlight (v) (ed)	يلقي ضوءاً/ يميز نصاً	non-essential (adj)	غير ضروري	rescue (n) (v) (d)	إنقاذ/ ينقذ
hilarious (adj)	مرح / مضحك جداً	non-governmental (adj)	غير حكومي	research (n)	بحث علمي
honey (n)	عسل نحل	objective (n)	هدف	return (v) (ed)	يرجع / يعود
hostile (adj)	عدائي	option (n)	اختيار	review (n)	مراجعة / عرض نقدي
individual (n) (adj)	فرد / فردي	outfit (n)	ملابس / زي	rule (v) (d)	يحكم
interest (n)	اهتمام	outline (v) (d)	يوجز/ يحدد الخطوط العريضة	scared (adj)	مرعوب
interviewer (n)	مُحاور	overall (adj) (adv)	كلي / في المِجْمَل	scenery (n)	مناظر طبيعية
intonation (n)	نبرة صوت	owner (n)	مالك	scientific (adj)	علمي
inventor (n)	مخترع	partner (n)	شريك	secondary (adj)	ثانوي / غير أساسي
island (n)	جزيرة	passionate (adj)	عاطفي / متحمس	sensible (adj)	عاقل / حكيم
joint (adj)	مشترك	percentage (n)	نسبة مئوية	smart (adj)	ذكي
lack (n) (v) (ed)	نقص / ينقصه	positive (adj)	إيجابي	sort out (v) (ed)	يفرز/ يقوم بـ/ يحل
long-term (adj)	طويل الأمد	possession (n)	ملكية	storyline (n)	قصة / سيرة الأحداث
magnificent (adj)	رائع	powerful (adj)	قوي / مؤثر	surprising (adj)	مدهش
manage (v) (d)	يدير/ ينجح/ يتمكن	practical (adj)	عملي	talent (n)	موهبة
marvellous (adj)	رائع	president (n)	رئيس شركة	talented (adj)	موهوب
matching (adj)	ملائم / متجانس	prize (n)	جائزة	tutorial (n)	دورة تعليمية / درس خصوصي
mate (n)	زميل / رفيق	produce (v) (d)	ينتج	typical (adj)	نموذجي / أصلي
minor (adj)	فرعي / غير أساسي	promote (v) (d)	يطور/ يرقى	venue (n)	مكان إقامة حدث
mission (n)	مهمة / بعثة	purpose (n)	غرض	version (n)	نسخة
most (adv)	معظم	range (n)	معدل / سلسلة	visuals (n)	مرئيات / مشاهد مرئية
motivated (adj)	متحفز / مندفع	recycle (v) (d)	يعيد تدوير	vote (v) (d)	يصوت / يبدلي بصوته
multi-national (adj)	متعدد الجنسيات	reduce (v) (d)	يقلل / يخفض	well-known (adj)	معروف
negative (adj)	سلبي	related (adj)	مرتبط	windmill (n)	طاحونة هوائية
neighbourhood (n)	الحي / الجيرة	remake (v)	يعيد صناعة		

## Expressions & Idioms

## تعبيرات ومصطلحات

(be) a great success	يحقق نجاحًا كبيرًا	get married	يتزوج	make recommendations	يقدم ترشيحات - توصيات
achieve their goals	يحققون أهدافهم	had my first sight	رأيت لأول مرة	of the same name	بنفس الاسم
all the time	طوال الوقت	have the right to	لديه الحق أن	pass a driving test	يجتاز اختبار القيادة
at the same time	في نفس الوقت	in public	علنًا / أمام الجمهور	play the guitar	يعزف على الجيتار
by accident	بالصدفة	keep you fit	يحافظ على لياقتك	reach my goal	أصل لهدفي
couldn't stop laughing	لم أستطع التوقف عن الضحك	make a difference	يحدث فرقًا	rule over a country	يحكم بلدًا
feel different	يشعر بأنه مختلف	make life easier	يجعل الحياة أسهل	stay healthy	يظل بصحة جيدة
get lost	يضل الطريق / يتوه	make lots of mistakes	يرتكب أخطاء كثيرة	tell a story	يحكي قصة

## Phrases & Prepositions

## عبارات وحروف جر

adapted from	مأخوذ من / مقتبس من	hostile to	عدائي / مُعادي لـ	shout at	يصرخ في وجه
aim at	يهدف إلى	importance of	أهمية لـ	similar to	مشابه لـ
available to	متوفر لـ	leave behind	يخلف / يترك خلفه	solution to/for	حل لـ
choice of	اختيار لـ	look after	يعتني بـ	successful in	ناجح في
climb onto	يصعد إلى	look like	يشبه	take off	يطير / يقلع
crawl around	يرحف حول	match with	يتناسب مع	terrible at	فظيلع في
depend on	يعتمد على	opinion about	رأي عن	think about/of	يفكر في
donate to	يتبرع لـ	passionate about	متحمس بخصوص	travel to	يسافر إلى
escape from	يهرب من	plenty of	وفرة / كثرة من	type of	نوع من
experience with	خبرة بـ	related to	مرتبط بـ	vote for	يصوت لصالح
get over	يتغلب على	relevant to	فوصلة بـ		
go back	يرجع / يعود	sell ... to	يبيع ... لـ		

## Derivatives

## المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
adapt	يقتبس	adaptation	اقتباس	adapted	مقتبس
animate	يصور برسوم متحركة	animation	رسوم متحركة	animated	معروض برسوم متحركة
annoy	يرزعج	annoyance	إزعاج	annoying	مزعج
				annoyed	منزعج

arrange	يرتب	arrangement	ترتيب	arranged	مرتب
attend	يحضر	attendance attendee	حضور حاضر	attendant	الحاضر / ملازم / مصاحب
demonstrate	يبرهن / يثبت	demonstration	إثبات / برهان	demonstrative	توضيحي
describe	يصف	description	وصف	descriptive	وصفي
manage	يدير	management manager	إدارة مدير	managerial	إداري
measure	يقيس	measurement	قياس	measurable	قابل للقياس
motivate	يحفز	motivation	حافز / دافع	motivated	متحفز / مندفع
possess	يمتلك	possession	ملكية	possessive	تملكي / اقتنائي
profit	ربح / يربح	profit	ربح / يربح	profitable	مربح
promote	يطور / يرقى	promotion	تطور / ترقية	promotional	مطور / مرقى
realise	يدرك	realisation	إدراك	realistic	حقيقي / واقعي
recommend	يرشح / يوصي بـ	recommendation	ترشيح / توصية	recommended	مرشح
reduce	يقلل / يخفض	reduction	خفض / تقليل	reduced	مخفض
relate	يصل / يجد الصلة بين	relevance	صلة / علاقة	relevant	ذو صلة
remove	يزيل	removal remover	إزالة مزيل	removable	قابل للإزالة
rule	يحكم	ruler	حاكم	ruling	حاكم
scare	يرعب	scare	رعب	scared	مرعوب

### Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
achievable	قابل للتحقيق	attainable		impossible	مستحيل
afford	يتحمل نفقات	manage		reject	يترك
cheerful	مرح / مبتهج	joyful/merry/pleasant		depressed/gloomy	مكتئب
collection	مجموعة	selection		separation	فصل / انفصال
complex	معقد	complicated		simple	بسيط
conservation	حفاظ	preservation/protection		destruction/waste	تدمير / إهدار
cruel	قاس	violent		merciful/kind	رحيم / عطوف
demonstrate	يثبت / يبرهن	illustrate/prove		confuse/disprove	يربك / لا يثبت
detailed	مفصل	precise/specific		inaccurate/incomplete	غير دقيق / غير كامل
display	عرض / يعرض	demonstrate		hide/cover	يخفي
filter	مرشح / يرشح	clean/refine		pollute	يلوث
global	عالمي	worldwide		local	محلي

harness	يسخر/يستخدم	exploit/use	consume	يستهلك
hilarious	مرح/مضحك جدًا	humorous/funny	serious/tragic	جاد/درامي
horror	رعب	fear/terror	calmness/delight	هدوء/سعادة
hostile	عدائي	unfriendly/unsympathetic	friendly/kind	لطيف/عطوف
individual	فردى	single	team	جماعى
manage	يدير	direct/run	obey/ ignore/neglect	يطيع/يهمل
measurable	قابل للقياس	determinable	immeasurable	غير قابل للقياس
outline	يوجز	plan/describe	disorganise	لا ينظم
passionate	عاطفى/متحمس	enthusiastic	unconcerned	غير مهتم
powerful	قوى/مؤثر	impressive	impotent/dull	ضعيف/ممل
practical	عملى	useful/factual	theoretical	نظري
profit	ربح/يربح	benefit/interest	loss/cost	خسارة
progress	تقدم	advance/growth	decline/failure	تدهور/فشل
recycle	يعيد تدوير	reuse	waste/destroy	يهدر
related	مرتبط	associated/linked	irrelevant/unrelated	ليس له صلة
relax	يسترخى	calm/rest	worry/excite	يقلق
rule	يحكم	govern/dominate	surrender/serve	يستسلم/يخدم
scared	مرعوب	frightened	brave/courageous	شجاع
sensible	عاقل/حكيم	reasonable/rational	irrational/unwise	غير عقلى/غير حكيم
smart	ذكى	intelligent/brilliant	foolish/stupid	أحمق/غبى
talented	موهوب	gifted	untalented/unskilled	غير موهوب/غير ماهر

## Notes

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

### colleague

زميل عمل

Ahmed's **colleagues** at the office arranged a goodbye party for him.

### classmate

زميل دراسة

Ahmed isn't only my **classmate**; he is also my friend.

### crew

١- طاقم عمل (فى طائرة/سفينة غالبًا)

٢- طاقم من الفنانين لإنتاج شيء مثل فيلم أو مسرحية

- The plane **crew** welcomed the famous footballer themselves.

- The film **crew** have really made a good documentary.

### staff

طاقم عمل (فى مصنع/مدرسة/منظمة)

There was a meeting of the **staff** last week.



## review

١- مراجعة/إعادة نظر/مراجعة (دروس)  
٢- مقال نقدي

- The project needs a second **review**.
- I usually read sports **reviews** in my favourite newspapers.

## revision

مراجعة/إعادة نظر/مراجعة (دروس)

We still have two weeks for our **revision** before the exam.

## recipe

وصفة (مجموعة من الإرشادات لطبق معين)

The **recipe** for making pizza is very easy.

## prescription

رخصة (وصفة طبية)

This drug can't be sold without a doctor's **prescription**.

## goal

هدف (مستقبل هام قد يستغرق وقتاً طويلاً)

Being successful is everyone's ultimate **goal** in life.

## target

هدف/مستهدف (كم أو مقدار محدد تسعى تحقيقه)

The shop reached its sale **target** two months before their first year.

## objective

هدف (تم مناقشته وتحديد مسبقاً)

In each school subject, there are certain educational **objectives** to work for.

## programme/show

برنامج

My friend appeared on a TV **programme/show** last night.

## documentary

فيلم وثائقي

We watched a **documentary** on the history of music with interesting video clips.

## podcast

مدونة صوتية  
(ملف يمكن سماعه أو تحميله عبر الإنترنت)

You can download **podcasts** of the 'Today' Programme from the BBC Website.

## webcast

البث الشبكي (مباشر عبر الإنترنت)

Various local news sites plan to **webcast** each of the election debates. All people can watch them online.

## position

موقع محدد

You can see the sunset every morning because of the **position** of your hotel room.

## venue

مكان (إقامة حدث)

Egypt was the **venue** of the World Handball Men's Championship in 2021.

## mistake

خطأ (شيء خاطئ في حسابات أو كتابة)

We may have made a **mistake** in our calculations.

## flaw

عيب (خطأ في نظام أو وجهة نظر تجعله غير مفيد أو غير فعال)

The new web browser is nice, but it also has its **flaws**.

## fault

خطأ/خلل (مشكلة في آلة أو تصميم أو نظام يسبب ضرراً)

It sounds as if there's a **fault** in one of the loudspeakers we bought yesterday.

## defect

عيب/خلل (مشكلة في منتج أو آلة ناتج عن خطأ في التصنيع أو التصميم)

All the cars are tested for **defects** before they leave the factory.



<b>display</b>	عرض للأشياء للبيع أو الاستعراض	The artists have a good chance for the <b>display</b> of their paintings at this gallery.
<b>show</b>	عرض فني	The comic <b>show</b> has stopped due to financial problems.
<b>manage</b>	ينجح / يتمكن من (يتبعها اسم أو ضمير أو المصدر + to)	At last, we <b>managed</b> to finish the report about the medical research.
<b>succeed (in)</b>	ينجح / يتمكن من (يتبعها noun أو verb + ing)	Omar <b>succeeded</b> in making enough money to buy a new car.
<b>global</b>	عالمي	COVID-19 is one of the most serious <b>global</b> problems we face nowadays.
<b>international</b>	دولي	Egypt played three <b>international</b> football matches under El-Badry coaching.
<b>approve</b>	يوافق على	The electric proposals have to be <b>approved</b> by the engineering department.
<b>pass</b>	يمرر قانونًا (بالتصويت)	Plans to extend the hotel have now been <b>passed</b> by the authorities.
<b>ratify</b>	يصدق على (اتفاق أو معاهدة بالتوقيع عليها فتصبح رسمية)	The parliament delayed <b>ratifying</b> the treaty with Canada.
<b>equipment</b>	معدات (أجهزة أو آلات تستخدم لغرض ما) تُعتبر مفرقًا ولا تُسبق بأداة نكرة	The new university laboratory has all the latest <b>equipment</b> .
<b>kit</b>	ملاقم أدوات (مجموعة من الأدوات تستخدم لغرض ما مثل الخياطة)	This make-up <b>kit</b> can be ordered online.
<b>apparatus</b>	جهاز (آلة أو أداة تستخدم لغرض فني مثل الطب والعلوم)	The astronauts have special breathing <b>apparatus</b> .

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### Group 1

- In my opinion, all video games must be suitable for ..... age groups.  
☐ a) unknown      b) hilarious      c) timing      d) specific
- The judge declared that he couldn't make a decision until he had all the ..... information and investigations.  
☐ a) unaccepted      b) achievable      c) relevant      d) unreliable
- One of the main ..... of the new coach is to get the team to the finals.  
☐ a) amounts      b) fictions      c) quantities      d) goals
- I can't operate the machine; it's very complicated. "Complicated" is similar in meaning to .....  
☐ a) simple      b) expensive      c) unknown      d) complex
- Having someone to talk to ..... all the difference to my mother.  
☐ a) aid      b) made      c) devised      d) designed
- The embassy employs around 50 people on its full-time .....  
☐ a) crew      b) cast      c) staff      d) race
- A/An ..... is a period of teaching in a university that involves discussion between an individual student or a small group of students.  
☐ a) diploma      b) league      c) tutorial      d) degree

### Group 2

- A/An ..... is a person who makes money by starting or running businesses, especially when this involves taking financial risks.  
☐ a) entertainer      b) designer      c) entrepreneur      d) consultant
- All charities in Egypt are non-governmental, voluntary and not run for .....  
☐ a) profit      b) loss      c) donation      d) salary
- The restaurant near our house is famous for a really great ..... for barbecue sauce.  
☐ a) prescription      b) study      c) research      d) recipe
- The new project demonstrates the Egyptians' hard work. The synonym of the word "demonstrate" is .....  
☐ a) deny      b) illustrate      c) deploy      d) disturb
- Some students need their parents' support to ..... their goals.  
☐ a) inspect      b) assist      c) achieve      d) aid
- The final match of the Champions League is played at a neutral .....  
☐ a) venue      b) position      c) landscape      d) placement
- The critic's ..... about the new movie appeared in yesterday's paper.  
☐ a) script      b) revision      c) reform      d) review

### Group 3

1. The central bank is responsible for ..... interest rates in all national banks.  
☐ a) cutting                      b) setting                      c) sitting                      d) destroying
2. Ahmed Helmy's last ..... didn't make a great success although many people thought it was funny.  
☐ a) fiction                      b) romance                      c) horror                      d) comedy
3. Many young people are keen on ..... movies such as vampire and zombie stories.  
☐ a) horror                      b) historical                      c) comic                      d) romantic
4. The soldiers were very careful as they were entering hostile territory. The antonym of the adjective "hostile" is .....  
☐ a) cruel                      b) funny                      c) friendly                      d) silly
5. My friend and I met by ..... at the airport coming from different countries.  
☐ a) accident                      b) incident                      c) event                      d) choice
6. A new season of the music competition ..... is coming soon.  
☐ a) documentary                      b) show                      c) presentation                      d) podcast
7. The local farmers were ..... to plans for a new motorway near their fields because they fear accidents.  
☐ a) hostile                      b) fragile                      c) wealthy                      d) friendly

### Group 4

1. Time travel exists only in the genre of science ..... modern movies.  
☐ a) faction                      b) fission                      c) fiction                      d) fact
2. A search ..... is a computer program that is used to look for information on the internet.  
☐ a) engine                      b) power                      c) motor                      d) page
3. We should try to help our children to be objective and set themselves realistic, ..... goals.  
☐ a) imaginary                      b) measurable                      c) valueless                      d) unattended
4. My brother's poor exam results annoy my father. The adjective of the verb "annoy" is .....  
☐ a) annoys                      b) annoyed                      c) annoyance                      d) annoyingly
5. The former old actress is now rarely seen ..... public after retiring.  
☐ a) at                      b) of                      c) in                      d) about
6. A good teacher should ..... the time of the lesson well.  
☐ a) think                      b) succeed                      c) merge                      d) manage
7. For some reason, many don't find his jokes hilarious. The antonym of the word "hilarious" is .....  
☐ a) funny                      b) humorous                      c) violent                      d) tragic

### Group 5

1. Kingdom of Heaven is one of the best American ..... movies that shows the true character of King Saladin.  
☐ a) horror                      b) fictional                      c) historical                      d) animated
2. Mother and father had a ..... dinner in an expensive restaurant to celebrate their wedding anniversary.  
☐ a) terror                      b) romantic                      c) comic                      d) collaborative

3. The chef said that the mixture should be stirred ..... until it is the required colour.  
☐ a) helpfully      b) vaguely      c) delightfully      d) constantly
4. Children should ask their parents' permission before making phone calls. The noun "permission" is the opposite of .....  
☐ a) refusal      b) acceptance      c) agreement      d) treaty
5. It can take weeks to get ..... some symptoms of the flu.  
☐ a) off      b) in      c) over      d) into
6. The old woman ..... a sizeable portion of her wealth to children's charities.  
☐ a) requested      b) perplexed      c) retrieved      d) donated
7. Our boss insists that we must keep a first-aid ..... in the office for emergencies.  
☐ a) kit      b) device      c) equipment      d) apparatus

**Group 6**

1. Only one newspaper printed the full ..... of the interview with the Prime Minister.  
☐ a) type      b) version      c) episode      d) animation
2. BBC, the famous news channel, made a two-part ..... about the war in Kosovo.  
☐ a) correspondence      b) copy      c) competition      d) documentary
3. The former American President gave a/an ..... speech about his achievements.  
☐ a) passionate      b) achievable      c) specific      d) measurable
4. The crew are well trained to deal with emergencies. The noun of the verb "train" is .....  
☐ a) training      b) trains      c) tauntingly      d) trained
5. I've recently changed my opinion ..... my cousin whose business is now successful.  
☐ a) up      b) about      c) in      d) at
6. The restaurant was the ideal ..... for a business meeting with the foreign delegate.  
☐ a) position      b) road      c) venue      d) placement
7. The first time I hear ..... this writer was in a TV report about contemporary Egyptian writers.  
☐ a) for      b) in      c) of      d) from

**Group 7**

1. Dr Reda can ..... you in this morning at 10 only if it is an emergency.  
☐ a) fit      b) give      c) make      d) assign
2. It would be ..... to consult your parents first about your college.  
☐ a) sensitive      b) unreasonable      c) sensible      d) irresponsible
3. Everything we download from the internet is automatically ..... through our virus software.  
☐ a) charged      b) filtered      c) fossilised      d) stored
4. All citizens should have the right ..... a good standard of medical treatment.  
☐ a) in      b) at      c) to      d) with
5. The amount of protein you need is directly related to your lifestyle. The synonym of the adjective "related" is .....  
☐ a) associated      b) separated      c) tied      d) disjoined
6. We didn't ..... that it would take three hours to get to our destination.  
☐ a) realise      b) recognise      c) organise      d) improvise
7. The painting was verified as a ..... work by the famous artist.  
☐ a) genuine      b) insincere      c) fake      d) ordinary



## Unit 10

## Question tag

## السؤال المذيّل

- السؤال المذيّل هو سؤال يكون آخر الجملة الخيرية لتأكيد المعنى.
- يتم صمل هذا السؤال من الفعل المساعد أو الناقص فقط ويعدّه الضمير العائد على الاسم.
- إذا كانت الجملة المراد تأكيدها مثبتة يكون السؤال المذيّل متفياً والعكس صحيح.
- يستخدم لطلب الموافقة أو التأكيد.
- لابد أن يكون السؤال المنفى مختصراً.
- السؤال المذيّل يأتي قبله ( , ) .

Positive statement + Negative question tag  
 (+) (-)  
 You **are** a student , **aren't** you?

Negative statement + Positive question tag  
 (-) (+)  
 Hala **is not** a nurse , **is** she?

+ Sentence → - Tag

- Sentence → + Tag

Ali <b>is</b> Egyptian	, <b>isn't</b> he?
You <b>study</b> hard	, <b>don't</b> you?
He <b>lives</b> in Cairo	, <b>doesn't</b> he?
You <b>were</b> at home	, <b>weren't</b> you?
Ola <b>visited</b> her uncle	, <b>didn't</b> she?
Omar <b>was</b> watching TV	, <b>wasn't</b> he?
You <b>have</b> seen my bag	, <b>haven't</b> you?
You <b>have</b> dinner at 8 p.m.	, <b>don't</b> you?
She <b>'s finished</b> the report	, <b>hasn't</b> she?
She <b>has</b> blonde hair	, <b>doesn't</b> she?
He <b>'d finished</b> by 6 p.m.	, <b>hadn't</b> he?
He <b>'d rather</b> leave now	, <b>wouldn't</b> he?

John <b>isn't</b> Egyptian	, <b>is</b> he?
You <b>don't</b> study hard	, <b>do</b> you?
He <b>doesn't</b> live in Cairo	, <b>does</b> he?
You <b>weren't</b> at home	, <b>were</b> you?
Ola <b>didn't</b> visit her uncle	, <b>did</b> she?
Omar <b>wasn't</b> watching TV	, <b>was</b> he?
You <b>haven't</b> seen my bag	, <b>have</b> you?
You <b>don't</b> have dinner at 8 p.m.	, <b>do</b> you?
She <b>hasn't</b> finished yet	, <b>has</b> she?
She <b>doesn't</b> have blonde hair	, <b>does</b> she?
He <b>hadn't</b> come by 6 p.m.	, <b>had</b> he?
He <b>'d rather not</b> come	, <b>would</b> he?



He'd better find a job	, hadn't he?	He'd better not go now	, had he?
They'll help us	, won't they?	They won't help us	, will they?
He can ride a horse	, can't he?	He can't ride a horse	, can he?
We need more money	, don't we?	We needn't more money	, need we?
He used to get up early	, didn't he?	He didn't use to help us	, did he?
I think he is a thief	, isn't he?	I don't think he is a thief	, is he?
I'm right	, aren't I?	I'm not mistaken	, am I?

حالات خاصة:

Let's go out اقتراح	, shall/shan't we?	Let us go out طلب	, will/won't you?
Interesting	, isn't it?	Beautiful	, isn't she?
This/That is Ahmed's car	, isn't it?	These are Ali's pens	, aren't they?
There's a celebrity here	, isn't there?	There're 2 cars here	, aren't there?
Stop talking	, will/won't you?	Don't speak loudly	, will you?

ملاحظات

1 الجملة التي تحتوي على never – rarely – hardly – seldom – nor – neither – few – little – no

تعتبر جملة منفية لذلك يكون السؤال المذيل مثبتاً.

- ▶ He can hardly run, can he?
- ▶ He rarely visits you, does he?

2 إذا كان الفاعل Everything, Something, Nothing يكون الضمير it.

- ▶ Nothing can live without energy, can it?

3 إذا كان الفاعل Everyone, body - Someone, body - No one, body يكون الضمير they.

- ▶ Everyone is coming to the party, aren't they?

## 2 Adjectives and Adverbs

الصفات والأحوال

### 1 Adjectives

الصفات

- الصفة تصف الاسم وتأتي قبله مثل: He is an amazing cook.

- أو تصف الاسم والضمير وتأتي بعدهما مسبوقه بـ to be مثل: The boys/They are clever.

- الصفة تأتي بعد أفعال معينة وهي أفعال Stative مثل:

be/get/become/look/sound/seem/taste/appear/feel/smell

- ▶ The medicine tastes awful.
- ▶ The food smells bad.
- ▶ The man looks happy.
- ▶ Our progress was/seemed slow.



## Participle adjectives

"ing" adjectives describe the person or object.

► He is an **interesting** person.

► His stories are **interesting**.

"ed" adjectives describe feelings.

► We are **interested** in him and his stories.

► We were **tired** after the long journey.

الصفات المشتقة من اسم الفاعل والمفعول

الصفات التي تنتهي بـ **ing** تصف الشخص أو الشيء.

الصفات التي تنتهي بـ **ed** تصف المشاعر.



## Adverbs

الأحوال/الظروف

الحال أو الظرف يصف:

١- الفعل

٣- الحال

٢- الصفة

٤- جملة كاملة

► They started the race **slowly**.

► He is an **incredibly amazing** cook.

► He cooks **really amazingly**. (very well)

► **Interestingly**, he won the first medal.

(Action verb + Adverb)

(Adverb + Adjective)

(Adverb + Adverb)

(Adverb + Sentence)



Manner

الطريقة

Degree

الدرجة



## Adverbs of manner

ظروف الطريقة

► How to form adverbs from adjectives:

صياغة الحال من الصفة.

صفات تحول إلى أحوال بإضافة **ly** ولكن الشكل يتغير حسب نهاية الصفة كالآتي:

bad/badly quick/quickly loud/loudly slow/slowly	إضافة <b>ly</b> فقط
beautiful/beautifully careful/carefully real/really	إضافة <b>ly</b> للصفات المنتهية بـ <b>a</b>
extreme/extremely nice/nicely brave/bravely safe/safely	إذا انتهت الصفة بـ <b>e</b> نضيف <b>ly</b>
happy/happily heavy/heavily hungry/hungrily	إذا انتهت الصفة بـ <b>y</b> نقلب إلى <b>ly</b>
terrible/terribly horrible/horribly probable/probably	إذا انتهت الصفة بـ <b>(le)</b> نحذف <b>e</b> ونضع <b>(y)</b>
fantastic/fantastically automatic/automatically	إذا انتهت الصفة بـ <b>(ic)</b> نضيف <b>(ally)</b>

### ملاحظات

هناك بعض الاستثناءات:

1 صفات لا تأخذ **ly** عند استخدامها حالاً.

- صفات شاذة تحفظ مثل **well** تستخدم عند السؤال عن الصحة فقط. **I'm well/fine.**

- صفات لا يتغير شكلها في الحال **long/low/fine/high/straight/right/fast**

► good/well

صفات لا يتغير شكلها في الحال، ولكن إذا أضيفت **ly** يكون لها معنى آخر بعيداً عن الحال ولا يصف الفعل:

Adjective	Adverb	Adverb
late متأخر	late متأخراً	lately مؤخراً (منذ وقت قريب)
hard صلب / صعب / شديد	hard بجد / بشدة	hardly بالكاد / تقريباً لا
wrong خاطئ / مخطئ	wrong بشكل خاطئ	wrongly بظلم
near قريب	near بالقرب	nearly تقريباً

2 صفات تنتهي بـ **ly** ولا تتغير عند التحويل إلى حال ومنها:

hourly في كل ساعة	daily يومي / يومياً	weekly أسبوعي / أسبوعياً
monthly شهري / شهرياً	yearly سنوي / سنوياً	early مبكر / مبكراً

3 صفات تنتهي بـ **ly** وعند التحويل إلى حال تكون كالآتي:

in a/an + adj-ly + way/manner

elderly مسن	lonely وحيداً / يشعر بالوحدة	ugly قبيح
fatherly أبوي	lovely محبوب	deadly مميت
friendly ودود	motherly كالأم	heavenly سماوي
lively مفعم بالحياة	silly سخيف	cowardly جبان
brotherly أخوي	likely متوقع / محتمل	sisterly خاص بالأخت

- She was lovely.
- She welcomed us in a lovely way/manner.

## Adverbs of degree

ظروف الدرجة

هي الظروف التي تبين درجة الصفة والظروف الأخرى.

extremely للغاية	very جداً
quite تماماً	fairly/slightly قليلاً

- I feel slightly better today.
- I was quite angry with her.
- It had been a long day and he was very tired.
- I always walk very quickly.
- It is extremely important to record everything that happens.

نستخدم الظروف التالية قبل الصفات الشديدة بمعنى جداً أما الصفات العادية فنستخدم (very).

(terribly – absolutely – awfully – really – completely – totally – pretty – entirely – incredibly)

- Mr. Ahmed is a very good teacher.
- Mr. Ahmed is an absolutely amazing teacher.

ومن أمثلة الصفات العادية والشديدة ما يلي:

Ordinary	Extreme	Ordinary	Extreme
big	enormous/huge ضخم	tired	exhausted منهك
bad	awful/terrible فظيع	frightened	terrified خلع
angry	furious حانق	happy	delighted مقتبض
surprised مذهش	amazed مذهول	cold	freezing متجمد
clean	spotless نظيف جدًا	good	wonderful/excellent ممتاز
crowded مزدحم	packed مكتظ	hot	boiling مقتناظ / حانق
hungry	starving يموت جوعًا	old	ancient عتيق
interesting	fascinating خلّاب	small	tiny دقيق
clever	brilliant بارع	pretty جنّاب	gorgeous رائع

#### ملاحظات

1 هناك بعض الظروف التي تستخدم مع الصفات والظروف الأخرى:

almost تقريبًا	partly إلى حد ما / جزئيًا	a lot/much جدًا	a little قليل
enough بدرجة كافية	too أكثر من اللازم / جدًا	just فقط / تقريبًا / بصعوبة	a bit قليل

2 الأحوال التي تصف الصفة تأتي قبلها وهي تساوي very في المعنى:

الحال	الصفة
The Nile is	very جدًا
	extremely للغاية
	fantastically بشكل مذهش
	incredibly لا يصدق
	tremendously جدًا / هائل
	long.

وعند تحويل الصفة إلى اسم يتحول الحال إلى صفة ليصف ذلك الاسم ونحذف ly ونضع a/an قبل الصفة.

الصفة	الاسم
The Nile has	an extreme ly للغاية
	a fantastic ally بشكل مذهش
	an incredible y لا يصدق
	a tremendous ly جدًا / هائل
	length.

3 هناك درجات للحال مثل الصفة وهي:

تبين درجة الحال دون مقارنة

Positive:

► The bike is moving fast.

Comparative:

► The car is moving faster than the bike.

الدراجة تتحرك بسرعة (لا توجد مقارنة بين الدراجة وشيء آخر)

تبين مقارنة الحال مع شخص أو شيء آخر

السيارة تتحرك أسرع من الدراجة (مقارنة التحرك بين شيئين)

**Superlative:**

► The plane is moving **the fastest** of all.

تبين أعلى درجات الحال عند المقارنة مع أكثر من شيئين أو شخصين

الطائرة تتحرك أسرع من الجميع / الكل (تفضيل)

– أحوال لها نفس شكل الصفات:

	Comparative	Superlative
<b>fast</b>	<b>faster than</b>	<b>the fastest</b>
<b>early</b>	<b>earlier than</b>	<b>the earliest</b>
<b>late</b>	<b>later than</b>	<b>the latest/last</b>
<b>hard</b>	<b>harder than</b>	<b>the hardest</b>
<b>soon</b>	<b>sooner than</b>	<b>the soonest</b>

- Osama works **hard**.
- Osama works **harder than** anyone of us.
- Osama works **the hardest** of us all.

– أحوال تنتهي بـ **ly**.

	Comparative	Superlative
<b>easily</b>	<b>more easily</b>	<b>the most easily</b>
<b>quickly</b>	<b>more quickly</b>	<b>the most quickly</b>
<b>fluently</b>	<b>more fluently</b>	<b>the most fluently</b>
<b>carefully</b>	<b>more carefully</b>	<b>the most carefully</b>

- Hazem drives **carefully**.
- Hazem drives **more carefully than** his friend Ahmed.
- Hazem drives **the most carefully** of all his friends.

– أحوال شاذة:

	Comparative	Superlative
<b>well</b>	<b>better than</b>	<b>the best</b>
<b>ill/badly</b>	<b>worse than</b>	<b>the worst</b>
<b>far (for distance)</b>	<b>farther than</b>	<b>the farthest</b>
<b>far (for location/extent)</b>	<b>further than</b>	<b>the furthest</b>
<b>much</b>	<b>more than</b>	<b>the most</b>
<b>little</b>	<b>less than</b>	<b>the least</b>
<b>near</b>	<b>nearer than</b>	<b>the next</b>

- The frog jumps **far**.
- The deer jumps **farther than** the frog.
- The kangaroo jumps **the farthest** of all.



## Relative clauses

## جمل الوصل

who/that	<p>تحل محل الفاعل العاقل لذلك يأتي بعدها فعل وقبلها اسم عاقل.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The boy <b>who (that)</b> broke the window was punished.</li> <li>My uncle, <b>who works</b> as a teacher, is loved by many people.</li> </ul>
who/whom/that	<p>تحل محل المفعول العاقل لذلك يأتي بعدها فاعل وقبلها اسم عاقل.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>My uncle, <b>who/whom I love</b>, works as a teacher.</li> <li>The boy <b>who/whom/that</b> we punished made many mistakes.</li> </ul>
which/that	<p>تحل محل الفاعل والمفعول غير العاقل أو تعود على جملة قبلها.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The car <b>which/that</b> Osama was driving was very fast.</li> <li>He can't write at all, <b>which</b> surprised me.</li> </ul>
whose	<p>تحل محل ضمير الملكية وبعدها اسم يملكه ما قبلها.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The woman <b>whose bag</b> was stolen was angry.</li> </ul>
where = which ... prep.	<p>تحل محل المكان وتساوي <b>which</b> مع حرف الجر.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The house <b>where</b> I live is very old.</li> <li>The house <b>which</b> I live <b>in</b> is very old.</li> <li>The house <b>in which</b> I live is very old.</li> </ul>
when = which ... prep.	<p>تحل محل الزمان وتساوي <b>which</b> مع حرف الجر.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>August is the month <b>when</b> I go on holiday.</li> <li>August is the month <b>in which</b> I go on holiday.</li> </ul>

## أنواع جمل الوصل

**1** النوع الأول يعطى معلومة أساسية ويدون هذه المعلومات سيكون من الصعب أن نعرف من أوما هو المقصود. ونستخدم في هذا النوع

(who/which/whom) ولا نستخدم (comma) قبل أو بعد عبارة الوصل. ويمكن استخدام (that) بدلاً من ضمائر الوصل المذكورة.

- ▶ The man **who (that)** robbed the bank was sent to prison.
- ▶ The book **which (that)** tells you about history is useful.

**2** النوع الثاني يعطى معلومات إضافية وليست ضرورية لفهم معنى الجملة ولا بد من استخدام (comma) قبل وبعد عبارة الوصل ولا تستخدم (that) في هذا النوع.

- ▶ My father, **whom** I love, works as a teacher.
- ▶ Alaa's car, **which** he left outside, cost him L.E. 200.000 (Alaa has one car).

ولمزيد من التوضيح لاحظ الفرق بين المثالين الآتيين:

- ▶ My sister, who lives in Assuit, came to visit me in Cairo last week.
- ▶ My sister who lives in Assuit came to visit me in Cairo last week.

- في المثال الأول جملة الوصل معلومة إضافية، وهذا يعني أن لدى أختنا واحدة فقط فلا أحتاج للتعريف.

- في المثال الثاني جملة الوصل تعطي معلومة أساسية وضرورية، وهذا يعني أن لدى أكثر من أخت فوجب التفريق من التي زارتني منهن.

## ملاحظات

1 تستخدم **what** كرابط بمعنى (ما) وهي تساوي **the thing(s) that**

فعل / فاعل **what** فعل أو ضمير أو اسم لا تعود هي عليه

- ▶ I didn't understand **what** he had said. (what had been said).
- ▶ I can't give him (Ahmed) **what** he needs.
- ▶ **What** makes me angry is that Ahmed always comes late.

2 تستخدم **(which)** لتشير إلى جملة كاملة قبلها.

- ▶ My brother won a valuable prize, **which** made me happy.

3 تستخدم **whose** بدلاً من أشكال الملكية كلها مثل:

- ▶ The girl **with** blue eyes is my sister.  
The girl **whose** eyes are blue is my sister.
- ▶ The man is rich. **He has** a red car.  
The man **whose** car is red is rich.
- ▶ The car won the race. **Its** colour is red.  
The car **whose** colour is red won the race.

4 لاحظ الفرق بين **whose/who's**

**who's + v.ing/noun = who is ... who's + P.P. = who has ...**

- ▶ The boy **who's** running there is my cousin.
- ▶ Adel **who's** the manager of the clothes factory is very friendly.
- ▶ The boy **whose** phone was stolen was furious.

5 هناك بعض الكلمات تستخدم كاسم وفعل فإذا استخدمت كاسم فإنها تسبق بـ **whose** (ومن الممكن أن نعرف أن هذه الكلمات اسم إذا جاء بعدها فعل) مثل:

**stay, dream, work, play, likes and dislikes, end, hopes, etc.**

- ▶ People **whose** likes and dislikes are the same are good friends.
- ▶ I like the stories **whose** ends are happy.

6 نستخدم **that** بعد صيغة التفضيل وبعد الكلمات الآتية:

**all – any (thing) – every (thing) – few – little – many – much – no (thing) – none – some (thing)**

- ▶ Is this **all that** you want me to do?
- ▶ There isn't anything **that** we can eat in this house.
- ▶ This is the best book **that** I have ever read.

7 يمكن استخدام **why (for which)** كضمير وصل كالتالي:

- ▶ I'd like to know the reason **why (for which)** he decided not to come.

## حالات حذف ضمير الوصل

## 1 إذا كان محل مفعول به.

- ▶ The meat was delicious. We ate **it** yesterday.
- ▶ The meat **(which/that)** we ate yesterday was delicious.
- ▶ The man **is** my neighbour. I meet **him** every day.
- ▶ The man **(who/whom/that)** I meet every day is my neighbour.

2 إذا كان بعده مبنى للمجهول نحذف **which + v. to be** ونضع **P.P.**

- ▶ I still remember the encouragement **given** to me by my parents. **(which was)**

3 إذا كان بعده معلوم نحذف **which/who** ونضع **v.ing**

- ▶ The boy **sitting** beside me is naughty. **(who sits/who is sitting)**

4 إذا كان بعده اسم أو اسم موصوف نحذف **which + v. to be/who** ولا نضع شيئاً:

- ▶ Hossam Hassan, a famous footballer, won many prizes. **(who was)**

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## Group 1

- You don't play the piano, .....?  
☐ a) don't you      ☐ b) does it      ☐ c) do you      ☐ d) doesn't it
- This winter is not very cold, .....?  
☐ a) does it      ☐ b) isn't it      ☐ c) won't it      ☐ d) is it
- They had a party last night, .....?  
☐ a) didn't they      ☐ b) weren't they      ☐ c) did they      ☐ d) hadn't they
- I'm shorter than her, .....?  
☐ a) am I      ☐ b) aren't I      ☐ c) am not I      ☐ d) don't I
- Your friends hadn't told you about the party, ..... they?  
☐ a) did      ☐ b) had      ☐ c) hadn't      ☐ d) were
- I don't think Wael is ill; .....?  
☐ a) don't I      ☐ b) aren't I      ☐ c) is he      ☐ d) isn't he

## Group 2

- We can go out now; the danger is over, .....?  
☐ a) is it      ☐ b) isn't he      ☐ c) hasn't it      ☐ d) isn't it
- None of the maths teachers were here yesterday, ..... they?  
☐ a) were      ☐ b) weren't      ☐ c) did      ☐ d) didn't
- There are lots of mistakes in my writing, .....?  
☐ a) isn't it      ☐ b) aren't they      ☐ c) aren't there      ☐ d) are they
- Let's go swimming, .....?  
☐ a) sha I we      ☐ b) isn't it      ☐ c) aren't we      ☐ d) wil. we
- You'd never say such a thing behind my back, ..... you?  
☐ a) did      ☐ b) would      ☐ c) should      ☐ d) had
- Don't leave the door open, .....?  
☐ a) won't you      ☐ b) do you      ☐ c) will you      ☐ d) are you

## Group 3

- He correctly defined the terms. The answer sounded .....  
☐ a) corrective      ☐ b) correct      ☐ c) correctly      ☐ d) correction
- Don't touch the machine. It switches itself off .....  
☐ a) automatics      ☐ b) automatical      ☐ c) automatic      ☐ d) automat cally
- As there was much time, we walked ..... to school.  
☐ a) slowly      ☐ b) slow      ☐ c) a slow      ☐ d) slowing
- We didn't go out because of the ..... rain.  
☐ a) heaviest      ☐ b) heavier      ☐ c) heavily      ☐ d) heavy

5. I was disappointed that I did so ..... on the exam.

- ☐ a) bad                      b) badly                      c) worse                      d) worst

6. The situation seemed ..... We aren't accustomed to it.

- ☐ a) unusually                      b) usually                      c) usual                      d) unusual

#### Group 4

1. Two people were ..... injured in the accident.

- ☐ a) seriously                      b) serious                      c) seriousness                      d) unserious

2. You need to be ..... tall to be a good basketball player.

- ☐ a) terrible                      b) extremely                      c) an extremely                      d) fantastic

3. The wind is blowing ..... outside.

- ☐ a) extreme                      b) awful                      c) hard                      d) hardly

4. I study four languages, ..... is a lot for me to learn.

- ☐ a) which                      b) who                      c) that                      d) what

5. She's the teacher ..... came to our school last week.

- ☐ a) whom                      b) whose                      c) where                      d) who

6. That house, ..... was sold yesterday, is 200 years old.

- ☐ a) which                      b) whose                      c) where                      d) that

#### Group 5

1. The house ..... my grandparents lived is being demolished.

- ☐ a) which                      b) where                      c) when                      d) whose

2. My mother, ..... works as a teacher, is always helping me with my studies.

- ☐ a) who's                      b) that                      c) who                      d) whose

3. I must tell you about the courageous man ..... I met on my last holiday.

- ☐ a) that                      b) what                      c) which                      d) whose

4. This is the boy about ..... we have been talking.

- ☐ a) what                      b) whom                      c) who                      d) that

5. The man ..... wife is seriously ill is very sad.

- ☐ a) which                      b) whom                      c) whose                      d) who's

6. August is the month ..... a lot of tourists visit Egypt.

- ☐ a) where                      b) which                      c) what                      d) when

#### Group 6

1. The family, ..... house had been destroyed, were given rooms in the hotel.

- ☐ a) whose                      b) who                      c) which                      d) who's

2. He didn't believe ..... I said, which annoyed me very much.

- ☐ a) who                      b) which                      c) what                      d) that

3. The hour ..... I eat lunch is 12:00 to 1:00 pm.

- ☐ a) in which                      b) which                      c) where                      d) when

4. Thank you very much for the present .....

- ☐ a) which you sent it    ☐ b) you sent it    ☐ c) you sent    ☐ d) that you sent it

5. The chair ..... I was sitting suddenly collapsed.

- ☐ a) on what    ☐ b) on which    ☐ c) on that    ☐ d) where

6. I saw several houses, most of ..... were quite unsuitable.

- ☐ a) who    ☐ b) whose    ☐ c) that    ☐ d) which

### Group 7

1. The horse ..... I was on kept stopping to eat grass, ..... annoyed the riding instructor.

- ☐ a) that/which    ☐ b) which/that    ☐ c) that/that    ☐ d) who/which

2. I am sure that ..... you say is true.

- ☐ a) which    ☐ b) when    ☐ c) what    ☐ d) where

3. The area ..... I live is very quiet at night.

- ☐ a) which    ☐ b) that    ☐ c) when    ☐ d) where

4. Vegetables ..... contain vitamin C are very important to our health.

- ☐ a) whose    ☐ b) which    ☐ c) what    ☐ d) who

5. One of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect:

- ☐ a) I recently went back to the town where I grew up.  
☐ b) I recently went back to the town where I grew up in.  
☐ c) I recently went back to the town which I grew up in.  
☐ d) I recently went back to the town I grew up in.

6. My father ..... always forgets his password.

- ☐ a) , whom I helped to install his computer,  
☐ b) whom I helped to install his computer  
☐ c) , that I helped to install his computer,  
☐ d) who I helped to install his computer



1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

**Group 1**

For many Americans, carrying a cell phone has replaced the need for wearing a wrist watch. If you need to know what time it is, just flip it. But have you ever wondered how your cell phone knows what the correct time is? The sophisticated technology behind the time in your cell phone is the atomic clock. Atomic clocks allow for precise synchronisation of timing across the earth and into space that powers the Internet, GPS devices and all satellite communications. Atomic clocks for home and office use receive signals from the U.S. Atomic Clock and automatically set the correct time, date, and year. The atomic clock was made possible by research performed during the 1930s and 1940s to improve radio communications for the U.S. military during World War II. In 1949, the U.S. National Bureau of Standards (now called the National Institute of Standards and Technology) announced the world's first atomic clock. Throughout the 1950s and 1960s, the National Bureau of Standards regularly replaced and advanced the models of atomic clocks regulating time in the United States. The standard atomic clock for the United States called, NIST-F1 was introduced in 1991 is accurate to 1 second every 20 million years. Besides U.S. standards, world time is standardised by 80 atomic clocks that are scattered across 24 countries. Coordinated Universal Time, as this standardisation is called, is maintained by the Bureau International de l'Heure (International Bureau of Time) in Paris, France.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- Atomic clocks control timing for .....  
☐ a) satellite communications      ☐ b) school bells  
☐ c) fire sirens      ☐ d) church bells
- Atomic clocks for home and office use receive signals from .....  
☐ a) Bureau International de l'Heure      ☐ b) the U.S. Atomic clock  
☐ c) the Internet      ☐ d) GPS device
- The first atomic clocks arose from research into .....  
☐ a) clock making      ☐ b) physics      ☐ c) astronomy      ☐ d) radio communications
- The underlined word "flip" is similar in meaning to .....  
☐ a) twist      ☐ b) close      ☐ c) open      ☐ d) ring
- How accurate is the current atomic clock?  
☐ a) Within 1 minute per year.      ☐ b) 1 second every 20 years.  
☐ c) 1 second every 20 million years.      ☐ d) 1 millionth of a second every 20 years.
- How many atomic clocks are used to standardise world time?  
☐ a) 20      ☐ b) 24      ☐ c) 80      ☐ d) 100
- The world's first atomic clock was announced in 1949 by what country?  
☐ a) United States.      ☐ b) France.      ☐ c) Canada.      ☐ d) Great Britain.
- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to .....  
☐ a) the wrist watch      ☐ b) the cell phone      ☐ c) the atom clock      ☐ d) time

## Group 2

Have you ever gone through a forest path or area in your garden and walked straight into a spider web? It takes some time to remove the sticky web substance from your face and other body parts. So, how can spiders navigate their webs with such ease as they are building webs and capturing prey?

Different species of spiders build different types of webs. Even within a single species of spider, different parts of the web may have different properties.

All spiders spin webs. That's because webs help spiders. Webs help spiders do three things. Webs help spiders hold eggs. Many spiders like to lay their eggs in their webs. The webs help keep the eggs together. Webs help spiders keep their eggs safe.

Webs help spiders hide. Most spiders are dark. They are brown, grey or black. But spider webs are light. They are white and cloudy. When spiders hide in their webs, they are harder to see. Webs help spiders catch food. Spider webs are sticky. When a bug flies into the web, it gets stuck. It moves around. It tries to get out. But it can't. It is trapped! Spiders can tell that the bug is trapped. That's because spiders feel the web move. And the spider is hungry. The spider goes to get the bug.

Without webs, spiders would not be able to live as they do. Spiders need their webs to survive!

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- This passage is mostly about .....  
a) spider colors      b) spider webs      c) spider eggs      d) spider prey
- The underlined word "trapped" most nearly means .....  
a) stuck      b) hidden      c) eaten      d) escaped
- How can spiders tell when something is trapped in their web?  
a) They hear it.      b) They smell it.      c) They feel it.      d) They see it.
- As used in the last sentence of the passage, the word "survive" means to stay .....  
a) awake      b) hidden      c) caught      d) alive
- Which of the following is not a reason for spiders to spin their web?  
a) Holding eggs.      b) Disappearing.      c) Walking easily.      d) Catching food.
- How do spiders know that the bug is trapped?  
a) The spider's web will move.      b) The spider's web will be torn.  
c) The bug will make a loud sound.      d) The bug will cut the spider's web.
- The underlined pronoun "It" refers to .....  
a) the spider      b) the spider's web      c) the spider's egg      d) the bug
- The spider's eggs aren't separated from each other because of .....  
a) the spider's legs      b) the spider's web      c) the spider's care      d) the food of their mother

## 2 Translation:

### Group 1

**(A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

- To solve the problem of hunger, developed countries should contribute to developing the poorer ones. It is a mission that will help all the world countries.

- لحل مشكلة الجوع، يجب على البلدان المتقدمة المساهمة في تنمية البلدان المجاورة. إنها مهمة ستساعد جميع دول العالم.
- لحل مشكلة الجوع، يجب على البلدان النامية المساهمة في تنمية البلدان الفقيرة. إنها مهمة ستساعد جميع دول العالم.
- لحل مشكلة البطالة، يجب على البلدان المتقدمة المساهمة في تنمية البلدان الفقيرة. إنها مهمة ستساعد جميع دول العالم.
- لحل مشكلة الجوع، يجب على البلدان المتقدمة المساهمة في تنمية البلدان الفقيرة. إنها مهمة ستساعد جميع دول العالم.

**(B) Choose the correct English translation:**

يسافر الناس للخارج لأسباب كثيرة منها العمل أو الدراسة كما أنه وسيلة لتوسيع آفاقنا ويساعدنا على فهم الثقافات الأخرى.

- ☐ a) People travel abroad for many results, including work or study. It is also a way to broaden our horizons and help us understand other cultures.
- b) People travel abroad for many reasons, including work or study. It is also a way to broaden our horizons and help us understand other peoples.
- c) People travel abroad for many reasons, including work or study. It is also a way to broaden our horizons and help us understand other cultures.
- d) People travel abroad for many reasons, including work or study. It is also a way to broaden our horizons and help us understand other customs.

**Group 2****(A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

- Mass media have a great influence on the minds of people everywhere. That's why advertisers use them to promote their sales and gain more profits.

- ☐ (a) وسائل الإعلام لها تأثير كبير على عقول الناس في كل بلد. لهذا السبب يستخدمها المعلنون للترويج لمبيعاتهم وكسب المزيد من الأرباح.
- (b) وسائل الإعلام لها تأثير كبير على عقول الناس في كل مكان. لهذا السبب يستخدمها المعلنون للترويج لمبيعاتهم وكسب أرباح مضاعفة.
- (c) وسائل الإعلام لها تأثير كبير على عقول الناس في كل مكان. لهذا السبب يستخدمها المعلنون للترويج لمبيعاتهم وكسب القليل من الأرباح.
- (d) وسائل الإعلام لها تأثير كبير على عقول الناس في كل مكان. لهذا السبب يستخدمها المعلنون للترويج لمبيعاتهم وكسب المزيد من العملاء.

**(B) Choose the correct English translation:**

- تؤثر الطفولة على شخصية الإنسان على امتداد حياته وتشكل الخطوط العريضة لهويته لذلك يجب إعطاؤها الأهمية اللازمة.

- ☐ a) Childhood affects a person's personality throughout his life and forms the outlines of his identity, so it must be given the necessary importance.
- b) Childhood helps a person's culture throughout his life and forms the outlines of his identity, so it must be given the necessary importance.
- c) Childhood affects a person's feelings throughout his life and forms the outlines of his identity, so it must be given the necessary importance.
- d) Children affects a person's personality throughout his life and forms the outlines of his identity, so it must be given more importance.

**3 Writing:****1. Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words:**

To your friend Sara, telling her about the advantages and disadvantages of using the media.  
Your name is Ola. Your email address is Ola\_2000@yahoo.com. Sara's email address is saraqueen@gmail.com.

**2. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:**  
**"The value of work in society"**

# The Play

# King Lear

## Key Vocabulary

## المفردات الرئيسية

authority	سلطة	fall apart	يتداعى / ينهار	stage	خشبة المسرح
battle	معركة	flat	مسطح / مستو	starve	يحو
betray	يخون	invade	يغزو	steep	مائل / منحدر
cage	قفص	jewel	جوهرة	suffer	يعانى
camp	معسكر	judge	قاض	take out	يخرج
carriage	عربة	kneel	يركع	tear up	يقطع / يمزق
cliff	منحدر صخري	law	قانون	traitor	خائن
creep up on	يرتفع على	liar	كاذب	trick	يخدع
cure	يعالج	murderer	قاتل	trumpet	نقير / بوق
deceive	يخدع	prisoner	سجين	trust	يفق / يثق
drum	طبل	prove	يثبت	valuable	قيم / ثمين
edge	حافة / طرف	recognise	يتعرف على		
enemy	عدو	resign	يستقيل	war	حرب
equal	مكافئ / مساو	revenge	ثأر / انتقام		

## Phrases & Expressions

## التعبيرات و حروف الجر

get rid of	يتخلص من	My blood runs cold.	دمى يبرد (تعبير عن الخوف).	talk sense and nonsense	يتحدث بمزيج من الحكمة والكلام الفارغ
hungry for power	جائع (متحفن) للسلطة	My heart is heavy.	أنا قلبي حزين.	The wheel has come full circle.	لقد دارت العجلة دورة كاملة (تغيرت الأمور للعكس).
I am tempted to	أنا مغوى بـ	take control of	يسيطر على	This is a bitter pill to swallow.	إنه دواء مر لا يتلذذ (تعبير عن الاختيار الصعب).
I'm on a wheel of fire.	أنا على عجلة من أمرى (أتعذب).	take power	يتنزع السلطة		
let go of	يترك	take revenge for	ينتقم لـ		



## Summary

Edmund betrays Gloucester and shows Cornwall a letter demonstrating مدلل على Gloucester's treason خيانة. Cornwall asks for revenge, and Edmund is made Duke of Gloucester.

Gloucester, Lear, Kent, and the Fool take shelter يحتضون as he enters. He overhears a plot مؤامرة to kill the King. Gloucester tells Kent to take Lear to Dover. Kent and the Fool try to carry the King to the carriage waiting outside and escape.

Cornwall sends his servant to arrest Gloucester. He sends Goneril a note to the Duke of Albany. He sends Edmund away so he won't have to witness يشهد the punishment of his father. Gloucester is captured. Cornwall removes Gloucester's eye. Gloucester's servant steps in and wounds Cornwall. Regan kills the servant. Cornwall removes the other eye. Gloucester calls for Edmund's help. Regan informs Gloucester that it is Edmund who has betrayed him. Gloucester is ordered to smell his way to Dover.

Edgar, in disguise متنكر, sees his blinded father being led by an old man. Gloucester yearns يرنو to be with his son, Edgar. He also asks the old man to bring clothes to the beggar who is really Edgar, Gloucester's son. Edgar asks about the bleeding in Gloucester's eyes. Edgar does not reveal himself. Gloucester requests to be led to the cliffs at Dover.

Edmund and Goneril arrive outside Goneril's palace. They meet Oswald, and Goneril asks him about her husband. Goneril discovers that her husband, the Duke of Albany, is not pleased with his wife's actions. Albany expresses his displeasure with Goneril and Regan, as they were unkind to their father. A messenger arrives to spread news about Cornwall. Cornwall dies from his stab wound. Goneril doesn't want Edmund to help her sister, Regan. Albany asks the messenger some questions about Edmund and knows that he was travelling with his wife, Goneril when his father was punished and that he betrayed his own father, Gloucester.

In the French camp near Dover, Kent enters with a gentleman. Kent learns of Cordelia's extreme disappointment إحباط over the treatment of her father. Lear has arrived in Dover but is ashamed خجلان of his treatment of Cordelia and does not seek her. The armies of Cornwall and Albany are on the march.

In the French camp near Dover, Cordelia talks to a doctor and some soldiers. Cordelia orders the soldiers to find her father. The doctor says that King Lear can be cured and that he needs some rest. The British army approaches يقترب. Cordelia gets her troops ready for battle. At Gloucester's castle, Regan suspects Goneril's relation with Edmund. She offers a reward to Oswald if he can find and kill Gloucester.

Edgar, in disguise, leads Gloucester, telling him they have arrived at the Cliffs of Dover. Gloucester gives Edgar a purse with a valuable jewel inside it and asks him to let go of his hand. Gloucester wishes that Edgar was alive and intends to kill himself. He falls to the ground believing that it is very high, which isn't true. Edgar, now a gentleman, wakes Gloucester up and informs him that he survived his fall from the cliffs.



As Edgar prepares to lead Gloucester to safety, Oswald enters. When he sees Gloucester, Oswald exclaims that Gloucester is the prize he is looking for and that he will kill the old man. Edgar interferes; the confrontation ends in a fight, and Oswald is killed. The dying man asks Edgar to take his letters of both Goneril and Regan to Edmund. Edgar makes his father rest, finds the letters in Oswald's pocket, and reads them.

In the French camp, Cordelia is expressing her gratitude to Kent for the services he has tendered. Within moments, a sleeping Lear is brought into the tent, where Cordelia welcomes him with characteristic gentleness. As his senses return, the confused King asks if he is in France, and Kent assures Lear that he is in his own kingdom. Lear, Cordelia, and the doctor exit, leaving Kent and a gentleman to discuss the most recent military developments.

After the fight, Regan asks Edmund some questions about his relationship with Goneril. He assures her that he won't help Goneril. Goneril and Albany enter with troops. Edmund is now leading Cornwall's troops. Albany praises Edmund's courage, which helped to beat the French army.

Goneril and Regan argue over Edmund. Edgar approaches Albany and gives him the letter outlining the plot against Albany's life. Edmund returns. Everyone leaves. Edmund informs the audience that he will show no mercy to Lear or Cordelia, his prisoners.

In the British camp near Dover, Lear and Cordelia are led in as prisoners, with Edmund as their jailer. As the two are led off to prison, Edmund gives a note to an officer and orders that the note's instructions be followed immediately.

Albany, Goneril, and Regan join Edmund. Albany demands that the two prisoners be turned over to him. Edmund refuses, saying that Lear and Cordelia will be held in safekeeping so that their presence does not divide the soldiers' loyalty. Albany orders Edmund and Goneril to be arrested for treason.

Edgar enters, and the brothers begin to fight, and Edmund falls. When Goneril announces that Edmund has been betrayed, Albany reveals the letter, which she does not deny. Instead, Goneril flees. Edmund admits that the charges against him are truthful. Edgar reveals his identity and tells his brother of recent events, including the news that after disclosing his identity to his father, Gloucester's heart proved too weak to survive the news. Edmund also reports that Kent has been in disguise, having been close enough to help his King during the recent period.

A gentleman enters with news that Goneril has killed herself, but not before poisoning Regan, who is also dead. Albany quickly orders an officer to save them, but it is too late. Lear enters with a dead Cordelia in his arms.

Albany recognises that Lear is King and will be served by his loyal subjects, but within moments, the King dies, his body covering that of his youngest daughter. Albany informs Kent and Edgar that they must now rule the kingdom together, but Kent replies that he will soon leave the world to join his master. Edgar, wearing the crown, exits with other people, and the play ends.

## Questions & Answers

1. In your opinion, was Edmund successful in his plot against his father? Why?

برأيك، هل نجح إدموند في مؤامركه ضد والده؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, he was. He made Cornwall angry about Gloucester and promised to make him the next Duke.

2. Do you think that Cornwall is right to trust Edmund? Why?

هل تعتقد أن كورنوال كان محقاً في أن يثق بإدموند؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't think so. He betrayed his own father in order to get his place.

3. Why do you think Gloucester and Kent remained loyal to the King?

لماذا تعتقد أن جلوستر وكينت ظلّا مخلصين للملك؟

- I think they loved their King and thought that he needed help.

4. Edmund left the place where his father was supposed to be punished. What does this show about him?

غادر إدموند المكان الذي كان من المفترض أن يعاقب فيه والده. ماذا يظهر هذا عنه؟

- It shows that he is a coward to let Cornwall punish his own father without even trying to defend him.

5. Do you think that Cornwall was right to humiliate and punish Gloucester for helping the King?

هل تعتقد أن كورنوال كان محقاً في إذلال ومعاذرة جلوستر لمساعدة الملك؟

- No, I don't think so. He did nothing wrong when he helped the King. Cornwall and Regan were even staying in Gloucester's palace.

6. Although he is old and weak, Gloucester is a brave man. Do you agree? Why?

على الرغم من كبر سنه وضعفه، فإن جلوستر كان رجلاً شجاعاً. هل توافق؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I agree. He confronted Regan and Cornwall, accusing them of being cruel to the King.

7. In your opinion, was the servant right to ask Cornwall to stop hurting Gloucester? Why?

في رأيك، هل كان الخادم على حق في مطالبة كورنوال بالتوقف عن إيذاء جلوستر؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, he was right. He should have defended the old man against the violent attack of Cornwall.

8. Do you think that Gloucester still believes that his son, Edgar, has been cruel to him? Why?

هل تعتقد أن جلوستر مازال يعتقد أن ابنه إدجار كان قاسياً معه؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't think so. He must have understood that Edmund had tricked him and lied to him concerning his brother.

9. If you were Edgar, would you tell your father the truth as soon as you saw him? Why?

لو كنت مكان إدجار، هل ستخبر والدك بالحقيقة بمجرد أن تراه؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I would. As a loving son, he should have told him the truth and so his father would find some relief.

10. "All men should help each other. The rich especially should help the poor." What does this sentence show about Gloucester?

"يجب على جميع الناس أن يساعدوا بعضهم البعض. وعلى الأغنياء بشكل خاص أن يساعدوا الفقراء." ماذا تظهر هذه الجملة عن جلوستر؟

- This shows that he is a good man who cares for the poor.

11. Why do you think Goneril wanted to use Edmund to help her although she was married?

لماذا تعتقد أن جونيрил أرادت استخدام إدموند لمساعدتها رغم أنها كانت متزوجة؟

- I think that she is an evil woman. Besides, her husband seemed to be angry and frightened about her evil deeds and treatment to her father.

12. If you were Albany, would you feel frightened of Goneril? Why?

لو كنت مكان ألباني، هل ستشعر بالخوف من جونيрил؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I would. She treated her father, who gave her half of his kingdom, so badly and cruelly.

13. Which news seemed more important for Albany, Cornwall's death or Gloucester's injury?

ما هي الأخبار التي بدت أكثر أهمية لألباني، وفاة كورنوال أو إصابة جلوستر؟

- I think that he cared only for Gloucester who was a good man who helped the King.

**14. Cordelia seemed very sad when she heard about her sisters' bad behaviour with their father. What does this show about her?**

بدت كورديليا حزينة جدًا عندما سمعت عن سلوك أخواتها السيئ مع والدهما. ماذا يظهر هذا عنها؟

- It shows that she is a kind daughter who loves and cares for her father although he has sent her away and treated her unwell.

**15. Although Cordelia returned to save her father, the French army used this badly. Do you agree? Why?**

على الرغم من أن كورديليا عادت بالفعل لإنقاذ والدها، إلا أن الجيش الفرنسي استخدم ذلك بشكل سيئ. هل توافق؟ لماذا؟

- Yes. The French army, as Albany declared, came to invade England.

**16. Why do you think Regan didn't force Oswald to show her Goneril's letter to Edmund?**

لماذا تعتقد أن ريجان لم تجبر أوزوالد على إظهار رسالة جونيрил إلى إدموند؟

- Maybe, she became weak after her husband had died. Maybe, she wanted his help to deliver her letter to Edmund.

**17. Do you think that Edgar's trick for his father could cure his madness? Why?**

هل تعتقد أن خدعة إدجار لوالده يمكن أن تعالج جنونه؟ لماذا؟

- Yes. It seemed so. Gloucester didn't try to kill himself after the incident of the cliff.

**18. Why do think Edgar was sad when he met the King in the countryside near Dover?**

لماذا كان إدجار حزينًا عندما التقى بالملك في الريف بالقرب من دوفر؟

- The King looked mad and wasn't aware of what was happening around him. As he loved the King, he was sad.

**19. Oswald is a mean and greedy person. Do you agree? Give reasons for your answer.**

أوزوالد شخص بخيل وجشع. هل توافق؟ أعط أسباب إجابتك.

- Yes, I agree. He wanted to kill Gloucester, the blind man, only to get a reward.

**20. Compared to Edmund, Edgar was a loyal son who was ready to sacrifice his life for his father. Do you agree? Why?**

بالمقارنة مع إدموند، كان إدجار ابنًا مخلصًا مستعدًا للتضحية بحياته من أجل والده. هل توافق؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I agree. Whereas Edmund left the place where his father was punished, Edgar was ready to sacrifice his life to protect his father when he fought Oswald.

**21. The letters which Oswald had were a gift for Edgar to help him revenge the harm that Edmund had caused him. Do you agree? Why?**

الرسائل التي أرسلها أوزوالد كانت هدية لإدجار لمساعدته على الانتقام من الأذى الذي سببه له إدموند؟ هل توافق؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I agree. The letters which Oswald had proved that Goneril was conspiring with Edmund against her husband. This would make Albany help him against Edmund.

**22. Do you think that the King didn't recognise Cordelia or he was ashamed to meet her? Why?**

هل تعتقد أن الملك لم يتعرف على كورديليا أم أنه خجل من مقابلتها؟ لماذا؟

- I think that he was ashamed. She was very kind to him although he had been cruel to her when he sent her away to France.

**23. "I'll never be cruel to you, father." What does this show about Cordelia?**

«لن أكون قاسيةً معك أبدًا يا أبي.» ماذا يظهر هذا عن كورديليا؟

- It shows that she was the best of the three daughters as she treated her father very kindly, trying to make up for her sisters' bad treatment.

**24. Do you think that Albany worked with Edmund because he changed his mind about him? Why?**

هل تعتقد أن ألباني عمل مع إدموند لأنه غير رأيه عنه؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't think so. He had to work with Edmund to fight the French army

**25. "I'd prefer to go to prison. There we can be together." What does this show about the King?**

«أفضل الذهاب إلى السجن. هناك يمكننا أن نكون معًا.» ماذا يظهر هذا عن الملك؟

- It shows that King Lear regretted his past behaviour with Cordelia and wanted to make up for her

**26. Why do you think Edmund sent Cordelia and the King to prison without telling Albany?**

لماذا تعتقد أن إدموند أرسل كورديليا والملك إلى السجن دون إخبار ألباني؟

- I think that he wanted to get rid of them in order to reach his ambition to rule over the kingdom.



27. "You're a good soldier, but you aren't my equal." Is Albany right to say this? Why?

«أنت جندي جيد، ولكنك لست على قدم المساواة.» فهل ألباني على حق في قوله هذا؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I think so. Edmund is younger and of less rank than Albany, so he isn't his equal.

28. Should Edgar fight Edmund, his brother? Why?

هل يجب على إدجار أن يحارب إدموند أخاه؟ لماذا؟

- I think he shouldn't. Although Edmund was very mean to him, brothers shouldn't fight each other.

29. Do you think that Albany was sad to hear about his wife's death? Why?

هل تعتقد أن ألباني كان حزينًا لسماع خبر وفاة زوجته؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't think so. He described her as an evil woman. Besides, Edgar gave him the letter which proved that she was conspiring with Edmund.

30. Why do you think Edmund wanted to know the identity of the man who fought him before he died?

لماذا تعتقد أن إدموند أراد معرفة هوية الرجل الذي حاربه قبل وفاته؟

- I think he wanted to know if the man who killed him was a commoner or a great man. It was not honourable for a great man to be killed by a commoner.

31. In your opinion, why did Goneril kill herself?

في رأيك، لماذا قتلت جونيрил نفسها؟

- I think that she couldn't face her husband and other people who knew about all her evil actions.

32. Why do you think Albany didn't rule the kingdom himself?

لماذا تعتقد أن ألباني لم يحكم المملكة بنفسه؟

- Maybe, he didn't have the legal right and position. Maybe, he didn't want to suffer the same burdens as King Lear.

33. If you were Edgar, would you easily agree to rule the kingdom? Why?

لو كنت مكان إدجار، هل ستوافق بسهولة على حكم المملكة؟ لماذا؟

- No, I wouldn't. Ruling over a kingdom must be a difficult thing to do.

34. Do you think King Lear cared about his oldest daughters' death? Why?

هل تعتقد أن الملك لير اهتم بوفاته بتتيه الكبريين؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't think so. They were so cruel to him and led him to be mad.

35. What's your opinion of the end of the play?

ما هو رأيك بنهاية المسرحية؟

- I think it is a dramatic end. I was sad to see good people such as King Lear, Gloucester and Cordelia die.

36. Can you think of a different end of the play?

هل يمكنك التفكير في نهاية مختلفة للمسرحية؟

- I think it would be as follows: King Lear and Cordelia are saved. Albany gives his power back to King Lear and he lives happily with Cordelia for the rest of his life.

37. Who is your favourite character in the play? Explain why.

من هي شخصيتك المفضلة في المسرحية؟ اشرح السبب.

- My favourite character is Cordelia. She loved and cared for her father although he was cruel to her. She even didn't care to suffer if her father was well.

38. Who is your least favourite character in the play? Explain why.

من هي شخصيتك الأقل تفضيلاً في المسرحية؟ اشرح السبب.

- My least favourite character is Albany. He was a passive and hesitating person, although he wasn't as bad as his wife and other members of the royal family.

39. Did you expect such a dramatic end to the play? Why / Why not?

هل كنت تتوقع مثل هذه النهاية الدرامية للمسرحية؟ لماذا / لماذا لا؟

- No, I didn't. I expected that Goneril and Regan would have a bad end; I didn't expect to see so many deaths.

40. What lessons does the play teach us?

ما هي الدروس التي تعلمنا إياها المسرحية؟

- It teaches us that we shouldn't judge people by their appearance or their speeches. Actions speak louder than words.

### A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

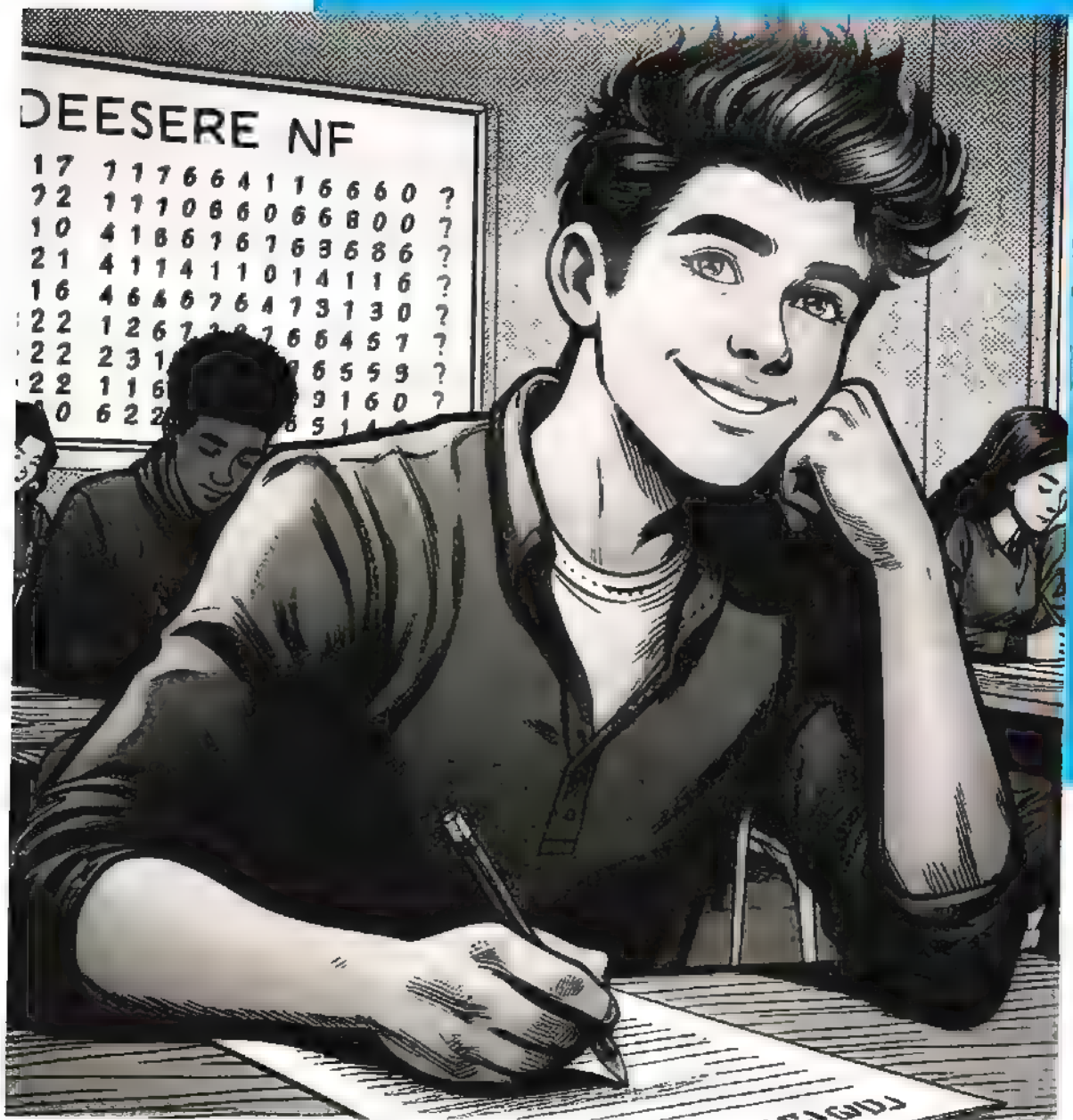
- My sister doesn't like going to the zoo because she doesn't like seeing animals in .....  
☐ a) ines                      ☐ b) forests                      ☐ c) cages                      ☐ d) protection
- The Russian player is the best. He has no ..... at chess.  
☐ a) spy                      ☐ b) friend                      ☐ c) enemy                      ☐ d) equal
- Drug users are often ..... trying to cover up their addiction.  
☐ a) liars                      ☐ b) assistants                      ☐ c) sellers                      ☐ d) noblemen
- The politician was forced to ..... his position as a result of the scandal.  
☐ a) employ                      ☐ b) resign                      ☐ c) qualify                      ☐ d) restart
- Experts say that most road accident victims ..... from shock.  
☐ a) suffer                      ☐ b) differ                      ☐ c) treat                      ☐ d) heal
- Thousands of people will ..... if food doesn't reach the city, which is at war.  
☐ a) feed                      ☐ b) defy                      ☐ c) reply                      ☐ d) starve
- Pretending he doesn't remember is an old ..... of my friend.  
☐ a) rehearse                      ☐ b) track                      ☐ c) trick                      ☐ d) reverse
- By ....., seat belts must be worn by all passengers.  
☐ a) draw                      ☐ b) law                      ☐ c) habit                      ☐ d) accident
- Mary is very loyal and would never ..... a friend.  
☐ a) employ                      ☐ b) betray                      ☐ c) keep                      ☐ d) have
- The young Prince is seeking ..... for the murder of his father, the King.  
☐ a) attack                      ☐ b) truce                      ☐ c) revenge                      ☐ d) treaty
- It is believed that terrorism is the main ..... of progress in many world countries.  
☐ a) motive                      ☐ b) assistant                      ☐ c) friend                      ☐ d) enemy
- The young lady considers the trial as ..... revenge on her attacker.  
☐ a) taking                      ☐ b) asking                      ☐ c) replying                      ☐ d) offering
- The car agency was accused of ..... the customer about the condition of the car.  
☐ a) informing                      ☐ b) approaching                      ☐ c) deceiving                      ☐ d) clearing
- Cornwall made Gloucester ..... before him.  
☐ a) fight                      ☐ b) kneel                      ☐ c) run                      ☐ d) race
- Due to the medical scientific progress, many formerly dangerous diseases can now be .....  
☐ a) cured                      ☐ b) healed                      ☐ c) damaged                      ☐ d) continued

### B) Answer the following questions:

- If you were Gloucester, how would you feel when Cornwall and Regan told you about Edmund's plot?
- In your opinion, how else could Edmund be punished for his crimes?
- Why do you think Cornwall made Gloucester kneel before him?
- If you were Edgar, would you be sad to cause Edmund to die? Why?
- Do you agree with Albany when he asked Kent and Edgar to rule over the kingdom? Why?
- Gloucester had much suffering to prove his loyalty to the King. Do you agree? Why?
- Do you think it was a good idea that Lear divided his kingdom between his two daughters? Why?
- In your opinion, who is the most evil character in the play? Give reasons for your answer.
- What are the main moral lessons in King Lear?
- What message do you think the final part of the play gives us?



# Part 4 Final Tests



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Climate change has become the most important ..... that faces the world nowadays.  
☐ a) device                      ☐ b) crime                      ☐ c) trace                      ☐ d) issue
2. Our trip to Dahab was absolutely .....; we decided that we will go there every summer.  
☐ a) terrible                      ☐ b) reasonable                      ☐ c) brilliant                      ☐ d) sensitive
3. Freud is considered a pioneer in the field of ..... theories and treating many mental illnesses.  
☐ a) heart                      ☐ b) psychological                      ☐ c) medicine                      ☐ d) biological
4. It isn't allowed to hold a driving licence before reaching the age of .....  
☐ a) majority                      ☐ b) minority                      ☐ c) acceptance                      ☐ d) qualification
5. Samy had to ..... a test on language before the interview for the job.  
☐ a) involve                      ☐ b) give                      ☐ c) make                      ☐ d) do
6. It can annoy me if I don't have time to do exercises. The adjective of the verb "annoy" is .....  
☐ a) annoys                      ☐ b) annoyance                      ☐ c) annoyed                      ☐ d) annoying y
7. She decided to study ..... to experience a different culture and improve her language skills.  
☐ a) locally                      ☐ b) regionally                      ☐ c) nearby                      ☐ d) abroad
8. He often helps other people. I ..... he is a good man.  
☐ a) think                      ☐ b) am thinking  
☐ c) have been thinking                      ☐ d) had been thinking
9. Next April, Hany and Ola ..... for 20 years.  
☐ a) are going to marry                      ☐ b) will have to marry  
☐ c) will marry                      ☐ d) will have been married
10. Which one of the following is grammatically correct?  
☐ a) He must be mistaken if he believes in magic, isn't he?  
☐ b) He must be mistaken if he believes in magic, mustn't he?  
☐ c) He must be mistaken if he believes in magic, needn't he?  
☐ d) He must be mistaken if he believes in magic, can't he?
11. The bed ..... has no mattress.  
☐ a) sleep on                      ☐ b) I sleep on it                      ☐ c) which I sleep on it                      ☐ d) which sleep
12. Well done, Hamdy! ..... a clever boy!  
☐ a) Who                      ☐ b) Which                      ☐ c) How                      ☐ d) What
13. She was exhausted because she ..... 200 metres.  
☐ a) is swimming                      ☐ b) has swum  
☐ c) had swum                      ☐ d) had been swimming

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Alternative medicine is not new. It is accepted that it predates conventional medicine and it is still used by many people all over the world. I am unconvinced that it is dangerous and feel that both alternative and conventional medicine can be useful.

There are several reasons why the conventional medical community is often dismissive of alternatives. Firstly, there has been little scientific research into such medicine, so there is a scarcity of evidence to support the claims of their supporters. Furthermore, people often try such treatment because of recommendations from friends and therefore come to the therapist with a very **positive** attitude, which may be part of the reason for the cure. Moreover, these therapies are usually only useful for long-term, chronic conditions. Acute medical problems, such as accidental injuries, often require more conventional methods.

On the other hand, there remain strong arguments for the use of alternatives. Despite the lack of scientific proof, there is a lot of anecdotal evidence to suggest that these therapies work. In addition, far from being dangerous, they often have few or no side effects, so the worst outcome would be no change. One of the strongest arguments for the effectiveness of alternative therapies in the West is that, whilst conventional medicine is available without charge, many people are prepared to pay considerable sums for alternatives. If they were totally unhelpful, it would be surprising if this continued.

I strongly believe that conventional medicine and alternative therapies can and should coexist. They have different strengths and can both be used effectively to target particular medical problems. The best situation would be for alternative therapies to be used to support and complement conventional medicine.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 14. People who approve of alternative medicine don't .....**
- ☐ a) have enough evidence that it's better than conventional medicine
  - ☐ b) know what conventional medicine is
  - ☐ c) like people who approve of conventional medicine
  - ☐ d) use it unless doctors recommend it
- 15. One of the following sentences is true: .....**
- ☐ a) Conventional medicine preceded alternative medicine
  - ☐ b) Scientific research concentrated much on alternative medicine
  - ☐ c) Alternative medicine is useful for long-term illnesses
  - ☐ d) Conventional medicine has no side effects
- 16. One word of the following gives the synonym of the word "positive": .....**
- ☐ a) useless
  - ☐ b) negative
  - ☐ c) pessimistic
  - ☐ d) optimistic
- 17. The writer of the article thinks that .....**
- ☐ a) conventional medicine is better than alternative medicine
  - ☐ b) alternative medicine is better than conventional medicine
  - ☐ c) it is dangerous to use alternative medicine
  - ☐ d) alternative medicine and conventional medicine can both be used effectively
- 18. The suitable title to the passage is .....**
- ☐ a) Alternative medicine and conventional medicine
  - ☐ b) The advantages of alternative medicine
  - ☐ c) The advantages of conventional medicine
  - ☐ d) The advantages and disadvantages of alternative medicine
- 19. Alternative medicine isn't useful for acute medical problems as .....**
- ☐ a) they are expensive
  - ☐ b) they need urgent treatment that takes into effect in a short time
  - ☐ c) they aren't found in many places
  - ☐ d) people don't approve of them



20. People often try alternative treatment because of recommendations from .....  
a) hospitals                      b) doctors                      c) friends                      d) therapists

21. Doctors don't recommend alternative medicine as .....  
a) alternative medicine is very old  
b) they don't have enough evidence of its benefit  
c) alternative medicine has a lot of disadvantages  
d) patients don't approve of it

22. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- People travel to foreign countries believing that they will see different culture from their countries. However, they must consider the social benefit they will have.

- a) يسافر الناس إلى دول أجنبية معتقدين أنهم سيشاهدون ثقافة مختلفة عن بلدانهم. ومع ذلك، يجب عليهم التفكير في المنفعة الاجتماعية التي سيحصلون عليها.
- b) يسافر الناس إلى دول أجنبية معتقدين أنهم سيشاهدون ثقافة مختلفة عن بلدانهم. ومع ذلك، لا يجب عليهم التفكير في المنفعة الاجتماعية التي سيحصلون عليها.
- c) يسافر الناس إلى دول عربية معتقدين أنهم سيشاهدون ثقافة مختلفة عن بلدانهم. ومع ذلك، يجب عليهم التفكير في المنفعة الاجتماعية التي سيحصلون عليها.
- d) يسافر الناس إلى دول أجنبية معتقدين أنهم سيشاهدون آثارًا مختلفة عن بلدانهم. ومع ذلك، يجب عليهم التفكير في المنفعة الاجتماعية التي سيحصلون عليها.

23. Choose the correct English translation:

- بالرغم من أنها لا تتلقى الكثير من الدعم إلا أن الرياضات الفردية المصرية مثل الإسكواش والكاراتيه والتايكويديو تحقق إنجازات كبيرة. فيجب على الدولة أن تدعم هذه الرياضات لتحقيق مزيدًا من النجاح.

- a) Although Egyptian individual sports such as squash, karate and taekwondo did not receive much support, they are achieving great success. The state must support these sports to achieve more success.
- b) Although Egyptian individual sports such as squash, karate and taekwondo do not receive much help, they are achieving great success. The state must support these sports to achieve more success.
- c) Although Egyptian individual sports such as squash, karate and taekwondo do not receive much support, they are achieving small success. The state must support these sports to achieve more success.
- d) Although Egyptian individual sports such as squash, karate and taekwondo do not receive much support, they are achieving great success. The state must support these sports to achieve more success.

24. Answer the following questions: (The Play)

King Lear's foolish decision to divide his kingdom led to destruction. Do you agree? Why?

1. If you were Kent, would you remain loyal to the King till the end? Why?

3. Oswald was punished for his greed and serving his evil mistress. Do you agree? Why?

25. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic:  
Is cyberbullying as big a problem as in-person bullying?

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The actor gave a ..... speech on receiving the prize at the cinema festival.  
☐ a) sad                      b) passionate                      c) national                      d) cruel
2. A/An ..... is someone who reveals secrets of his own company or country to the enemies.  
☐ a) hero                      b) ambassador                      c) traitor                      d) believer
3. My parents seemed satisfied with my ..... at school saying that it is steady.  
☐ a) progress                      b) reduction                      c) abortion                      d) failure
4. The book can be read with ..... by anyone who wants to understand how computer systems work.  
☐ a) placement                      b) loss                      c) prohibit                      d) profit
5. The head teacher reminds us that we all have to ..... in mind that it is necessary to behave politely with our teachers.  
☐ a) keep                      b) deny                      c) release                      d) relieve
6. It is important to emphasise this point. The antonym of the verb "emphasise" is .....  
☐ a) assert                      b) ignore                      c) guarantee                      d) ensure
7. The store offers high-quality products at ..... prices that suit most budgets.  
☐ a) expensive                      b) affordable                      c) luxurious                      d) unreasonable
8. Is that Bassem over there? He ..... old and tired. Is he sick?  
☐ a) looks                      b) has looked  
☐ c) looked                      d) has been looking
9. The film "Matrix II" was ..... as interesting as "Matrix I".  
☐ a) far                      b) slightly                      c) almost                      d) more
10. They ..... a lot of trouble before they finally succeeded.  
☐ a) were having                      b) had had                      c) have                      d) have had
11. The car that we were in had GPS, but the man ..... was driving didn't know.  
☐ a) whom                      b) who                      c) whose                      d) what
12. During my illness, I ..... the medicine every morning and evening.  
☐ a) was given                      b) had been given                      c) was giving                      d) gave
13. The students ..... their exam results next week.  
☐ a) will be given                      b) are giving  
☐ c) will have been given                      d) may give



**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Litterbugs are people who love to litter around. Litterbugs are also those who do not take the responsibility or play their role in society to take care of the environment. Why are they litterbugs? Litterbugs are the persons who have lack of awareness, not bothered about the environment and too lazy just to walk a few steps to the trash can. What are the effects of litterbugs? One of the major effects is that it will destroy the image of our beautiful country which eventually affects the tourism of our country.

Are you a litterbug? Do you chew gum in the streets? Do you eat on the metro? Have you ever painted graffiti on walls? Are you a jaywalker? If you answered 'yes' to any of these questions, then be careful when you visit Singapore. There's a chance to be stopped and heavily fined! But if you like clean and safe streets, an interesting culture, then Singapore could be the perfect destination for your next holiday. Singapore is one of the world's richest cities. It is almost crime-free and spotless, steel skyscrapers, shopping malls, top fashion houses, colourful local markets, discount shops for bargain hunters, even air-conditioned walkways are all part of the magic of Singapore.

The majority of Singaporeans are of Chinese origin, but there are ethnic groups from India, Malaysia, Indonesia and Thailand living there. It is not surprising that the island has many interesting districts, calligraphers and fortune-tellers can be found in Chinatown. Little India has spices, silverware, brassware and jasmine garlands. Malay villages display the traditional lifestyle of Malays and their arts and crafts, such as batik painting and kite-making.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**14. Most Singaporeans are of ..... origin.**

- ☐ a) Indian                      b) Thai                      c) European                      d) Chinese

**15. Singapore is almost .....**

- ☐ a) free                      b) shop-free                      c) crime-free                      d) tax-free

**16. The law in Singapore fines those who .....**

- a) like clean and safe streets                      b) throw garbage in the streets  
c) visit the country                      d) speak loudly to each other

**17. The underlined words "the island" refer to .....**

- ☐ a) Singapore                      b) India                      c) Malaysia                      d) Chinese

**18. As Singapore is crime-free and spotless, .....**

- ☐ a) shopkeepers keep cool                      b) students study quietly  
c) sports are everywhere                      d) thieves have much free time

**19. According to the passage, litterbugs are those who .....**

- ☐ a) sleep early                      b) don't produce anything  
c) are careless and destroy the country                      d) produce a lot of rubbish

**20. According to the passage, ..... is greatly affected by litterbugs who destroy the image of our beautiful country.**

- ☐ a) tourism                      b) industry                      c) income                      d) education

**21. The antonym of the word "majority" is .....**

- a) seniority                      b) priority                      c) popularity                      d) minority

## 22. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Facing a common enemy of all humanity, such as COVID-19, is supposed to lead to peace and cooperation in the world. Wars and disputes may eventually end humanity itself.

- (a) من المفترض أن تؤدي مواجهة عدو مشترك للبشرية جمعاء مثل كوفيد ١٩ إلى السلام والتعاون في العالم. الحروب والنزاعات قد تقضي في النهاية على الإنسانية نفسها.
- (b) من المفترض أن تؤدي مواجهة عدو مشترك للبشرية جمعاء مثل كوفيد ١٩ إلى السلام والاتحاد في العالم. الحروب والنزاعات قد تقضي في النهاية على الإنسانية نفسها.
- (c) من المفترض أن تؤدي مواجهة عدو مشترك للبشرية جمعاء مثل كوفيد ١٩ إلى السلام والتعاون في العالم. الحروب والنزاعات قد تقضي في النهاية على الإنسان نفسه.
- (d) من المعروف أن تؤدي مواجهة عدو مشترك للبشرية جمعاء مثل كوفيد ١٩ إلى السلام والتعاون في العالم. الحروب والنزاعات قد تقضي في النهاية على الإنسانية نفسها.

## 23. Choose the correct English translation:

- يتطلب الحفاظ على البيئة جهودًا دولية كبيرة يتم تنظيمها عن طريق الأمم المتحدة. وذلك لأهمية تعاون الدول المتقدمة صناعيًا في خفض انبعاثات الكربون للحفاظ على الكوكب.

- a) Preserving the environment requires great national efforts organised by the United Nations. This is due to the importance of industrially developed countries cooperating to reduce carbon emissions and preserve the planet.
- b) Preserving the environment required great international efforts organised by the United Nations. This is due to the importance of industrially developed countries cooperating to reduce carbon emissions and preserve the planet.
- c) Preserving the environment requires great international efforts organised by the United Nations. This is due to the importance of industrially developing countries cooperating to reduce carbon emissions and preserve the planet.
- d) Preserving the environment requires great international efforts organised by the United Nations. This is due to the importance of industrially developed countries cooperating to reduce carbon emissions and preserve the planet.

## 24. Answer the following questions: (The Play)

1. In your opinion, was it right that Albany decided to give power back to the King despite his ill mental health? Why?

2. Greed for power is the main reason for all crimes in the play. Do you agree? Give reasons for your answer.

3. Do you think that Edgar should have told Edmund his identity before the fight? Why?

## 25. Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words:

You would like to do a course in English. You write to the British Council to ask about the dates and cost of English courses. Your name is Wafaa and your email address is wafaa100@yahoo.com. Write to: services@britishcouncil.com

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The old secretary was fired because she revealed some of the office ..... to opponent businessmen.  
a) secrets                      b) rules                      c) talents                      d) products
- Although the new ..... have a lot of new facilities, they can't achieve the same successes their elders made.  
a) inventions                      b) developments                      c) generations                      d) discoverers
- Many of the sources of news on websites are ....., so we should be careful not to be deceived by them.  
a) reliable                      b) trusty                      c) unimportant                      d) unreliable
- The new engineers will work at the company's manufacturing ..... in 6th October City.  
a) ability                      b) facility                      c) asset                      d) outfit
- It is important to encourage environmental conservation and awareness. The synonym of the word "conservation" is .....  
a) preservation                      b) waste                      c) damage                      d) destruction
- While investigating the murder, police officers discovered new evidence almost by .....  
a) event                      b) fortune                      c) accident                      d) incident
- When the main road was closed, we had to find a/an ..... route to reach the city.  
a) permanent                      b) alternative                      c) complicated                      d) indirect
- By the end of the week, we ..... 30 new English words.  
a) will have learned                      b) will be learning                      c) will be learned                      d) are learning
- My brother has a ..... softer voice than anyone in the class.  
a) slight                      b) more                      c) farther                      d) slightly
- Magdy ..... that car for 5 years before he sold it.  
a) had been owning                      b) had owned  
c) was owning                      d) owns
- She was in grade 3 last year, ..... she?  
a) was                      b) won't                      c) didn't                      d) wasn't
- This is the story of a man ..... wife suddenly loses her memory.  
a) who                      b) who's                      c) whose                      d) whom
- Industrial goods are often produced ..... in developing countries.  
a) cheapest                      b) cheaply                      c) cheap                      d) more cheap

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Are you able to concentrate on a film from start to finish? If your answer is 'yes' that is good, but the reason you can do this may not only be your own ability. A study of films between 1930 and 2010 has shown how popular films have changed. The first big change is the length of the camera shot in the film. The average length of a camera shot is now shorter than it used to be. In the 1930s, it was about 12 seconds, but in 2010, it was just 2.5 seconds. The second change is also connected to the camera shots. It has been shown that filmmakers use a greater mix of shorter and longer camera shots than before. Another **obvious** change is the increase in the amount of action in films. Over the years, cameras have begun to move more in each scene and are less fixed in one place. The reason for this last change is lighter and more mobile cameras. The improvements in technology also offer one explanation for the final change discovered by the research about how bright each scene is. Digital cameras do not need such bright lights and so the scenes in films can now be a lot darker than they used to be. So why have these changes happened? The main reason is that technology has enabled film-making to change and improve. As viewers, we have gotten used to these changes. Now, we like these changes because the speed helps to make sure we are paying attention.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 14. The films we watch today .....**  
☐ a) are still the same as they used to be      b) are different compared to the past  
☐ c) will be very different in the future      d) are based on old technology
- 15. Researchers have found two differences .....**  
☐ a) related to the camera shots in films      b) related to how long the films are  
☐ c) related to the amount of action in scenes      d) related to the prices of tickets
- 16. What does the article say is the main reason for the changes? - .....**  
☐ a) It is difficult for us to concentrate for a long time  
☐ b) We do not watch as many films as we used to  
☐ c) Technology offers lots of new and exciting options  
☐ d) Film-makers are no longer efficient
- 17. The antonym of the word "obvious" is .....**  
☐ a) noticeable      b) understandable      c) boring      d) mysterious
- 18. The person's concentration on a film depends on .....**  
☐ a) the ability      b) the camera shots  
☐ c) the amount of action in films      d) all of the previous answers
- 19. Film-makers use .....**  
☐ a) shorter camera shots than before  
☐ b) longer camera shots than before  
☐ c) a mix of shorter and longer camera shots than before  
☐ d) no shots
- 20. As cameras have become lighter and more mobile, they .....**  
☐ a) are used by children      b) have begun to move more in each scene  
☐ c) are fixed in one place      d) have become cheaper
- 21. Digital cameras have enabled film-making to .....**  
☐ a) have bright scenes      b) have darker scenes  
☐ c) have action scenes      d) concentrate through watching



## 22. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Egypt's big transport projects will be a tremendous breakthrough in the Arab world. They will move us to the future generation of environmentally friendly means of transport.

- (a) ستكون مشاريع النقل الكبرى في مصر بمثابة إنجاز هائل في المجتمع العربي. سوف ينقلوننا إلى الجيل المستقبلي من وسائل النقل الصديقة للبيئة.
- (b) ستكون مشاريع النقل الكبرى في مصر بمثابة إنجاز هائل في العالم العربي. سوف ينقلوننا إلى الجيل المستقبلي من وسائل النقل الصديقة للبيئة.
- (c) ستكون مشاريع النقل الكبرى في مصر بمثابة إنجاز هائل في العالم العربي. سوف ينقلوننا إلى الجيل الحالي من وسائل النقل الصديقة للبيئة.
- (d) ستكون مشاريع النقل الكبرى في مصر بمثابة إنجاز هائل في العالم العربي. سوف ينقلوننا إلى الجيل المستقبلي من وسائل النقل الصديقة للبيئة.

## 23. Choose the correct English translation:

- تمنح الحكومة المصرية الشباب قروضاً بفوائد ميسرة لتنفيذ مشروعاتهم الصغيرة والمتوسطة. وهذا بالطبع يساعد على أن يصبحوا رواد أعمال يساهمون في التطور الاقتصادي لبلدهم.

- a) The Egyptian government gives young people loans with soft interest to apply their small and medium projects. This of course helps them to become entrepreneurs who contribute to the economic development of their country.
- b) The Egyptian government gives young people loans with soft interest to implement their small and medium projects. This of course helps them to become entrepreneurs who contributed to the economic development of their country.
- c) The Egyptian government gives young people loans with soft interest to implement their small and medium projects. This of course helps them to become entrepreneurs who contribute to the economic development of their company.
- d) The Egyptian government gives young people loans with soft interest to implement their small and medium projects. This of course helps them to become entrepreneurs who contribute to the economic development of their country.

## 24. Answer the following questions: (The Play)

1. Do you sympathise with Regan when Goneril poisoned her? Why?

2. If you were Gloucester, would you try to hide the truth about helping the King? Why?

3. Do you agree with Albany when he said that Edmund was not his equal? Why?

## 25. Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words:

To your friend Hagar, telling her about your plans for the future and about your visit to the National Museum of Culture. Your name is Aya. Your email address is aya\_egypt@yahoo.com. Hagar's email address is hogoo\_2010@gmail.com.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. More and more young men buy flats on compounds built on the ..... of big cities.  
☐ a) directions      b) suburbs      c) planners      d) routes
2. Ferial Ashraf and Giana Farouk's Olympic medals ..... more women to excel in sport.  
☐ a) reformed      b) intended      c) respired      d) inspired
3. Our professor of English Literature at the university had a Scottish ..... because he had studied at the University of Edinburgh.  
☐ a) note      b) accent      c) language      d) intonation
4. We needed to make up an attractive ..... to get John out of the house.  
☐ a) truth      b) outfit      c) accessory      d) device
5. My father had a significant influence on my life. The antonym of the adjective "significant" is .....  
☐ a) minor      b) bored      c) vital      d) essential
6. When I travelled to America, I was able to ..... in touch with my old friends through social media.  
☐ a) lose      b) keep      c) try      d) retreat
7. The tour package will ..... meals, transportation and guided tours.  
☐ a) exclude      b) contain      c) include      d) consist
8. They don't get on well. They .....  
☐ a) argue      b) 're always arguing      c) arguing      d) never argue
9. This time next week, I ..... the final match in Spain.  
☐ a) will watch      b) will have been watched  
     c) will be watching      d) watch
10. Your house is ..... more beautiful than mine.  
☐ a) bit      b) far      c) little      d) almost
11. Ola drives ..... than her sister.  
☐ a) careless      b) carelessly      c) more careless      d) more carelessly
12. My sister ..... the doctor later today because of her stomachache.  
☐ a) sees      b) has seen      c) was seeing      d) is seeing
13. I ..... to sleep until I ..... my homework.  
☐ a) don't go / did      b) won't go / had done  
     c) didn't go / will do      d) didn't go / had done

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

The earliest lighthouses were simply bonfires built on hillsides to guide ships. The first lighthouse, located on the ancient island of Pharos, served the old-world city of Alexandria in 285 BC.

Of the Seven Wonders of the Ancient World, the Lighthouse of Alexandria was the only one that had a practical function in addition to its architectural elegance. For sailors, it ensured a safe return to the Great Harbour. For architects, it was the tallest building on earth in its time. And for scientists, it was the mysterious mirror that fascinated them most. The reflection of the sun's rays could be seen more than 50 kilometres offshore. Legend has it that the mirror was also used to detect and burn enemy ships before they could reach the shore.

Shortly after the death of Alexander the Great, his commander Ptolemy I Soter assumed power and established his capital in Alexandria. Off the city's coast lies the small island of Pharos. Due to the dangerous sailing conditions, the construction of a lighthouse was seen as being necessary.

For centuries, the Lighthouse of Alexandria was used to mark the harbour, using fire at night and reflecting the sun's rays during the day. It was even shown on Roman coins, just as famous monuments are depicted on currency today.

Although the Lighthouse of Alexandria did not survive to this present day, it left behind its influence. From an architectural standpoint, the monument has been used as a model for many prototypes along the Mediterranean Sea.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**14. The lighthouse has a great importance for .....**

- ☐ a) sailors, architects and scientists      ☐ b) astronomers  
☐ c) psychologists      ☐ d) Romans and ancient Egyptians

**15. The antonym of the word "construction" is ".....".**

- ☐ a) erection      ☐ b) manufacture      ☐ c) structure      ☐ d) destruction

**16. The old well-known story, often about brave people, adventures or magical events is**

- a) .....  
☐ a) wonder      ☐ b) lighthouse      ☐ c) legend      ☐ d) mystery

**17. The first lighthouse was built in .....**

- ☐ a) England      ☐ b) Egypt      ☐ c) Asia      ☐ d) India

**18. What distinguished the lighthouse was .....**

- ☐ a) its height and position  
☐ b) its practical function and architectural elegance  
☐ c) its position and elegance  
☐ d) its elegance and height

**19. What was the Lighthouse of Alexandria used for?**

- ☐ a) For marking the harbour.      ☐ b) For using fire at night.  
☐ c) For reflecting the sun's rays during the day.      ☐ d) All of the previous answers.

**20. The mirror was used to detect and burn enemy ships before they could reach the shore was something .....**

- ☐ a) unbelievable      ☐ b) believable      ☐ c) true      ☐ d) great

**21. Infer if the lighthouse survived to this present day, .....**

- ☐ a) it would be a deserted place      ☐ b) it would be taken by another country  
☐ c) it would be a destination for tourists      ☐ d) it would be a far-reached place

## 22. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- The Ministry of Education plans to establish new technical schools to cope with the latest technological advances. These will be provided with all the necessary facilities for training the best technicians.

- (a) تخطط وزارة التربية والتعليم لإنشاء مدارس فنية جديدة لتشغيل أحدث التطورات التكنولوجية. سيتم تزويد هذه المدارس بكل التسهيلات اللازمة لتدريب أفضل الفنيين.
- (b) تخطط وزارة التربية والتعليم لإنشاء مدارس فنية جديدة لمواكبة أحدث التطورات التكنولوجية. سيتم تزويدها بكل التسهيلات اللازمة لتدريب أفضل الفنيين.
- (c) تخطط وزارة التربية والتعليم لإنشاء مدارس فنية جديدة لمواكبة أحدث التطورات التكنولوجية. سيتم تزويدها ببعض التسهيلات اللازمة لتدريب أفضل الفنيين.
- (d) تخطط وزارة التربية والتعليم لإنشاء جامعات فنية جديدة لمواكبة أحدث التطورات التكنولوجية. سيتم تزويدها بكل التسهيلات اللازمة لتدريب أفضل الفنيين.

## 23. Choose the correct English translation:

- من خلال مبادرة حياة كريمة تحاول الحكومة تطوير القرى المصرية بشكل كبير. وذلك بتوفير التسهيلات الضرورية للوصول بالريف المصري إلى الشكل اللائق بالقرن الحادي والعشرين.

- a) Through the Decent Life Initiative, the government is trying to significantly develop Egyptian villages. And by providing the expensive facilities to bring the Egyptian countryside to a shape worthy of the twenty-first century.
- b) Through the Decent Life Initiative, the government is trying to significantly develop Egyptian villages. And by providing the necessary facilities to bring the Egyptian countryside to a shape worthy of the twenty-first century.
- c) Through the Decent Life Initiative, the government is trying to significantly develop Egyptian villages. And by providing the necessary facilities to bring the Egyptian countryside to a shape worthy of the twenty-first century.
- d) Through the Decent Life Initiative, the government is trying to significantly develop Egyptian towns. And by providing the necessary facilities to bring the Egyptian countryside to a shape worthy of the twenty-first century.

## 24. Answer the following questions: (The Play)

1. If you were Edmund, would you arrange to get rid of people to reach your ambition? Why?
2. Do you think that Edgar knew that his father wanted to kill himself before taking him to Dover? Why?
3. If you were King Lear, would you be ashamed of what you have done with Cordelia? Why?

## 25. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic: "Spreading the culture of volunteering and donation can help solve our social problems"

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. One of the best ways to succeed as a businessman is to have a lot of ..... in your field.  
☐ a) contacts                      ☐ b) classmates                      ☐ c) ties                      ☐ d) traits
2. The manager always decides to put his son in ..... of the factory when he goes on a business trip.  
☐ a) change                      ☐ b) charge                      ☐ c) responsible                      ☐ d) achievable
3. Experts fear that food production in the world will be affected by the unexpected ..... and floods due to climate change.  
☐ a) draughts                      ☐ b) droughts                      ☐ c) clouds                      ☐ d) earthquakes
4. Helping to hide facts about a crime can make you a/an ..... to the criminals.  
☐ a) accessory                      ☐ b) outfit                      ☐ c) design                      ☐ d) device
5. South Sinal is remarkable for its scenery and coral reefs. The antonym of the adjective "remarkable" is .....  
☐ a) obvious                      ☐ b) fabulous                      ☐ c) extraordinary                      ☐ d) ordinary
6. Wars and disputes are ..... serious problems for people in many parts of the world.  
☐ a) making                      ☐ b) solving                      ☐ c) sorting                      ☐ d) depriving
7. Climbing the mountain was a real ....., but it was worth it for the view.  
☐ a) change                      ☐ b) challenge                      ☐ c) hobby                      ☐ d) solution
8. The girl is watering the plants .....  
☐ a) right now                      ☐ b) every day                      ☐ c) since 2 o'clock                      ☐ d) next year
9. Spiders are ..... frightening than wasps.  
☐ a) much                      ☐ b) a lot                      ☐ c) a few                      ☐ d) much more
10. We had a lot of trouble because we ..... our passports.  
☐ a) lose                      ☐ b) had lost                      ☐ c) have lost                      ☐ d) were losing
11. Which one of the following is grammatically correct? - .....  
☐ a) We'd better start studying harder this week, hadn't we?  
☐ b) We'd better start studying harder this week, wouldn't we?  
☐ c) We'd better start studying harder this week, mustn't we?  
☐ d) We'd better start studying harder this week, aren't we?
12. I ..... to driving on the left now, but it was hard at the beginning.  
☐ a) use                      ☐ b) 'm used                      ☐ c) 'm not used                      ☐ d) used
13. I ..... the traffic during rush hours.  
☐ a) hates                      ☐ b) am hating                      ☐ c) hate                      ☐ d) was hating



**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

The honeybee is a very unusual kind of insect. Unlike other insects, which live alone, the honeybee lives as a member of a community. These bees live together in what is known as a bee colony.

The head of the colony is called the queen bee. She is larger than the rest of the bees. Her main task in the colony is to lay eggs. Most of the other bees are worker bees. These bees collect nectar and pollen from flowers. The nectar that is carried by worker bees is deposited in the hive and then converted into honey. The worker bees also help look after the young bees. As soon as the eggs are hatched, the worker bees feed the young bees with pollen and nectar. The third type of bee found in the colony is the drone or male bee. The main task of such a bee is to mate with a new queen.

The queen bee has a life span of about three years. During this period, she would have laid more than half a million eggs. When the queen bee is dying, a new queen would be groomed. This new queen would eventually take over the 'duties' of the old queen when the latter dies.

Bees are small, but they play a big role in the ecosystem. They play an important role as pollinators for crops. It is vital for the food security of human beings. Hence, we must control our activities and help protect honeybees.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**14. The thing that distinguishes the honeybee from other insects is that .....**

- ☐ a) its sting is stronger and deadly
- ☐ b) it can live alone
- ☐ c) it can't live apart from its community
- ☐ d) it can't live among trees and flowers

**15. The main mission of the queen bee in the colony is to .....**

- a) look after the young bees
- b) collect nectar and pollen
- c) kill worker bees
- d) lay eggs

**16. The life of honeybees can teach us .....**

- ☐ a) co-operation
- ☐ b) how to live among trees
- ☐ c) selfishness
- ☐ d) laziness

**17. The "latter" is the antonym of the word "....."**

- ☐ a) last
- ☐ b) former
- ☐ c) second
- ☐ d) next

**18. The phrasal verb "look after" has the same meaning as .....**

- ☐ a) get rid of
- ☐ b) care about
- ☐ c) give away
- ☐ d) let into

**19. What is the best title for the passage?**

- ☐ a) Honeybees' life
- ☐ b) The role of the queen
- ☐ c) Bees and the ecosystem
- ☐ d) The bees' co-operation

**20. Bees are vital for the food security of human beings as they .....**

- ☐ a) produce honey
- ☐ b) eat harmful insects
- ☐ c) pollinate our crops
- ☐ d) carry nectar

**21. The young bees are fed by .....**

- ☐ a) themselves
- ☐ b) the queen bee
- ☐ c) the male bee
- ☐ d) worker bees



## 22. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Everyone of us should have a hobby within their means. Otherwise, life loses its charm, and becomes one long labour from beginning to end.

- (a) كل واحد منا يجب أن تكون لديه مهنة فى حدود إمكانياته. وإلا تفقد الحياة سحرها وتصبح عملاً طويلاً من البداية إلى النهاية.
- (b) كل واحد منا يجب أن تكون لديه هواية فى حدود إمكانياته. وإلا تفقد الحياة قيمتها وتصبح عملاً طويلاً من البداية إلى النهاية.
- (c) كل واحد منا يجب أن تكون لديه هواية فى حدود إمكانياته. وإلا تفقد الحياة سحرها وتصبح عملاً معلاً من البداية إلى النهاية.
- (d) كل واحد منا يجب أن تكون لديه هواية فى حدود إمكانياته. وإلا تفقد الحياة سحرها وتصبح عملاً طويلاً من البداية إلى النهاية.

## 23. Choose the correct English translation:

- إن الجدل والخلاف بين أفراد المجتمع يؤديان إلى تدهور جميع مجالات الحياة فيه. أما التفاهم والتعاون فيؤديان إلى الانسجام والذي يؤدي حتماً إلى التنمية والتقدم.

- ☐ a) The debate and disagreement between the members of society lead to the deterioration of all aspects of life in it. As for understanding and cooperation, they lead to harmony, which inevitably leads to development and progress.
- b) The debate and disagreement between the numbers of society lead to the deterioration of all aspects of life in it. As for understanding and cooperation, they lead to harmony, which inevitably leads to development and progress.
- c) The debate and agreement between the members of society led to the deterioration of all aspects of life in it. As for understanding and cooperation, they lead to harmony, which inevitably leads to development and progress.
- d) The debate and disagreement between the members of society lead to the deterioration of all aspects of life in it. As for understanding and cooperation, they lead to honey, which inevitably leads to development and progress.

## 24. Answer the following questions: (The Play)

1. "Oh, my dear son Edgar. I wish I could hold you, then I would say that I needed eyes again!" What does this show about Gloucester's feelings?

2. Why do you think Edgar says that King Lear is talking both "sense and nonsense"?

3. If you were Edgar, would you forgive Edmund for his evil actions? Why?

## 25. Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words:

To your friend Ramy, telling him about how you choose your role model. Your name is Mohab. Your email address is mohab\_hoba@yahoo.com. Ramy's email address is roma2000@gmail.com.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The police prevented journalists and reporters from approaching the crime ..... before completing their investigations.  
☐ a) vision                      b) sight                      c) scene                      d) view
2. The ..... in Cairo Metro network will make it easier for commuters to reach their workplace more comfortably.  
☐ a) intention                      b) expansion                      c) suggestion                      d) destruction
3. The film "Jurassic Park" is ..... from a Michael Crichton's novel of the same name.  
☐ a) attributed                      b) adapted                      c) applied                      d) inhibited
4. In the play I watched yesterday, the hero was ..... for power; he tried to replace the king.  
☐ a) angry                      b) thirsty                      c) hungry                      d) lazy
5. These pills are temporary painkillers that will last only for four hours. The antonym of the adjective "temporary" is .....  
☐ a) spacious                      b) permanent                      c) relevant                      d) strange
6. I searched the shopping website carefully to ..... sure their products are reliable.  
☐ a) make                      b) do                      c) take                      d) follow
7. She was ..... to her friend for the help she received during the difficult times.  
☐ a) indifferent                      b) grateful                      c) annoyed                      d) careless
8. My sister is on a world tour. By the end of the year, she ..... more than 40 countries.  
☐ a) will be visiting                      b) will have visited  
☐ c) will have been visited                      d) is visiting
9. Students ..... rubbish in the school grounds, but now they keep the school grounds clean.  
☐ a) were leaving                      b) leave  
☐ c) used to leave                      d) didn't use to leave
10. They ..... English before they moved to the USA.  
☐ a) had studied                      b) have studied  
☐ c) study                      d) were studying
11. Mostafa doesn't take risks when he's driving. He drives .....  
☐ a) care                      b) careful                      c) too careful                      d) carefully
12. When I got home, I ..... that somebody had broken into my flat.  
☐ a) discover                      b) have discovered                      c) had discovered                      d) discovered
13. I used to play badminton ..... I was younger.  
☐ a) since                      b) when                      c) while                      d) during

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

It is evident that, at present, people are spending a considerable amount of time on the Internet and thus spending less time with real people. I strongly agree that although this use of the Internet has greatly increased the level of communication available, it has also had detrimental effects on the amount and type of social interaction that takes place.

The benefits of the internet in terms of increased communication are clear, with people connected across the globe. In the past, communication was only possible by phone or mail, which entailed time and expense. It also meant just keeping in contact with those people already known to you. With the internet, this has changed dramatically. Email and social networking sites such as Facebook and MSN have created online communities that are global in scale, and they have fostered communication between people and countries that we would not have thought possible in the not-too-distant past.

People, especially the younger generation, spend hours of their time online, chatting and on forums. Although this can be beneficial, it is certainly not the same as real interaction with human beings and does not involve the same skills. It is important that children have and maintain real friendships in order to develop their own interpersonal skills. Not only this, it can also have negative effects on local communities if people are spending most of their time communicating online and not mixing in their neighbourhoods, and possibly lead to feelings of isolation for those individuals who do not have a 'real' person to turn to in times of need.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**14. The internet is a means of communication .....**

- ☐ a) globally      ☐ b) nationally      ☐ c) locally      ☐ d) personally

**15. One of the following sentences is true: .....**

- ☐ a) The internet friends are more useful than real friends  
☐ b) Young people avoid spending much time on the internet  
☐ c) The internet is cheaper than the older means of communication  
☐ d) The internet helps us to develop our own interpersonal skills

**16. One word of the following gives the antonym of the word "beneficial": .....**

- ☐ a) constructive      ☐ b) useful  
☐ c) helpful      ☐ d) harmful

**17. Spending most of the time online and not mixing with real people may lead to .....**

- ☐ a) success in life      ☐ b) feeling of isolation  
☐ c) avoiding bad people      ☐ d) saving much money

**18. The last paragraph is about .....**

- ☐ a) the pros of the internet      ☐ b) the cons of the internet  
☐ c) the pros and cons of the internet      ☐ d) the people who can't do without the internet

**19. People should use the internet .....**

- ☐ a) excessively      ☐ b) at a great deal      ☐ c) wisely      ☐ d) only once a day

**20. If we make a balance between our online life and our contact with real human beings, it will be .....**

- ☐ a) profitable      ☐ b) expensive      ☐ c) harmful      ☐ d) excessive

**21. The internet can help .....**

- ☐ a) professionals      ☐ b) students  
☐ c) doctors and engineers      ☐ d) all people

## 22. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Some romantic stories make us forget about our worries and troubles. They take us to the world of imagination, dreams and thinking.

- (a) بعض القصص الرومانسية تجعلنا ننسى همومنا وأحزاننا حيث تأخذنا إلى عالم الخيال والأحلام والتفكير.
- (b) بعض القصص الرومانسية تجعلنا ننسى همومنا ومتاعبنا حيث تأخذنا إلى عالم الخيال والأحلام والتذكير.
- (c) بعض القصص الرومانسية تجعلنا ننسى همومنا ومتاعبنا حيث تأخذنا إلى عالم الخيال والأحلام والتفكير.
- (d) بعض القصص البوليسية تجعلنا ننسى همومنا ومتاعبنا. حيث تأخذنا إلى عالم الخيال والأحلام والتفكير.

## 23. Choose the correct English translation:

- ما زالت الحكومة تحاول توفير المناخ المشجع لرجال الأعمال المصريين والعرب لاستثمار أموالهم في المشروعات التنموية الكبيرة. وذلك لخلق فرص عمل وحل بعض المشكلات الاقتصادية.

- (a) The government is still trying to provide an encouraging environment for Egyptian and Arab businessmen to save their money in large development projects. This is to create job opportunities and solve some economic problems.
- (b) The government is still trying to provide an encouraging environment for Egyptian and Arab businessmen to invest their money in large development projects. This is to create job opportunities and solve some economic crises.
- (c) The government was still trying to provide an encouraging environment for Egyptian and Arab businessmen to invest their money in large development projects. This is to create job opportunities and solve some economic problems.
- (d) The government is still trying to provide an encouraging environment for Egyptian and Arab businessmen to invest their money in large development projects. This is to create job opportunities and solve some economic problems.

## 24. Answer the following questions: (The Play)

1. What do you think of Cornwall's punishment of Gloucester?

2. "If I meet old Gloucester, madam, I'll show you which lady I follow." What did Oswald mean when he said this?

3. If you were Cordelia, would you forgive your father so easily? Why?

## 25. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic: "Why is sport so relevant in modern education?"



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Windmills are one of the ancient ways to ..... the power of the wind to benefit human beings.  
☐ a) neglect      ☐ b) approach      ☐ c) waste      ☐ d) harness
2. As a result of the difficult economic situation, there was a decrease in car sales ..... this year.  
☐ a) modules      ☐ b) losses      ☐ c) profits      ☐ d) branches
3. Many new cities have ..... houses where you can use online systems to turn all electric devices on or off.  
☐ a) high-tech      ☐ b) outdated      ☐ c) recent      ☐ d) old-fashioned
4. As he lived away from his family when he was in college, Munir learnt to be a/an ..... person.  
☐ a) dependent      ☐ b) intended      ☐ c) independent      ☐ d) prohibited
5. The book emphasises the contrast between conventional and alternative medicine. The noun "contrast" is the opposite of .....  
☐ a) agreement      ☐ b) contradiction      ☐ c) disagreement      ☐ d) necessity
6. I can't imagine life without children. The adjective of the verb "imagine" is .....  
☐ a) imagines      ☐ b) imaginative      ☐ c) imagination      ☐ d) imaginatively
7. The small fishing boats were anchored safely in the ..... during the storm.  
☐ a) desert      ☐ b) harbour      ☐ c) hill      ☐ d) valley
8. Don't talk to me now. I ..... to the radio.  
☐ a) listen      ☐ b) am listening      ☐ c) have listened      ☐ d) had listened
9. He ..... walk along the beach every evening before bed.  
☐ a) uses to      ☐ b) didn't used to  
☐ c) would      ☐ d) all answers are possible
10. Which one of the following is grammatically correct? - .....  
☐ a) There's a fly in your soup, is there?      ☐ b) There's a fly in your soup, isn't it?  
☐ c) There's a fly in your soup, isn't there?      ☐ d) There's a fly in your soup, hasn't it?
11. I did ..... I could, which wasn't much.  
☐ a) when      ☐ b) who      ☐ c) which      ☐ d) what
12. She doesn't mind walking to work. She ..... to it.  
☐ a) isn't used      ☐ b) is used      ☐ c) used      ☐ d) uses
13. Recent events prove the saying that twenty-four hours ..... a long time in politics.  
☐ a) is      ☐ b) has      ☐ c) are      ☐ d) have



**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

In October 2020, a film about the world-famous environmental activist Greta Thunberg was released. The film follows the life of this Swedish teenage activist, who, since she was fifteen, has been fighting against climate change. In September 2019, she spoke angrily to politicians in the United Nations, and she has travelled all over the world giving talks and encouraging people to change their habits. Greta may be the latest young person to be in the news, but she is not the first or only one. Before Greta had been heard of, a 12-year-old girl from Vancouver, Severn Cullis-Suzuki, had spoken at a United Nations conference in 1992 and warned the world about the dangers of rising temperatures and the problems that will arise from not preserving our planet's rich biodiversity. In 2010, Severn was also the main character in a film about her protests. The list of teenage activists who are fighting for the conservation of our planet is very long. While being in the headlines helps to spread the message, it is not necessary to be famous in order to make a change. There are approximately 3 billion people under the age of 25 living today, and all of them have the ability to make changes in their habits and those of their families which may lead to a small change in the environment. These three billion small changes will go a long way towards making the planet a better place.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 14. According to the passage, many teenagers around the world have .....**  
☐ a) made films about their lives                      b) tried to encourage environmental change  
☐ c) spoken in the United Nations                      d) been in the news
- 15. The article says .....**  
☐ a) you do not need to be in the newspaper to help the environment  
☐ b) you can use video to influence politicians  
☐ c) you need to be a teenager to be able to make a difference  
☐ d) you can do nothing to help the environment
- 16. How does the article say teenagers around the world can make a difference? - .....**  
☐ a) They can talk to their local politicians.                      b) They can make videos on social media.  
☐ c) They can make small changes at home.                      d) They can plant more trees.
- 17. How long ago was a film shown about Severn Cullis-Suzuki's protests?**  
☐ a) 23 years ago.                      b) 30 years ago.                      c) 31 years ago.                      d) 15 years ago.
- 18. Greta Thunberg has been fighting against climate change since .....**  
☐ a) she was in Sweden                      b) her childhood  
☐ c) 2020                      d) she spoke angrily to politicians
- 19. Infer if people were encouraged to change their habits, .....**  
☐ a) the problem of climate change would be solved  
☐ b) nothing would be done about the problem of climate change  
☐ c) the problem of climate change would be unsolved  
☐ d) the problem of climate change would be worse
- 20. Climate change and biodiversity are considered ..... problems.**  
☐ a) local                      b) national                      c) international                      d) global
- 21. When a film was shown about Severn's protests, she was ..... years old.**  
☐ a) 13                      b) 18                      c) 30                      d) 22

## 22. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Online education is becoming more and more important. However, many experts believe that it shouldn't be an alternative to schools as the main media of education.

- (a) أصبح التعليم عبر الإنترنت أكثر أهمية. ومع ذلك، يعتقد العديد من الخبراء أنه لا ينبغي أن يكون بديلاً للمدارس باعتبارها وسيلة التعليم الرئيسية.
- (b) أصبح التعليم عبر الإنترنت أكثر انتشاراً. ومع ذلك، يعتقد العديد من العلماء أنه لا ينبغي أن يكون بديلاً للمدارس باعتبارها وسيلة التعليم الرئيسية.
- (c) أصبح التعلم عبر الإنترنت أكثر أهمية. ومع ذلك، يعتقد العديد من الخبراء أنه ينبغي أن يكون بديلاً للمدارس باعتبارها وسيلة التعليم الرئيسية.
- (d) أصبح التعليم عبر الإنترنت أقل أهمية. ومع ذلك، يعتقد العديد من الخبراء أنه لا ينبغي أن يكون بديلاً للمدارس باعتبارها وسيلة التعليم الرئيسية.

## 23. Choose the correct English translation:

- في نظم التعليم الجديدة أصبح لزاماً على المدرسين الإلمام بطرق استخدام التكنولوجيا الحديثة. والتي أصبحت جزءاً مهماً من حياة الطلاب حتى في المرحلة الابتدائية.

- a) In the old education systems, teachers have become obligated to know how to use modern technology, which has become an important part of students' lives even at the primary stage.
- b) In the new education systems, teachers had become obligated to know how to use modern technology, which has become an important part of students' lives even at the primary stage.
- c) In the new education systems, teachers have become obligated to know how to use modern technology, which has become an important part of students' lives even at the primary stage.
- d) In the new education systems, teachers have become obligated to know how to use modern technology, which has become an ordinary part of students' lives even at the primary stage.

## 24. Answer the following questions: (The Play)

1. Why, do you think, Gloucester asked Edgar, disguised as Poor Tom, to take him to Dover?

2. Do you think that the King went completely mad? Why?

3. How did you feel at the end of the play? Why?

## 25. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic:

"Violent video games should be prohibited. State your opinion."

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's important for a teacher to balance punishment with positive .....  
☐ a) determination      b) encouragement      c) change      d) invitation
2. When Ali went to London to learn English, he stayed with a very nice .....  
☐ a) servants      b) passenger      c) host family      d) participants
3. Soha ..... to answer the physics test as she finds it difficult.  
☐ a) challenge      b) experience      c) distracts      d) struggles
4. We can say ..... to describe something that uses a lot of new technology.  
☐ a) facilities      b) devices      c) high-tech      d) expansion
5. When something is not bad for the nature, it is .....  
☐ a) native      b) expensive  
☐ c) environmental friendly      d) environmentally friendly
6. The most frightening part of this ..... film was when the children can't escape from the dark castle on a hill.  
☐ a) romantic      b) horror      c) animation      d) science fiction
7. The scientist ensured that all the measurements were ..... before publishing the results.  
☐ a) random      b) accurate      c) inaccurate      d) false
8. I can't meet you tonight because I ..... for my sister's wedding party.  
☐ a) was preparing      b) will be preparing      c) will have prepared      d) have prepared
9. Learning Spanish is a bit difficult. I'm sure that I'll soon ..... it.  
☐ a) used to      b) didn't use to      c) never used      d) get used to
10. Dania's sister is ..... the same height as her.  
☐ a) very      b) exactly      c) far      d) more
11. A lot of local people ..... come to the beach every weekend but it's much quieter now.  
☐ a) would      b) are using to      c) use to      d) would be
12. You like to study history, .....?  
☐ a) you do      b) do you      c) don't you      d) should you
13. We ..... the project in three days' time.  
☐ a) have finished      b) will finish  
☐ c) will be finishing      d) will have finished

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

New or modern transport has played an important role in the advancement of human civilisation. As humans moved using different means, from donkeys and horse carts to cars and trains, the pace of business and development increased rapidly. I believe the bicycle is neither a convenient nor an efficient means of transport in the 21<sup>st</sup> century.

While a bicycle can be beneficial for travelling over short distances and keeping a person fit, when it comes to long distances, humans have no choice but modern transport such as cars, buses and trains. These means move fast and help us get things done in a timely manner. For instance, a recent report by the World Trade Organisation claimed that countries with extensive road and rail networks that support modern, fast transport have higher GDP (gross domestic product) growth rates than countries which rely on traditional means of movement.

Moreover, modern transport can carry people as well as goods over long distances conveniently. Not only are these safer and easier to use, but they also support the bulk movement of goods that increases commerce. A bicycle, on the other hand, is neither convenient nor suitable for bulk transport. Recent research has found that the number of goods and people transported using trains in 2016 is equal to the movement of all goods and people during the past millennium.

Though bicycles are pollution-free and keep a person healthy, they are more suitable for health reasons than for transport. Modern mechanised means of transport cannot be replaced with traditional and slow ones. This will result in reducing the pace of the growth of human civilisation.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**14. Mention how the modern means of transport is important.**

- ☐ a) It has led to a decrease in development.
- ☒ b) It has helped in the advancement of human civilisation.
- ☐ c) It has led to the beginning of the 21<sup>st</sup> century.
- ☐ d) The size of countries.

**15. The abbreviation "GDP" is something related to .....**

- ☐ a) daily professions
- ☒ b) domestic production
- ☐ c) great patience
- ☐ d) good doctors

**16. Although the bicycle is used for sports and short distances, it .....**

- ☐ a) causes a lot of pollution
- ☒ b) is inconvenient for bulk transport
- ☐ c) is unsuitable for adults
- ☐ d) costs a lot of money

**17. The rapid increase in business occurred because of .....**

- ☒ a) the beginning of the 21<sup>st</sup> century
- ☐ b) the appearance of cars, trains and etc.
- ☐ c) the size of countries
- ☐ d) the disappearance of carts

**18. Which one of the following choices gives the same meaning to the word "civilisation"?**

- ☐ a) Good lifestyle.
- ☒ b) Education.
- ☐ c) Ignorance.
- ☐ d) Disadvantageous.

**19. What would we do if cars and planes didn't exist? .....**

- ☐ a) We should be stuck using the slow means of transport.
- ☒ b) We would go on foot better.
- ☐ c) We would invent other means that would be more comfortable.
- ☐ d) We would stay at home.



20. One of the advantages of using the bicycle is that it .....

- ☐ a) is earlier than trains  
b) is pollution free  
c) is more unsuitable for health  
d) causes brain damage

21. Which of the following is correct? .....

- ☐ a) A bicycle is convenient transport for long distances.  
b) It is better to replace modern mechanized means of transport with traditional ones.  
c) A bicycle is convenient transport for short distances.  
d) Bicycles can carry people as well as goods over long distances.

22. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Teachers should care for their students and guide them to continue the journey of life safely. Besides, it is also their responsibility to help them grow as good citizens.

- (a) ☐ يجب على المعلمين رعاية طلابهم وإرشادهم لمواصلة رحلة الحياة بأمان، إلى جانب ذلك، تقع على عاتقهم أيضًا مسئولية مساعدتهم على النمو كمواطنين منتجين.  
(b) يجب على المعلمين رعاية طلابهم وإرشادهم لمواصلة رحلة الحياة بأمان، إلى جانب ذلك، تقع على عاتقهم أيضًا مسئولية مساعدتهم على النمو كمواطنين صالحين.  
(c) يجب على المعلمين رعاية طلابهم وإرشادهم لمواصلة رحلة الحياة بذكاء، إلى جانب ذلك، تقع على عاتقهم أيضًا مسئولية مساعدتهم على النمو كمواطنين صالحين.  
(d) يجب على المعلمين رعاية أطفالهم وإرشادهم لبدء رحلة الحياة بأمان، إلى جانب ذلك، تقع على عاتقهم أيضًا مسئولية مساعدتهم على النمو كمواطنين صالحين.

23. Choose the correct English translation:

- للعيش في الخارج العديد من المميزات، فهو يمكننا من تكوين صداقات جديدة وتعلم لغة أخرى مفيدة.

- ☐ a) Living aboard has many hopes, it enables us to make new friends and learn other useful languages.  
b) Living aboard has many expectations, it enables us to make new friends and learn another useful language.  
c) Living abroad has many advantages, it enables us to make new friends and learn another useful language.  
d) Living abroad has many advantages, it enables us to make new friends and learn other useful languages.

24. Answer the following questions: (The Play)

1. What did Cordelia ask the soldiers to do for her father? What can you tell about Cordelia?

2. "Edmund told us that you betrayed us. He will not help you." Who said this quotation? When and why?

3. If you were in Gloucester's situation, would you trust Edmund anymore? Why or why not?

25. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on this topic:

"A job you would like to do or to pursue in the future, give or provide reasons"



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Many new books ..... every now and then.  
☐ a) publish      ☐ b) come out      ☐ c) produce      ☐ d) are appeared
- He spares no effort to help his family. This means he .....  
☐ a) does his best      ☐ b) is lazy      ☐ c) is irresponsible      ☐ d) is inactive
- His wife's food tastes ....., so he eats outdoors.  
☐ a) badly      ☐ b) well      ☐ c) bad      ☐ d) delicious
- Public transport in our country is comfortable and ..... so it suits all people.  
☐ a) sheep      ☐ b) costly      ☐ c) expensive      ☐ d) inexpensive
- Part of Cairo metro runs in a .....  
☐ a) tunnel      ☐ b) cave      ☐ c) funnel      ☐ d) highway
- Will you ..... the report by next week?  
☐ a) finish      ☐ b) have finished  
☐ c) be finishing      ☐ d) have been finishing
- There is always a ..... gap between parents and their children.  
☐ a) birth      ☐ b) genre      ☐ c) livestock      ☐ d) generation
- She ..... lies but now she does.  
☐ a) used to tell      ☐ b) didn't use to tell  
☐ c) isn't used to telling      ☐ d) wasn't used to tell
- The player asked for a substitution as he suffered from a leg .....  
☐ a) practice      ☐ b) breath      ☐ c) boredom      ☐ d) injury
- The car ..... until its engine had broken down.  
☐ a) wasn't sold      ☐ b) didn't sell      ☐ c) hasn't sold      ☐ d) won't be sold
- She hardly goes anywhere alone, .....?  
☐ a) is she      ☐ b) does she      ☐ c) doesn't she      ☐ d) hasn't she
- Modern trains are .....-friendly. They don't cause pollution.  
☐ a) environment      ☐ b) environmental      ☐ c) environmentalist      ☐ d) environmentally
- Most of the books ..... by Naguib Mahfouz were translated into many languages.  
☐ a) which written      ☐ b) were written  
☐ c) written      ☐ d) that were writing

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

It is most necessary for everyone to cut down on their food expenses. Since the early 1970s, the cost of food has gone up faster than the cost of all commodities and services. The increase has mounted to more than 300%. For all Egyptian families, food is the biggest item in their monthly household. In fact, it swallows more than half the budget of millions of low-income families. People suffer from the high prices of food a lot. How will such a state of affairs end? Is it the fate of low-income families to face starvation? Isn't there any solution? To be sure, there is. You can reduce your food expenses by at least 20% by observing the following pieces of advice. Note the food items you need when your supplies run low.

Group the same kind of food together and write a list of your needs. Use your list as you shop and don't buy any items which are not included on the list. Food is sold nowadays in different forms: fresh, canned and frozen. Choose the cheapest and healthiest ones. You can buy fresh vegetables instead of frozen ones because they are cheaper and healthier. Chickens are cheaper than red meat. You can have cheese, beans and eggs instead of meat. One last bit of advice, "Don't go shopping on an empty stomach". Shopping when you are hungry tempts you to buy things you don't really need.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

14. By "cut down" in the first line we mean .....  
☐ a) reduce      ☐ b) increase      ☐ c) support      ☐ d) double
15. The underlined word "it" refers to .....  
☐ a) the budget      ☐ b) food      ☐ c) commodities      ☐ d) services
16. As food is the biggest item in the Egyptian family budget, people should buy .....  
☐ a) all the food      ☐ b) frozen food  
☐ c) healthy and cheap food      ☐ d) canned food
17. To attract or make someone want to do or have something is to .....  
☐ a) refuse      ☐ b) distract      ☐ c) tempt      ☐ d) reject
18. Those who don't eat meat are called .....  
☐ a) meat eaters      ☐ b) vegetarians      ☐ c) vegetables      ☐ d) veterans
19. Food prices increased by ..... percent.  
☐ a) one hundred      ☐ b) two hundred      ☐ c) three hundred      ☐ d) five hundred
20. Reducing the food expenses is the responsibility of .....  
☐ a) merchants      ☐ b) citizens only  
☐ c) the government only      ☐ d) citizens and the government
21. Red meat is ..... poultry.  
☐ a) as expensive as      ☐ b) more expensive than  
☐ c) less expensive than      ☐ d) cheaper than

## 22. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Despite the international economic crisis, the Egyptian government carries out a lot of huge projects to provide youth with job opportunities and improve citizens' standard of living.

- (a) بسبب الأزمة الاقتصادية العالمية تنفذ الحكومة المصرية الكثير من المشروعات الضخمة لكي تمد الشباب بفرص العمل وتحسن مستوى معيشة المواطنين.
- (b) بالرغم من الأزمة الاقتصادية العالمية تنفذ الحكومة المصرية الكثير من المشروعات الضخمة لكي تمد الشباب بفرص العمل وتحسن مستوى معيشة المواطنين.
- (c) بسبب الأزمة الاقتصادية المحلية تنفذ الحكومة المصرية الكثير من المشروعات الضخمة لكي تمد الشباب بفرص العمل وتحسن مستوى معيشة المواطنين.
- (d) بالرغم من الأزمة الاقتصادية العالمية تنفذ الحكومة المصرية الكثير من الإنجازات الضخمة لكي تمد الشباب بفرص العمل وتحسن مستوى معيشة المواطنين.

## 23. Choose the correct English translation:

- يجب أن تكون عضوًا فعالاً في المجتمع، فلا تكن سلبيًا وتكتفي بالشكوى وانتقاد أفعال الآخرين، لا بد أن تكون موضوعيين ونسعى للنقد البناء وقبول الآخر.

- a) You must be an active member in society. Do not be negative and only complain and criticize the actions of others. You must be objective and strive for constructive criticism and the acceptance of others.
- b) You must be an active member in your country. Do not be negative and only complain and criticize the opinions of others. You must be objective and strive for constructive criticism and the acceptance of others.
- c) You must be a productive member of society. Do not be positive and only complain and criticize the actions of others. You must be objective and strive for constructive criticism and the acceptance of others.
- d) You must be an inactive worker in society. Do not be negative and only complain and criticize the actions of others. You must be subjective and strive for constructive criticism and the acceptance of others.

## 24. Answer the following questions: (The Play)

1. What do you think of Goneril as a wife?

2. Why do you think Edmund handed the letter to Cornwall?

3. How do you think Cordelia felt when she heard that her father was mad?

## 25. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on this topic:

"The role of charities in the society"

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Everyone is coming to the party, .....?  
☐ a) Isn't he      ☐ b) is he      ☐ c) don't they      ☐ d) aren't they
2. All students love Miss Leila because she treats them .....  
☐ a) kind      ☐ b) kindness      ☐ c) kindly      ☐ d) unkindness
3. There has been much debate over cloning. "Debate" is the synonym of .....  
☐ a) argument      ☐ b) conclusion      ☐ c) introduction      ☐ d) resolution
4. My teacher warned me ..... that mistake again.  
☐ a) to making      ☐ b) not to make      ☐ c) don't make      ☐ d) make
5. He promised he would ..... in touch with us while he was away.  
☐ a) keep      ☐ b) mix      ☐ c) co-operate      ☐ d) attach
6. Travelling by plane is much ..... than travelling by train.  
☐ a) more expensive      ☐ b) expensive  
☐ c) the most expensive      ☐ d) the least expensive
7. The panda is an ..... species, and efforts are being made to protect its habitat.  
☐ a) extinct      ☐ b) endangered      ☐ c) abundant      ☐ d) invasive
8. Having ....., the criminal was sent to prison.  
☐ a) arrest      ☐ b) arrested      ☐ c) been arrested      ☐ d) arresting
9. By the year 2050, scientists ..... a cure for cancer.  
☐ a) discovered      ☐ b) had discovered  
☐ c) discover      ☐ d) will have discovered
10. Salma's patience and ..... enabled her to succeed in spite of the hardships she faced.  
☐ a) accommodation      ☐ b) celebration      ☐ c) determination      ☐ d) quotation
11. When I was on holiday, I ..... swimming with my friends.  
☐ a) am used to go      ☐ b) goes      ☐ c) would go      ☐ d) go
12. His application for the job might not be accepted because he ..... experience.  
☐ a) links      ☐ b) lacks      ☐ c) declines      ☐ d) decreases
13. We should do our best to ..... the animals which are in danger.  
☐ a) preserve      ☐ b) deserve      ☐ c) observe      ☐ d) damage



**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Too much video games can lead to poor social skills, time away from family, school work and other hobbies, lower grades, reading less, exercising less, becoming overweight, and having aggressive thoughts and behaviours. Many parents and grandparents have been saying this for years, but they were largely ignored, being regarded as technophobes. Parental worries about computer games are often related to their effect on their children's health and on their own social skills. They feel that they should be outdoors; getting exercise and enjoying the fresh air while playing with their friends.

... many of them usually play by themselves, they live rather isolated lives, with little opportunity to interact with other people. As a result, they may be very poor at communication. Parents are also worried that the violence in many of the games will cause their children to become more aggressive and violent. This anxiety also applies to television, which often shows scenes of extreme cruelty.

On the other hand, many scientists and psychologists find that computer games could actually have many benefits – the main one is making kids smart. Computer games may actually teach kids high-level thinking skills that they will need in the future. When your child plays computer games, it gives his brain a real workout. In many computer games, the skills required to win involve abstract and high-level thinking. These skills are not even taught at school.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 14. The best title for the passage is .....**  
a) The cons of computer games  
b) The pros of computer games  
c) The pros and cons of computer games  
d) Different computer games
- 15. Those who are in favour of computer games think that they .....**  
a) make kids smart  
b) are cheap for them to buy  
c) make them happy  
d) are better than outdoor activities
- 16. Enjoying the fresh air and playing are kinds of .....**  
a) social media  
b) outdoor activities  
c) indoor activities  
d) hobbies
- 17. Parents worry about computer games because .....**  
a) they have an effect on their children's health  
b) they have an effect on their children's social skills  
c) they have an effect on their children's behaviour  
d) all mentioned before
- 18. The underlined word "Since" here means .....**  
a) from the time when  
b) because  
c) although  
d) but
- 19. After reading this passage, we conclude that computer games .....**  
a) are a double-edged weapon  
b) have a lot of advantages  
c) have a lot of disadvantages  
d) do much harm to people and animals
- 20. Violence, cruelty and aggressiveness can be caused by .....**  
a) high-level thinking  
b) parental worries  
c) technophobes  
d) TV scenes and computer games
- 21. The word "parental" means .....**  
a) relating to children  
b) relating to hobbies  
c) relating to parents  
d) relating to games



## 22. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Patience, co-operation and tolerance are among the most important qualities that help a person succeed and face all hardships.

- (a) الصبر والتعاون والتسامح من أهم الصفات التي لا تساعد الإنسان على النجاح ومواجهة كافة الصعوبات.
- (b) الصبر والتعاون والتفوق من أهم الصفات التي تساعد الإنسان على النجاح ومواجهة كافة الصعوبات.
- (c) الصبر والتعاون والتسامح من أهم الصفات التي تساعد الإنسان على النجاح ومواجهة بعض الصعوبات.
- (d) الصبر والتعاون والتسامح من أهم الصفات التي تساعد الإنسان على النجاح ومواجهة كافة الصعوبات.

## 23. Choose the correct English translation:

- إن مفاتيح الصحة الجيدة هي النظام الغذائي الجيد، النوم الكافي، وممارسة الرياضة وتجنب الإصابة بالأمراض المعدية.

- a) The keys to good health are a good diet, adequate sleep, exercise, and avoiding infectious diseases.
- b) The keys to good health aren't a good diet, adequate sleep, exercise, and avoiding infectious diseases.
- c) The keys to good healthy are a good diet, adequate sleep, exercise, and avoiding infectious diseases.
- d) The keys to bad health are a good diet, adequate sleep, exercise, and avoiding infectious diseases.

## 24. Answer the following questions: (The Play)

1. If you were Cordelia, would you return to England to save your father? Why? /Why not?

2. In your opinion, what are the similarities between Goneril, Regan and Edmund?

3. "I'd prefer to go to prison. There we can be together."What do these words show about the King?

## 25. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on this topic:

"Our duty towards the River Nile"

☐ a) pick      ☒ b) get      ☐ c) grow      ☐ d) bring

☒ a) inventors      ☐ b) facilities      ☐ c) difficulties      ☐ d) discoverers

a) doing      b) building      c) taking      d) travelling

a) Expedition      b) Botany      c) Biodiversity      d) Biochemistry

a) engineer      b) volunteer      c) expert      d) employee

☒ a) scenery      ☐ b) sense      ☐ c) scene      ☐ d) stain

☐ a) deny      ☐ b) confirm      ☐ c) avoid      ☐ d) ignore

☒ a) much      ☐ b) many      ☐ c) very      ☐ d) slight

☒ a) I have done      ☐ b) I did      ☐ c) I being done      ☐ d) I do

☐ a) her      ☐ b) she      ☐ c) Rana      ☐ d) hers

☐ a) doesn't      ☐ b) is      ☐ c) did      ☐ d) does

☐ a) is always made      b) is always making  
c) always make      d) always is making

☒ a) leaves      ☐ b) is leaving      ☐ c) will leave      ☐ d) is being left

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

The television and the mobile are responsible for the declining interest in reading among the young. While they may be harmless in themselves, they do nothing to build up reading skills. If some of the hours children spend watching television were devoted to reading, the population would be better educated.

Watching a story is a totally passive pastime, someone else has made the decisions about everything in the story. Reading a story is an active partnership between writer and reader. Ideas are sketched and the mind of the reader creates the rest, so watching something on TV or the mobile phone is easier for some people.

The problem is that many children read very slowly, they decode a page or two in a class and do about the same again for homework. It is hardly surprising that such children then declare that they find reading boring and prefer to watch television. Their difficulty is not reading the words, it is interpreting them. They need to be able to read fast enough to feed the mind's hunger for a story and that surely needs practice. Only by reading daily will a child become a strong and independent reader.

Parents need to be convinced of the importance of preventing their children from wasting their hours on inactive viewing. Without the television, the child is likely to turn to reading books for entertainment instead of wasting time on mobile.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

14. The best title for the passage is .....
- ☐ a) The advantages of videos  
☐ b) The disadvantages of reading  
☐ c) Reading compared to watching videos  
☐ d) How to watch a video in an active way
15. The writer says that the population would be better educated if children .....
- ☐ a) do their homework    ☐ b) watch TV    ☐ c) read more    ☐ d) read slowly
16. The word from the passage that means "hobby" is .....
- ☐ a) rest    ☐ b) partnership    ☐ c) interpreting    ☐ d) pastime
17. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to .....
- ☐ a) the young    ☐ b) children  
☐ c) mobile and television    ☐ d) reading skills
18. Watching a story is ..... than reading it.
- ☐ a) easier    ☐ b) more difficult  
☐ c) harder    ☐ d) slower
19. Without the television, the child ..... turn to reading books for entertainment.
- ☐ a) may    ☐ b) must    ☐ c) like    ☐ d) need
20. On reading a story, the reader .....
- ☐ a) receives ideas only    ☐ b) creates ideas only  
☐ c) receives and creates ideas    ☐ d) sends ideas
21. According to the text, watching stories on mobile phones may .....
- ☐ a) build up your reading skills    ☐ b) increase your reading skills  
☐ c) improve your reading skills    ☐ d) limit your reading skills

**22. Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

- Unity and cooperation are the necessary qualities which we need to succeed in our national projects. So, we must help and support each other.

- (a) إن الوحدة والتعاون هما الصفتان الأساسيتان اللتان نحتاجهما للنجاح في مشروعاتنا القومية، لذلك يجب أن تساعد ونساعد بعضنا البعض.
- (b) إن الوحدة والتعاون هما الضروريتان الأساسيتان اللتان نحتاجهما للنجاح في مشروعاتنا القومية، لذلك يجب أن تساعد ونساعد بعضنا البعض.
- (c) إن الوحدة والتعاون هما الصفتان الضروريتان اللتان نحتاجهما للنجاح في مشروعاتنا الدولية، لذلك يجب أن تساعد ونساعد بعضنا البعض.
- (d) إن الوحدة والتعاون هما الصفتان الضروريتان اللتان نحتاجهما للنجاح في مشروعاتنا القومية، لذلك يجب أن تساعد ونساعد بعضنا البعض.

**23. Choose the correct English translation:**

- التعليم هو عملية يكتسب الناس من خلالها المعرفة والمهارات والقيم التي تساعدكم أن يصبحوا أعضاء نافعين في المجتمع، لذا يجب على الآباء والمعلمين أن يتشاركوا في هذه المسؤولية.

- a) Education is a process by which people acquire knowledge, skills and values that help them become useful members in society. Therefore, parents and teachers should share this responsibility.
- b) Education is a process by which people acquire knowledge, skills or values that help them become useful members in society. Therefore, parents and teachers should share these responsibilities.
- c) Education is a process by which people take knowledge, skills and values that help them become useful members in society. Therefore, parents and teachers should share this responsibility.
- d) Education is a process by which people acquire knowledge, skills and values that help them become useful persons in society. Therefore, parents and teachers should share this responsibility.

**24. Answer the following questions: (The Play)**

1. Gloucester and King Lear were to some extent alike. Do you agree? Give your reasons.

2. "When you have nothing, there's nothing left to lose." What do you think Edgar means by this?

3. In your opinion, what's the moral lesson of the play "King Lear"?

**25. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on this topic:**

**"Pros and cons of working abroad"**



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... means to be able to do things by yourself, without needing help from others.  
☐ a) Independent      ☐ b) Dependence      ☐ c) Depend      ☐ d) Enforcement
2. One of the so many purposes of The Decent Life Initiative is to produce the best ..... and infrastructure.  
☐ a) disagreements      ☐ b) population      ☐ c) facilities      ☐ d) fiction
3. Reducing the amounts of pollution is an ideal way that leads to environment .....  
☐ a) construction      ☐ b) conversation      ☐ c) conservation      ☐ d) destruction
4. .... were done by detectives to get clues about the crime.  
☐ a) Investigations      ☐ b) Investments      ☐ c) Influences      ☐ d) Contracts
5. Making films in which drawings appear to move is a process called .....  
☐ a) annual      ☐ b) rehearsing      ☐ c) struggle      ☐ d) animation
6. Working together creates a ..... for success.  
☐ a) receiver      ☐ b) reception      ☐ c) recipe      ☐ d) recent
7. His ..... behaviour made it difficult for the team to trust him with important tasks.  
☐ a) dependable      ☐ b) unreliable      ☐ c) steady      ☐ d) trustworthy
8. Would you mind giving me a lift, my car ..... at the mechanic's.  
☐ a) is checking      ☐ b) is being checked      ☐ c) was being checked      ☐ d) checked
9. In three weeks' time, the new dam will have .....  
☐ a) build      ☐ b) built      ☐ c) been building      ☐ d) been built
10. I used to like salted fish. This means I .....  
☐ a) never liked salted fish      ☐ b) didn't like salted fish at all  
☐ c) don't like salted fish any more      ☐ d) still like salted fish
11. The author ..... to publish his new story until he had changed its end.  
☐ a) wasn't permitted      ☐ b) hadn't permitted  
☐ c) permitted      ☐ d) didn't permit
12. Father has to take these pills three times a day, .....?  
☐ a) has he      ☐ b) hasn't he      ☐ c) doesn't he      ☐ d) does he
13. Ten o'clock is the time ..... I go to bed at.  
☐ a) when      ☐ b) where      ☐ c) which      ☐ d) whom



**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Millions of people are attacked by a secret enemy which causes more harm and greater suffering than any other disease. That one has effects on both emotional and physical health. Its name is worry. According to doctors, excessive worry can actually cause many organic diseases, such as headaches, stomach problems and muscle tension. Even when it doesn't, it can, by eating our energy in many ways, ruin our health and make our life hard and irritable because you always feel restless and jumpy.

It is known that the stresses of life and strains make us worry about silly trivial things and cause us to spend sleepless nights and as a result, some get tired, others become irritable and life seems to be an endless chain of worries. However, not all worry is bad. Sometimes when you feel worried, that helps you be more aware of a situation and better prepared to face it. It may help you come up with creative ways to solve a problem.

Psychiatrists always warn people against too much worry. They tell us to follow a healthy diet, practice exercises, laugh more, and communicate with others to overcome or relieve worry.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**14. Worry can benefit you by helping .....**

- ☐ a) build strong muscles
- ☐ b) spend sleepless nights
- ☐ c) have stomach problems
- ☐ d) get ready well for situations

**15. The more we worry, the more we .....**

- ☐ a) have healthy diets
- ☐ b) become healthy
- ☐ c) catch diseases
- ☐ d) can fight diseases

**16. The underlined word "ruin" can give the same meaning as .....**

- ☐ a) damage
- ☐ b) enhance
- ☐ c) neglect
- ☐ d) care about

**17. What do you think a psychiatrist is? .....**

- ☐ a) A reporter
- ☐ b) A medical doctor
- ☐ c) A bodyguard
- ☐ d) A journalist

**18. What negative role does too much worry play?**

- ☐ a) It can treat other diseases.
- ☐ b) It has no bad side effects.
- ☐ c) It has emotional and physical effects.
- ☐ d) It helps us feel pleasant.

**19. Suggest a suitable title for the essay.**

- ☐ a) Remedies for worry.
- ☐ b) Worry, the hidden enemy.
- ☐ c) The advantages of worry.
- ☐ d) Worry is a trivial disease.

**20. Too much worry can be .....**

- ☐ a) exactly the same as organic diseases
- ☐ b) less dangerous than organic diseases
- ☐ c) as dangerous as organic diseases
- ☐ d) more dangerous than organic diseases

**21. What do you think can help relieve worry and tension?**

- ☐ a) Keeping away from close friends and relatives.
- ☐ b) Keeping in touch with close friends and relatives.
- ☐ c) Behaving carelessly and randomly.
- ☐ d) Knowing the number of people who suffer from worry.

## 22. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Most people feel upset when young men neglect their traditions and imitate other cultures whereas our heritage is very rich and valuable.

- (a) يشعر معظم الناس بالضيق عندما يهمل صغار الناس عاداتهم ويقلدون ثقافة الآخرين بينما تراثنا ثرى وذو قيمة.  
(b) يشعر معظم الناس بالضيق عندما يهمل الشباب عاداتهم ويقلدون الثقافات الأخرى بينما تراثنا ثرى جداً وذو قيمة.  
(c) يشعر معظم الناس بالملل عندما يقلد الشباب الثقافات الأخرى ويهملون تقاليدهم في حين أن تراثنا ثرى جداً وذو أهمية.  
(d) يشعر معظم الناس بالحزن عندما يتجنب الشباب تقاليدنا ويهاجرون إلى أوطان أخرى في حين أن تراثنا ثرى وذو قيمة.

## 23. Choose the correct English translation:

- للعمل التطوعي العديد من الفوائد النفسية، فيشعر المتطوعون بالرضا عن أنفسهم ويمكنهم تنمية مهارات مفيدة واكتساب خبرات قيمة.

- a) Volunteering has several psychological benefits. Volunteers feel distraction about themselves and they can develop useful skills and gain valuable experiences.  
b) Volunteering has severe psychological benefits. Volunteers feel satisfaction about oneself and they can develop useless skills and earn available experiences.  
c) Volunteering has several physical benefits. Volunteers feel satisfied about themselves and they can develop useful skills and gain valuable experiments.  
d) Volunteering has several psychological benefits. Volunteers feel satisfaction about themselves and they can develop useful skills and gain valuable experiences.

## 24. Answer the following questions: (The Play)

1. Why do you think Lear went mad?

2. Do you think that Edmund had a wicked character? Why? /Why not?

3. Goneril wasn't a good daughter. Do you agree? Why? /Why not?

## 25. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on this topic:

"Travelling abroad has advantages and disadvantages"

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He promised he would keep in touch ..... us while he was away.  
☐ a) for                      ☐ b) up                      ☐ c) with                      ☐ d) of
2. Teens want to feel ..... and live their lives the way they want.  
☐ a) independence      ☐ b) independent      ☐ c) dependent      ☐ d) self-employed
3. The hotel has special ..... for disabled people.  
☐ a) faci lities      ☐ b) faculties      ☐ c) difficulties      ☐ d) facil tates
4. Hanan ..... about what to do to solve the problem.  
☐ a) think      ☐ b) thinks      ☐ c) is thinking      ☐ d) thinking
5. The play's opening ..... takes place in the courtyard.  
☐ a) view      ☐ b) seen      ☐ c) scenery      ☐ d) scene
6. The milk ..... sour. I'll throw it away.  
☐ a) tastes      ☐ b) is tasting      ☐ c) tasting      ☐ d) taste
7. The film was a ..... that made the audience laugh from start to end.  
☐ a) tragedy      ☐ b) comedy      ☐ c) horror      ☐ d) thriller
8. I don't like going on organized tours. The synonym for "organised" is .....  
☐ a) drawn up      ☐ b) arranged      ☐ c) disordered      ☐ d) reminded
9. By the year 2050, scientists ..... discovered a cure for cancer.  
☐ a) will be      ☐ b) will have been      ☐ c) will      ☐ d) will have
10. The club is the place ..... we play in.  
☐ a) where      ☐ b) what      ☐ c) which      ☐ d) whose
11. Aya's answers are ..... the same as Mona's on this test.  
☐ a) a lot      ☐ b) far      ☐ c) very      ☐ d) exactly
12. After I left him a message, he ..... me immediately.  
☐ a) has phoned      ☐ b) had phoned      ☐ c) was phoning      ☐ d) phoned
13. He always forgets his homework, .....?  
☐ a) never he      ☐ b) don't you      ☐ c) doesn't he      ☐ d) did ne

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Tourism can be very important to a country's economy, particularly in less developed countries, where it can drive growth. Tourism also tends to have important impacts on the environment and society at large. That's why many countries make great efforts to encourage tourism, and many also depend on what they earn from it to keep their economies going.

Companies regularly arrange trips through the Sahara Desert or to the Hima.ayan mountains for whoever enjoys such trips, but the numbers of visitors are few. Most tourists try to choose whichever places have fairly comfortable, cheap hotels, quite good treatment, reasonable safety, sunny weather and plenty of amusements or unusual things to see. Their choice of a place for a holiday also depends on when they can get away, it is not very pleasant to go to a place when it is having its worst weather.

One big problem for a nation wishing to attract tourists is the cost of building hotels for them. Building big hotels swallows up a lot of money, and many of the countries that need tourists are poor. What they spend on building has to be borrowed from foreign banks. Another problem is that more and more big international companies are building hotels all over the world, so that the profits from these hotels often do not stay in the country in which they have been built. There is also the question of training the hotels' staff, teaching them foreign languages, and how to cook the kind of food that foreign tourists expect.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

14. Unless we provide tourists with the best service, they .....  
☐ a) will enjoy their stay here                      b) will stay here for long  
☐ c) will revisit our country                      d) will never return to our country
15. Some people don't go to a place for a holiday although they like it because it .....  
☐ a) is not very pleasant                      b) is fairly comfortable  
☐ c) has its worst weather                      d) has good hotels
16. What does the underlined word "they" refer to?  
☐ a) Tourists.                      b) Countries.                      c) Impacts.                      d) Efforts.
17. To attract more tourists to come to Egypt, we mustn't .....  
☐ a) provide them with good hotels                      b) offer them good food  
☐ c) increase hotel and food prices                      d) solve our traffic problems
18. The phrasal verb "swallows up" can be replaced by .....  
☐ a) uses up                      b) increases                      c) makes                      d) invents
19. Many countries try hard to encourage tourism because .....  
☐ a) it affects the environment badly                      b) it can do without hotels  
☐ c) it swallows up a lot of money                      d) it's a main source of income
20. What attracts most tourists to a certain place to visit?  
a) Cheap hotels.                      b) Friendly local people.                      c) Good weather.                      d) a, b, and c.
21. Without having well-trained hotels' staff, tourists will .....  
☐ a) have good treatment                      b) enjoy local food  
☐ c) refuse to stay in these hotels                      d) avoid sunny weather



22. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- There are many advantages to living aboard, where one can gain many experiences and knowledge of other cultures, as well as developing their abilities.
- a) يوجد الكثير من المزايا للمعيشة بالخارج، حيث يستطيع المرء اكتساب الكثير من الأموال والإلهام بالثقافات الأخرى بالإضافة إلى تنمية قدراته.
  - b) يوجد الكثير من المزايا للعمل بالخارج، حيث يستطيع المرء اكتساب الكثير من الخبرات والإلهام بالثقافات الأخرى بالإضافة إلى تنمية قدراته.
  - c) يوجد الكثير من المزايا للمعيشة بالخارج، حيث يستطيع المرء اكتساب الكثير من الخبرات والتطلع إلى الثقافات الأخرى بالإضافة إلى تنمية قدراته.
  - d) يوجد الكثير من المزايا للمعيشة بالخارج، حيث يستطيع المرء اكتساب الكثير من الخبرات والإلهام بالثقافات الأخرى بالإضافة إلى تنمية قدراته.

23. Choose the correct English translation:

- يجب أن نشجع أبناءنا على القراءة في سن مبكرة حتى يمكن تكوين شخصيتهم بشكل جيد.
- a) We must encourage our children to read at an early age until can form their personalities well.
  - b) We must encourage our children to read at an early age not to be able to form there personalities well.
  - c) We must encourage our children to read at an early age to be able to form their personalities well.
  - d) We must encourage our children to read at an early age to be able to from their personalities will.

24. Answer the following questions: (The Play)

1. Do you think Gloucester was really a traitor? Why/Why not?

2. If you were Cordelia, would you feel sad for what happened to the King? Why?

3. Why do you think Regan doesn't want Goneril to talk to Edmund?

25. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on this topic:

"Teamwork is the way to success"



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Grandma's very ..... and does all her own shopping and cooking.  
☐ a) insufficient      b) indifference      c) insignificant      d) independent
2. There is a massive ..... in solar power stations all over Egypt.  
☐ a) expansion      b) experienced      c) explanation      d) expedition
3. Low achievement at school often ..... from poverty and bad social conditions.  
☐ a) raises      b) roses      c) arises      d) rises
4. A digital ..... is someone who travels freely while working remotely using technology and the internet.  
☐ a) volunteer      b) nomad      c) website      d) editor
5. There is a "hostile" crowd outside the mall after they announced that the sale was cancelled. The underlined word is a synonym of .....  
☐ a) friendly      b) peaceful      c) unfriendly      d) unaggressive
6. Teachers should ask their students to think of goals that are ..... for them.  
☐ a) unreliable      b) sustainable      c) achievable      d) timetable
7. After months of competition, she was named a ..... in the national poetry contest.  
☐ a) judge      b) finalist      c) spectator      d) coach
8. We arrived at the cinema half an hour late. The film ..... half an hour earlier.  
☐ a) begins      b) had begun      c) was beginning      d) has begun
9. By the time the children arrive home, the mother ..... lunch.  
☐ a) had had cooked      b) will be cooked  
☐ c) will have cooked      d) has have cooked
10. The engineers are working ..... to set up the new bridge. They work around the clock.  
☐ a) specially      b) constantly      c) totally      d) friendly
11. My father would always go to the cinema on Thursdays when he was young. The underlined part can be replaced by .....  
☐ a) always goes to the cinema      b) used to go to the cinema  
☐ c) never went to the cinema      d) went to the cinema once
12. We ..... to London tomorrow; we've got our visas and booked the tickets.  
☐ a) have traveled      b) are going to travel      c) are travelling      d) travel
13. Colonel David Sanders is the man ..... image is on every Kentucky Fried Chicken restaurant.  
☐ a) which      b) whose      c) whom      d) that

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

A pilot cannot fly a plane by sight alone. In many conditions, such as flying at night and landing in dense fog, a pilot must use radar, an alternative way of navigating. Since human eyes are not very good at determining the speeds of approaching objects, radar can show how fast nearby planes are moving.

The basic principle of radar is exemplified by what happens when one shouts in a cave. The echo of the sounds against the walls helps a person determine the size of the cave. With radar, however, the waves are radio waves instead of sound waves. Radio waves travel at the speed of light, about 300,000 kilometres in one second. It is a technology that uses radio waves to detect objects and measure the range, angle, or velocity at which those objects are traveling. A radar set sends out a short burst of radiation waves. Then it receives the echoes produced when the waves bounce off objects. By determining the time it takes for the echoes to return to the radar set, a trained technician can determine the distance between the radar set and the other objects.

The word "radar", in fact, gets its name from the term "radio detection and ranging". "Ranging" is the term for the distance between an object and the radar set. Besides being of critical importance to pilots, radar is essential for air traffic control, tracking ships at sea, and tracking weather systems and storms.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**14. What is the main topic of this passage?**

- ☐ a) The nature of radar.
- ☐ b) Types of ranging.
- ☐ c) An alternative way to radar.
- ☐ d) Different ways of tracking.

**15. According to the passage, what can radar detect besides the location of objects?**

- ☐ a) Size.
- ☐ b) Weight.
- ☐ c) Speed.
- ☐ d) Shape.

**16. Which of the following could best replace the underlined word "range"?**

- ☐ a) Circle.
- ☐ b) Radioactivity.
- ☐ c) Distance.
- ☐ d) Navigation.

**17. The part from the passage "radar can show how fast nearby planes are moving" expresses .....**

- ☐ a) a result
- ☐ b) a cause
- ☐ c) a condition
- ☐ d) an addition

**18. What might be inferred about radar?**

- ☐ a) It is entirely dispensable.
- ☐ b) It gave birth to the invention of the airplane.
- ☐ c) It developed from a study of sound waves.
- ☐ d) It has improved navigational safety.

**19. Which of the following words best describes the tone of this passage?**

- ☐ a) Argumentative.
- ☐ b) Imaginative.
- ☐ c) Explanatory.
- ☐ d) Narrative.

**20. The underlined word "bounce" can be defined as .....**

- ☐ a) to send some waves by enlarging them
- ☐ b) to hit a surface and then move away from it
- ☐ c) to receive the produced echoes
- ☐ d) to determine the distance of objects

**21. Which of the following would most likely be the topic of the next paragraph?**

- ☐ a) Other uses of radar.
- ☐ b) The basic principle of radar.
- ☐ c) Other technology used by pilots.
- ☐ d) A history of flying.

## 22. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Egyptian construction companies are carrying out many giant projects in the New Administrative Capital. These projects will play an important role in the comprehensive development and provide job opportunities.

- (a) قامت شركات الإنشاء المصرية بالكثير من المشروعات العملاقة بالعاصمة الإدارية الجديدة. هذه المشروعات سوف تكون قدوة هامة في التنمية الشاملة وتوفير فرص العمل.
- (b) تقوم شركات التعليم المصرية بالكثير من المشروعات العملاقة بالعاصمة العملية الجديدة. هذه المشروعات سوف تلعب دورًا مهمًا في التنمية الشاملة وتوفير فرص العمل.
- (c) تقوم شركات الإنشاء المصرية بالكثير من المشروعات العملاقة بالعاصمة الإدارية الجديدة. هذه المشروعات سوف تلعب دورًا مهمًا في التنمية الشاملة وتوفير فرص العمل.
- (d) قامت شركات الإنشاء المصرية بالكثير من المشروعات العملاقة بالعاصمة الإدارية الجديدة. هذه المشروعات لعبت دورًا مهمًا في التنمية الشاملة وتوفير فرص العمل.

## 23. Choose the correct English translation:

- تُعد البحار والمحيطات مصدرًا أساسيًا للأكسجين الحيوي لحياة الإنسان؛ إن الحفاظ على نظافتها يعنى إمدادًا مستدامًا بالأكسجين وهو أمر ضروري لبقاءنا على قيد الحياة.

- (a) Seas and oceans are a secondary source of oxygen vital for human life; keeping them clean means sustainable oxygen supply which is necessary for our survey.
- (b) Seas and oceans are a primary source of oxygen vital for human life; keeping them cleaning means sustainable oxygen supply where is necessary for our survival.
- (c) Seas and oceans are a primary source of oxygen vital for human life; keeping them clean means sustainable oxygen supply which is necessary for our survival.
- (d) Seas and oceans are primary source of oxygen vital for humane life; keeping them cleaning means sustainable oxygen supply which is necessary for our survival.

## 24. Answer the following questions: (The Play)

1. In your opinion, how are King Lear and Gloucester alike?

2. How was Albany loyal to King Lear?

3. What can we learn from the play "King Lear"?

## 25. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"The pros and cons of studying and living abroad"



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Most hotels have special ..... for helping people.

- ☐ a) factories      ☐ b) facilities      ☐ c) filters      ☐ d) faces

2. Famous people are always ..... by TV channels.

- ☐ a) offered      ☐ b) tested      ☐ c) searched      ☐ d) interviewed

3. He bought an expensive ring for his wife. Another word for "expensive" is .....

- ☐ a) suitable      ☐ b) cheap      ☐ c) inexpensive      ☐ d) valuable

4. .... people can rarely solve the problems they face by themselves.

- ☐ a) Independent      ☐ b) Dependent      ☐ c) Reliable      ☐ d) Efficient

5. It is better to deal with some problems at ..... or they will get more difficult.

- ☐ a) purpose      ☐ b) source      ☐ c) site      ☐ d) location

6. Fashion decides ..... we should appear.

- ☐ a) what      ☐ b) when      ☐ c) where      ☐ d) how

7. Before writing the essay, it's helpful to create a/an ..... to organise your main points.

- ☐ a) conclusion      ☐ b) outline      ☐ c) reference      ☐ d) introduction

8. Few students are here, .....?

- ☐ a) aren't they      ☐ b) are they      ☐ c) don't they      ☐ d) do they

9. What did you do after I ..... you last night?

- ☐ a) had phoned      ☐ b) have phoned      ☐ c) was phoning      ☐ d) was phoned

10. He used to be alone, but now he .....

- ☐ a) didn't      ☐ b) doesn't      ☐ c) isn't      ☐ d) won't

11. By the time my father comes back home, I ..... his room.

- ☐ a) will have tidied      ☐ b) will be tidied  
☐ c) may be tidying      ☐ d) should have tidied

12. The street ..... is very noisy.

- ☐ a) where I live      ☐ b) I live  
☐ c) where I live there      ☐ d) in where I live

13. Industrial goods are often produced ..... in developing countries.

- ☐ a) cheap      ☐ b) cheapest      ☐ c) cheaply      ☐ d) more cheap

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Computers are machines that can help us in many ways. But they cannot think or do things on their own. Humans have to feed them with information and tell them what to do with it. They can save much time and work. For example, all the information and the office files can be stored in a computer's "memory".

The first computers were huge and costly. They filled up almost the whole floor of large offices. Later, because of the usefulness and demand for computers in business, scientists soon found ways to produce cheaper and smaller computers. They invented chips which made it possible to store more information in less space.

Today, computers are not only cheaper but also more compact. They can just be easily. Computers are not only used in offices by companies, but they are also used at home by families who can afford them.

Robots, on the other hand, are not mechanical people. They are only moving parts controlled by a computer. A robot can do the same work for twenty-four hours, and yet, it does not complain or get tired. In Japan and in some places in America, robots are used in factories to assemble cars. As computers become more common in businesses and factories, people fear that one day computers and computer-controlled robots will put human workers out of work.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**14. Humans fear that one day computers and robots .....**

- ☐ a) are busier than humans
- ☐ b) are cleverer than humans
- ☐ c) will make humans jobless
- ☐ d) will make humans listen to certain noise

**15. The best title for this passage would be .....**

- ☐ a) Computers and Robots
- ☐ b) Old and New Computers
- ☐ c) Robots are Security Guards
- ☐ d) The Electronic Invention

**16. Find a word in the passage that has the same meaning as more compact.**

- ☐ a) Huge.
- ☐ b) Cheaper.
- ☐ c) Smaller.
- ☐ d) Costly.

**17. Which of the following statements is NOT true?**

- ☐ a) Robots are controlled by a computer.
- ☐ b) Robots are mechanical people.
- ☐ c) Robots do not get tired of working.
- ☐ d) Robots are used in factories in Japan.

**18. The first computers filled up a room because .....**

- ☐ a) they could store a lot of information
- ☐ b) they were huge
- ☐ c) they were very expensive
- ☐ d) they were useful and demanded in business

**19. Humans have to feed the computers with information .....**

- ☐ a) so, computers cannot move or do things on their own
- ☐ b) because computers are able to think or do things on their own
- ☐ c) because computers can save much time and work
- ☐ d) because computers cannot think or do things on their own

**20. The underlined word "They" refers to .....**

- ☐ a) people
- ☐ b) robots
- ☐ c) computers
- ☐ d) scientists

**21. Computers have made our life .....**

- ☐ a) hard
- ☐ b) difficult
- ☐ c) dangerous
- ☐ d) easy



## 22. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- The generation gap has caused distance between the children and their parents and grandparents, and it has become tougher to maintain peace and harmony.

- (a) تسبب صراع الأجيال في تباعد الأطفال عن آبائهم وأجدادهم، وأصبح الحفاظ على السلام والوئام أكثر صعوبة.
- (b) تسبب صراع الأجيال في شجار الأطفال مع آبائهم وأجدادهم، وأصبح الحفاظ على السلام والحب أكثر صعوبة.
- (c) تسببت فجوة الأجيال في تباعد الأطفال عن آبائهم وأجدادهم، وأصبح الحفاظ على السلام والوئام أكثر صعوبة.
- (d) تسببت فجوة الأجيال في شجار الأطفال مع آبائهم وأجدادهم، وأصبح الحفاظ على السلام والحب أكثر صعوبة.

## 23. Choose the correct English translation:

- يُعد المعلم لبنة أساسية في تقدم المجتمع ورسولاً يحمل رسالة العلم ورقعة الأمة.

- (a) A teacher is an essential block in the advancement of society and a messenger who carries the message of knowledge and the elevation of the nation.
- (b) A teacher is an essential blockade in the advance of society and a messenger whom carries the message of knowledge and the elevation of the nation.
- (c) A teacher is an essential blockade in the advancement of society and a messenger who carry the message of knowledge and the elevation of the nation.
- (d) A teacher is an essential block in the advance of society and a messenger whom carries the message of knowledge and the elevation of the nation.

## 24. Answer the following questions: (The Play)

1. Why do you think Edgar says that King Lear is talking both "sense and nonsense"?

2. Why do you think Lear went mad?

3. What do you think Edmund, Goneril and Regan have in common?

## 25. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"The benefits of travelling abroad"

<p>رقم الإيداع: ٢٠٢٤/٢١٥٤٣ ترخيص وزارة التربية والتعليم رقم: ٣٦٢/٢/١٢/١٠٤ خدمة العملاء: 16766</p>	 <p>جميع الحقوق محفوظة © لدار نهضة مصر للنشر يحظر طبع أو نشر أو تصوير أو تخزين أي جزء من هذا الكتاب بأية وسيلة إلكترونية أو ميكانيكية أو بالتصوير أو خلاف ذلك إلا بإذن كتابي سريع من الناشر.</p>
---	---